



2026

Global Strategy for Asthma Management and Prevention

Updated 2026

©2026 Global Initiative for Asthma

Global Strategy for Asthma Management and Prevention (2026 update)

The reader acknowledges that this report is intended as an evidence-based asthma management strategy, for the use of healthcare providers and policy-makers. It is based, to the best of our knowledge, on current best evidence and medical knowledge and practice at the date of publication. When assessing and treating patients, health professionals are strongly advised to use their own professional judgment, and to take into account local and national regulations and guidelines. GINA cannot be held liable or responsible for inappropriate health care associated with the use of this document, including any use which is not in accordance with applicable local or national regulations or guidelines.

Suggested citation: Global Initiative for Asthma. Global Strategy for Asthma Management and Prevention, 2026. Updated May 2026. Available from: www.ginasthma.org

COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL - DO NOT COPY OR DISTRIBUTE

Table of contents

Tables and figures	6
Preface	9
Members of GINA committees (2025–2026)	10
Abbreviations	12
Introduction	15
Methodology	16
WHAT'S NEW IN GINA 2026?	20
1. Definition, description, and diagnosis of asthma in adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years	25
Definition of asthma	25
Making the initial diagnosis	26
Differential diagnosis	30
Confirming the diagnosis of asthma	31
Confirming the diagnosis in patients already taking ICS-containing treatment	36
How to make the diagnosis of asthma in other contexts	36
2. Assessment of asthma in adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years	39
Overview	40
Assessing asthma symptom control	42
Assessing risk of exacerbations, lung function decline and adverse effects	45
Role of lung function in assessing asthma control	47
Assessing asthma severity	48
How to distinguish between uncontrolled asthma and severe asthma	51
3. Principles of asthma management in adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years	53
The patient–healthcare provider partnership	54
Long-term goal of asthma management	55
Remission of asthma	55
Personalized control-based asthma management	57
Non-pharmacological strategies	63
Referral for expert advice	72
4. Medications and treatment regimens for adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years	73
Categories of asthma medications	75
ICS-containing medication	78
Adults and adolescents: asthma treatment tracks	80
Initial asthma treatment for adults and adolescents	81
Asthma treatment steps in adults and adolescents	83
Track 1 (preferred): treatment steps 1–4 for adults and adolescents using ICS-formoterol reliever	84

Track 2 (alternative): treatment steps 1–4 for adults and adolescents using ICS-SABA or SABA reliever...	92
Other medications for adults and adolescents (Tracks 1 and 2)	97
Step 5 (Tracks 1 and 2) in adults and adolescents	98
Vaccinations	101
Asthma treatment for children 6–11 years	102
Initial asthma treatment in children 6–11 years	102
Asthma treatment steps for children 6–11 years	104
Reviewing response and adjusting treatment – adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years	110
Allergen immunotherapy	114
Other therapies	116
5. Guided asthma self-management education and skills training	117
Skills training for effective use of inhaler devices	117
Shared decision-making for choice of inhaler device	118
Adherence to medications and to other advice	120
Asthma information	122
Training in guided asthma self-management	123
Regular review by a healthcare provider or trained healthcare worker	125
School-based programs for children	125
6. Managing asthma with multimorbidity and in specific populations	126
Managing multimorbidity	126
Managing asthma in specific populations, settings or contexts	132
7. Diagnosis and initial treatment in adults with features of asthma, COPD or both	141
Objectives	142
Background to diagnosing asthma and/or COPD in adult patients	142
Assessment and management of chronic respiratory symptoms	143
8. Difficult-to-treat and severe asthma in adults and adolescents	149
Definitions: uncontrolled, difficult-to-treat, and severe asthma	150
Prevalence: how many people have severe asthma?	150
Importance: the impact of severe asthma	151
Overview of decision tree for assessment and management of difficult-to-treat and severe asthma	151
Investigate and manage difficult-to-treat asthma in adults and adolescents	156
Investigate the severe asthma phenotype and consider non-biologic therapies	159
Consider Type 2-targeted biologic therapies	162
Assess, manage and monitor ongoing severe asthma treatment	167

9. Worsening asthma and exacerbations in adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years	170
Overview	171
Diagnosis of exacerbations	172
Self-management of exacerbations with a written asthma action plan	173
Primary care management of asthma exacerbations (adults, adolescents, children 6–11 years)	178
Emergency department management of exacerbations (adults, adolescents, children 6–11 years)	184
Discharge planning and follow-up	189
10. Diagnosis of asthma in children 5 years and younger	192
Asthma and wheezing in young children	193
Clinical diagnosis of asthma	194
Criterion 1: Recurrent acute wheezing episodes with/without asthma-like symptoms between episodes..	197
Criterion 2: Exclusion of other diagnoses	198
Criterion 3: Assessing response to asthma treatment	200
Tests to assist in diagnosis	201
11. Assessment and management of asthma in children 5 years and younger	202
Goal of asthma management	202
Assessment of asthma	203
Remission of asthma	204
Medications for symptom control and risk reduction	206
Asthma treatment steps for children aged 5 years and younger	209
Reviewing response and adjusting treatment	211
Choice of inhaler device	211
Asthma self-management education for caregivers of young children	213
12. Worsening asthma and exacerbations in children 5 years and younger	214
Diagnosis of exacerbations	215
Initial home management of asthma exacerbations	215
Primary care management of acute asthma exacerbations in children 5 years or younger	216
Management of acute asthma exacerbations in children 5 years or younger in an acute care facility	224
Discharge and follow-up after an exacerbation	227
13. Primary prevention of asthma	229
Factors associated with increased or decreased risk of asthma in children	229
Dietary factors by mother and/or child and risk of asthma in children	230
Environmental factors and risk of asthma in children	231
Psychosocial and physical factors and risk of asthma in children	232
Advice about primary prevention of asthma in children	233
Factors associated with development of asthma in adults	233

14. Implementing asthma management strategies into health systems.....	235
Introduction	235
Adapting and implementing asthma clinical practice guidelines	235
Appendix A. Overview of Type 2 biomarkers	238
Appendix B. Overview of asthma medication classes	243
References.....	249

COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL - DO NOT COPY OR DISTRIBUTE

Tables and figures

ADULTS, ADOLESCENTS AND CHILDREN 6–11 YEARS

DIAGNOSIS

Box 1-1. Diagnostic flowchart for adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years in clinical practice	27
Box 1-2. Criteria for initial diagnosis of asthma in adults (≥18 years) and children (6–17 years)	28
Box 1-3. Differential diagnosis of asthma in adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years	30
Box 1-4. Steps for confirming the diagnosis of asthma in a patient already taking ICS-containing treatment ..	33
Box 1-5. How to step down ICS-containing treatment to help confirm the diagnosis of asthma	36

ASSESSMENT

Box 2-1. Summary of asthma assessment in adults, adolescents, and children 6–11 years	40
Box 2-2. GINA assessment of asthma control at clinical visits in adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years	41
Box 2-3. Specific questions for assessment of asthma in children 6–11 years	44
Box 2-4. Investigating poor symptom control and/or exacerbations despite ICS-containing treatment	52

PRINCIPLES OF ASTHMA MANAGEMENT

Box 3-1. Communication strategies for healthcare providers	54
Box 3-2. Long-term goal of asthma management	55
Box 3-3. The asthma management cycle for personalized asthma care	58
Box 3-4. Population-level versus patient-level decisions about asthma treatment	59
Box 3-5. Treating potentially modifiable risk factors to reduce exacerbations and minimize OCS use	61
Box 3-6. Non-pharmacological interventions – summary (see following text for details)	63
Box 3-7. Effectiveness of avoidance measures for indoor allergens	68
Box 3-8. Indications for considering referral for expert advice, where available	72

MEDICATIONS AND TREATMENT TRACKS

Box 4-1. Terminology for asthma medications	76
Box 4-2. Low, medium and high daily metered doses of inhaled corticosteroids (alone or with LABA)	77
Box 4-3. Asthma treatment tracks for adults and adolescents	80
Box 4-4. Initial asthma treatment for adults and adolescents with a diagnosis of asthma	81
Box 4-5. Flowchart for selecting initial treatment in adults and adolescents with a diagnosis of asthma	82
Box 4-6. Adults and adolescents: main treatment figure for personalized management	83
Box 4-7. Track 1 (preferred) treatment Steps 1–4 for adults and adolescents	84
Box 4-8A. Preferred medications and doses for GINA Track 1 AIR/MART regimens	90
Box 4-8B. Medications and doses for anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR) therapy with ICS-formoterol	91
Box 4-9A. Track 2 (alternative) treatment Steps 1–4 for adults and adolescents with ICS-SABA reliever	92
Box 4-9B. Track 2 (alternative) treatment Steps 1–4 for adults and adolescents with SABA reliever	92
Box 4-10. Initial asthma treatment for children aged 6–11 years with a diagnosis of asthma	102
Box 4-11. Flowchart for selecting initial treatment in children aged 6–11 years with a diagnosis of asthma ..	103

Box 4-12. Children 6–11 years – main treatment figure for personalized management	104
Box 4-13. Options for stepping down treatment in adults and adolescents once asthma is well controlled	112
INHALER TECHNIQUE, ADHERENCE AND ASTHMA EDUCATION	
Box 5-1. Shared decision-making between healthcare provider and patient about choice of inhalers.....	118
Box 5-2. Choice and effective use of inhaler devices.....	119
Box 5-3. Poor adherence to prescribed maintenance treatment in asthma	121
Box 5-4. Asthma information.....	123
ASTHMA+COPD	
Box 7-1. Current definitions of asthma and COPD, and clinical description of asthma+COPD.....	143
Box 7-2. Syndromic approach to initial treatment in patients with asthma and/or COPD	144
Box 7-3. Spirometric measures in asthma and COPD	145
Box 7-4. Other investigations sometimes used in patients with features of asthma and COPD.....	148
DIFFICULT-TO-TREAT AND SEVERE ASTHMA	
Box 8-1. What proportion of adults have difficult-to-treat or severe asthma?	150
Box 8-2. Decision tree – investigate and manage difficult to treat asthma in adult and adolescent patients..	152
Box 8-3. Decision tree – assess and treat severe asthma phenotypes	153
Box 8-4. Decision tree – consider add-on biologic Type 2-targeted treatments.....	154
Box 8-5. Decision tree – monitor and manage severe asthma treatment	155
Box 8-6. Examples of current non-asthma indications for biologic therapy	166
ASTHMA EXACERBATIONS	
Box 9-1. Red flags for increased risk of fatal or near-fatal asthma in adults and adolescents	172
Box 9-2. Medication options for written asthma action plans for adults and adolescents	174
Box 9-3. OCS stewardship: optimizing asthma treatment to minimize need for OCS	177
Box 9-4. Management of asthma exacerbations in primary care (adults, adolescents, children 6–11 years)	181
Box 9-5. Discharge management after primary care visit for an asthma exacerbation.....	183
Box 9-6. Management of asthma exacerbations in acute care facility (e.g., emergency department)	186
Box 9-7. Discharge management after acute care or ED management for an asthma exacerbation.....	191
CHILDREN AGED 5 YEARS AND YOUNGER	
DIAGNOSIS OF ASTHMA IN CHILDREN AGED 5 YEARS AND YOUNGER	
Box 10-1. Diagnostic criteria for asthma in children aged 5 years or younger	194
Box 10-2. Diagnostic criteria for asthma in children aged 5 years or younger	195
Box 10-3. Clinical features suggestive of asthma.....	196
Box 10-4. Common differential diagnoses of asthma in children 5 years and younger	199
Box 10-5. Key indications for referral of a child 5 years or younger for expert advice about diagnosis.....	199
ASSESSMENT AND MANAGEMENT OF ASTHMA IN CHILDREN AGED 5 YEARS AND YOUNGER	
Box 11-1. GINA assessment of asthma control in children 5 years and younger	204
Box 11-2. Personalized management of asthma in children 5 years and younger	207

Box 11-3. Low daily doses of inhaled corticosteroids for children 5 years and younger	208
Box 11-4. Choosing an inhaler device for children 5 years and younger	212
ASTHMA EXACERBATIONS AND ACUTE WHEEZING IN CHILDREN 5 YEARS AND YOUNGER	
Box 12-1. Initial assessment of acute asthma exacerbations in children 5 years and younger	217
Box 12-2. Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure (PRAM) for children aged 2 to 17 years.....	218
Box 12-3. Indications for immediate transfer to hospital for children 5 years and younger	219
Box 12-4. Medications for initial management of asthma exacerbations in children 5 years and younger	220
Box 12-5. Primary care management of acute asthma or wheezing in a child 5 years or younger	221
Box 12-6. Discharge management after primary care exacerbation treatment, child 5 years or younger	223
Box 12-7. Management in an acute care facility of acute asthma or wheezing in a child 5 years or younger	226
Box 12-8. Discharge management after ED visit or hospitalization by a child 5 years or younger	228
PRIMARY PREVENTION OF ASTHMA	
Box 13-1. Advice for parents/caregivers about primary prevention of asthma in children 5 years or younger	233
IMPLEMENTATION OF THE GINA STRATEGY	
Box 14-1. Approach to implementation of the Global Strategy for Asthma Management and Prevention	236
Box 14-2. Essential elements required to implement a health-related strategy	236
Box 14-3. Examples of barriers to the implementation of evidence-based recommendations	237
Box 14-4. Examples of high-impact implementation interventions in asthma management	237
TYPE 2 BIOMARKERS	
Table A1. High blood eosinophils and FeNO, and factors affecting their levels, in adults and adolescents ...	239
Table A2. Clinical utility of Type 2 biomarkers	240

Preface

Asthma is a serious global health problem affecting all age groups. Its prevalence is increasing in many countries, especially among children. Although some countries have seen a decline in hospitalizations and deaths from asthma, asthma still imposes an unacceptable burden on healthcare systems, and on society through loss of productivity in the workplace and, especially for pediatric asthma, disruption to the family.

The Global Initiative for Asthma has been working with healthcare providers, researchers, patients and public health officials around the world since 1993 to reduce asthma prevalence, morbidity and mortality. The Global Strategy for Asthma Management and Prevention (GINA Strategy Report) was first published in 1995, and has been updated annually since 2002 by the GINA Science Committee. It contains guidance for primary care practitioners, specialists and allied health professionals, based on the latest high-quality evidence available. More resources and supporting material are provided online at www.ginasthma.org.

GINA supports global efforts to achieve environmental sustainability in health care, while ensuring that our guidance reflects an optimal balance between clinical and environmental priorities, with a particular focus on patient safety. GINA also supports efforts to ensure global availability of, and access to, effective quality-assured medications, to reduce the burden of asthma mortality and morbidity. Since 2001, GINA has organized the annual World Asthma Day, a focus for local and national activities to raise awareness of asthma and educate families and healthcare providers about effective asthma care.

GINA is an independent organization funded solely through sale and licensing of its educational publications. Members of the GINA Board of Directors are drawn globally from leaders with an outstanding demonstrated commitment to asthma research, asthma clinical management, public health and patient advocacy. GINA Science Committee members are highly experienced asthma experts from around the world, who continually review and synthesize scientific evidence to provide guidance on asthma prevention, diagnosis and management. The GINA Dissemination Committee is responsible for promoting GINA resources throughout the world. Members work with an international network of patient representatives and leaders in asthma care (GINA Advocates), to implement asthma education programs and support evidence-based care. GINA support staff comprise the Executive Director and Program Manager.

We acknowledge the superlative work of all who have contributed to the success of the GINA program. In particular, we recognize the outstanding long-term dedication of founding Scientific Director Dr Suzanne Hurd and the late Dr Claude Lenfant, founding Executive Director of GINA, in fostering GINA's development until their retirement in 2015. We acknowledge the invaluable commitment and skills of our current Executive Director Rebecca Decker, and Program Manager Kristi Rurey. We also thank all members of the Science Committee, who receive no honoraria or reimbursement for their many hours of work reviewing evidence and attending meetings, and the GINA Dissemination Committee and GINA Advocates, for spreading awareness of GINA globally.

We hope you find this report to be a useful resource in the management of asthma and that it will help you work with each of your patients to provide the best personalized care,

Helen K Reddel, AM MBBS PhD FAHMS

Chair, GINA Science Committee

Guy Brusselle, MD, PhD, FERS

Chair, GINA Board of Directors

Members of GINA committees (2025–2026)

GINA Science Committee

Helen K. Reddel, MBBS PhD (Chair)
Woolcock Institute of Medical Research
and Macquarie Medical School,
Macquarie University
Sydney, Australia

Leonard B. Bacharier, MD
Vanderbilt University Medical Center
Nashville, TN, USA

Matteo Bonini MD, PhD
Department of Public Health and Infectious Diseases,
Sapienza University of Rome, Italy
National Heart and Lung Institute (NHLI)
Imperial College London, UK

Arnaud Bourdin, MD, PhD
Department of Respiratory Diseases
University of Montpellier
Montpellier, France

Christopher Brightling, FMedSci, PhD
Leicester NIHR Biomedical Research Centre,
University of Leicester
Leicester, UK

Guy Brusselle, MD, PhD
Department of Respiratory Medicine
Ghent University Hospital
Ghent, Belgium
Departments of Epidemiology and Respiratory
Medicine, Erasmus Medical Centre Rotterdam
Rotterdam, The Netherlands

Roland Buhl, MD PhD
Mainz University Hospital
Mainz, Germany

Jeffrey M. Drazen, MD*
Harvard Medical School
Boston, MA, USA

Francine M. Ducharme, MD
Departments of Pediatrics and of
Social and Preventive Medicine,
Sainte-Justine University Health Centre,
University of Montreal
Montreal, Quebec, Canada

Liesbeth Duijts, MD MSc PhD
Department of Pediatrics, Erasmus MC,
University Medical Center
Rotterdam, The Netherlands

Louise Fleming, MBChB MD
Imperial College Healthcare NHS Trust
Imperial College, London
London, United Kingdom

Hiromasa Inoue, MD
Kagoshima University
Kagoshima, Japan

Alan Kaplan, MD
Family Physician Airways Group of Canada
Markham, Ontario, Canada

Fanny Wai-san Ko, MD
The Chinese University of Hong Kong
Hong Kong

Refiloe Masekela MBCh, PhD
Department of Paediatrics and
Child Health, University of KwaZulu Natal
Durban, South Africa

Paulo Pitrez, MD, PhD
Hospital Santa Casa de Porto Alegre
Universidade Federal de Ciências da Saúde de Porto
Alegre (UFCSPA)
Porto Alegre, Brazil

Sundeep Salvi MD, PhD
Pulmocare Research and Education (PURE)
Foundation
Symbiosis International University,
Pune, India

Aziz Sheikh, BSc, MBBS, MSc, MD
University of Oxford
Oxford, United Kingdom

Min Zhang, MD
Department of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine
Shanghai General Hospital
Shanghai Jiao Tong University School of Medicine
Shanghai, China

* Until July 2025

GINA Board of Directors

Guy Brusselle, MD, PhD (Chair)
Department of Respiratory Medicine
Ghent University Hospital
Ghent, Belgium
Departments of Epidemiology and Respiratory
Medicine, Erasmus Medical Centre Rotterdam
Rotterdam, The Netherlands

Keith Allan, CBiol, MRSB
Patient Partner
University Hospitals of Leicester
Leicester, UK

Muhwa Jeremiah Chakaya, MD
Research and Public Health Unit,
Respiratory Society of Kenya
Kenyatta University
Nairobi, Kenya

Alvaro A. Cruz, MD
Federal University of Bahia – ProAR Foundation
Salvador, BA, Brazil

Hiromasa Inoue, MD
Kagoshima University
Kagoshima, Japan

Jerry A. Krishnan, MD PhD
Breathe Chicago Center
University of Illinois Chicago
Chicago, IL, USA

Mark L. Levy, MD
Locum GP
London, UK

Helen K. Reddel, MBBS PhD
Woolcock Institute of Medical Research
and Macquarie Medical School,
Macquarie University
Sydney, Australia

Arzu Yorgancioğlu, MD
Department of Pulmonology,
Celal Bayar University
Manisa, Turkey

Jeffrey M. Drazen, MD (*Adviser to the Board*)
Harvard Medical School
Boston, MA, USA

GINA Dissemination Committee

Mark L. Levy, MD (Chair)
Locum GP
London, UK

Keith Allan, CBiol, MRSB
Patient Partner
University Hospitals of Leicester
Leicester, UK

Hiromasa Inoue, MD
Kagoshima University
Kagoshima, Japan

Helen K. Reddel, MBBS PhD
Woolcock Institute of Medical Research
and Macquarie Medical School,
Macquarie University
Sydney, Australia

Arzu Yorgancioğlu, MD
Department of Pulmonology
Celal Bayar University
Manisa, Turkey

Disclosures for members of GINA committees can be
found at www.ginasthma.org

GINA Program

Rebecca Decker, BS, MSJ

Kristi Rurey, AS

Editorial assistance

Charu Grover, PhD

Jenni Harman, BVSc, BA

Graphics assistance

Kate Chisnall

Information design for severe asthma decision tree

Tomoko Ichikawa, MS
Hugh Musick, MBA
Institute for Healthcare Delivery Design
University of Illinois, Chicago, USA

Abbreviations

ABPA	Allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis
ACE	Angiotensin-converting enzyme
ACQ	Asthma Control Questionnaire
ACT	Asthma Control Test (see also cACT)
AERD	Aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease
AIR	Anti-inflammatory reliever (see Box 4-1, p.76)
ANCA	Antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody
Anti-IL4R α	Anti-interleukin 4 receptor alpha (monoclonal antibody)
Anti-IL5	Anti-interleukin 5 (monoclonal antibody)
Anti-IL5R α	Anti-interleukin 5 receptor alpha (monoclonal antibody)
Anti-TSLP	Anti-thymic stromal lymphopoietin (monoclonal antibody)
APGAR	Activities, Persistent, triGgers, Asthma medications, Response to therapy
ATS/ERS	American Thoracic Society and European Respiratory Society
BDP	Beclometasone dipropionate
BD	Bronchodilator
BEC	Blood eosinophil count
BMI	Body mass index
BNP	B-type natriuretic peptide
bpm	Beats per minute
BTS	British Thoracic Society
cACT	Childhood Asthma Control Test
CBC	Complete blood count (also known as full blood count [FBC])
CDC	Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [USA]
CI	Confidence interval
COPD	Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
COVID-19	Coronavirus disease 2019
CRP	C-reactive protein
CRSwNP	Chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps
CRSSNP	Chronic rhinosinusitis without nasal polyps
CT	Computerized tomography
CXR	Chest X-ray
DLCO	Diffusing capacity in the lung for carbon monoxide
DEXA	Dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry
DPI	Dry-powder inhaler
ED	Emergency department

EGPA	Eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis
FeNO	Fractional concentration of exhaled nitric oxide
FEV ₁	Forced expiratory volume in 1 second (measured by spirometry)
FVC	Forced vital capacity (measured by spirometry)
FEV ₁ /FVC	Ratio of forced expiratory volume in 1 second to forced vital capacity
GERD	Gastro-esophageal reflux disease (GORD in some countries)
GOLD	Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease
GRADE	Grading of Recommendations Assessment, Development and Evaluation (an approach to clinical practice guideline development)
HDM	House dust mite
HEPA	High-efficiency particulate air
HFA	Hydrofluoroalkane propellant
HIV/AIDS	Human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
ICS	Inhaled corticosteroid
ICU	Intensive care unit
Ig	Immunoglobulin
IL	Interleukin
IM	Intramuscular
IV	Intravenous
LABA	Long-acting beta ₂ -agonist
LAMA	Long-acting muscarinic antagonist (also called long-acting anticholinergic)
LM	Leukotriene modifier
LMIC	Low- and middle-income countries
LTRA	Leukotriene receptor antagonist
MART	Maintenance-and-reliever therapy (with ICS-formoterol); in some countries called SMART (single-inhaler maintenance-and-reliever therapy)
n.a	Not applicable
NSAID	Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug
NO ₂	Nitrogen dioxide (air pollutant)
O ₂	Oxygen
OCS	Oral corticosteroid
OSA	Obstructive sleep apnea
PaCO ₂	Arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide
PaO ₂	Arterial partial pressure of oxygen
PAS	Pediatric Asthma Score
PASS	Pediatric Asthma Severity Score
PEF	Peak expiratory flow
PRAM	Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure

PM ₁₀	Particulate matter with a particle diameter of 10 micrometers or less (air pollution)
pMDI	Pressurized metered-dose inhaler
QTc	Corrected QT interval on electrocardiogram
RCT	Randomized controlled trial
RSV	Respiratory syncytial virus
SABA	Short-acting beta ₂ -agonist
SC	Subcutaneous
SCIT	Subcutaneous allergen immunotherapy
sIgE	Specific immunoglobulin E
SLIT	Sublingual immunotherapy
SO ₂	Sulfur dioxide (air pollutant)
TSLP	Thymic stromal lymphopoietin
URTI	Upper respiratory tract infection
VCD	Vocal cord dysfunction (included in inducible laryngeal obstruction)
WHO	World Health Organization
WHO-PEN	The World Health Organization Package of essential noncommunicable disease interventions for primary care

Introduction

Asthma is a serious global health problem, affecting approximately 300 million people around the world,^{1,2} and causing around 1,000 deaths per day.¹ Most of these deaths occur in low- and middle-income countries, and most of them are preventable. Asthma interferes with people's work, education and family life, especially when children have asthma. Asthma is becoming more prevalent in many economically developing countries, and the cost of asthma treatment for healthcare systems, communities and individuals is increasing.

The Global Initiative for Asthma (GINA) was established to increase awareness about asthma among healthcare providers, public health authorities and communities, to improve management of asthma, and to help prevent asthma.

Every year GINA publishes a strategy report, containing information and recommendations on asthma, based on the latest medical evidence. GINA's aim is for these to be available and used throughout the world. GINA also promotes international collaboration on asthma research. GINA Committee members are listed on page 10.

Goals of asthma management

For populations, the goal of asthma management is to prevent asthma deaths and minimize the burden of asthma on individuals, families, communities, health systems and the environment.

For individuals with asthma of all ages, the goal of asthma management is to achieve the patient's **best possible** long-term outcomes:

- Long-term asthma symptom control, which may include:
 - Few/no asthma symptoms
 - No sleep disturbance due to asthma
 - Unimpaired physical activity
- Long-term asthma risk minimization, which may include:
 - No exacerbations
 - Improved or stable personal best lung function
 - No requirement for maintenance oral corticosteroids (OCS)
 - No medication side-effects.

The patient's goals for their asthma may be different from these medical goals; and patients with few or no asthma symptoms can still have severe or fatal exacerbations, including those due to external triggers such as viral infections, allergen exposure (if sensitized) or pollution.

Challenges in global asthma management

For healthcare providers, the challenges of managing asthma differ between regions and health systems. Despite laudable efforts to improve asthma care over the past 30 years, and the availability of effective medications, many patients globally have not benefited from advances in asthma treatment and often lack even the rudiments of care. Many of the world's population live in areas with inadequate medical facilities and meager financial resources. GINA recognizes that the recommendations in this report must be adapted to fit local practices and the availability of healthcare resources. To improve asthma care and patient outcomes, evidence-based recommendations must also be disseminated and implemented nationally and locally, and integrated into health systems and clinical practice. Implementation requires an evidence-based strategy that involves professional groups and stakeholders, and that considers local cultural and socioeconomic conditions. GINA is a partner organization in the Global Alliance against Chronic Respiratory Diseases (GARD). Through the work of GINA, and in cooperation with GARD and the International Union Against Tuberculosis and Lung Diseases (IUATLD), substantial progress toward better care for all patients with asthma should be achieved in the next decade.

Patients in many regions lack access to inhaled corticosteroid (ICS)-containing medications, which are the cornerstone of care for all patients with asthma, regardless of its severity. Medications remain the major contributor to the overall costs of asthma management, so ensuring access to and affordable pricing of high-quality asthma medications continues to be an issue of urgent need and a growing area of research interest.³⁻⁵ The safest and most effective approach to asthma treatment in adolescents and adults uses the combination of ICS and formoterol across all

asthma severity levels. This approach, which avoids the consequences of starting treatment with short-acting beta₂-agonist (SABA) alone and requires only a single medication, depends on universal access to combination ICS–formoterol inhalers.^{6,7} Budesonide-formoterol is included in the World Health Organization (WHO) essential medicines list.⁸ Its use as an anti-inflammatory reliever, recommended by GINA since 2019⁹ may provide a feasible strategy to reduce the risk of severe exacerbations in low- and middle-income countries.⁷

The urgent need to ensure access to affordable, quality-assured inhaled asthma medications as part of universal health coverage must now be prioritized by all relevant stakeholders, particularly manufacturers of asthma inhalers. GINA is collaborating with IUATLD and other organizations to work towards a World Health Assembly Resolution to improve equitable access to affordable care, including inhaled medicines, for children, adolescents and adults with asthma.⁵

There is increasing global concern about climate change and its impact on the health and security of populations, particularly in low- and middle-income countries. The propellants in pressurized metered-dose inhalers contribute significantly to the carbon footprint of health care, particularly from the use of SABAs (i.e., in GINA Track 2). Compared with SABA-only treatment, the GINA Track 1 approach in Track 1 Steps 1–2 not only provides a large reduction in exacerbations, in risk of adverse effects of OCS, and in urgent health care, but also, if implemented with a dry-powder inhaler (as in most of the clinical trials), it provides a very large reduction in carbon footprint.^{10,11} For both Track 1 and Track 2, GINA fully supports initiatives to encourage use of dry-powder inhalers, where they are available and clinically appropriate, and to replace environmentally harmful propellants with low-carbon alternatives. At the same time, it is essential to ensure continuity of supply of essential inhaled medicines to people in low-resource areas, to avoid exacerbating the existing serious global inequities in health care for asthma.¹²

Methodology

GINA SCIENCE COMMITTEE

The GINA Science Committee was established in 2002 to review published research on asthma management and prevention, to evaluate the impact of this research on recommendations in GINA documents, and to provide yearly updates to these documents. The members are recognized leaders in asthma research and clinical practice, with the scientific expertise to contribute to the task of the Committee. They are invited to serve for a limited period and in a voluntary capacity. The Committee is broadly representative of adult and pediatric disciplines, and members are drawn from diverse geographic regions. The Science Committee normally meets in person three times yearly, in conjunction with the American Thoracic Society (ATS) and European Respiratory Society (ERS) international conferences and at a stand-alone meeting, to review asthma-related scientific literature, together with virtual meetings every 1–2 months. Committee members' disclosures of competing interest are published on the GINA website www.ginasthma.org.

PROCESSES FOR UPDATES AND REVISIONS OF THE GINA STRATEGY REPORT

Literature search

Details are provided on the GINA website (www.ginasthma.org/about-us/methodology). In summary, two PubMed searches are performed each year, each covering the previous 18 months, using filters established by the Science Committee. The search terms include asthma, all ages, only items with abstracts, clinical trial or meta-analysis or systematic review, and human. The search is not limited to specific PICOT (Population, Intervention, Comparison, Outcomes, Time) questions. The search strategy identifies not only conventional randomized controlled trials, but also pragmatic, real-life and observational studies. The search for systematic reviews includes, but is not limited to, those conducted using Grading of Recommendations Assessment, Development and Evaluation (GRADE) methodology.¹³ An additional search is conducted for guidelines documents published by other international organizations. Members of the respiratory community are also invited to submit any other fully published peer-reviewed publications that they believe have been missed, providing that the full paper is submitted in (or translated into) English. However, because of the comprehensive process for literature review, such ad hoc submissions have rarely resulted in substantial changes to the report.

Systematic reviews

Unique among evidence-based recommendations in asthma, and rare among clinical practice guidelines in most other therapeutic areas, the GINA report is based on an ongoing twice-yearly cumulative update of the evidence base for its recommendations. GINA does not normally carry out or commission its own GRADE-based reviews, because of the current cost of such reviews and the large number of PICOT questions that would be necessary for a comprehensive practical report of this scope, and because it would limit the responsiveness of the GINA Strategy Report to emerging evidence and new developments in asthma management. However, the Science Committee reviews relevant published systematic reviews conducted with GRADE methodology as part of its normal process. GINA recommendations are constantly being reviewed and considered for update as new evidence (including GRADE-based systematic reviews on specific topics) is identified.^{14,15}

Literature screening and review

After removal of duplicates and articles already reviewed, each article identified by the literature search is pre-screened in Covidence for relevance and major quality issues by the Editorial Assistant and by at least two non-conflicted members of the Science Committee. Each publication selected from screening is reviewed for quality and relevance by at least two members of the Science Committee, neither of whom may be an author (or co-author) or declare a conflict of interest in relation to the publication. Articles that have been accepted for publication and are online in advance of print are eligible for full text review if the approved/corrected copy-edited proof is available. All members receive a copy of all abstracts and full text publications, and non-conflicted members can provide comments before the meeting at which the article is scheduled for review. Members evaluate the abstract and the full text publication, and complete a review template of written questions about whether the scientific data affect GINA recommendations and, if so, what specific changes should be made. Since 2020, the Critical Appraisal Skills Programme (CASP) checklist¹⁶ has been included in the review template, to assist in evaluation of systematic reviews. A list of all publications reviewed by the Committee is posted on the GINA website (www.ginasthma.org).

Discussion and decisions during Science Committee meetings

Each publication that, in the assessment of at least one reviewer, potentially impacts on the GINA Strategy Report is discussed in a Science Committee meeting (virtual or face-to-face). This process comprises three parts, as follows:

1. Quality and relevance of original research and systematic review publications. First, the Committee considers the relevance of the publication to the GINA Strategy Report, the quality of the study, the reliability of the findings, and the interpretation of the results, based on the responses from reviewers and discussion by members of the Committee. For systematic reviews, GRADE assessments, if available, are considered. However, for any systematic review, GINA members also independently consider the clinical relevance of the question addressed by the review, and the scientific and clinical validity of the included populations and study design. For network meta-analyses, reviewers also consider the appropriateness of the comparisons (e.g., whether differences in background exacerbation risk and ICS dose were accounted for) and the generalizability of the findings. During this discussion, a member who is an author (or was involved in the study) may be requested to provide clarification or respond to questions about the study, but they may not otherwise take part in this discussion about the quality and relevance of the publication.

2. Decision about inclusion of the evidence. During this phase, the Committee decides whether the publication or its findings affect GINA recommendations or statements and should be included in the GINA Strategy Report. These decisions to modify the report or its references are made by consensus by Committee members present and, again, any member with a conflict of interest is excluded from these decisions. If the chair is an author on a publication being reviewed, an alternative chair is appointed to lead the discussion in part 1 and the decision in part 2 for that publication.

3. Discussion about related changes to the GINA Strategy Report. If the committee resolves to include the publication or its findings in the report, an author or conflicted member, if present, is permitted to take part in the subsequent discussions about and decisions on changes to the report, including the positioning of the study findings in the report and the way that they would be integrated with existing (or other new) components of the GINA management strategy. These discussions may take place immediately, or over the course of the year as new evidence emerges or as other changes to the report are agreed and implemented. The approach to managing conflicts of interest, as described above, also applies to members of the GINA Board who, ex-officio, attend GINA Science Committee meetings.

As with all previous GINA Strategy Reports, levels of evidence are assigned to management recommendations where appropriate. Current criteria (Table A) are based on those originally developed by the National Heart Lung and Blood Institute. From 2019, GINA has included in Level A strong observational evidence that provides a consistent pattern of findings in the population for which the recommendation is made, and has also described the values and preferences that were considered in making major new recommendations. The table was updated in 2021 to avoid ambiguity about the positioning of observational data and systematic reviews.

Table. Description of levels of evidence used in this report

Evidence level	Sources of evidence	Definition
A	Randomized controlled trials (RCTs), systematic reviews, observational evidence. Rich body of data	Evidence is from endpoints of well-designed RCTs, systematic reviews of relevant studies or observational studies that provide a consistent pattern of findings in the population for which the recommendation is made. Category A requires substantial numbers of studies involving substantial numbers of participants.
B	Randomized controlled trials and systematic reviews. Limited body of data	Evidence is from endpoints of intervention studies that include only a limited number of patients, post hoc or subgroup analysis of RCTs or systematic reviews of such RCTs. In general, Category B applies when few randomized trials exist, they have a small sample size, they were undertaken in a population that differs from the target population of the recommendation, or the results are somewhat inconsistent.
C	Nonrandomized trials or observational studies	Evidence is from non-randomized trials or observational studies without consistent findings.
D	Panel consensus judgment	This category is used only in cases where the provision of some guidance was deemed valuable but the clinical literature addressing the subject was insufficient to justify placement in one of the other categories. The Panel Consensus is based on clinical experience or knowledge that does not meet the above-listed criteria.

New therapies and indications

The GINA Strategy Report is a global strategy document. Since regulatory approvals differ from country to country, and manufacturers do not necessarily make regulatory submissions in all countries, some GINA recommendations are likely to be off-label in some countries. This is a particular issue for pediatrics, where across different diseases, many treatment recommendations for preschool children and for children aged 6–11 years are off-label.

For new therapies, GINA's aim is to provide clinicians with evidence-based guidance about new therapies and their positioning in the overall asthma treatment strategy as soon as possible; otherwise, the gap between regulatory approval and the periodic update of many national guidelines is filled only by advertising or educational material produced by the manufacturer or distributor. For new therapies for which the GINA Science Committee considers there is sufficient good-quality evidence for safety and efficacy or effectiveness in relevant asthma populations, recommendations may be held until after approval for asthma by at least one major regulatory agency (e.g., European Medicines Agency or US Food and Drug Administration), since regulators often receive substantially more safety and/or efficacy data on new medications than are available to GINA through peer-reviewed literature. However, decisions by GINA to make or not make a recommendation about any therapy, or about its use in any specific population, are based on the best available peer-reviewed evidence and not on labeling directives from regulators.

For existing therapies with evidence for new regimens or in different populations, the Science Committee may, where relevant, make recommendations that are not necessarily covered by regulatory indications in any country at the time, provided the Committee is satisfied with the available evidence around safety and efficacy/effectiveness. Since the GINA Strategy Report is a global strategy, the report does not refer to recommendations as “off-label”. However, readers are advised that, when assessing and treating patients, they should use their own professional

judgment and should also consider local and national guidelines and eligibility criteria, as well as locally licensed drug doses.

Literature reviewed for GINA 2026 update

The GINA Strategy Report has been updated in 2026 following the routine twice-yearly review of the literature by the GINA Science Committee. The literature searches for clinical trials (see above), systematic reviews and guidelines identified a total of 3540 publications, of which 3288 duplicates/animal studies/non-asthma/pilot studies and protocols were removed. A total of 172 original research publications underwent screening of title and abstract by at least two reviewers, and 99 were screened out for relevance and/or quality. A total of 77 publications underwent full-text review by at least two members of the Science Committee, and 39 full-text publications were subsequently discussed at meetings of the Science Committee.

External review

Prior to publication each year, the GINA Strategy Report undergoes extensive external review by patient advocates and by asthma care experts from primary and specialist care in multiple countries. In 2026, the draft GINA report was sent to 70 external reviewers. There is also continuous external review throughout the year in the form of feedback from end-users and stakeholders through the contact form on the GINA website.

A list of key changes in GINA 2026 is shown on page 20, and a copy showing tracked changes is archived on the GINA website at www.ginasthma.org/archived-reports.

COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL - DO NOT COPY OR DISTRIBUTE

What's new in GINA 2026?

Below is a summary of key changes in the GINA 2026 Strategy Report, with links to the relevant pages.

Management of acute asthma in primary care and in acute care facilities

- **A major initiative by GINA** this year has been the development of four new flowcharts for assessment, treatment, and follow-up of patients who present for management of an exacerbation or acute asthma:
 - Adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years presenting in primary care (Box 9-4, p.180)
 - Adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years presenting to an acute care facility or emergency department (ED) (Box 9-6, p.186)
 - Children 5 years and younger presenting in primary care (Box 12-5, p.221)
 - Children 5 years and younger presenting to an acute care facility or ED (Box 12-7, p.226).
- **Standardized assessment:** Each flowchart provides criteria for mild, moderate, severe and life-threatening presentations, with advice about initial and subsequent treatment and follow-up. For children up to age 17 years, there is a strong recommendation to use a validated clinical score for assessment of severity of the presentation, with examples provided for the Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure (PRAM). Read more in Box 12-1 (p.217) and 12-2 (p.218).
- **Anaphylaxis and asthma:** If the patient presents with features of anaphylaxis as well as asthma, a recommendation has been added to each flowchart to give epinephrine (adrenaline) first, then give bronchodilators. Epinephrine can be administered intramuscularly or intranasally (intranasal route is not suitable for small children). For more information about food allergy and anaphylaxis and administration of epinephrine, see p.128.
- **Oxygen saturation thresholds and targets** have been revised down,¹⁷ with supplemental oxygen not recommended unless saturation is below 92% (Box 9-4, p.180; Box 9-6, p.186, Box 12-5, p.221, Box 12-7, p.226). If oxygen is given, the upper limit of the oxygen saturation target for adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years is 95% (Box 9-4, p.180; Box 9-6, p.186). For children 5 years and younger with acute wheezing or a severe asthma exacerbation, the target saturation if oxygen is given is $\geq 92\%$ (Box 12-5, p.221, Box 12-7, p.226).
- **Recommended doses of short-acting beta₂-agonist (SABA)** are more conservative than in the past (Box 9-4, p.180; Box 9-6, p.186), because of increasing evidence of over-treatment during acute exacerbations. This increases the potential for significant SABA toxicity including lactic acidosis, which may result in compensatory hyperventilation that can be misinterpreted as worsening asthma and lead to further SABA administration.
- **ICS-formoterol has been added as an option** in the flowcharts for treatment of adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years with a mild exacerbation presenting in primary care or ED, as an alternative to inhaled SABA. Evidence is summarized on p.180 and p.187. This provides an opportunity before discharge for patients to commence optimal asthma treatment with an anti-inflammatory reliever, preferably maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with ICS-formoterol, to reduce the chance of another exacerbation.
- **Inhaler technique with pMDI and spacer:** Information about tidal breathing technique is included in each flowchart, since this is the most common route of administration during acute asthma, but technique is often incorrect.
- **Shake the salbutamol (albuterol) inhaler** immediately before each actuation to avoid inadvertent administration of ultra-high doses with a new inhaler (or lower doses if many doses have already been used). Any inhaler formulated as a suspension must be shaken immediately before each actuation.
- **Review the patient's response after initial administration of bronchodilator** in a mild presentation: this seems obvious, but patients are sometimes written up for multiple administrations of SABA without any review. If the patient is feeling much better and their symptoms and signs have improved after the initial dose, they may not need to be given more bronchodilator. If a patient in primary care is worsening or not improving, they should be transferred to higher level care immediately.

- **Lung function measurement** using spirometry (peak flow if spirometry is not available) is strongly recommended for all patients (except preschool children, or life-threatening presentations), and again before discharge.
- **Confirm the diagnosis of asthma:** A presentation with acute asthma also provides an important opportunity to confirm the diagnosis of asthma by measuring lung function before and after bronchodilator treatment. Document the diagnosis of asthma, and the lung function results (or, in pre-school children, whether they had a clinical response to bronchodilator $\pm$ systemic corticosteroids), in the patient's medical record. Recommendations about diagnosis of asthma in preschool children were revised in GINA 2025 (Box 10.1, p.194).
- **Discharge planning and follow-up:** even a single exacerbation requiring urgent health care or OCS treatment is a "red flag" alert that the patient's asthma treatment should be reviewed, to help prevent another attack occurring. Information is provided in each section about what should be addressed at discharge and at follow-up for adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years (Box 9-5, p.183) and for children 5 years or younger (Box 12-6, p.223).
- **OCS stewardship is a priority to reduce short-term and long-term adverse effects.** It includes optimizing inhaled therapy and giving biologic therapy (where indicated) to prevent the need for OCS, using non-pharmacologic techniques during respiratory infections, using an appropriate dose and duration of OCS when needed, avoiding maintenance treatment with OCS except as last resort, and monitoring cumulative use of OCS. See Box 9-3 (p.177) for more information.

Diagnosis of asthma in adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years

- **Flowchart for diagnosis of asthma:** Box 1-1, (p.27) has been simplified for clarity and utility.
- **Bronchodilator responsiveness:** New results from large datasets demonstrate that, among adults with a positive bronchodilator responsiveness test by the 2005 ERS/ATS criterion (an increase from baseline in forced expiratory volume in 1 second [FEV₁] or forced vital capacity [FVC] of $\geq 12\%$ and ≥ 200 mL),¹⁸ a significant proportion had a negative test when it was based on the criterion of $>10\%$ predicted that had been proposed in 2022.¹⁹ These individuals had a high respiratory burden, suggesting that use of the $>10\%$ predicted criterion would result in underdiagnosis of asthma, particularly in younger males. Read more on p.32.

Asthma treatment in children 6–11 years

- **Anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR) therapy with budesonide-formoterol in Step 1 and 2:** Results from the CARE study, in children 5–15 years who were using SABA alone, demonstrated that low-dose budesonide-formoterol, used as-needed for symptom relief, reduced the risk of moderate-severe exacerbations by nearly half, compared with SABA alone.²⁰ There was no difference in growth velocity with use of the combination ICS-formoterol inhaler (p.105).²⁰ The ICS-formoterol formulation used in this study has been discontinued; see p.105 and Box 4-8B (p.91) for the suggested alternative.

There remains an evidence gap for children 6–11 years at Step 2: it is not known whether as-needed ICS-formoterol is as effective as daily ICS with as-needed SABA. However, maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with ICS-formoterol is an existing evidence-based option for this age-group at Steps 3 and 4 (Box 4-12, p.104).

The treatment figure for children 6–11 years (Box 4-12, p.104) reflects the best available evidence at each step, but does not answer the clinical question of how to transition between steps 1, 2 and 3 in an individual patient if required for better symptom control or to reduce exacerbations. Consensus suggestions are provided for this, based on the patient's therapy at Step 1. See p.106 for specific details.

- **At what step should treatment be started?** Updated consensus advice has been provided for initiation of asthma treatment in children 6–11 years (Box 4-10, p.102).

Asthma treatment in adults and adolescents

- **GINA Track 2: anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR) therapy with combination ICS-SABA has been added at Step 1 .** In the BATURA study among patients with poorly controlled asthma, as-needed ICS-SABA (either alone, or as the reliever for patients taking daily ICS or leukotriene receptor antagonist) reduced the risk of severe exacerbations by almost half, compared with a SABA-only reliever.²¹ AIR with combination ICS-SABA is now included across all treatment steps in Track 2 (p.92). This regimen requires two inhalers in Steps 2–5, so it is

essential to ensure that the patient understands the difference between the two inhalers, and is carefully trained in how to use them (especially if they are in different inhaler devices).

- **GINA Track 1 with ICS-formoterol anti-inflammatory reliever** (Box 4-6, p.83) remains the preferred treatment approach for adults and adolescents (if available), because it substantially reduces the risk of severe exacerbations, systemic corticosteroid exposure, and need for urgent health care, compared with SABA-based regimens. In addition, it is a simpler regimen, using a single combination medication, single inhaler device and single dose across Steps 1–4, reducing inhaler technique errors and avoiding selective non-adherence, compared with the separate reliever and maintenance inhalers that are required in Track 2. ICS-formoterol is the only ICS-LABA that can be used as an anti-inflammatory reliever. Dose instructions for AIR and MART in Box 4-8 (p.90-91) have been simplified, focusing on the most commonly available formulations of ICS-formoterol.
- **How many times can reliever inhalers be used?** Previous wording about the “maximum” dose of ICS-formoterol or ICS-SABA that can be taken has been replaced, for safety, with a prompt for the patient to seek medical care if they have needed to use more than a specified number of inhalations in a 24-hour period. A similar prompt has been added for SABA. See Box 9-2 (p.174) and Appendix B (p.243).
- **Step 5: Long-acting muscarinic antagonists (LAMAs) in adults and adolescents:** Evidence about add-on LAMAs in adults and adolescents in GINA Step 5 has been updated (p.98), including an additional triple combination ICS-LABA-LAMA, budesonide-formoterol-glycopyrronium, if asthma is not well controlled despite medium-dose ICS-LABA. Overall, the reduction in severe exacerbations with ICS-LABA-LAMA therapy, compared with ICS-LABA, is far less than the reductions achieved with biologic therapy, but triple therapy may be useful for some patients who do not qualify for biologics.

Severe asthma

- **Addition of new biologics depemokimab and generic anti-IgE:** Options for treatment of severe asthma have expanded with the addition of the first biosimilar anti-IgE (omalizumab-igec), which has the same indications as omalizumab (p.163). This year also saw the launch of depemokimab, a long-acting anti-IL5 delivered by injection every 26 weeks, which is approved for the treatment of severe eosinophilic asthma from age 12 years (p.163), and for chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps from age 18 years (p.129). Recent evidence suggests that switching to depemokimab may be considered for adults with severe eosinophilic asthma and a good response to mepolizumab, but not for patients with a good response to benralizumab. More studies are needed. Read more about the new biologics from p.162.
- **Examples of non-asthma indications for biologic therapies:** A new table (Box 8-6, p.166) lists examples of non-asthma indications for the current four classes of asthma biologic therapy.
- **How to choose between biologic therapies:** The section of the severe asthma decision tree about biologic therapy (Box 8-4, p.154) has been updated to provide clearer guidance about the choice between biologics in adults or adolescents with severe asthma and evidence of Type 2 inflammation. Important factors include eligibility by local payer criteria, predictors of good asthma response (updated), relevant comorbidities (new Box 8-6, p.166, as above), as well as practical issues such as cost, route of administration (SC or IV), dosing frequency, and patient preference. Read more in Box 8.4, p.154.

Inhaler technique

- **Technique with pMDI and spacer:** More details are provided on the single-breath and tidal breathing techniques with pMDI and spacer (Box 5-2, p.119). The tidal breathing technique is primarily used for preschool children (Box 11-4, p.209). It is also commonly used for adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years during an acute exacerbation (Box 9-4, p.180; Box 9-6, p.186), but the single breath technique with a breath-hold is preferred for normal usage of a pMDI with spacer.
- **Shaking pMDIs:** For **all** pMDIs formulated as a suspension, including salbutamol (albuterol), budesonide-formoterol and fluticasone propionate-salmeterol, it is essential to shake the inhaler immediately before each actuation. A delay of even 30 seconds can result in a much larger, or much smaller, dose being delivered. To avoid confusion, teach that all pMDIs should be shaken immediately before each actuation. See Box 5-2, p.119.

New tools for assessment of patients with asthma

- **Chronic Airways Assessment Test (CAAT):** The CAAT (p.43) is a simple, standardized, eight-item tool (developed from the COPD Assessment Test) that provides a comprehensive patient-centered evaluation of health status across respiratory diseases in adults, including asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). The CAAT includes questions about sputum and energy which are not included in other standard asthma tools.
- **Pediatric Asthma Impairment and Risk Questionnaire (Peds-AIRQ):** This is a composite score developed in children 5–11 years, including asthma symptoms, reliever use, and interference with activity in the previous 2 weeks, plus history of exacerbations and use of oral corticosteroids in the previous 12 months. Higher scores are associated with higher risk of exacerbations, but children assessed as having “well-controlled asthma” with the Peds-AIRQ can still be at risk of exacerbations (p.45).
- **Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure (PRAM):** In children <18 years presenting with an exacerbation, there is a strong recommendation to use a validated clinical score for assessment of its severity, with examples provided for the Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure (PRAM). Read more in Box 12-2 (p.218).

Other updates

- **Vaccinations:** Evidence has been updated, including on the effectiveness of influenza, respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) and COVID-19 vaccines (p.116). Both maternal immunization against RSV, and treatment of infants with nirsevimab, have resulted in a reduced burden of severe RSV infection and RSV-related hospitalization in infants, with substantial interest in whether this could potentially contribute to a reduction in the incidence of childhood-onset asthma (p.232).
- **Glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists (GLP-1 RA):** Given the importance of obesity in asthma multimorbidity, there is a brief update about observational data suggesting a potential future role of GLP-1 RA in improving asthma outcomes (p.69 and p.127).
- **Doses of inhaled medicines:** where relevant, these are now mainly expressed throughout the report as delivered doses, with metered doses in parentheses, reflecting the most common convention globally.

WORLD ASTHMA DAY 2026

The GINA theme for World Asthma Day 2026 emphasizes the importance of ensuring access to ICS-containing medicines for every person with asthma, to treat airway inflammation, reduce asthma mortality, and reduce the burden of exacerbations and symptoms. Globally, the simplest and most efficient way to reduce the burden of asthma is by implementing the GINA Track 1 approach with low-dose ICS-formoterol, as this requires only a single medicine and single inhaler device for most adults and adolescents and school-aged children with asthma.

Visit the GINA website for more information about [World Asthma Day](https://ginasthma.org).

**Access to
anti-inflammatory
inhalers for everyone
with asthma –
still an urgent need**



WORLD ASTHMA DAY
MAY 5, 2026 • ginasthma.org • [@ginasthma](https://twitter.com/ginasthma)

COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL - DO NOT COPY OR DISTRIBUTE

1. Definition, description, and diagnosis of asthma in adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years

KEY POINTS

What is asthma?

Asthma is a heterogeneous disease, usually characterized by chronic airway inflammation. It is defined by the history of respiratory symptoms, such as wheeze, shortness of breath, chest tightness and cough, that vary over time and vary in intensity, together with variable expiratory airflow. Airflow limitation may later become persistent.

Asthma is usually associated with airway hyperresponsiveness and airway inflammation, but these are not necessary or sufficient to make the diagnosis.

Recognizable clusters of demographic and clinical characteristics are called “clinical asthma phenotypes”. In general, clinical phenotypes do not correlate strongly with specific pathological processes or treatment responses. Biomarkers reflecting Type 2 airway inflammation are useful, particularly in the assessment and treatment of difficult-to-treat asthma and severe asthma.

How is asthma diagnosed?

The diagnosis of asthma is based on the history of characteristic symptom patterns and evidence of variable expiratory airflow. This should be documented from bronchodilator responsiveness (“reversibility”) testing or other lung function tests. More than one test may be needed to confirm asthma or exclude alternative causes of respiratory symptoms.

Many health providers do not have access to spirometry. If so, measurement of peak expiratory flow (PEF) should be used, rather than relying on symptoms alone.

Test before treating, wherever possible: confirm the diagnosis of asthma before starting inhaled corticosteroid (ICS)-containing treatment, as it is often more difficult to confirm the diagnosis after asthma control has improved.

Additional or alternative strategies may be needed to confirm the diagnosis of asthma in particular populations, including patients already on ICS-containing treatment, the elderly, patients presenting with cough as the only symptom (including cough variant asthma), and patients in low-resource settings. In patients with typical asthma symptoms, if lung function testing is not available or results are normal, elevated fractional exhaled nitric oxide (FeNO) or elevated blood eosinophils can support the diagnosis of Type 2 asthma. However, these biomarkers may be elevated in non-asthma conditions, and lower levels do not rule out asthma.

DEFINITION OF ASTHMA

Asthma is a heterogeneous disease, usually characterized by chronic airway inflammation. It is defined by the history of respiratory symptoms, such as wheeze, shortness of breath, chest tightness and cough, that vary over time and vary in intensity, together with variable expiratory airflow.

This definition was reached by consensus, based on consideration of the characteristics that are typical of asthma before ICS-containing treatment is commenced, and that distinguish it from other respiratory conditions. However, airflow limitation may become persistent later in the course of the disease.

DESCRIPTION OF ASTHMA

Asthma is a common, chronic respiratory disease affecting 1–29% of the population in different countries.^{22,23} Asthma is characterized by variable symptoms such as wheeze, shortness of breath, chest tightness and cough, and by variable expiratory airflow. Both symptoms and airflow characteristically vary over time and in intensity. These variations are often triggered by factors such as exercise, allergen or irritant exposure, change in weather, or viral

respiratory infections.

Symptoms and airflow limitation may resolve spontaneously or in response to medication, and may sometimes be absent for weeks or months at a time. Conversely, patients can experience episodic flare-ups (exacerbations, attacks) of asthma that may be life-threatening and place a significant burden on patients and the community. Most asthma deaths occur in low- and middle-income countries.⁴ Asthma is usually associated with airway hyperresponsiveness to direct or indirect stimuli, and with chronic airway inflammation. These features usually persist, even when symptoms are absent or lung function is normal, but may normalize with treatment.

Clinical asthma phenotypes

Asthma is a heterogeneous disease, with various underlying disease processes. Recognizable clusters of demographic, clinical and/or pathophysiological characteristics are often called “asthma phenotypes”.²⁴⁻²⁷ Except in patients with severe asthma, phenotypes have not been shown to correlate strongly with clinical patterns or treatment responses. In patients with more severe asthma, some phenotype-guided treatments are available. More research is needed to understand the clinical utility of phenotypic classification in asthma.

Many clinical phenotypes of asthma have been identified.²⁴⁻²⁶ Some of the most common are:

- **Allergic asthma:** This is the most easily recognized asthma phenotype, which often commences in childhood and is associated with a past and/or family history of allergic disease such as eczema, allergic rhinitis, or food or drug allergy. Examination of the induced sputum of these patients before treatment often reveals eosinophilic airway inflammation. Allergic asthma usually responds well to ICS treatment.
- **Non-allergic asthma:** Some patients have asthma that is not associated with allergy. The cellular profile of the sputum of these patients may be neutrophilic, eosinophilic or contain only a few inflammatory cells (paucigranulocytic). Patients with non-allergic asthma often experience a lesser short-term response to ICS.
- **Cough variant asthma and cough predominant asthma:**²⁸ In some children and adults, cough may be the only reported symptom of asthma, and evidence of airflow limitation may be absent except during bronchial provocation testing. Some patients later develop wheezing and bronchodilator responsiveness. ICS-containing treatment is effective. For more details, see p.36.
- **Adult-onset (late-onset) asthma:** Some adults, particularly women, present with asthma for the first time in adulthood. Adult-onset asthma tends to be non-allergic, and often requires higher doses of ICS or is relatively refractory to corticosteroid treatment. Occupational asthma (i.e., new-onset asthma caused by exposures to allergens, chemicals or irritants at work) should be ruled out in patients presenting with adult-onset asthma.
- **Asthma with persistent airflow limitation:** Some patients with longstanding asthma develop airflow limitation that is persistent or incompletely responsive (“reversible”) to treatment (see p.31). This is thought to be due to airway wall remodeling. See Section 5 (p.117) for more details about patients with features of both asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD).
- **Asthma with obesity:** Some obese patients with asthma have prominent respiratory symptoms and a different pattern of airway inflammation, with little eosinophilic inflammation.²⁹

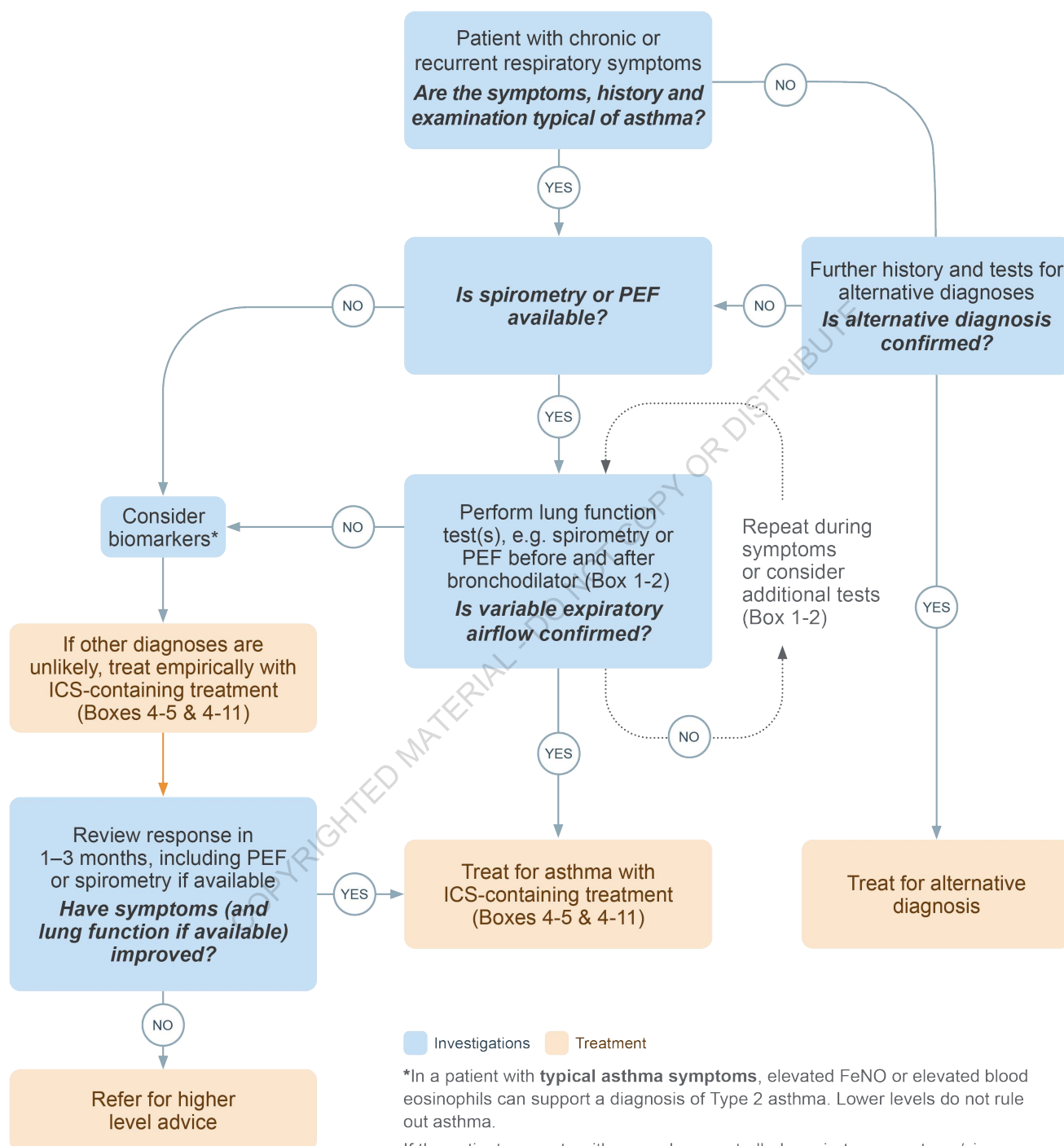
There is little evidence about the natural history of asthma after diagnosis, but one longitudinal study showed that, among adults with recently diagnosed asthma, approximately 16% may experience clinical remission (no symptoms or asthma medication for at least 1 year) within 5 years.³⁰ See p.55 for more information about remission.

MAKING THE INITIAL DIAGNOSIS

Making the diagnosis of asthma before treatment is started (Box 1-1, p.27 and Box 1-2, p.28) is based on identifying both a characteristic pattern of respiratory symptoms such as wheezing, shortness of breath (dyspnea), chest tightness or cough, and variable expiratory airflow.³¹ The pattern of symptoms is important, as respiratory symptoms may be due to acute or chronic conditions other than asthma (see Box 1-3, p.30). If possible, the evidence supporting a diagnosis of asthma (Box 1-2, p.28) should be documented when the patient first presents, as the features that are characteristic of asthma may improve spontaneously or with treatment. It is often more difficult to confirm a diagnosis of asthma after the patient has started ICS-containing treatment, because this reduces variability of both symptoms and lung function (see p.31). In recognition that many health providers lack access (or ready access) to spirometry,³² GINA also provides advice on the use of PEF measurement in asthma diagnosis.

Box 1-1. Diagnostic flowchart for adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years in clinical practice

This flowchart is for patients presenting with chronic or recurrent respiratory symptoms. See Box 9-4 (p.180) and Box 9-6 (p.186) for information on patients presenting with an acute exacerbation.



ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; PEF: peak expiratory flow. PEF is less reliable than spirometry, but it is better than no objective measurement of lung function. When measuring PEF, use the same meter each time as the value may vary by up to 20% between different meters, and use only the highest of three readings. For more information about diagnosis, see text and Box 1-2, p.28.

Box 1-2. Criteria for initial diagnosis of asthma in adults (≥18 years) and children (6–17 years)

1. HISTORY OF TYPICAL VARIABLE RESPIRATORY SYMPTOMS	
<i>Symptoms may include:</i>	<i>Symptoms or features that support the diagnosis of asthma</i>
Wheeze, shortness of breath, chest tightness, cough (Descriptors may vary by region and by age)	• Symptoms occur variably over time and vary in intensity • Symptoms are often worse at night or on waking • Symptoms are often triggered by exercise, laughter, allergens, cold air • Symptoms worsen after stopping exercise (very distinctive) • Symptoms often appear or worsen with viral infections
2. CONFIRMED VARIABLE EXPIRATORY AIRFLOW	
<i>Feature</i>	<i>Considerations, definitions, criteria</i>
Excessive variability in expiratory lung function (one or more of the following):	The greater the variations, or the more occasions excess variation is seen, the more confidently the diagnosis of asthma can be made. If spirometry is not possible, PEF [†] may be used, but it is less reliable.
Positive bronchodilator (BD) responsiveness (reversibility) test with spirometry (or PEF [†]) When possible, test during symptoms or in the morning	Measure change 10–15 minutes after 200–400 mcg salbutamol (albuterol) or equivalent, compared with pre-BD readings. Positive test more likely if BD withheld before test: SABA ≥4 hours, long-acting bronchodilators 24–48 hours (see below). <i>Adults:</i> increase from baseline in FEV ₁ or FVC of ≥12% and ≥200 mL, with greater confidence if the increase is ≥15% and ≥400 mL; or increase in PEF [†] ≥20% if spirometry is not available (see p.32 for more information about these criteria) <i>Children:</i> increase from baseline in FEV ₁ of ≥12% predicted (or in PEF [†] of ≥15%)
Excessive variability in twice-daily PEF over 2 weeks*	<i>Adults:</i> average daily diurnal PEF variability >10%* <i>Children:</i> average daily diurnal PEF variability >13%*
Increase in lung function after 4 weeks of ICS-containing treatment	<i>Adults:</i> increase from baseline in FEV ₁ by ≥12% and ≥200 mL (or PEF [†] by ≥20%) after 4 weeks of daily ICS-containing treatment <i>Children:</i> increase from baseline in FEV ₁ of ≥12% predicted (or in PEF [†] of ≥15%)
Positive bronchial provocation test	<i>Adults:</i> Fall from baseline in FEV ₁ of ≥20% with standard doses of methacholine, or ≥15% with standardized hyperventilation, hypertonic saline or mannitol challenge, or >10% and >200 mL with standardized exercise challenge <i>Children:</i> fall from baseline in FEV ₁ of ≥20% with standard doses of methacholine, or >12% predicted (or fall in PEF [†] >15%) with standardized exercise challenge If FEV ₁ decreases from baseline during a challenge test, check that FEV ₁ /FVC ratio has also decreased, since incomplete inhalation, e.g., due to inducible laryngeal obstruction or poor effort, can result in a false reduction in FEV ₁ .
Excessive variation in lung function between visits (good specificity but poor sensitivity)	<i>Adults:</i> variation in FEV ₁ of ≥12% and ≥200 mL (or in PEF [†] of ≥20%) between visits <i>Children:</i> variation of ≥12% in FEV ₁ (or ≥15% in PEF [†]) between visits
ROLE OF TYPE 2 BIOMARKERS IN DIAGNOSIS OF ASTHMA	
In patients with typical asthma symptoms, if spirometry or PEF is not available or testing is negative, elevated FeNO (adults/adolescents: >50 ppb; children: >35 ppb) or blood eosinophils above national/regional reference range can support the diagnosis of Type 2 asthma, but can also be due to non-asthma conditions. Lower levels of FeNO or blood eosinophils do not rule out asthma. FeNO and blood eosinophils vary substantially by sex, age and (for FeNO) device and site). Both vary by time of day: blood eosinophil count is higher in the early morning than in the afternoon, but FeNO is lower in the early morning. See Appendix A for more details (p.237).	

Abbreviations and footnotes for Box 1-2

BD: bronchodilator; FeNO: fractional exhaled nitric oxide; FEV₁: forced expiratory volume in 1 second; FVC: forced vital capacity; ICS: inhaled corticosteroids; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; PEF: peak expiratory flow; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist.

†For each PEF measurement, use the highest of 3 readings. Use the same PEF meter each time, as PEF may vary by up to 20% between different meters.

*Daily diurnal PEF variability is calculated from twice daily PEF as (day's highest minus day's lowest) divided by (mean of day's highest and lowest), averaged over two weeks. A PEF variability calculator is available.³³

Bronchodilator responsiveness testing: use either a SABA or a rapid-acting ICS-LABA (see p.31). **Withholding periods:** short-acting beta₂-agonists: ≥4 hours; formoterol, salmeterol: 24 hours; indacaterol, vilanterol: 36 hours; tiotropium, umeclidinium, aclidinium, glycopyrronium: 36–48 hours. See p.32 for bronchodilator responsiveness criteria.

BD responsiveness may be lost temporarily during severe exacerbations or respiratory viral infections,³⁴ and airflow limitation may become persistent over time. If responsiveness is not detectable at initial presentation, the next step depends on the availability of other tests and the urgency of the need for treatment. In a situation of clinical urgency, asthma treatment may be commenced and diagnostic testing arranged within the next few weeks (Box 1-4, p.33), but other conditions that can mimic asthma (Box 1-3, p.30) should be considered, and the diagnosis confirmed as soon as possible.

For guidance on how to confirm the diagnosis in patients already taking ICS-containing treatment, see Box 1-4 (p.30).³³

Patterns of respiratory symptoms that are characteristic of asthma

The following features are typical of asthma and, if present, **increase** the probability that the patient has asthma.³¹

Respiratory symptoms of wheeze, shortness of breath, cough and/or chest tightness:

- Symptoms are often worse at night or in the early morning.
- Symptoms vary over time and in intensity.
- Symptoms are triggered by viral infections (colds), exercise, allergen exposure, changes in weather, or laughter. However, cough or dyspnea triggered by irritants such as car exhaust fumes, smoke or strong smells can also be due to cough hypersensitivity or inducible laryngeal obstruction.
- Symptoms develop or worsen after exercise; this feature is almost pathognomonic of bronchoconstriction due to asthma, as shortness of breath due to other causes (e.g., cardiopulmonary deconditioning, COPD, cardiac failure, inducible laryngeal obstruction) decreases once the patient rests.

The following features **decrease** the probability that respiratory symptoms are due to asthma:

- Chronic production of sputum
- Shortness of breath associated with dizziness, light-headedness or peripheral tingling (paresthesia)
- Chest pain
- Exercise-induced dyspnea with noisy inspiration
- Localized wheeze.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The differential diagnosis in a patient with suspected asthma varies with age; see p.156 and p.159 for severe asthma. Any of these alternative diagnoses may also occur with asthma. See p.126 for management of multimorbidity.

Box 1-3. Differential diagnosis of asthma in adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years

Age	If the symptoms or signs below are present, consider...	Condition
6–11 years	Sneezing, itching, blocked nose, throat-clearing	Chronic upper airway cough syndrome
	Sudden onset of symptoms, unilateral wheeze	Inhaled foreign body
	Recurrent chest infections, productive cough	Bronchiectasis Protracted bacterial bronchitis Inborn errors of immunity
	Recurrent chest infections, productive cough, sinusitis	Primary ciliary dyskinesia Inborn errors of immunity
	Cardiac murmurs	Congenital heart disease
	Pre-term delivery, symptoms since birth	Bronchopulmonary dysplasia
	Excessive cough and mucus production, gastrointestinal symptoms	Cystic fibrosis
12–39 years	Sneezing, itching, blocked nose, throat-clearing	Chronic upper airway cough syndrome
	Cough or dyspnea triggered by smoke or strong smells, or food; stridor	Cough hypersensitivity; GERD Inducible laryngeal obstruction
	Dizziness, paresthesia, sighing	Hyperventilation, dysfunctional breathing
	Productive cough, recurrent chest infections	Bronchiectasis Protracted bacterial bronchitis
	Excessive cough and mucus production	Cystic fibrosis
	Cardiac murmurs	Heart disease
	Shortness of breath, family history of early emphysema	Alpha ₁ -antitrypsin deficiency
	Sudden onset of symptoms	Inhaled foreign body
40+ years	Cough or dyspnea triggered by smoke or strong smells, or by food; stridor	Cough hypersensitivity; GERD Inducible laryngeal obstruction
	Dizziness, paresthesia, sighing	Hyperventilation, dysfunctional breathing
	Cough, sputum, dyspnea on exertion, smoking or noxious exposure	Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease*
	Productive cough, recurrent infections	Bronchiectasis Protracted bacterial bronchitis
	Dyspnea with exertion, nocturnal symptoms, ankle edema	Cardiac failure
	Treatment with angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor	Medication-related cough
	Dyspnea with exertion, non-productive cough, finger clubbing	Parenchymal lung disease
	Sudden onset of dyspnea, chest pain	Pulmonary embolism
All ages	Chronic cough, hemoptysis, dyspnea; and/or fatigue, fever, (night) sweats, anorexia, weight loss; sometimes unilateral wheeze	Tuberculosis
	Prolonged paroxysms of coughing, sometimes stridor	Pertussis

*See Section 7 (p.141) for patients with features of both asthma and COPD. GERD: gastroesophageal reflux disease.

CONFIRMING THE DIAGNOSIS OF ASTHMA

Why is it important to confirm the diagnosis of asthma?

This is important to avoid unnecessary treatment or over-treatment, and to avoid missing other important diagnoses. In a sample of adults with an asthma diagnosis in the previous 5 years, one-third could not be confirmed as having asthma after repeated testing over 12 months with staged withdrawal of ICS-containing treatment.³⁵ The diagnosis of asthma was less likely to be confirmed in patients who did not undergo lung function testing at the time of initial diagnosis.³⁵ Some patients (2%) had serious cardiorespiratory conditions that had been misdiagnosed as asthma.³⁵ It is important to confirm the diagnosis of asthma in people with suggestive respiratory symptoms; a study in Canada found that patients with undiagnosed asthma had worse health-related quality of life and more unscheduled healthcare visits than those without asthma, and similar to those with diagnosed asthma.³⁶

Many patients experience chronic respiratory symptoms without having been diagnosed with asthma. A community-based case-finding study reported that, among adults with chronic respiratory symptoms and significant bronchodilator responsiveness on spirometry, those randomized to care by a pulmonologist plus asthma education had significantly fewer healthcare encounters than those randomized to usual care by their primary care physician.³⁷

History and family history

Commencement of respiratory symptoms in childhood, a history of allergic rhinitis or eczema, or a family history of asthma or allergy, increase the probability that the respiratory symptoms are due to asthma. However, these features are not specific for asthma and are not seen in all asthma phenotypes. Patients with allergic rhinitis or atopic dermatitis should be asked specifically about respiratory symptoms.

Physical examination

Physical examination in people with asthma is often normal. The most frequent abnormality is expiratory wheezing (rhonchi) on auscultation, but this may be absent or only heard on forced expiration. Wheezing may also be absent during severe asthma exacerbations, due to severely reduced airflow (so-called “silent chest”), but at such times, other physical signs of respiratory failure are usually present. Wheezing may also be heard with inducible laryngeal obstruction, COPD, respiratory infections or tracheomalacia, or with inhaled foreign body or tuberculosis (when wheezing may be unilateral). Crackles (crepitations) and inspiratory wheezing are not features of asthma. Examination of the nose may reveal signs of allergic rhinitis or nasal polyps.

Lung function testing to document variable expiratory airflow

Asthma is characterized by variable expiratory airflow, i.e., expiratory lung function varies over time, and in magnitude, to a greater extent than in healthy populations. In asthma, lung function may vary over time between completely normal and severely obstructed in the same patient. Poorly controlled asthma is associated with greater variability in lung function than well-controlled asthma.³⁴

Lung function is most reliably assessed by spirometry testing, with assessment of forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV₁) and the ratio of FEV₁ to forced vital capacity (FEV₁/FVC). Spirometry testing should be done by well-trained operators with well-maintained and regularly calibrated equipment,³⁸ with an inline filter to protect against transmission of infection.³⁹ However, globally, many clinicians do not have ready (or any) access to spirometry. In this context, assessment of PEF, although less reliable, is better than no objective measurement of lung function. If PEF is used, the best of 3 measurements should be used each time, and the same meter should be used for follow-up testing, as measurements may differ from meter to meter by up to 20%.⁴⁰

A reduced FEV₁ or PEF may be found with many other lung diseases, or due to poor technique with inadequate inhalation. This may be due to lack of effort or to inducible laryngeal obstruction. FEV₁/FVC is typically >0.75–0.80 in healthy adults, and >0.90 in healthy children. Reduced FEV₁/FVC (compared with baseline or compared with the lower limit of normal) indicates expiratory airflow limitation. Many spirometers now include age-specific predicted values for lower limit of normal in their software.⁴¹

In clinical practice, variation in expiratory airflow is generally assessed from variation in FEV₁ or PEF. “Variability” refers to improvement and/or deterioration in symptoms and lung function. Excessive variability may be identified over the course of one day (diurnal variability), from day to day, from visit to visit, or seasonally, or from a responsiveness test.

How much variation in expiratory airflow is consistent with asthma?

Responsiveness (previously called “reversibility”)³⁸ generally refers to rapid improvements in FEV₁ (or PEF), measured within minutes after inhalation of a rapid-acting bronchodilator such as 200–400 mcg salbutamol (albuterol), or more sustained improvement over days or weeks after the introduction of ICS treatment.¹⁸

In a patient with typical or suggestive respiratory symptoms, obtaining evidence of excessive variability in expiratory lung function is an essential component of the diagnosis of asthma.

Specific examples of excessive variability in expiratory airflow include:

- An increase in lung function 10–15 minutes after administration of a bronchodilator, or after a trial of ICS-containing treatment; lung function may improve gradually, so it should be assessed after at least 4 weeks
- A decrease in lung function after exercise (spontaneous or standardized) or during a bronchial provocation test
- Variation in lung function beyond the normal range when it is repeated over time, either on separate visits, or on twice-daily home monitoring over at least 1–2 weeks.

Specific criteria for demonstrating excessive variability in expiratory lung function are listed in Box 1-2 (p.28). A decrease in FEV₁ or PEF during a respiratory infection, while commonly seen in asthma, does not necessarily indicate that a person has asthma, as it may also be seen in otherwise healthy individuals or people with COPD.

If there is a significant decrease in FEV₁ during a challenge test, check that FEV₁/FVC ratio has also decreased, since incomplete inhalation (e.g., due to inducible laryngeal obstruction or poor effort) can result in a false reduction in FEV₁.

If FEV₁ is within the predicted normal range when the patient is experiencing symptoms, this reduces the probability that the symptoms are due to asthma. However, patients whose baseline FEV₁ is >80% predicted can have a clinically important increase in lung function with bronchodilator or ICS-containing treatment. Predicted normal ranges (especially for PEF) have limitations, so the patient’s own best reading (“personal best”) is recommended as their “normal” value.

Diurnal PEF variability is calculated from twice daily readings as the daily amplitude percent mean:

([Day’s highest – day’s lowest] / mean of day’s highest and lowest) x 100).

Then the average of each day’s value is calculated over 1–2 weeks. An online calculator is available.³³ The upper 95% confidence limit of diurnal variability (amplitude percent mean) from twice daily readings is 9% in healthy adults,⁴² and 12.3% in healthy children⁴³ so, in general, diurnal variability >10% for adults and >13% for children is regarded as excessive.

Criteria for bronchodilator responsiveness

There is overlap in bronchodilator responsiveness and other measures of variation between health and disease.⁴⁴ In a patient with respiratory symptoms, the greater the variations in their lung function, or the more times excess variation is seen, the more likely the diagnosis is to be asthma (Box 1-2, p.28).

Based on guidelines published in 2005 by the European Respiratory Society (ERS) and American Thoracic Society (ATS), the current recommendation is that, in adults with respiratory symptoms typical of asthma, an increase in FEV₁ of ≥12% and ≥200 mL from baseline, or (if spirometry is not available) an increase in PEF of at least 20% from baseline, is a positive bronchodilator response consistent with asthma.^{18,38,45}

An alternative criterion of a change from baseline of >10% of the patient’s predicted value was proposed in 2022 by a joint ERS/ATS task force.¹⁹ This recommendation was based on data for survival, rather than from diagnostic workup for asthma. The ERS/ATS task force itself avoided making any recommendation about the use of this criterion for diagnostic decisions in clinical practice, but it has been incorporated in spirometry software by some providers. GINA deferred any change until more data were available, including comparison with other diagnostic tests for asthma.

Since then, analysis of large datasets including people with/without asthma found that people with physician-diagnosed asthma who had a positive bronchodilator response by the previous criterion but were not positive by the 2022 criterion had a high respiratory burden.⁴⁶ These and similar findings from other studies support retention of the criterion of an increase in FEV₁ of ≥12% and ≥200 mL from baseline for a positive bronchodilator response, as part of the diagnosis of asthma in patients with typical respiratory symptoms.

Box 1-4. Steps for confirming the diagnosis of asthma in a patient already taking ICS-containing treatment

Current status	Steps to confirm the diagnosis of asthma
Typical and variable respiratory symptoms and variable expiratory airflow	Diagnosis of asthma is confirmed. Assess the level of asthma control (Box 2-2A and Box 2-2B, p.41) and review ICS-containing treatment (Box 4-6, p.83; Box 4-12, p.104.)
Typical and variable respiratory symptoms but no variable expiratory airflow	Consider repeating spirometry (or PEF*) after withholding bronchodilator (4 hours for SABA, 24–48 hours for long-acting bronchodilators (see below) or during symptoms. Check between-visit variability of FEV₁, and bronchodilator responsiveness. If still normal, consider other diagnoses (Box 1-3, p.30). <i>If FEV₁ (or PEF*) is >70% predicted:</i> consider stepping down ICS-containing treatment (see Box 1-5, p.36) and reassess in 2–4 weeks, then consider bronchial provocation test or repeating bronchodilator responsiveness test. <i>If FEV₁ (or PEF*) is <70% predicted:</i> consider starting or stepping up maintenance ICS-containing treatment for 1–2 months (Box 4-6, p.83 and Box 4-12, p.104), then reassess symptoms and lung function. If no response, resume previous ICS dose and refer patient for diagnosis and investigation. Consider biomarkers: in patients with typical asthma symptoms, elevated FeNO (adults/adolescents: >50 ppb; children: >35 ppb) or blood eosinophils above the national/regional reference range can support the diagnosis of Type 2 asthma, but can also be due to non-asthma conditions. Lower levels of FeNO or blood eosinophils do not rule out asthma. FeNO and blood eosinophils vary by sex, age, time of day and (for FeNO) device and site (p.35). For details, see Appendix A, p.237.
Symptoms not typical of asthma, and no variable expiratory airflow	Investigate for alternative diagnoses or comorbidities that may be contributing to symptoms and/or exacerbations (see Box 1-3, p.30).
Few (but typical) respiratory symptoms, normal lung function, and no variable expiratory airflow	Consider repeating BD responsiveness test again after withholding bronchodilator as above or during symptoms. If normal, consider investigation for alternative diagnoses (Box 1-3, p.30). Consider stepping down ICS-containing treatment (see Box 1-5, p.36): <i>If symptoms emerge and lung function falls:</i> asthma is confirmed. Step up ICS-containing treatment to previous lowest effective dose. <i>If no change in symptoms or lung function at lowest dose of maintenance ICS:</i> consider ceasing maintenance ICS-containing treatment, or switching to as-needed-only ICS-formoterol, and monitor patient closely for at least 12 months (Box 4-13, p.112). Consider biomarkers, as above.
Persistent shortness of breath and persistent airflow limitation	Consider stepping up ICS-containing treatment for 1–2 months in adults and adolescents (Box 4-6, p.83), then reassess symptoms and lung function. If no response, resume previous ICS dose and refer patient for further investigation and management, or manage as for patients with features of both asthma and COPD (Section 7, p.141). Consider biomarkers, as above.

BD: bronchodilator; FeNO: fractional exhaled nitric oxide; FEV₁: forced expiratory volume in 1 second; ICS: inhaled corticosteroids; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; PEF: peak expiratory flow; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist.

Withholding period for long-acting bronchodilators: 24 hours for formoterol, salmeterol; 36 hours for indacaterol, vilanterol; 36–48 hours for tiotropium, umeclidinium, aclidinium, glycopyrronium. *If spirometry is not possible, PEF may be used, but it is less reliable. Use the same PEF meter each time, as PEF may vary by up to 20% between different meters. For each PEF measurement, use the highest of 3 readings.

When can variable expiratory airflow be documented?

If possible, evidence of variable expiratory airflow should be documented before treatment is started. This is because variability usually decreases with ICS treatment as lung function improves. In addition, any increase in lung function after initiating ICS-containing treatment can help to confirm the diagnosis of asthma. Bronchodilator response may not be present between symptoms, during viral infections or if the patient has used a beta₂-agonist within the previous few hours; and in some patients with asthma, airflow limitation may become persistent or nonresponsive over time.

If neither spirometry nor PEF is available, or variable expiratory airflow is not documented, the decision about whether to investigate further or start ICS-containing treatment immediately depends on clinical urgency and access to other tests.³² Elevated FeNO or blood eosinophils may support the diagnosis of Type 2 asthma (asthma characterized by eosinophilic and/or allergic inflammation) but lower levels do not rule out asthma (p.238). Box 1-4 (p.33) describes how to confirm the diagnosis of asthma in a patient already taking ICS-containing treatment.

Other tests that may be used in diagnosis of asthma

Bronchial provocation tests

One option for documenting variable expiratory airflow is to refer the patient for bronchial provocation testing to assess airway hyperresponsiveness. Challenge agents include inhaled methacholine,⁴⁷ histamine, exercise,⁴⁸ eucapnic voluntary hyperventilation or inhaled mannitol.⁴⁸ These tests are moderately sensitive for a diagnosis of asthma but have limited specificity^{47,48}. For example, airway hyperresponsiveness to inhaled methacholine has been described in patients with allergic rhinitis,⁴⁹ cystic fibrosis⁵⁰, bronchopulmonary dysplasia⁵¹ and COPD.⁵² This means that a negative test in a patient not taking ICS can help to exclude asthma, but a positive test does not always mean that a patient has asthma – the pattern of symptoms (Box 1-2, p.28) and other clinical features (Box 1-3, p.30) must also be considered.

Allergy tests

The presence of atopy increases the probability that a patient with respiratory symptoms has allergic asthma, but this is not specific for asthma nor is it present in all asthma phenotypes. Atopic status can be identified by skin prick testing or by measuring the level of specific immunoglobulin E (sIgE) in serum. Skin prick testing with common environmental allergens is simple and rapid to perform and, when performed by an experienced tester with standardized extracts, is inexpensive, and has a high sensitivity. Measurement of sIgE is no more reliable than skin prick tests and is more expensive, but may be preferred for uncooperative patients, those with widespread skin disease, or if the history suggests a risk of anaphylaxis.⁵³ The presence of a positive skin test or positive sIgE, however, does not mean that the allergen is causing symptoms – the relevance of allergen exposure and its relation to symptoms must be confirmed by the patient's history.

Imaging

Imaging studies are not routinely used in the diagnosis of asthma, but may be useful to investigate the possibility of comorbid conditions or alternative diagnoses in adults with difficult-to-treat asthma. Imaging may also be used to identify congenital abnormalities in infants with asthma-like symptoms, and alternative diagnoses in children with difficult-to-treat asthma. High-resolution computed tomography (CT) of the lungs can identify conditions such as bronchiectasis, emphysema, lung nodules, airway wall thickening and lung distension, and may assess airway distensibility. There is increasing interest in mucus plugging, which is often found in patients with moderately severe airflow limitation and eosinophilic airway inflammation.⁵⁴ The presence of radiographically detected emphysema is considered when differentiating asthma from COPD (Box 7-4, p.148), but there is no accepted threshold, and asthma and emphysema can coexist. Moreover, air trapping (which may be present in asthma, and is also a feature of ageing) can be difficult to distinguish from emphysema. Chest imaging is not currently recommended to predict treatment outcomes or lung function decline, or to assess treatment response.

CT of the sinuses can identify changes suggestive of chronic rhinosinusitis with or without nasal polyps (p.129), which in patients with severe asthma may help with choice of biologic therapy (see Box 8-4, p.154).

Exhaled nitric oxide

FeNO is modestly associated with levels of sputum and blood eosinophils.⁵⁵ FeNO is higher in asthma that is characterized by Type 2 airway inflammation with elevated interleukin (IL)-4 and IL-13,⁵⁶ but it is also elevated in non-asthma conditions (e.g., eosinophilic bronchitis, atopy, allergic rhinitis, atopic dermatitis), and it is not elevated in some asthma phenotypes (e.g., neutrophilic asthma, asthma with obesity).^{29,57,20} In patients with typical asthma symptoms, FeNO >50 ppb in adults/adolescents or >35 ppb in children can support a diagnosis of Type 2 asthma, but lower levels do not rule out asthma.⁴⁵ In addition, FeNO levels in healthy populations vary by multiple factors including sex, age, FeNO device, and clinical site, precluding the establishment of reference values.⁵⁸ FeNO is also lower in smokers and during bronchoconstriction⁵⁹ and the early phases of allergic response;⁶⁰ it may be increased or decreased during viral respiratory infections.⁵⁹ For information on the role of FeNO in asthma treatment, see Section 4 (p.78) and the biomarker summary in Appendix A (p.237).

Blood eosinophil count

In a patient with typical asthma symptoms, a blood eosinophil count above the national/regional reference range can support a diagnosis of Type 2 asthma, but lower levels do not rule out asthma. Blood eosinophils are also elevated in non-asthma conditions including parasitic infection, atopic dermatitis, allergic rhinitis, chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps (CRSwNP), eosinophilic bronchitis, hypereosinophilic syndrome and eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (EGPA). Blood eosinophil counts vary significantly by age, sex, time of day (lower in afternoon than in early morning), geographic location, obesity, and by allergen exposure in sensitized individuals,^{61,62} so it is important to use national/regional reference ranges. Blood eosinophils may be decreased by nasal, inhaled or oral corticosteroids (Appendix A, p.237).

Sputum eosinophilia

In a patient with typical asthma symptoms, elevated sputum eosinophils from induced sputum can support a diagnosis of Type 2 asthma, but lower levels do not rule out asthma. Various thresholds have been proposed.⁵⁵ Sputum eosinophils may also be elevated in non-asthma conditions, including non-asthma eosinophilic bronchitis, allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis (ABPA), acute or chronic eosinophilic pneumonia, eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (EGPA), and drug-induced eosinophilic lung disease.

CONFIRMING THE DIAGNOSIS IN PATIENTS ALREADY TAKING ICS-CONTAINING TREATMENT

If the basis of a patient's diagnosis of asthma has not previously been documented, confirmation with objective testing should be sought. In primary care, the presence of asthma cannot be confirmed in many patients (25–35%) who have previously received this diagnosis.^{35,63-66}

The process for confirming the diagnosis in patients already on ICS-containing treatment depends on the patient's symptoms and lung function (Box 1-4, p.33). It may include a trial of a lower or higher ICS dose (Box 1-5, p.36). If the diagnosis of asthma cannot be confirmed, refer the patient for expert investigation and diagnosis.

Box 1-5. How to step down ICS-containing treatment to help confirm the diagnosis of asthma

1. ASSESS

- Document the patient's current status including asthma symptom control and risk factors (Box 2-2, p.41) and lung function. If the patient has risk factors for asthma exacerbations (Box 2-2B), step down treatment only with close supervision.
- Choose a suitable time (e.g., no respiratory infection, not going away on vacation, not pregnant).
- Provide a written asthma action plan (Box 9-2, p.174) so the patient/caregiver knows how to recognize and respond if symptoms worsen. Ensure they will have enough medication to be able to resume their previous dose if their asthma worsens after stepping down.

2. ADJUST

- Show the patient/caregiver how to reduce their ICS dose by 25–50%, or stop other maintenance medication (e.g., LABA) if being used. See step-down options in Box 4-13, p.112. Schedule a review visit for 2–4 weeks.

3. REVIEW RESPONSE

- Repeat assessment of asthma control and lung function tests in 2–4 weeks (Box 1-2, p.28).
- If symptoms increase and excessive variation in expiratory airflow is confirmed after stepping down treatment, the diagnosis of asthma is confirmed. The patient should be returned to their lowest previous effective treatment.
- If, after stepping down to a low-dose ICS-containing treatment, symptoms do not worsen and there is still no evidence of variable expiratory airflow limitation to confirm the diagnosis of asthma, consider ceasing ICS-containing treatment and repeating asthma control assessment and lung function tests in 2–3 weeks, but follow the patient for at least 12 months.³⁵

ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist.

HOW TO MAKE THE DIAGNOSIS OF ASTHMA IN OTHER CONTEXTS

Patients presenting with persistent cough as the only reported respiratory symptom

Common causes of an isolated non-productive cough include cough-variant asthma, chronic upper airway cough syndrome (often called "postnasal drip"), cough induced by angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, gastroesophageal reflux, chronic sinusitis, post-infectious cough,⁶⁷ inducible laryngeal obstruction,^{68,69} and eosinophilic bronchitis.

In cough variant asthma, a persistent cough is the only reported symptom, or, in cough predominant asthma, the most prominent symptom.^{27,28,70} The cough may be worse at night or with exercise, and in some patients it is productive. In children with asthma, a dry cough at night may be the only symptom noticed by the parent/caregiver, but questioning may elicit that a dry cough also occurs with exercise, crying or laughing. Spirometry is usually normal, and the only abnormality in lung function may be airway hyperresponsiveness on bronchial provocation testing (Box 1-2, p.28); the diagnosis of asthma in patients with chronic cough may be missed if challenge testing is not available or not performed. Some patients with cough variant asthma may later develop wheeze and significant bronchodilator responsiveness on spirometry.⁷¹ Most patients with cough variant asthma have sputum eosinophilia, and they may

also have elevated FeNO.⁷² Cough-variant asthma must also be distinguished from eosinophilic bronchitis in which patients have cough and sputum eosinophilia but normal spirometry and normal airway responsiveness.⁷² Treatment of cough variant asthma follows usual recommendations for asthma.

If non-productive cough persists and asthma has been excluded, consider referral for investigation of refractory chronic cough.^{73,74}

Occupational asthma and work-exacerbated asthma

Asthma acquired in the workplace is frequently missed. Asthma may be induced or (more commonly) aggravated by exposure to allergens or other sensitizing agents at work, or sometimes from a single, massive exposure. Occupational rhinitis may precede asthma by up to a year and early diagnosis is essential, as persistent exposure is associated with worse outcomes.^{75,76}

An estimated 5–20% of new cases of adult-onset asthma can be attributed to occupational exposure.⁷⁵ Adult-onset asthma requires a systematic inquiry about work history and exposures, including hobbies. Asking patients whether their symptoms improve when they are away from work (weekends or vacation) is an essential screening question.⁷⁷ It is important to confirm the diagnosis of occupational asthma objectively as it may lead to the patient changing their occupation, which may have legal and socioeconomic implications. Specialist referral is usually necessary, and frequent PEF monitoring at and away from work is often used to help confirm the diagnosis. There is more information about occupational asthma in Section 6 (p.126) and in specific guidelines.^{75,78,79}

Athletes

The diagnosis of asthma in athletes should be confirmed by lung function tests, usually with bronchial provocation testing.⁷⁹ Conditions that may either mimic or be associated with asthma, such as rhinitis, laryngeal disorders (e.g., inducible laryngeal obstruction),⁶⁹ dysfunctional breathing, cardiac conditions and over-training, must be excluded.⁸⁰

Pregnant women

Pregnant women and women planning a pregnancy should be asked whether they have asthma so that appropriate advice about asthma management and medications can be given (p.135).⁸¹ If the clinical history is consistent with asthma, and other diagnoses appear unlikely (Box 1-3, p.30) but the diagnosis of asthma is not confirmed on initial bronchodilator responsiveness testing (Box 1-2, p.28), manage as asthma with ICS-containing treatment (p.135) and postpone other diagnostic investigations until after delivery. During pregnancy, bronchial provocation testing is contraindicated, and it is not advisable to step down ICS-containing treatment.

The elderly

Asthma is frequently undiagnosed in the elderly,⁸² due to poor perception of airflow limitation; acceptance of dyspnea as normal in old age, lack of fitness, and reduced physical activity. The presence of multimorbidity also complicates the diagnosis. In a large population-based survey of asthma patients older than 65 years, factors associated with a history of asthma hospitalization included co-diagnosis of COPD, coronary artery disease, depression, diabetes mellitus, and difficulty accessing medications or clinical care because of cost.⁸³ Symptoms of wheezing, breathlessness and cough that are worse on exercise or at night can also be caused by cardiovascular disease or left ventricular failure, which are common in this age group. A careful history and physical examination, combined with an electrocardiogram and chest X-ray, will assist in the diagnosis.⁸⁴ Measurement of plasma brain natriuretic polypeptide and assessment of cardiac function with echocardiography may also be helpful.⁸⁵ In older people with a history of smoking or biomass fuel exposure, COPD and overlapping asthma and COPD (asthma+COPD) should be considered (Section 7, p.141).

Smokers and ex-smokers

Asthma and COPD may be difficult to distinguish in clinical practice, particularly in older patients and smokers and ex-smokers, and these conditions may overlap ('asthma+COPD', formerly called asthma-COPD overlap). The Global Strategy for Diagnosis, Management and Prevention of COPD 2026⁸⁶ defines COPD on the basis of chronic respiratory symptoms, environmental exposures such as smoking or inhalation of toxic particles or gases, with confirmation by post-bronchodilator FEV₁/FVC <0.7. Clinically important bronchodilator responsiveness (≥12% and ≥200 mL) is often found in patients with a diagnosis of COPD.⁸⁷ Low diffusion capacity is more common in COPD than asthma. In current smokers, FeNO is lower and blood eosinophil count is higher (see Appendix A).

The history and pattern of symptoms and past records can help to distinguish patients with COPD from those with longstanding asthma who have developed persistent airflow limitation. Uncertainty in the diagnosis should prompt

early referral for specialized investigation and treatment recommendations, as patients with asthma+COPD have worse outcomes than those with asthma or COPD alone (see Section 7, p.141).⁸⁸

Obese patients

While asthma is more common in obese than non-obese people,⁸⁹ respiratory symptoms associated with obesity can mimic asthma. In obese patients with dyspnea on exertion, it is important to confirm the diagnosis of asthma with objective measurement of variable expiratory airflow. One study found that non-obese patients were just as likely to be over-diagnosed with asthma as obese patients (around 30% in each group).⁶³ Another study found both over- and under-diagnosis of asthma in obese patients.⁹⁰

Low- and middle-income countries

Diagnosis of asthma in low-resource settings, including low- and middle-income countries (LMICs), presents substantial challenges for clinical practice.³² Access to lung function testing, particularly spirometry, is often very limited. Even when available, lung function testing may be substantially underused (e.g., unaffordable for the patient or health system,⁹¹ or too time-consuming in a busy clinic). A single lung function test may not be sufficient to confirm the diagnosis of asthma or indicate an alternative cause, so more than one visit by the patient (with resulting costs of time and travel) may be needed.³² The differential diagnosis of asthma in these countries may often include other endemic respiratory diseases (e.g., tuberculosis, HIV/AIDS-associated lung diseases, and parasitic or fungal lung diseases).

As a result of these issues, clinicians often use a syndromic approach to diagnosis and initial management, based on history and clinical findings.¹ Practical evidence-based resources have been developed and implemented in several countries.^{92,93} This approach reduces diagnostic precision but is based on the assumption (valid in most LMICs) that under-diagnosis and under-treatment of asthma is more likely⁹⁴ than the overdiagnosis and overtreatment often seen in high income countries.^{35,95}

GINA does not recommend that diagnosis of asthma should be solely based on syndromic clinical patterns, and suggests lung function testing with a PEF meter if spirometry is not available.³² The World Health Organization (WHO) Package of essential noncommunicable (PEN) disease interventions for primary care⁹⁶ lists the PEF meter as an essential tool in the management of chronic respiratory diseases.

When spirometry is not available, the presence of variable expiratory airflow (including responsiveness) can be confirmed by PEF, as outlined in Box 1-2, p.28.

For example, before starting long-term ICS-containing treatment, the following findings can help to confirm the diagnosis of asthma (or prompt investigation for alternative diagnoses):

- $\geq 20\%$ improvement in PEF 15 minutes after giving 2 separate puffs of salbutamol (albuterol)⁹⁶
- Improvement in symptoms and PEF after a 4-week therapeutic trial with ICS-containing treatment.³²

Either of these findings would increase the likelihood of a diagnosis of asthma versus other diagnoses.

A structured algorithmic approach to patients presenting with respiratory symptoms forms part of several strategies developed for improving respiratory disease management in LMICs.⁷ These strategies particularly useful in countries where, owing to the high prevalence of tuberculosis, large numbers of patients with respiratory symptoms present for assessment at tuberculosis clinics.

There is a pressing need for access to affordable diagnostic tools (peak flow meters and spirometry), and training in their use, to be substantially scaled up in LMICs.³²

2. Assessment of asthma in adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years

KEY POINTS

Asthma control

Asthma control is the extent to which the features of asthma have been reduced or resolved by treatment. It is assessed in two domains: **symptom control** and **risk of adverse outcomes**. Poor symptom control is burdensome to patients and increases the risk of exacerbations, but patients with good symptom control can still have severe exacerbations.

Asthma severity

The current definition of asthma severity is based on retrospective assessment, after at least 2–3 months of asthma treatment, of the intensity of treatment required to control symptoms and exacerbations.

This definition is clinically useful for severe asthma, as it identifies patients whose asthma is relatively refractory to high intensity treatment with high-dose inhaled corticosteroids (ICS) and a long-acting beta₂-agonist (LABA) and who may benefit from additional treatment such as biologic therapy. It is important to distinguish between severe asthma and asthma that is uncontrolled due to modifiable factors such as incorrect inhaler technique and/or poor adherence.

“Mild asthma” is a retrospective label, so it cannot be used to decide which patients are suitable to receive Step 1 or Step 2 treatment.

In clinical practice and in the general community, the term “mild asthma” is often used to mean infrequent or mild symptoms, and it is often incorrectly assumed that these patients are not at risk and do not need ICS-containing treatment.

For these reasons, GINA suggests that the term “mild asthma” should generally be avoided in clinical practice if possible or, if used, qualified with a reminder that patients with infrequent symptoms can still have severe or fatal exacerbations, and that this risk is substantially reduced with ICS-containing treatment.

How to assess a patient's asthma

Assess symptom control from the frequency of daytime and night-time asthma symptoms, night waking and activity limitation and, for patients using short-acting beta₂-agonist (SABA) reliever, their frequency of SABA use. Other tools for assessing recent symptom control include Asthma Control Test (ACT) and Asthma Control Questionnaire (ACQ). There are no validated tools for assessing symptom control over a longer period.

Also, separately, assess the patient's risk factors for exacerbations, even if their symptom control is good. Risk factors for exacerbations that are independent of symptom control include a history of ≥ 1 exacerbation in the previous year, SABA-only treatment (without any ICS), over-use of SABA, socioeconomic problems, poor adherence, incorrect inhaler technique, low forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV₁), exposures such as smoking, and elevated blood eosinophils or fractional concentration of exhaled nitric oxide (FeNO).

Health status of patients with asthma can be assessed with the Chronic Airways Assessment Test (CAAT).

Also assess risk factors for persistent airflow limitation and medication side-effects (including from oral corticosteroids), treatment issues such as inhaler technique and adherence, and comorbidities, and ask the patient/caregiver about their asthma goals and treatment preferences.

Once the diagnosis of asthma has been made, the main role of lung function testing is in the assessment of future risk. It should be recorded at diagnosis, 3–6 months after starting treatment, and periodically thereafter.

Investigate for impaired perception of (expiratory) airflow limitation if there are few symptoms but low lung function, and investigate for alternative diagnoses if there are frequent symptoms despite good lung function.

OVERVIEW

The long-term goal of asthma treatment is to achieve the best possible long-term outcomes for the patient (Box 3-2, p.55). For every patient, assessment of asthma should include the assessment of asthma control (both symptom control and future risk of adverse outcomes), treatment issues (particularly inhaler technique and adherence), and any comorbidities that could contribute to symptom burden and poor quality of life (Box 2-1, p.40). Lung function, particularly FEV₁ as a percentage of predicted value, is an important part of the assessment of future risk.

Box 2-1. Summary of asthma assessment in adults, adolescents, and children 6–11 years

1. Assess asthma control, i.e., symptom control AND future risk of adverse outcomes
• Assess symptom control over the last 4 weeks (Box 2-2A, p.41) or longer. • Identify any other risk factors for exacerbations, persistent airflow limitation or side-effects (Box 2-2B). • Measure lung function at diagnosis/start of treatment, 3–6 months after starting ICS-containing treatment, then periodically, e.g., at least once every 1–2 years, but more often in at-risk patients and those with severe asthma.
2. Assess treatment issues
• Document the patient's current treatment step (Box 4-6, p.83 and Box 4-12, p.104). • Watch inhaler technique (Box 5-2, p.119), assess adherence (Box 5-3, p.121) and side-effects. • Check that the patient has a written asthma action plan. • Ask about the patient's attitudes and goals for their asthma and medications.
3. Assess multimorbidity
• Rhinitis, rhinosinusitis, gastroesophageal reflux, obesity, obstructive sleep apnea, depression and anxiety can contribute to symptoms and poor quality of life, and sometimes to poor asthma control (see Section 6, p.126).

ICS: inhaled corticosteroid

What is meant by “asthma control”?

The level of asthma control is the extent to which the manifestations of asthma have been reduced or removed by treatment.^{42,97} It is determined by the interaction between the patient's genetic background, underlying disease processes, the treatment that they are taking, environment, and psychosocial factors.⁹⁷

Asthma control has two domains: symptom control and future risk of adverse outcomes (Box 2-2, p.41). Both should always be assessed. Lung function is an important part of the assessment of future risk; it should be measured at the start of treatment, after 3–6 months of treatment (to identify the patient's personal best), and periodically thereafter for ongoing risk assessment.

Box 2-2. GINA assessment of asthma control at clinical visits in adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years

A. Recent asthma symptom control (but also ask the patient/caregiver about the whole period since last review*)				
In the past 4 weeks, has the patient had:		Well controlled	Partly controlled	Uncontrolled
• Daytime asthma symptoms more than twice/week?	Yes ☐ No ☐	None of these	1–2 of these	3–4 of these
• Any night waking due to asthma?	Yes ☐ No ☐			
• SABA [†] reliever for symptoms more than twice/week?	Yes ☐ No ☐			
• Any activity limitation due to asthma?	Yes ☐ No ☐			
B. Risk factors for poor asthma outcomes				
Assess risk factors at diagnosis and periodically, including after an exacerbation.				
Measure FEV ₁ at start of treatment, after 3–6 months of ICS-containing treatment to record the patient's personal best lung function, then periodically for ongoing risk assessment.				
i. Risk factors for exacerbations				
Uncontrolled asthma symptoms: Having uncontrolled symptoms is an important risk factor for exacerbations. ⁹⁸				
Factors that increase the risk of exacerbations even if the patient has few asthma symptoms [‡] : ⁹⁹⁻¹⁰¹				
SABA over-use: High SABA use (≥3 x 200-dose canisters/year associated with increased risk of exacerbations, increased mortality particularly if ≥1 canister per month) ¹⁰²⁻¹⁰⁵				
Inadequate ICS: Not prescribed, poor adherence, ¹⁰⁶ or incorrect inhaler technique ¹⁰⁷				
Other medical conditions: Obesity, ^{100,101,108,109} chronic rhinosinusitis, ^{100,109} GERD, ¹⁰⁹ confirmed food allergy, ¹¹⁰ pregnancy ¹¹¹				
Exposures: Smoking, ^{101,112} e-cigarettes, ¹¹³ allergen exposure if sensitized, ^{112,114} air pollution ¹¹⁵⁻¹¹⁸				
Psychosocial: Major psychological or socioeconomic problems ^{119,120}				
Lung function: Low FEV ₁ (especially <60% predicted), ^{112,121} high bronchodilator responsiveness ^{109,122,123}				
Type 2 inflammatory markers: Raised blood eosinophils, ^{100,109,124,125} high FeNO ^{100,126} (see Appendix, p.237)				
Exacerbation history: Ever intubated or in intensive care unit for asthma, ¹²⁷ ≥1 severe exacerbation in last year ^{128,129}				
ii. Risk factors for developing persistent airflow limitation				
History: Preterm birth, low birth weight and greater infant weight gain, ¹³⁰ frequent productive cough ^{131,132}				
Medications: Lack of ICS treatment in patient with history of severe exacerbation ¹³³				
Exposures: Tobacco smoke, ¹³¹ noxious chemicals; occupational or domestic exposures ⁷⁵				
Investigation findings: Low initial FEV ₁ , ¹³² sputum or blood eosinophilia ¹³²				
iii. Risk factors for medication side-effects				
Systemic Frequent OCS, long-term, high-dose and/or potent ICS, cytochrome P450 inhibitors ^{§134}				
Local: High-dose or potent ICS, ^{134,135} poor inhaler technique ¹³⁶				

FeNO: fractional exhaled nitric oxide; FEV₁: forced expiratory volume in 1 second; GERD: gastro-esophageal reflux disease; ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist; OCS: oral corticosteroid. *In addition to assessing recent asthma symptom control, also ask the patient about symptom control over the whole period since their last clinical review. There are no validated tools for assessing long-term symptom control (>4 weeks); † Based on SABA (as-needed ICS-formoterol reliever not included); excludes reliever taken before exercise (see Assessing asthma symptom control, p.42); ‡ Independent risk factors after adjustment for the level of symptom control. Some studies have evaluated several of the above risk factors for exacerbations;⁹⁹⁻¹⁰¹ § Cytochrome P450 inhibitors such as ritonavir, ketoconazole, itraconazole may increase systemic exposure to some types of ICS and some long-acting beta₂-agonists; see drug interaction websites and p.131 for details. For children 6–11 years, also refer to Box 2-3, p.44. See Box 3-5, p.61 for specific risk reduction strategies.

How to describe a patient's asthma control

Asthma control should be described in terms of both symptom control and future risk domains. For example:

Ms X has good asthma symptom control, but she is at increased risk of future exacerbations because she has had a severe exacerbation within the last year. Mr Y has poor asthma symptom control. He also has several additional risk factors for future exacerbations, including low lung function, current smoking, and poor medication adherence.

What does the term “asthma control” mean to patients?

Many studies describe discordance between the patient's and health provider's assessment of the patient's level of asthma control. This does not necessarily mean that patients overestimate their level of control or underestimate its severity, but that patients understand and use the word “control” differently from healthcare providers, e.g., based on how quickly their symptoms resolve when they take reliever medication.^{97,137} If the term “asthma control” is used with patients, the meaning should always be explained.

ASSESSING ASTHMA SYMPTOM CONTROL

Asthma symptoms such as wheeze, chest tightness, shortness of breath and cough typically vary in frequency and intensity, and contribute to the burden of asthma for the patient. Poor symptom control is also strongly associated with an increased risk of asthma exacerbations.¹³⁸⁻¹⁴⁰

Asthma symptom control should be assessed at every opportunity, including during routine prescribing or dispensing. Directed questioning is important, as the frequency or severity of symptoms that patients regard as unacceptable or bothersome may vary from current recommendations about the goals of asthma treatment, and may differ from patient to patient. For example, despite having low lung function, a person with a sedentary lifestyle may not experience bothersome symptoms and so may appear to have good symptom control.

To assess recent symptom control (Box 2-2A, p.41) ask about the following in the past four weeks: frequency of asthma symptoms (days per week), any night waking due to asthma or limitation of activity and, for patients using a SABA reliever, frequency of its use for relief of symptoms. In general, do not include reliever taken before exercise, because some people take this routinely without knowing whether they need it.

Frequency of reliever use

Historically, frequency of SABA reliever use (<2 or ≥ 2 days/week) has been included in composite assessments of symptom control. This distinction was arbitrary, based on the assumption that if SABA was used on >2 days in a week, the patient needed to start maintenance ICS-containing therapy or increase the dose. In addition, higher average use of SABA over a year is associated with a higher risk of severe exacerbations,^{102,103} and in the shorter term, increasing use of as-needed SABA is associated with an increased likelihood of a severe exacerbation in subsequent days or weeks.¹⁴¹

However, for patients prescribed an anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR) such as as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol (GINA Track 1, Box 4-6, p.83), use of this reliever more than 2 days/week is already providing additional ICS therapy, so further dose escalation may not be needed. In addition, increasing use of as-needed ICS-formoterol is associated with a significantly lower risk of severe exacerbation in subsequent days or weeks, compared with SABA reliever used with maintenance ICS-containing treatment,^{142,143} or compared with SABA alone.¹⁴⁴

For these reasons, while the assessment of symptom control in Box 2-2A (p.41) includes a criterion for SABA reliever use on ≤ 2 versus >2 days/week, it does not include a similar criterion for an anti-inflammatory reliever such as as-needed ICS-formoterol. However, the patient's average frequency of as-needed ICS-formoterol use over the past 4 weeks should be assessed, and considered when the patient's maintenance ICS dose (or need for maintenance ICS-formoterol) is reviewed. This issue will be reviewed again when more data become available.

Tools for assessing recent asthma symptom control in adults and adolescents

Simple screening tools: These can be used in primary care to quickly identify patients who need more detailed assessment. Examples include the consensus-based GINA symptom control tool (Part A, Box 2-2A, p.41). This classification correlates with assessments made using numerical asthma control scores.^{145,146} It can be used, together with a risk assessment (Box 2-2B), to guide treatment decisions (Box 4-6, p.83). Other examples are the Primary Care

Asthma Control Screening Tool (PACS),¹⁴⁷ and the 30-second Asthma Test, which also includes work/school absence.¹⁴⁸

Categorical symptom control tools: Examples include the consensus-based “Royal College of Physicians (RCP) Three Questions” tool,¹⁴⁹ which asks about difficulty sleeping, daytime symptoms and activity limitation due to asthma in the previous month. The Asthma Activities, Persistent, triGgers, Asthma medications, Response to therapy (APGAR) tool includes a patient-completed asthma control assessment covering 5 domains: activity limitations, daytime and nighttime symptom frequency (based on US criteria for frequency of night waking), triggers, adherence, and patient-perceived response to treatment. This assessment is linked to a care algorithm for identifying problems and adjusting treatment up or down. A study in the US showed that introduction of the Asthma APGAR tools for patients aged 5–45 years in primary care was associated with improved rates of asthma control; reduced asthma-related urgent care, and hospital visits; and increased practices’ adherence to asthma management guidelines.¹⁵⁰

Numerical “asthma control” tools: These tools provide scores and cut points to distinguish different levels of **symptom** control, validated against healthcare provider assessment. Many translations are available. These scores may be useful for assessing patient progress; they are commonly used in clinical research, but may be subject to copyright restrictions. Numerical asthma control tools are more sensitive to change in symptom control than categorical tools.¹⁴⁵

Examples of numerical asthma control tools for assessing recent symptom control are:

- **Asthma Control Questionnaire (ACQ):**^{151,152} Scores range from 0–6 (higher is worse), with scores calculated as the average from all questions. The authors stated that ACQ ≤ 0.75 indicated a high probability that asthma was well controlled; 0.75–1.5 was a “grey zone”; and ≥ 1.5 indicated a high probability that asthma was poorly controlled, based on concepts of asthma control at the time. They later identified 1.0 as the approximate crossover point between “well-controlled” and “not well-controlled” asthma.¹⁵³ The 5-item ACQ (ACQ-5), comprises five symptom questions. Two additional versions were published: ACQ-6 includes SABA frequency, and ACQ-7 also includes pre-bronchodilator FEV₁% predicted. The minimum clinically important difference for all three versions of ACQ is 0.5.¹⁵³ GINA recommends ACQ 5 over ACQ-6 or 7 because the reliever question for ACQ-6 and 7 assumes regular, rather than as-needed use of SABA, there is no option between zero SABA use in a week and SABA use every day, and ACQ has not been validated with ICS-formoterol or ICS-SABA as the reliever. In addition, if ACQ-7 were to be used in adjustment of treatment, the inclusion of FEV₁ in the composite score could lead to repeated step-up in ICS dose for patients with persistent airflow limitation. For these reasons, data for ACQ-5, ACQ-6 and ACQ-7 cannot be combined for meta-analysis.
- **Asthma Control Test (ACT):**^{146,154,155} Scores range from 5–25 (higher is better). Scores of 20–25 are classified as “well-controlled”, 16–19 as “not well-controlled”, and 5–15 as “very poorly controlled” asthma. The ACT has four symptom/ reliever questions plus patient self-assessed control. The minimum clinically important difference is 3 points.¹⁵⁵ It has not been validated with ICS-formoterol or ICS-SABA reliever.

Patients with good symptom control can still be at risk of future severe exacerbations or asthma-related death, and there are many modifiable risk factors for exacerbations that are independent of symptom control (Box 2-2B, p.41), so GINA does not recommend assessment tools that combine symptom control with exacerbation history.

When different tools are used for assessing asthma symptom control, the results correlate broadly with each other, but are not identical. Respiratory symptoms may be non-specific so, when assessing changes in symptom control, it is important to clarify whether symptoms are due to asthma.

Recent symptom control can be assessed over the previous 1–4 weeks using tools such as in GINA Box 2-2A (p.41), or ACQ-5 or ACT. There are no validated tools for assessing asthma symptom control over a longer period (e.g., 12 months). In clinical practice, clinicians can use a simple question to ask patients about asthma control over previous months, but substantial recall error is likely, particularly for mild symptoms.

Tools for assessing health status in adults and adolescents with asthma

The Chronic Airways Assessment Test (CAAT) is a simple, standardized, eight-item tool that provides a comprehensive patient-centered evaluation of health status across respiratory diseases, including asthma. It includes questions about sputum and energy which are not included in other standard asthma tools. Higher CAAT scores are associated with worse symptom control and greater exercise limitation.¹⁵⁶ The cut-off values and minimum clinically important difference for the CAAT have not yet been determined in patients with asthma.

Box 2-3. Specific questions for assessment of asthma in children 6–11 years

Asthma symptom control	
Day symptoms	Ask: How often does the child have cough, wheeze, dyspnea or heavy breathing (number of times per week or day)? What triggers the symptoms? How are symptoms managed?
Night symptoms	Cough, awakenings, tiredness during the day? (If the only symptom is nocturnal cough, consider other diagnoses such as rhinitis or gastroesophageal reflux disease).
Reliever use	How often is reliever medication used? (check date on inhaler or last prescription) Distinguish between pre-exercise use (sports) and use for relief of symptoms.
Level of activity	What sports/hobbies/interests does the child have, at school and in their spare time? How does the child's level of activity compare with their peers or siblings? How many days is the child absent from school? Try to get an accurate picture of the child's day from the child without interruption from the parent/caregiver.
Risk factors for adverse outcomes	
Exacerbations	Ask: How do viral infections affect the child's asthma? Do symptoms interfere with school or sports? How long do the symptoms last? How many episodes have occurred since their last medical review? Any urgent doctor/emergency department visits? Is there a written action plan? Risk factors for exacerbations include a history of exacerbations, poor symptom control, poor adherence and poverty, ¹²⁹ and persistent bronchodilator response even if the child has few symptoms. ¹²³
Lung function	Check spirogram curves and technique. Main focus is on FEV ₁ and FEV ₁ /FVC ratio. Plot these values as percent predicted to see trends over time.
Side-effects	Check the child's height at least yearly, as poorly controlled asthma can affect growth, ¹⁵⁷ and growth velocity may be lower in the first 1–2 years of ICS treatment. ^{158,159} Ask about frequency and dose of ICS and OCS.
Treatment factors	
Inhaler technique	Ask the child to show how they use their inhaler. Compare with a device-specific checklist.
Adherence	Is there any of the child's prescribed maintenance medication (inhalers and/or tablets) in the home at present? On how many days in a week does the child use it (e.g., 0, 2, 4, 7 days)? Is it easier to remember to use it in the morning or evening? Where is the medication kept: is it in plain view to reduce forgetting? Check date on inhaler.
Goals/concerns	Does the child or their parent or caregiver have any concerns about their asthma (e.g., fear of medication, side-effects, interference with activity)? What are their goals for treatment?
Comorbidities	
Allergic rhinitis	Itching, sneezing, nasal obstruction? Can the child breathe through their nose? What medications are being taken for nasal symptoms?
Eczema	Sleep disturbance, topical corticosteroids?
Food allergy	Is the child allergic to any foods? (Confirmed food allergy is a risk factor for asthma-related death.) ¹¹⁰
Obesity	Check age-adjusted BMI. Ask about diet and physical activity.
Other investigations (if needed)	
2-week diary	If no clear assessment can be made based on the above questions, ask the child or parent/caregiver to keep a daily diary of asthma symptoms, reliever use and peak expiratory flow (best of three) for 2 weeks.
Formal exercise challenge	Provides information about airway hyperresponsiveness and fitness (Box 1-2, p.28). Only perform challenge testing if it is otherwise difficult to assess asthma control.

BMI: body mass index; FEV₁: forced expiratory volume in 1 second; FVC: forced vital capacity; ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; OCS: oral corticosteroid.

Tools for assessing recent asthma symptom control for children aged 6–11 years

In children, as in adults, assessment of asthma symptom control is based on symptoms, limitation of activities and use of rescue medication. Careful review of the impact of asthma on a child's daily activities, including sports, play and social life, and on school absenteeism, is important. Many children with poorly controlled asthma avoid strenuous exercise so their asthma may appear to be well controlled. This may lead to poor fitness and a higher risk of obesity.

Children vary considerably in the degree of airflow limitation observed before they complain of dyspnea or use their reliever therapy, and marked reduction in lung function is often seen before it is recognized by the parent or caregiver. They may report irritability, tiredness, and changes in mood in their child as the main problems when the child's asthma is not controlled. Parents/caregivers have a longer recall period than children, who may recall only the last few days. Therefore, it is important to include information from both the parent/caregiver and the child when assessing the level of symptom control.

Several numeric tools have been developed for assessing recent asthma symptom control for children.¹⁶⁰ These include:

- **Childhood Asthma Control Test (c-ACT)**¹⁶¹ with separate sections for parent/caregiver and child to complete
- **Asthma Control Questionnaire (ACQ)**.^{162,163}

Composite asthma scores for children 6–11 years

Assessment of asthma in children, as in adults/adolescents, should include assessment not only of symptom control but also of risk factors for exacerbations (Box 2-2, p.41). Some "asthma control" scores for children include the history of exacerbations as well as symptoms. They include the Test for Respiratory and Asthma Control in Kids (TRACK, evaluated only in children 5 years or younger),¹⁶⁴⁻¹⁶⁶ the Composite Asthma Severity Index (CASI),¹⁶⁷ and the Pediatric Asthma Impairment and Risk Questionnaire (Peds-AIRQ;¹⁶⁸ external validation awaited). However, children assessed as having "well-controlled asthma" by these tools can still be at risk of future exacerbations.

A history of **any** exacerbation in the past 12 months should prompt review of the child's medications, adherence and inhaler technique, and a review of their action plan, even if they have few or no recent symptoms. The parent/caregiver should also be asked about other risk factors, including SABA over-use, exposure to relevant aeroallergens and confirmed food allergy, that increase the risk of exacerbations independent of symptom control (Box 2-2B, p.41).

The results of these various tests correlate, to some extent, with each other and with the GINA classification of symptom control. Box 2-3 (p.44) provides more details about assessing asthma control in children.

ASSESSING RISK OF EXACERBATIONS, LUNG FUNCTION DECLINE AND ADVERSE EFFECTS

The second component of asthma control to assess (Box 2-2B, p.41) is whether the patient is at risk of adverse asthma outcomes, particularly exacerbations, persistent airflow limitation, and side-effects of medications (Box 2-2B).

Asthma symptoms strongly predict an individual's risk of future exacerbations, but assessing only symptoms is not sufficient for several reasons:

- Asthma symptoms can be controlled by placebo or sham treatments^{169,170} or by inappropriate use of SABA or LABA alone,¹⁷¹ all of which leave airway inflammation untreated.
- Respiratory symptoms may be due to other conditions such as lack of fitness, or comorbidities such as inducible laryngeal obstruction.⁶⁹
- Anxiety or depression may contribute to higher symptom reporting.
- Some patients have impaired perception of (expiratory) airflow limitation, with few symptoms despite low lung function.¹⁷²
- In patients with good symptom control, exacerbations can be triggered by environmental exposures such as viral infections, allergen exposure and poor air quality.

Asthma symptom control and exacerbation risk should not be simply combined numerically, as poor control of symptoms and of exacerbations may have different causes and may need different treatment approaches.

Risk factors for exacerbations

Poor asthma symptom control itself substantially increases the risk of exacerbations.¹³⁸⁻¹⁴⁰ However, several additional independent risk factors have been identified, i.e., factors that, when present, increase the patient's risk of exacerbations even if symptoms are few. These risk factors (Box 2-2B, p.41) include a history of ≥ 1 exacerbation in the previous year, poor adherence, incorrect inhaler technique, low lung function, chronic sinusitis, smoking, and raised FeNO or raised blood eosinophil count, all of which can be assessed in primary care.⁹⁹⁻¹⁰¹ Analysis of the placebo groups of randomized controlled trials, mainly in patients with moderate-severe asthma, confirmed that many of the factors in Box 2-2B (p.41) were independently associated with an increased rate of severe exacerbations.¹⁰⁰

The risk of severe exacerbations and mortality increases incrementally with higher SABA use, independent of treatment step.¹⁰³ Prescribing of three or more 200-dose SABA inhalers in a year, corresponding to more than daily use, is associated with an increased risk of severe exacerbations^{102,103} and increased mortality.^{103,105} Risk factors and comorbidities that are modifiable (or potentially modifiable) are often called “treatable traits”.¹⁷³

Environmental exposures to respiratory viruses, aeroallergens, air pollution and weather changes (p.139) can also contribute substantially to exacerbation risk, and are often not recorded in clinical trials. The large reduction in asthma hospitalizations during the COVID-19 pandemic that was seen in many countries demonstrated that reducing exposure to respiratory viruses can significantly reduce the risk of exacerbations in patients with asthma.^{174,175}

In children, the risk of exacerbations is greatly increased if there is a history of previous exacerbations; it is also increased with poor symptom control, suboptimal drug regimen, comorbid allergic disease and poverty.¹²⁹

Risk factors for development of persistent airflow limitation

The average rate of decline in FEV₁ in non-smoking healthy adults is 15–20 mL/year.¹⁷⁶ People with asthma may have an accelerated decline in lung function and develop airflow limitation that is not fully responsive to bronchodilators. This is often associated with more persistent dyspnea. Independent risk factors that have been identified for persistent airflow limitation include exposure to cigarette smoke or noxious agents, frequent productive cough, and asthma exacerbations in patients not taking ICS¹³³ (see Box 2-2B, p.41). Children with persistent asthma may have reduced growth in lung function, and some are at risk of accelerated decline in lung function in early adult life.¹⁷⁷ There is no clear evidence that treatment with ICS prevents accelerated decline in post-bronchodilator lung function, i.e., that it prevents development of persistent airflow limitation.

Risk factors for medication side-effects

Choices with any medication are based on the balance of benefit and risk. Most people using asthma medications do not experience any side-effects. The risk of side-effects increases with higher doses of medications, but these are needed in few patients.

ICS: Systemic side-effects that may be seen with long-term, high-dose ICS include easy bruising, an increase beyond the usual age-related risk of osteoporosis and fragility fractures, cataracts, glaucoma, and adrenal suppression. Local side-effects of ICS include oral candidiasis (thrush) and dysphonia. Patients are at greater risk of ICS side-effects with higher doses or more potent formulations^{134,135} and, for local side-effects, with incorrect inhaler technique.¹³⁶

Systemic corticosteroids: Short-term side-effects of short courses include sepsis, thromboembolism, sleep disturbance, reflux, appetite increase, hyperglycemia, and mood changes.¹⁷⁸ Cumulative long-term adverse effects are seen with even 4–5 lifetime courses of oral corticosteroids, e.g., diabetes, osteoporosis, cataract, glaucoma, heart failure.¹⁷⁹ Maintenance use (used only as last resort) is associated with significant adverse effects such as cataract, glaucoma, hypertension, diabetes, adrenal suppression, and osteoporosis.¹⁸⁰⁻¹⁸³ Adverse effects should be actively assessed, monitored and managed.

Drug interactions with asthma medications: concomitant treatment with cytochrome P450 inhibitors such as ketoconazole, ritonavir, itraconazole, erythromycin and clarithromycin may increase the risk of ICS adverse effects such as adrenal suppression, and with short-term use, may increase the risk of cardiovascular adverse effects of the LABAs salmeterol and vilanterol (alone or in combination with ICS). Concomitant use of these medications is not recommended (see also p.131).¹⁸⁴

For a summary of asthma medication side-effects, see Appendix B. Overview of asthma medication classes (p.243).

ROLE OF LUNG FUNCTION IN ASSESSING ASTHMA CONTROL

Does lung function relate to other asthma control measures?

Lung function does not correlate strongly with asthma symptoms in adults¹⁸⁵ or children.¹⁸⁶ In some asthma control tools, lung function is numerically averaged or combined with symptoms^{151,187} but this is not recommended because, if the tool includes several symptom items, these can outweigh clinically important differences in lung function.¹⁸⁸ In addition, low FEV₁ is a strong independent predictor of risk of exacerbations, even after adjustment for symptom frequency.

Lung function should be assessed at diagnosis or start of treatment, after 3–6 months of ICS-containing treatment to assess the patient's personal best FEV₁, and periodically thereafter. For example, lung function should be recorded at least every 1–2 years for most adult patients, but more frequently for higher-risk patients, including those with exacerbations and those at risk of decline in lung function (see Box 2-2B, p.41). Lung function should also be recorded more frequently in children based on asthma severity and clinical course (Evidence D).

Once the diagnosis of asthma has been confirmed, it is not generally necessary to ask patients to withhold their regular or as-needed medications before visits,⁴² but preferably the same conditions should apply at each visit.

How to interpret lung function test results in asthma

A low FEV₁ percent predicted:

- Identifies patients at risk of asthma exacerbations, independent of symptom levels, especially if FEV₁ is <60% predicted^{112,121,189,190}
- Is a risk factor for lung function decline, independent of symptom levels¹³²
- If symptoms are few, suggests limitation of lifestyle, or poor perception of airflow limitation,¹⁹¹ which may be due to untreated airway inflammation.¹⁷²

Normal FEV₁: A “normal” or near-normal FEV₁ in a patient with frequent respiratory symptoms (especially when symptomatic) prompts consideration of alternative causes for the symptoms (e.g., cardiac disease, or cough due to post-nasal drip or gastroesophageal reflux disease; Box 1-3, p.30).

Persistent bronchodilator responsiveness: Significant bronchodilator responsiveness (increase in FEV₁ ≥12% and ≥200 mL from baseline)¹⁸ in a patient taking ICS-containing treatment, or who has taken a SABA within 4 hours, or a LABA within 12 hours (or 24 hours for a once-daily LABA), suggests uncontrolled asthma, particularly poor adherence and/or incorrect technique.

In children, spirometry cannot be reliably obtained until age 5 years or later, and it is less useful than in adults. Many children with uncontrolled asthma have normal lung function between flare-ups (exacerbations).

How to interpret changes in lung function in clinical practice

With regular ICS treatment, FEV₁ starts to improve within days, and reaches a plateau after around 2 months.¹⁹² The patient's highest FEV₁ reading (personal best) should be documented, as this provides a more useful comparison for clinical practice than FEV₁ percent predicted. If predicted values are used in children, measure their height at each visit.

Some patients may have a faster than average decrease in lung function, and develop persistent (incompletely responsive) airflow limitation. While a short-term (e.g., 3 months) trial of higher dose ICS or ICS-LABA may be appropriate to see if FEV₁ can be improved, high doses should not be continued longer than this if there is no response.

The between-visit variability of FEV₁ (up to 12% week-to-week or 15% year-to-year in healthy individuals)¹⁸ limits its use in adjusting asthma treatment or identifying accelerated decline in clinical practice. The minimal important difference for improvement and worsening in FEV₁, based on patient perception of change, has been reported to be about 10%.^{193,194}

The role of short-term and long-term lung function monitoring

Once the diagnosis of asthma is made, short-term peak expiratory flow (PEF) monitoring may be used to assess response to treatment, to evaluate triggers (including at work) for worsening symptoms, or to establish a baseline for

action plans. After starting ICS, personal best PEF (from twice daily readings) is reached on average within 2 weeks.¹⁹⁵ Average PEF continues to increase, and diurnal PEF variability to decrease, for about 3 months.^{185,195} Excessive variation in PEF suggests suboptimal asthma control, and increases the risk of exacerbations.¹⁹⁶

Long-term PEF monitoring is now generally only recommended for patients with severe asthma, or those with impaired perception of airflow limitation (e.g., few symptoms despite low initial lung function).^{172,197-200} In clinical practice, displaying PEF results on a standardized chart may improve accuracy of interpretation.²⁰¹

Home spirometric monitoring has been used in some clinical trials; careful training of patients in spirometric technique is essential. Results from clinic-based and home-recorded spirometry are not interchangeable.

ASSESSING ASTHMA SEVERITY

The current concept of asthma severity is based on “difficulty to treat”

The current concept of asthma severity, recommended by an American Thoracic Society/European Respiratory Society Task Force^{42,97} and included in most asthma guidelines, is that asthma severity should be assessed retrospectively from how difficult the patient's asthma is to treat. This is reflected by the level of treatment required to control the patient's symptoms and exacerbations, i.e., after at least several months of treatment.^{42,97,202} This definition is mainly relevant to, and useful for, severe asthma.

By this definition:

- Severe asthma is defined as asthma that remains uncontrolled despite optimized treatment with high-dose ICS-LABA, or that requires high-dose ICS-LABA to prevent it from becoming uncontrolled. Severe asthma, i.e., asthma that is relatively refractory to corticosteroid treatment must be distinguished from asthma that is difficult to treat due to inadequate or inappropriate treatment, or problems with adherence or comorbidities such as chronic rhinosinusitis or obesity, since correction of these comorbidities or risk factors (“treatable traits”) can significantly improve asthma control.²⁰² See Box 2-4 (p.52) for how to distinguish difficult-to-treat asthma from severe asthma, and Section 8 (p.149) for more detail about assessment, referral and treatment in this population.
- Moderate asthma is asthma that is well controlled with Step 3 or Step 4 treatment e.g., with low- or medium-dose ICS LABA in either treatment track.
- Mild asthma is asthma that is well controlled with low-intensity treatment, i.e., as needed low-dose ICS-formoterol, or low-dose ICS plus as-needed SABA.

However, the utility of this retrospective definition of asthma severity is limited by the fact that it cannot be assessed unless good asthma control has been achieved and treatment stepped down to find the patient's minimum effective dose at which their asthma remains well controlled (Box 4-13, p.112), or unless asthma remains uncontrolled despite at least several months of optimized maximal therapy.

The terms “severe asthma” and “mild asthma” are often used with different meanings than this

In the community and in primary care, the terms “severe” or “mild” asthma are more commonly based on the frequency or severity of symptoms or exacerbations, irrespective of treatment. For example, asthma is commonly called “severe” if patients have frequent or troublesome asthma symptoms, regardless of their treatment, and “mild asthma” is commonly used if patients do not have daily symptoms or if symptoms are quickly relieved.

In epidemiological studies and clinical trials, asthma is often classified as “mild”, “moderate” or “severe” based only on the prescribed treatment according to GINA Step or other guidelines steps, regardless of patients' level of asthma control. This approach assumes that the prescribed treatment was appropriate for the patient's needs, but asthma is often under-treated or over-treated.

Most *clinical trials of biologic therapy* enroll patients with asthma that is uncontrolled despite taking medium- or high-dose ICS-LABA, but contributory factors such as incorrect inhaler technique, poor adherence, or comorbidities are rarely assessed and treated before the patient's eligibility for enrolment is considered.^{203,204} Some clinical trial participants may therefore have “difficult-to-treat”, rather than severe asthma.

Some *guidelines*^{205,206} also retain another, older, classification of asthma severity based on symptom and SABA frequency, night waking, lung function and exacerbations before ICS-containing treatment is started.^{42,97} This classification also distinguishes between “intermittent” and “mild persistent” asthma, but this historical distinction was

arbitrary: it was not based on evidence, but on an untested assumption that patients with symptoms ≤ 2 days/week were not at risk and would not benefit from ICS, so should be treated with SABA alone. However, it is now known that patients with so-called “intermittent” asthma can have severe or fatal exacerbations.^{207,208} and that their risk is substantially reduced by ICS-containing treatment, compared with SABA alone.²⁰⁹⁻²¹¹ Although this symptom-based classification is stated to apply to patients not on ICS-containing treatment,^{205,206} it is often used for patients taking these medications. This can cause confusion, as a patient’s asthma may be classified differently, and they may be prescribed different treatment, depending on which definition the clinician or healthcare system uses.

For *low-resource countries* without access to effective medications such as ICS, the World Health Organization definition of severe asthma²¹² includes a category of “untreated severe asthma”. This category corresponds to uncontrolled asthma in patients not taking any ICS-containing treatment.

The patient’s view of asthma severity

Patients may perceive their asthma as severe if they have intense or frequent symptoms, but this does not necessarily indicate underlying severe disease, as symptoms and lung function can rapidly become well controlled with commencement of ICS-containing treatment, or improved inhaler technique or adherence.^{42,97} Likewise, patients often perceive their asthma as mild if they have symptoms that are easily relieved by SABA, or that are infrequent.^{42,97} Of concern, patients often interpret the term “mild asthma” to mean that they are not at risk of severe exacerbations and do not need to take ICS-containing treatment. This is often described as patients “underestimating” their asthma severity, but instead it reflects their different interpretation of the words “severity” and “mild”, compared with the academic usage of these terms.^{42,97}

How useful is the current retrospective definition of asthma severity?

The retrospective definition of **severe asthma** based on difficulty to treat has been widely accepted in guidelines and in specialist clinical practice. It has obvious clinical utility as it identifies patients who, because of their burden of disease and incomplete response to optimized conventional ICS-based treatment, may benefit from referral to a respiratory physician (if available) for further investigation, phenotyping, and consideration of additional treatment such as biologic therapy (See Section 8, p.149). It is appropriate to classify asthma as “difficult-to-treat” rather than severe if there are modifiable factors such as incorrect inhaler technique, poor adherence or untreated comorbidities, because asthma may become well controlled when such issues are addressed.^{42,97,202}

By contrast, the clinical utility of the retrospective definition of **mild asthma** is much less clear. There is substantial variation in opinions about the specific criteria that should be used, for example whether FEV₁ should be $\geq 80\%$ predicted in order for asthma to be considered “mild”, and whether the occurrence of any exacerbation precludes a patient’s asthma being classified as “mild” for the next 12 months.²¹³ There are too few studies of the underlying pathology to discern whether isolated exacerbations necessarily imply greater inherent severity, especially given the contribution of external triggers such as viral infections or allergen exposure to sporadic exacerbations.

Further, by this definition, asthma can be classified as mild only after several months of ICS-containing treatment, and only if asthma is well controlled on low-dose ICS or as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol, so this definition clearly cannot be applied to patients with uncontrolled or partly controlled symptoms who are taking SABA.

Finally, retrospective classification of asthma as mild appears of little value in deciding on future treatment. In addition, in the studies of as-needed ICS-formoterol, baseline patient characteristics such as daily reliever use, lower lung function or history of exacerbations (or even baseline blood eosinophils or FeNO) did not identify patients who should instead be treated with daily ICS.^{214,215} Instead, decisions about ongoing treatment should be based upon the large evidence base about the efficacy and effectiveness of as-needed ICS-formoterol or daily ICS, together with an individualized assessment of the patient’s symptom control, exacerbation risk, predictors of response, and patient preferences (see Box 3-3, p.58 and Box 3-4, p.58).

However, the most urgent problem with the term “mild asthma”, regardless of how it is defined, is that it encourages complacency, since patients, clinicians and health policy makers often interpret “mild asthma” to mean that the patient is at low risk and does not need ICS-containing treatment. However, up to 30% of asthma exacerbations and deaths occur in people with infrequent symptoms, for example, less than weekly or only on strenuous exercise.^{207,208}

Interim advice about asthma severity descriptors

For clinical practice

GINA continues to support the current definition of severe asthma as asthma that remains uncontrolled despite optimized treatment with high-dose ICS-LABA, or that requires high-dose ICS-LABA or biologic therapy to prevent it from becoming uncontrolled. GINA also maintains the clinically important distinction between difficult-to-treat and severe asthma (Box 2-4, p.52 and Section 8, p.149). For patients who have had a good asthma response to biologic therapy, a precise description in the medical record would be, e.g., “severe eosinophilic asthma, well controlled on [therapy]”, to indicate that the biologic therapy is needed to maintain their improved status. For discussion about the related concept of asthma remission on treatment, see p.55.

We suggest that in clinical practice, the term “mild asthma” should generally be avoided if possible, because of the common but mistaken assumption by patients and clinicians that it equates to low risk, and that ICS treatment is not needed. Instead, assess each patient’s symptom control and risk factors on their current treatment (Box 2-1, p.40), as well as multimorbidity and patient goals and preferences. Explain that patients with infrequent or mild asthma symptoms can still have severe or fatal exacerbations if treated with SABA alone,^{207,208} and that this risk is reduced by half to two-thirds with low-dose ICS or with as-needed low-dose ICS formoterol.^{209,210} Routinely prescribe ICS-containing therapy to reduce the patient’s risk of severe exacerbations (Box 4-3, p.80), and treat any modifiable risk factors or comorbidities using pharmacologic or non-pharmacologic strategies (see Box 3-5, p.61 and Box 3-6, p.63).

“Mild asthma” is a retrospective label, so it cannot be used to decide which treatment patients should receive. Advice has been provided in Section 4 about which patients are suitable for low intensity treatment (Step 1 and 2).

For healthcare provider education

The term “apparently mild asthma” may be useful to highlight the discordance between symptoms and risk, i.e., that patients with infrequent or mild symptoms, who might therefore appear to have mild asthma, can still have severe or fatal exacerbations. However, “apparently mild asthma” in English can easily be mistranslated into some languages as “obviously mild asthma”, which is the opposite of the intended meaning. Alternative phrases include “asthma that seems to be mild”.

Regardless of the term used, explain that “asthma control” tools such as ACQ and ACT assess only one domain of asthma control, and only over a short period of time (see Assessing asthma symptom control, p.42), and that patients with infrequent interval symptoms are over-represented in studies of severe, near-fatal and fatal asthma exacerbations.^{207,208} Always emphasize the need for and benefit from ICS-containing treatment in patients with asthma, regardless of their symptom frequency or severity, and even if they have no obvious additional risk factors.

For epidemiologic studies

If clinical details are not available, describe the prescribed (or dispensed) treatment, without imputing severity, e.g., “patients prescribed SABA with no ICS” rather than “mild asthma”. Since treatment options change over time, and may differ between guidelines, state the actual treatment class, rather than a treatment Step (e.g., “low-dose maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol” rather than “Step 3 treatment”).

For clinical trials

Describe the patient population by their level of asthma control and treatment, e.g., “patients with uncontrolled asthma despite medium-dose ICS-LABA plus as-needed SABA” rather than “moderate asthma”.

Further discussion is clearly needed

Given the importance of mild asthma and the discordance between its current academic definition and the various ways that the term is used in clinical practice, GINA is continuing to discuss these issues with a wide range of stakeholders. The aim is to obtain agreement among patients, healthcare providers, researchers, industry and regulators about the implications for clinical practice and clinical research of current knowledge about asthma pathophysiology and treatment,^{42,97} and whether/how the term “mild asthma” should be used in the future. Pending the outcomes of this discussion, no change has been made to use of the term “mild asthma” elsewhere in this GINA Strategy Report.

HOW TO DISTINGUISH BETWEEN UNCONTROLLED ASTHMA AND SEVERE ASTHMA

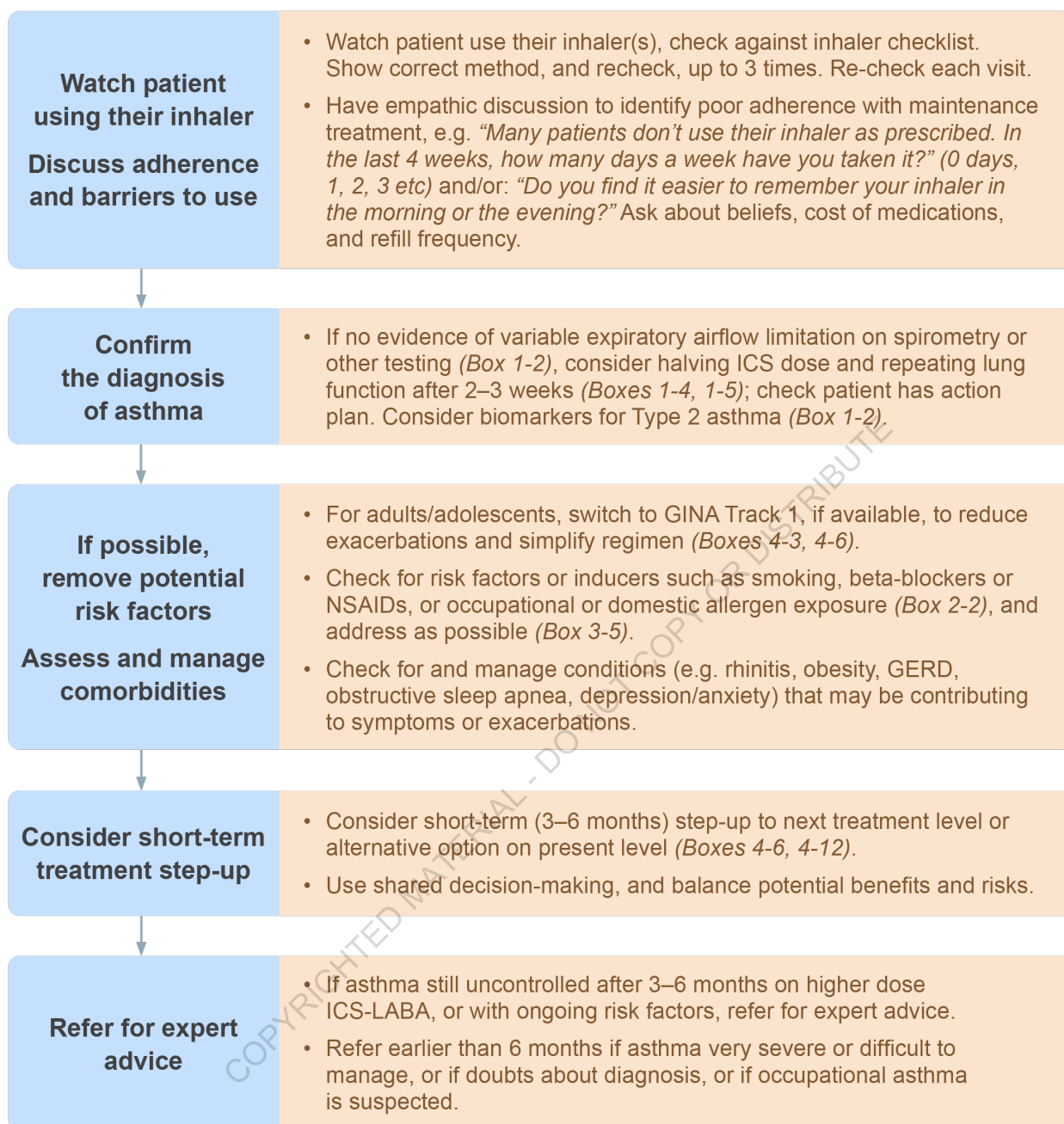
Although good symptom control and minimal exacerbations can usually be achieved with ICS-containing treatment, some patients will not achieve one or both of these goals even with a long period of high-dose therapy.^{187,202} In some patients this is due to truly refractory severe asthma, but in many others, it is due to incorrect inhaler technique, poor adherence, over-use of SABA, comorbidities, persistent environmental exposures, or psychosocial factors.

It is important to distinguish between severe asthma and uncontrolled asthma, because lack of asthma control is a much more common reason for persistent symptoms and exacerbations, and may be more easily improved. Box 2-4 (p.52) shows the initial steps that can be carried out in primary care to identify common causes of uncontrolled asthma. More details are given in Section 8 (p.149) about investigation and management of difficult-to-treat and severe asthma, including referral to a respiratory physician or severe asthma clinic where possible, and use of add-on treatment including biologic therapy.

The most common problems that need to be excluded before making a diagnosis of severe asthma are:

- Poor inhaler technique (up to 80% of community patients)¹⁰⁷ (Box 5-2, p.119)
- Poor medication adherence^{216,217} (Box 5-3, p.121)
- Incorrect diagnosis of asthma, with symptoms due to alternative conditions such as inducible laryngeal obstruction, cardiac failure or lack of fitness (Box 1-3, p.30)
- Multimorbidity such as rhinosinusitis, GERD, obesity and obstructive sleep apnea^{109,218} (Section 6, p.126)
- Ongoing exposure to sensitizing or irritant agents in the home or work environment, including tobacco smoke.

Box 2-4. Investigating poor symptom control and/or exacerbations despite ICS-containing treatment



GERD: gastro-esophageal reflux disease; ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; NSAID: nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug. See Section 8 (p.149) for more details about assessment and management of difficult-to-treat and severe asthma.

3. Principles of asthma management in adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years

KEY POINTS

The partnership between patient and healthcare provider

Effective asthma management requires a partnership between the person with asthma (or the parent/caregiver) and their healthcare providers.

Teaching communication skills to healthcare providers may lead to increased patient satisfaction, better health outcomes, and reduced use of healthcare resources.

Healthcare providers should consider the patient's ability to obtain, process and understand basic health information to make appropriate health decisions ('health literacy').

Goals of asthma management

The GINA long-term goal of asthma management is to achieve the best possible long-term outcomes for the individual patient. This may include good long-term symptom control (few/no asthma symptoms, no sleep disturbance due to asthma, and unimpaired physical activity), and minimized long-term risk of asthma-related mortality, exacerbations, persistent airflow limitation and side-effects of treatment. The patient's own goals should also be identified.

Remission of asthma

Remission of asthma can be seen in children and in adults, either clinical remission or complete remission, and either off treatment or on treatment. Definitions and criteria vary.

The concept of clinical remission on treatment is consistent with the [long-term goal of asthma management](#) promoted by GINA: to achieve the best possible long-term asthma outcomes for each patient.

Research among patients who have (or have not) experienced clinical or complete remission of asthma, either off treatment or on treatment, provides important opportunities to understand the underlying mechanisms of asthma and to develop new approaches to asthma prevention and management. The use of standardized criteria and assessment tools will facilitate this research.

Take care if using the term "remission" in conversations with patients or parents/caregivers, as they may assume it means a cure, or may associate it with cancer or leukemia. Explain what you mean, and that if asthma symptoms have "gone quiet" for a while, they may recur.

Making decisions about asthma treatment

Asthma treatment is adjusted in a continual cycle of assessment, treatment, and review of the patient's response in both symptom control and future risk (of exacerbations and side-effects), and of patient preferences.

For population-level decisions about asthma medications, e.g., national guidelines, insurers, health maintenance organizations or national formularies, the "preferred" regimens in Steps 1–4 represent the best treatments for most patients, based on evidence from randomized controlled trials, meta-analyses and observational studies of safety, efficacy and effectiveness, with a particular emphasis on symptom burden and exacerbation risk. For Steps 1–5, there are different preferred population-level recommendations for each age-group (adults/adolescents, children 6–11 years, children 5 years and younger). In Step 5, there are also different preferred population-level recommendations depending on the inflammatory phenotype.

For individual patients, shared decision-making about treatment should also consider any patient characteristics, (such as asthma phenotype) or environmental exposures that predict the patient's risk of exacerbations or other adverse outcomes, or their likely response to treatment, together with the patient's goals or concerns and practical issues (inhaler technique, adherence, medication access and cost to the patient).

Optimize asthma management, including inhaled therapy and non-pharmacologic strategies, to reduce the need for oral corticosteroids (OCS) and their multiple adverse effects.

THE PATIENT–HEALTHCARE PROVIDER PARTNERSHIP

Effective asthma management requires the development of a partnership between the person with asthma (or the parent/caregiver) and healthcare providers.²¹⁹ This should enable the person with asthma to gain the knowledge, confidence and skills to assume a major role in the management of their asthma. Self-management education reduces asthma morbidity in both adults²²⁰ (Evidence A) and children²²¹ (Evidence A).

Shared decision-making is associated with improved outcomes.^{222,223} Patients and caregivers should be encouraged to participate in decisions about treatment, and given the opportunity to express their expectations and concerns. This partnership must be individualized for each patient. A person's willingness and ability to engage in self-management may vary depending on factors such as ethnicity, literacy, understanding of health concepts (health literacy), numeracy, beliefs about asthma and medications, desire for autonomy, and the healthcare system. Shared decision-making may also vary based on health system culture and physician attitudes.

Good communication

Good communication by healthcare providers is essential as the basis for good outcomes (Evidence B).²²⁴⁻²²⁶ Teaching healthcare providers to improve their communication skills (Box 3-1) can result in increased patient satisfaction, better health outcomes, and reduced use of healthcare resources²²⁴⁻²²⁶ without lengthening consultation times.²²⁷ It can also enhance patient adherence.²²⁷ Training patients to give information clearly, seek information, and check their understanding of information provided is also associated with improved adherence to treatment recommendations.²²⁷

Box 3-1. Communication strategies for healthcare providers

Key strategies to facilitate good communication:^{225,226}

- A congenial demeanor (friendliness, humor and attentiveness)
- Allowing the patient to express their goals, beliefs and concerns
- Empathy, reassurance, and prompt handling of any concerns
- Giving support and encouragement
- Giving appropriate (personalized) information
- Providing feedback and review

How to reduce the impact of low health literacy:²²⁸

- Order information from most to least important.
- Speak slowly and use simple words (avoid medical language, if possible).
- Simplify numeric concepts (e.g., use numbers instead of percentages).
- Frame instructions effectively (use illustrative anecdotes, drawings, pictures, table or graphs).
- Confirm understanding by using the “teach-back” method (ask patients to repeat instructions).
- Ask a second person (e.g., nurse, family member) to repeat the main messages.
- Pay attention to non-verbal communication by the patient.
- Make patients feel comfortable about asking questions.

Health literacy and asthma

There is increasing recognition of the impact of low health literacy on health outcomes, including in asthma.^{228,229} Health literacy means much more than the ability to read: it is defined as “the degree to which individuals have the capacity to obtain, process and understand basic health information and services to make appropriate health decisions”.²²⁸ Low health literacy is associated with reduced knowledge and worse asthma control.²³⁰ In one study, low numeracy among parents of children with asthma was associated with higher risk of exacerbations.²²⁹ Interventions adapted for cultural and ethnicity perspectives have been associated with improved knowledge and significant improvements in inhaler technique.²³¹ Suggested strategies for communicating with patients who have low health literacy are shown in Box 3-1 (p.54).

Digital health and other approaches to remote monitoring and management of asthma

The use of digital technology, telemedicine and telehealthcare in the monitoring and management of patients with asthma is rapidly increasing, and accelerated during the COVID-19 pandemic. The types of interactions that have been investigated are diverse, and although many have shown proof-of-concept, they are often relevant to specific health systems. Recent systematic reviews^{232,233} have emphasized the need for high-quality studies to evaluate the utility, effectiveness and scalability of these interventions in real-world clinical practice.

LONG-TERM GOAL OF ASTHMA MANAGEMENT

The long-term goal of asthma management from a clinical perspective is to achieve the best possible outcomes for the patient, including long-term symptom control and long-term asthma risk minimization (Box 3-3, p.58). This includes preventing exacerbations, accelerated decline in lung function, and medication adverse effects. At a population level, the goals of asthma management also include minimizing asthma deaths, urgent health care utilization, and the socioeconomic impacts of uncontrolled asthma.

It is also important to elicit the patient's (or parent/caregiver's) goals regarding their asthma, as these may differ from medical goals. Shared goals for asthma management can be achieved in various ways, with consideration of differing healthcare systems, medication availability, and cultural and personal preferences.

Box 3-2. Long-term goal of asthma management

The goal of asthma management is to achieve the best possible long-term asthma outcomes for the patient:

- Long-term asthma symptom control, which may include:
 - Few/no asthma symptoms
 - No sleep disturbance due to asthma
 - Unimpaired physical activity
- Long-term asthma risk minimization, which may include:
 - No exacerbations
 - Improved or stable personal best lung function
 - No requirement for maintenance systemic corticosteroids
 - No medication side-effects.

The patient's goals for their asthma may be different from these medical goals; ask the patient what they want from their asthma treatment.

When discussing the best possible asthma outcomes with a patient, consider their goals, their asthma phenotype, clinical features, multimorbidity, risk factors (including severity of airflow limitation), practical issues including the availability and cost of medications, and the potential adverse effects of treatment (Box 3-4, p.58).

Assessing symptom control is NOT enough: the patient's risk factors (Box 2-2B, p.41), including history of exacerbations, should always also be assessed.

Symptom control and risk may be discordant: patients with few or no symptoms can still have severe or fatal exacerbations, including from external triggers such as viral infections, allergen exposure (if sensitized) or pollution.

REMISSION OF ASTHMA

Remission of asthma has been investigated extensively in the past, most commonly remission of childhood asthma off treatment. Definitions and criteria vary, but they commonly refer to either *clinical remission* (e.g., no asthma symptoms or exacerbations for a specific period) or *complete (or pathophysiological) remission* (e.g., also including normal or stabilized lung function, airway responsiveness and/or inflammatory markers).

There has been interest in *remission off treatment*, and *remission on treatment*, for example with biologic therapy for severe asthma.²³⁴⁻²³⁶ The concept of clinical remission on treatment is consistent with the *long-term goal of asthma management* promoted by GINA, which is to achieve the best possible long-term asthma outcomes for the patient (see Box 3-2, p.55). When discussing the best possible outcomes with a patient, consider their own asthma goals, their

asthma phenotype, clinical features, multimorbidity, risk factors (including severity of airflow limitation), practical issues including the availability and cost of medications, and the potential adverse effects of treatment (Box 3-4, p.58).

Research in patients who have (or have not) experienced clinical or complete remission of asthma, either off treatment or on treatment, provides important opportunities for understanding the heterogeneous and interconnected underlying mechanisms of asthma, and for developing new approaches to asthma prevention and management. The use of standardized criteria and tools will facilitate this research.

Remission of childhood asthma

Reported rates of *remission off treatment* from studies in children with wheezing or asthma vary depending on the populations, definitions, and length of follow-up. For example, in one study, 59% of wheezing preschool children had no wheezing at 6 years,²³⁷ whereas in another study, only 15% of children with persistent wheezing at/after 9 years had no wheezing at 26 years.²³⁸ Clinical remission is more frequent than pathophysiological remission at all ages.^{239,240}

The most important predictors of asthma remission in school-aged children are fewer, milder or decreasing frequency of symptomatic episodes,²⁴¹⁻²⁴⁴ good or improving lung function, and less airway hyperresponsiveness.²⁴⁰ Risk factors for persistence of childhood asthma include atopy, parental asthma/allergy, later onset of symptoms, wheezing without colds, and maternal smoking or tobacco smoke exposure.

Remission is not cure: after remission in childhood or adolescence, asthma often recurs later in life. Children whose asthma has remitted have an increased risk of accelerated lung decline in adulthood, independent from, but synergistic with, tobacco smoking; and they may develop persistent airflow limitation, although this is less likely than for those whose asthma has persisted.²⁴⁵ This suggests the importance of monitoring lung function in people with remission of asthma symptoms.

To date, there is no evidence that interventions in childhood increase the likelihood of remission of asthma or reduce the risk of recurrence. However, treatment of asthma in childhood with inhaled corticosteroid (ICS) substantially reduces the burden of asthma on the child and family, reduces absence from school and social events, reduces the risk of exacerbations and hospitalizations, and allows the child to participate in normal physical activity.

Parents/caregivers often ask if their child will grow out of their asthma, and will not need treatment in the future. Current consensus supports the following advice for discussions like these:

- If the child has no reported symptoms, check for evidence of ongoing disease activity (e.g., wheezing; child avoiding physical activity), and check lung function if testing is available.
- Use a description like “asthma has gone quiet for now” to help avoid misunderstandings. If you use the term “remission” with parents/caregivers, explain the medical meaning, because it is often interpreted as meaning a permanent cure.
- Advise parents/caregivers that, even if the child’s symptoms resolve completely, their asthma may recur later.
- Emphasize the benefits of taking controller treatment for the child’s current health, their risk of asthma attacks, and their ability to participate in school and sporting activities, while avoiding claims about effect of therapy on future asthma outcomes.

Research needs: clinical questions about remission off treatment in children focus on the risk factors for asthma persistence and recurrence (including clinical, pathological, and genetic factors), the effect of risk reduction strategies on the likelihood of remission, whether monitoring after remission to allow early identification of asthma recurrence improves outcomes, and whether progression to persistent airflow limitation can be prevented. Clinical questions about remission on treatment (e.g., in children with severe asthma treated with biologic therapy) include investigating whether inhaled anti-inflammatory therapy can be down-titrated.

Remission of adult asthma

Clinical or complete *remission off treatment* has been observed in some adults, either spontaneously or after cessation of controller treatment. For example, 15.9% of patients with adult-onset asthma experienced clinical remission (no asthma symptoms and no asthma medications) within 5 years.³⁰ Remission is sometimes seen in people with occupational asthma after cessation of exposure.²⁴⁶ Clinical remission of asthma in adult life is more common with

childhood-onset asthma than adult-onset asthma. However, persistence of airway hyperresponsiveness and/or airway inflammation is found in most adults with clinical remission of asthma.²³⁹

In recent years, there has been increasing interest in asthma *remission on treatment*, particularly with biologic therapy for severe asthma. Various definitions have been proposed. For clinical remission, these often include criteria such as no asthma symptoms, no exacerbations, no use of oral corticosteroids (OCS), and stable or improving lung function, over a defined prolonged period. For complete remission, normalization of airway responsiveness and/or inflammatory markers has been proposed.

For patients with severe asthma treated with biological therapy and medium- or high-dose ICS in combination with a long-acting beta₂-agonist (LABA), remission rates will vary depending on the baseline characteristics of the populations studied and the criteria for and duration of, remission (including how “no symptoms” is assessed).^{234-236,247,218}

Baseline predictors of *remission on treatment* with various biologic therapies for severe asthma include better short-term asthma symptom control scores (Asthma Control Test [ACT] or Asthma Control Questionnaire [ACQ]), better lung function, fewer comorbidities, earlier asthma onset, and no or lower maintenance OCS use at baseline.^{236,248} Comorbidities are particularly relevant to the assessment of remission, since respiratory symptoms such as shortness of breath and cough are not specific for asthma. In a study of clinical *remission off treatment* of adult-onset asthma, the only baseline predictors of clinical persistence were moderate-to-severe airway hyperresponsiveness and nasal polyps.³⁰

Although clinical asthma remission on treatment has been most extensively investigated in adults with severe asthma treated with biologics, the concept is relevant to patients with asthma of any severity and any treatment, including ICS-containing therapy, oral pharmacotherapies, allergen immunotherapy and non-pharmacological interventions (e.g., lifestyle interventions).

In the mainstream media, the word “remission” is most often heard in association with cancer or leukemia, so if it is used in discussion with patients, the medical meaning for asthma should be explained. If the patient experiences clinical remission, explain that this does not mean permanent cure, and that they should not stop taking any of their asthma medications except on medical advice, and with careful monitoring.

Research needs: for asthma remission on treatment in adults include examination of the association between clinical criteria with biomarkers, imaging (including evidence of airway remodeling), or pathology samples (including for “omics” analysis) that may reflect the underlying disease processes or the effects of treatment, and investigation of predictors of long-term remission or recurrence. The framework for validating proposed criteria for remission on treatment will depend on their intended purpose, for example as an assessment tool in clinical practice, for prognosis of continued long-term stability, or for identifying new targets for therapy. There is a need for clinical and qualitative research with a range of treatments, to learn whether aiming for remission will improve long-term outcomes for patients with asthma.

PERSONALIZED CONTROL-BASED ASTHMA MANAGEMENT

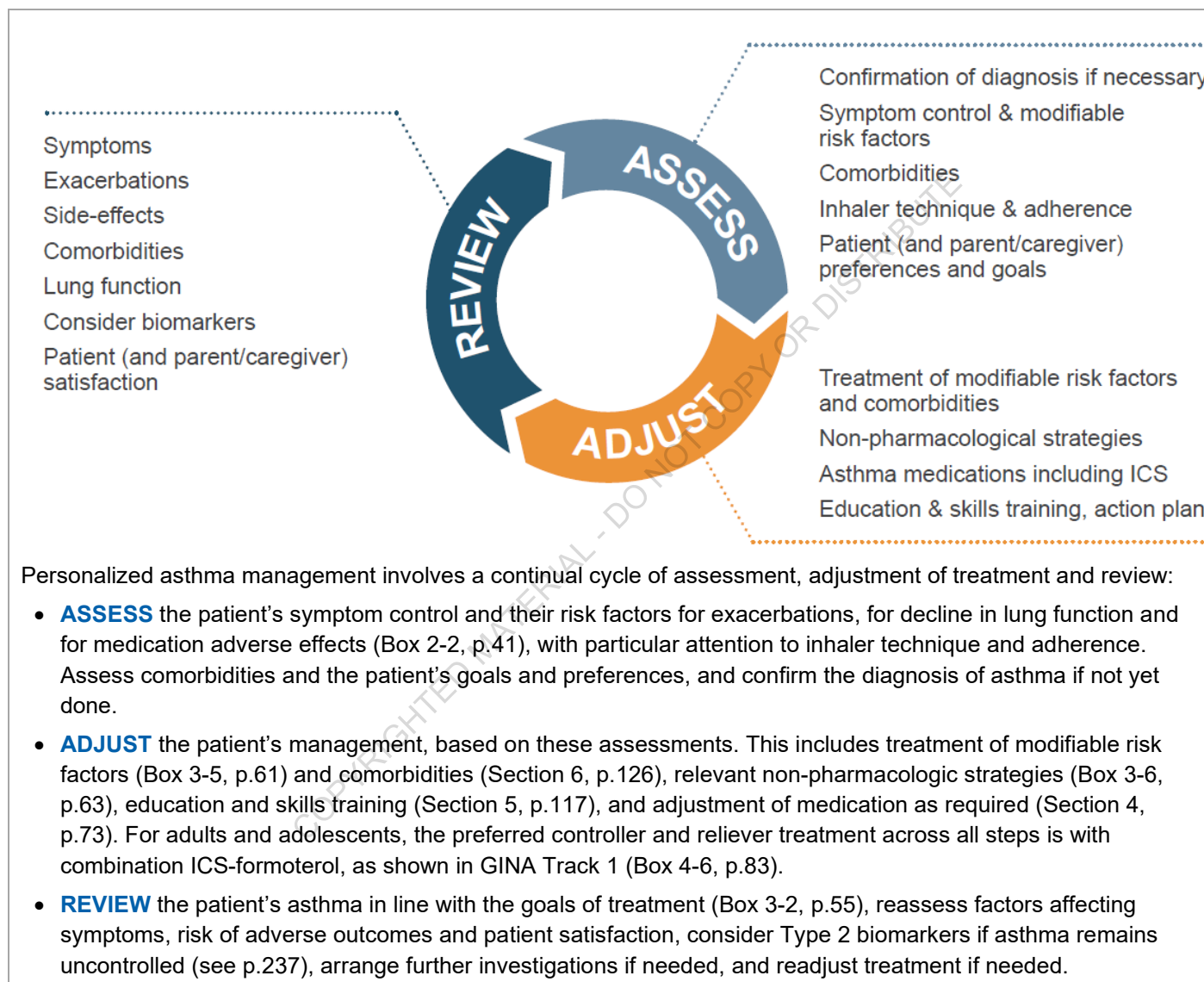
Asthma control has two domains: symptom control and risk reduction (see Box 2-2, p.41). In control-based asthma management, pharmacological and non-pharmacological treatment is adjusted in a continual cycle that involves assessment of symptom control and risk factors, treatment and review by appropriately trained personnel (Box 3-3, p.58) to achieve the goals of asthma treatment (Section 3, p.53). Asthma outcomes have been shown to improve after the introduction of control-based guidelines^{249,250} or practical tools for implementation of control-based management strategies.^{222,251}

The concept of control-based management is also supported by the design of most randomized controlled medication trials, in which patients are identified for a change in asthma treatment based on features of poor symptom control with or without other risk factors such as low lung function or a history of exacerbations. Since 2014, GINA asthma management has focused not only on asthma symptom control, but also on personalized management of the patient’s modifiable risk factors for exacerbations, other adverse outcomes and multimorbidity, while also considering the patient’s preferences and goals. Non-modifiable risk factors, such as a history of admission to an intensive care unit for asthma, should also be documented.

For many patients in primary care, achieving good symptom control is a good guide to a reduced risk of exacerbations.²⁵² When ICSs were introduced into asthma management, large improvements were observed in symptom control and lung function, and exacerbations and asthma-related mortality also decreased.

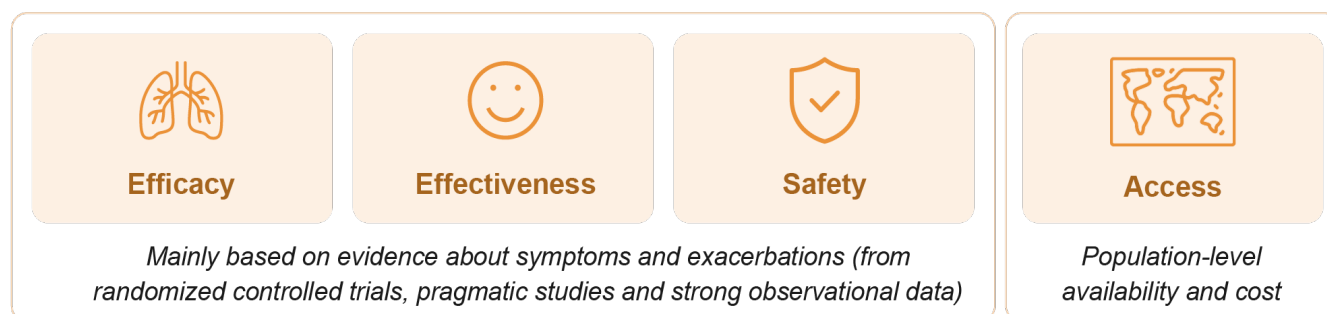
However, **patients with few or intermittent symptoms may be still at risk of severe exacerbations**²⁰⁹ (Box 2-2B, p.41). In addition, some patients continue to have exacerbations despite well-controlled symptoms, and for patients with ongoing symptoms, side-effects may be an issue if ICS doses continue to be stepped up. Therefore, in control-based management, both domains of asthma control (symptom control and future risk; Box 2-2, p.41) should be considered when choosing asthma treatment and reviewing the response.^{42,97}

Box 3-3. The asthma management cycle for personalized asthma care



Box 3-4. Population-level versus patient-level decisions about asthma treatment

The 'preferred' medication at each step is the best treatment for most patients, based on:



There are different population-level recommendations by age-group (adults/adolescents, children 6–11 years, children 5 years and younger). For patients with severe asthma, there are also different population-level recommendations depending on the inflammatory phenotype.

Choosing between controller options for individual patients

Use shared decision-making with the patient or parent/caregiver to discuss the following:

1. Preferred medication



- Which medication will best control symptoms and reduce risk?

2. Patient characteristics or phenotype



- Does the patient have any factors that predict differences in risk or treatment response, compared with other patients, e.g., smoking; SABA over-use; exacerbation history; high FeNO or eosinophils; environmental exposures; comorbidities?

3. Patient views



- What are the patient's goals, beliefs and concerns about

4. Practical issues



- For the preferred medication(s), which inhalers are available to this patient?
- Can they use the inhaler correctly after training?
- Can they afford the medication?
- Adherence – how often are they likely to take the medication?
- If more than one inhaler is suitable for the patient, which has the lowest environmental impact?

Choosing between asthma treatment options

At each treatment step in asthma management, different medication options are available that may be alternatives for controlling asthma, although their efficacy is not identical.

Different considerations apply to recommendations or choices made for broad populations than recommendations for individual patients (Box 3-4, p.58):

- **Population-level medication choices:** Population-level medication choices are often made by bodies such as national formularies or managed care organizations. Population-level recommendations aim to represent the best option for most patients in the particular population. At each treatment step, recommended “preferred” controller and reliever regimens provide the best benefit-to-risk ratio for both symptom control and risk reduction. Choice of the preferred controller and/or preferred reliever is based on evidence from efficacy studies (highly controlled studies in well-characterized populations) and effectiveness studies (from pragmatically controlled studies, or studies in broader populations, or strong observational data),²⁵³ with a particular focus on symptoms and exacerbation risk. Safety and relative cost are also considered. In **Step 5**, there are different population-level recommendations depending on the inflammatory phenotype.

In the treatment figure for adults and adolescents (Box 4-6, p.83), the options are shown in two “tracks”. **Track 1**, with as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol as the reliever, is the preferred approach for most patients, based on evidence of overall lower exacerbation risk, reduced need for OCS, and similar symptom control, and a simpler regimen for stepping treatment up and down as needed with a single inhaler, single device and single dose across Steps 1–4, compared with treatments in **Track 2** in which the reliever is a separate short-acting beta₂-agonist (SABA) or combination ICS-SABA (for more details, see Section 4, p.73).

- **Patient-level medication choices:** Treatment choices for individual patients also take into account any patient characteristics or phenotype, or any environmental exposures, that may predict their **risk of exacerbations or other adverse outcomes**, or a clinically important difference in their response, compared with other patients, together with assessment of multimorbidity, the patient’s goals and preferences, and practical issues such as cost, ability to use the medication and adherence (see Box 3-3, p.58). For factors guiding the choice of inhaler, see Section 5 (p.117).

The extent to which asthma treatment can be individualized according to patient characteristics or phenotypes depends on the health system, the clinical context, the potential magnitude of difference in outcomes, cost and available resources.

Minimizing adverse effects of medication

Inhaled medications: the potential for local and/or systemic side-effects of inhaled medications can be reduced by:

- Choosing GINA Track 1, where available and suitable, because it requires lower doses of ICS
- Ensuring correct inhaler technique (Box 5-2, p.119), including use of a spacer if ICS-containing medication is delivered by pressurized metered-dose inhaler (pMDI)
- Reminding patients to rinse and spit out after using ICS
- After good asthma control has been maintained for 3 months, finding each patient’s minimum effective dose of ICS-containing therapy (the lowest dose that will, in conjunction with an action plan, maintain good symptom control and minimize exacerbations, Box 4-13, p.112)
- Checking for drug interactions particularly with cytochrome P450 inhibitors (see Risk factors for medication side-effects, p.46).

Oral corticosteroids: to reduce the need for OCS, with its multiple cumulative adverse effects,^{179,254} optimize inhaled therapy, including by switching treatment to GINA Track 1 with anti-inflammatory reliever therapy (if available). Anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR) treatment alone (‘AIR-only’) markedly reduces the risk of severe exacerbations requiring OCS, compared with SABA alone, while maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with ICS-formoterol reduces the risk of severe exacerbations requiring OCS, compared with the same or higher dose of ICS or ICS-LABA, or compared with usual care.²⁵⁵ Treating modifiable risk factors (Box 3-5, p.61) and comorbidities (Section 6, p.126) may also reduce the risk of exacerbations and use of OCS (Box 9-3, p.177). For patients with severe refractory asthma, adding biologic therapy substantially reduces the need for OCS (see p.162), so prompt referral is essential for patients whose

asthma remains uncontrolled despite Step 4 therapy. Written asthma action plans (Box 9-2, p.174) should be carefully designed to avoid automatic use of OCS.

OCS stewardship also involves using OCS only when clearly indicated, e.g., for moderate/severe/life-threatening acute asthma, and at the lowest effective dose for the shortest duration needed. There is no need for lengthy tapering of OCS unless they have been taken for more than 2 weeks. Occurrence of any exacerbation requiring OCS should prompt a review of the patient's asthma management, to prevent the occurrence of another such event.

Managing other modifiable risk factors

Some patients continue to experience exacerbations even with maximal doses of current treatment. Having even one exacerbation increases the risk that a patient will have another within the next 12 months.¹²⁸ There is increasing research interest in identifying at-risk patients (Box 2-2B, p.41), and in investigating new strategies to further reduce exacerbation risk.

In clinical practice, exacerbation risk can be reduced both by optimizing asthma medications, and by identifying and treating modifiable risk factors (Box 3-5, p.61). Not all risk factors require, or respond to, a step-up in controller treatment.

Box 3-5. Treating potentially modifiable risk factors to reduce exacerbations and minimize OCS use

Risk factor	Treatment strategy	Evidence
Any patient with one or more risk factors for exacerbations (including poor symptom control)	Ensure patient is prescribed an ICS-containing treatment.	A
	Switch to a regimen with an anti-inflammatory reliever (ICS-formoterol or ICS-SABA) if available, as this reduces the risk of severe exacerbations, compared with SABA reliever.	A
	Ensure patient has a written action plan appropriate for their health literacy.	A
	Review patient more frequently than low-risk patients.	A
	Check inhaler technique and adherence frequently; correct as needed.	A
	Identify and manage any modifiable risk factors (Box 2-2, p.41).	D
≥1 severe exacerbation in last year	Switch to a regimen with an anti-inflammatory reliever (as-needed ICS-formoterol or ICS-SABA) if available, as this reduces the risk of severe exacerbations, compared with SABA reliever.	A
	If no modifiable risk factors, consider stepping up treatment, e.g., addition of LAMA (as combination inhaler or separate inhaler) to medium-dose ICS-LABA; increasing ICS dose (particularly if Type 2 biomarkers are elevated); referring for specialist opinion and consideration of biologic therapy.	A
	Identify and manage any avoidable triggers for exacerbations.	C
Exposure to tobacco smoke or e-cigarettes	Encourage smoking cessation by patient/family; provide advice and resources (see Box 3-6, p.63).	A
	Consider higher dose of ICS if asthma poorly controlled.	B
Low FEV ₁ , especially if <60% predicted	Address problems with adherence and inhaler technique	A
	Consider trial of 3 months' treatment with high-dose ICS.	B
	Exclude other lung disease, e.g., COPD.	D
	Refer for expert advice if no improvement.	D
Obesity	Provide strategies for weight reduction	B
	Distinguish asthma symptoms from symptoms due to deconditioning, mechanical restriction, and/or sleep apnea.	D

Major psychological problems	Refer for mental health assessment/treatment.	D
	Help patient to distinguish between symptoms of anxiety and asthma; provide advice about management of panic attacks.	D
Major socioeconomic problem	Identify most cost-effective ICS-based regimen based on local costs.	D
	Optimize inhaler technique to maximize benefit from available medications.	D
Confirmed food allergy	Appropriate food avoidance; anaphylaxis action plan; injectable or intranasal epinephrine (adrenaline); refer for expert advice. See p.128 for more details about food allergy, anaphylaxis, and epinephrine delivery options.	A
Occupational or domestic exposure to irritants	Remove from exposure as soon as possible.	A
	Refer for expert advice as soon as possible.	D
Allergen exposure if sensitized	Consider trial of simple avoidance strategies if there is evidence for their effectiveness (see p.67); consider cost.	C
	Consider step up of asthma treatment if exposure is unavoidable.	D
	Consider adding SLIT in symptomatic HDM-sensitive adults or adolescents with partly-controlled asthma despite ICS, provided FEV ₁ is >70% predicted.	A
High FeNO in patients taking medium/high dose ICS	Check and improve adherence; in a study of patients with uncontrolled asthma despite prescription of high dose ICS-LABA, FeNO was suppressed by directly observed corticosteroid therapy in about two-thirds of these patients, and this was associated with previous poor adherence and improved outcomes when adherence subsequently improved. ²⁵⁶	A
Sputum eosinophilia despite medium/high ICS (few centers)	Consider increasing ICS dose, independent of level of symptom control.	A*

COPD: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; FeNO: fractional concentration of exhaled nitric oxide; ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; LAMA: long-acting muscarinic antagonist; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist; SLIT: sublingual immunotherapy * Based on evidence from relatively small studies in selected populations. Also see Box 3–6 (p.63) and Non-pharmacological strategies (p.65).

NON-PHARMACOLOGICAL STRATEGIES

In addition to pharmacological treatments, other strategies should be considered where relevant, to assist in improving symptom control and/or reducing future risk. The advice and evidence level are summarized in Box 3-6, with more detail on the following pages.

Box 3-6. Non-pharmacological interventions – summary (see following text for details)

Intervention	Advice/recommendation	Evidence
Cessation of smoking, environmental tobacco exposure (ETS) and vaping	At every visit, strongly encourage people with asthma who smoke or vape to quit. Provide access to counseling and smoking cessation programs (if available).	A
	Advise parents/caregivers of children with asthma not to smoke or vape, and not to allow smoking or vaping in rooms or cars that their children use.	A
	Strongly encourage people with asthma to avoid environmental smoke exposure.	B
	Assess smokers/ex-smokers for COPD or overlapping features of asthma and COPD (asthma+COPD, Section 7, p.141), as additional treatment strategies may be required.	D
Physical activity	Encourage people with asthma to engage in regular physical activity for its general health benefits.	A
	Provide advice about prevention of exercise-induced bronchoconstriction with low-dose ICS-formoterol used as needed and before exercise, or with regular daily ICS.	A/B
	- Provide advice about prevention of breakthrough exercise-induced bronchoconstriction with: - warm-up before exercise - SABA (or ICS-SABA) before exercise - low-dose ICS-formoterol before exercise (see Box 4-8, p.90).	A A B
	Regular physical activity improves cardiopulmonary fitness, and can have a small benefit for asthma control and lung function, including swimming in young people with asthma.	B
	Physical activity interventions in adults with moderate/severe asthma is associated with improved symptoms and quality of life.	A
	There is little evidence to recommend one form of physical activity over another for people with asthma.	D
Pulmonary rehabilitation programs	Structured outpatient pulmonary rehabilitation programs can improve functional exercise capacity (6-minute walk) and quality of life.	A
Avoidance of occupational or domestic exposures to allergens or irritants	Ask all patients with adult-onset asthma about their work history and other exposures to irritant gases or particles, including at home.	D
	In management of occupational asthma, identify and eliminate occupational sensitizers as soon as possible, and remove sensitized patients from any further exposure to these agents.	A
	Patients with suspected or confirmed occupational asthma should be referred promptly for expert assessment and advice, if available.	A
	Always ask about asthma before prescribing NSAIDs, and advise patients to stop using them if asthma worsens.	D

Avoidance of medications that may make asthma worse	Always ask people with asthma about concomitant medications.	D
	Aspirin and NSAIDs (non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs) are not generally contraindicated unless there is a history of previous reactions to these agents (see p.138).	A
	Decide about prescription of oral or ophthalmic beta-blockers on a case-by-case basis. Initiate treatment under close medical supervision by a specialist.	D
	If cardioselective beta-blockers are indicated for acute coronary events, asthma is not an absolute contra-indication, but the relative risks/benefits should be considered.	D
Healthy diet	Encourage patients with asthma to consume a diet high in fruit and vegetables for its general health benefits.	A
Avoidance of indoor allergens	Allergen avoidance is not recommended as a general strategy in asthma.	A
	For sensitized patients, there is limited evidence of clinical benefit for asthma in most circumstances with single-strategy indoor allergen avoidance.	A
	Remediation of dampness or mold in homes reduces asthma symptoms and medication use in adults.	A
	For patients sensitized to house dust mite and/or pets, there is limited evidence of clinical benefit for asthma with avoidance strategies (only in children).	B
	Allergen avoidance strategies are often complicated and expensive, and there are no validated methods for identifying those who are likely to benefit.	D
Weight reduction	Include weight reduction in the treatment plan for obese patients with asthma.	B
	For obese adults with asthma a weight reduction program plus twice-weekly aerobic and strength exercises is more effective for symptom control than weight reduction alone.	B
	The greatest improvement in asthma outcomes with weight reduction is seen with bariatric surgery.	A
Breathing exercises	Breathing exercises may be a useful supplement to asthma pharmacotherapy for symptoms and quality of life, but they do not reduce exacerbation risk or have consistent effects on lung function.	A
Avoidance of indoor air pollution	Encourage people with asthma to use non-polluting heating and cooking sources, and for sources of pollutants to be vented outdoors where possible.	B
Avoidance of outdoor allergens	For sensitized patients, when pollen and mold counts are highest (e.g., using regional/national apps/alerts), closing windows and doors, remaining indoors, and using air conditioning may reduce exposure to outdoor allergens.	D
Dealing with emotional stress	Encourage patients to identify goals and strategies to deal with emotional stress if it makes their asthma worse.	D
	There is insufficient evidence to support one stress-reduction strategy over another, but relaxation strategies and breathing exercises may be helpful.	B
	Arrange a mental health assessment for patients with symptoms of anxiety or depression.	D

Addressing social risk	In US studies, comprehensive social risk interventions were associated with reduced emergency department visits and hospitalizations for children. Studies from other countries and settings are needed.	A
Avoidance of outdoor air pollutants/weather conditions	During unfavorable environmental conditions (very cold weather or high air pollution) it may be helpful, if feasible, to stay indoors in a climate-controlled environment, and to avoid strenuous outdoor physical activity; and to avoid polluted environments during viral infections, if feasible.	D
Avoidance of foods and food chemicals	Food avoidance should not be recommended unless an allergy or food chemical sensitivity has been clearly demonstrated, usually by carefully supervised oral challenges.	D
	For patients with confirmed food allergy, refer for specialist advice if available.	D
	For patients with confirmed food allergy, food allergen avoidance may reduce asthma exacerbations.	D
	If food chemical sensitivity is confirmed, complete avoidance is not usually necessary, and sensitivity often decreases when asthma control improves.	D

COPD: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; NSAID: nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist. Interventions with highest level evidence are shown first.

Cessation of smoking and vaping, and avoidance of environmental tobacco smoke

Cigarette smoking has multiple deleterious effects in people with established asthma, in addition to its other well-known effects such as increased risk of lung cancer, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) and cardiovascular disease; and, with exposure in pregnancy, increased risk of asthma and lower respiratory infections in children.

In people with asthma (children and adults), exposure to environmental tobacco smoke increases the risk of hospitalization and poor asthma control. Active smoking is associated with increased risk of poor asthma control, hospital admissions and, in some studies, death from asthma; increased rate of decline of lung function and may lead to COPD; and reduced the effectiveness of inhaled and oral corticosteroids.²⁵⁷ After smoking cessation, lung function improves and airway inflammation decreases.²⁵⁸ Reduction of environmental tobacco smoke exposure improves asthma control and reduces hospital admissions in adults and children.²⁵⁹ Use of e-cigarettes (vaping) is associated with an increased risk of asthma symptoms or diagnosis and with an increased risk of asthma exacerbations.^{113,260}

Advice

- At every visit, strongly encourage people with asthma who smoke to quit. They should be provided with access to counseling and, if available, to smoking cessation programs (Evidence A).
- Strongly encourage people with asthma who vape to quit.
- Strongly encourage people with asthma to avoid environmental smoke exposure (Evidence B).
- Advise parents/caregivers of children with asthma not to smoke or vape and not to allow smoking or vaping in rooms or cars that their children use (Evidence A).
- Assess patients with a >10 pack-year smoking history for COPD or for asthma+COPD, as additional treatment strategies may be required (see Section 7, p.141).

Physical activity

For people with asthma, as in the general population, regular moderate physical activity has important health benefits including reduced cardiovascular risk and improved quality of life.²⁶¹ There is some evidence that aerobic exercise training can have a small beneficial effect on asthma symptom control and lung function, although not airway inflammation.²⁶² In physically inactive adults with moderate/severe asthma, physical activity interventions were associated with reduced symptoms and improved quality of life.²⁶³ Further studies are needed to identify the optimal regimen. Improved cardiopulmonary fitness may reduce the risk of dyspnea unrelated to airflow limitation being

mistakenly attributed to asthma. In one study of non-obese patients with asthma, high intensity interval training together with a diet with high protein and low glycemic index improved asthma symptom control, although no benefit on lung function was seen.²⁶⁴ In young people with asthma, swimming training is well tolerated and leads to increased lung function and cardio-pulmonary fitness;²⁶⁵ however, there are some concerns about exposure to chlorine and trichloramine with indoor pools.⁷⁹

Exercise is an important cause of asthma symptoms for many asthma patients, but exercise-induced bronchoconstriction can usually be reduced with maintenance ICS,⁷⁹ or with as-needed and pre-exercise ICS-formoterol.²⁶⁶ Breakthrough exercise-related symptoms can be managed with warm-up before exercise,⁷⁹ and/or by taking SABA⁷⁹ or low-dose ICS-formoterol²⁶⁶ before or during exercise.

Advice

- Encourage people with asthma to engage in regular physical activity because of its general health benefits (Evidence A). However, regular physical activity confers no specific benefit on lung function or asthma symptoms per se, with the exception of swimming in young people with asthma (Evidence B). There is insufficient evidence to recommend one form of physical activity over another (Evidence D).
- Provide patients with advice about prevention and management of exercise-induced bronchoconstriction including with daily treatment with ICS (Evidence A) plus SABA as-needed and pre-exercise (Evidence A), or treatment with low-dose ICS-formoterol as-needed and before exercise (Evidence B), with warm-up before exercise if needed (Evidence A). For doses of ICS-formoterol, see Box 4-8, p.90. For patients prescribed as-needed ICS-SABA, this can also be used before exercise.

Pulmonary rehabilitation

A systematic review and meta-analysis found that pulmonary rehabilitation programs of 4–12 weeks' duration that included aerobic training, nutritional advice, psychological counselling, and education in adults with asthma had little or no effect on asthma symptom control, but they achieved clinically meaningful short-term improvements in functional exercise capacity and quality of life (moderate certainty of evidence). It is not known whether these benefits continue long-term after the completion of the program.²⁶⁷

Advice

- For asthma patients who have limited exercise tolerance, or have dyspnea due to persistent airflow limitation, refer for pulmonary rehabilitation, if available.

Avoidance of occupational or domestic exposures

Occupational exposures to allergens or sensitizers account for a substantial proportion of the incidence of adult-onset asthma.²⁶⁸ Once a patient has become sensitized to an occupational allergen, the level of exposure necessary to induce symptoms may be extremely low, and resulting exacerbations become increasingly severe. Attempts to reduce occupational exposure have been successful, especially in industrial settings.⁷⁵ Cost-effective minimization of latex sensitization can be achieved by using non-powdered low-allergen gloves instead of powdered latex gloves.⁷⁵

Advice

- Ask all patients with adult-onset asthma about their work history and other exposures to inhaled allergens or irritants, including at home (Evidence D).
- In management of occupational asthma, identify and eliminate occupational sensitizers as soon as possible, and remove sensitized patients from any further exposure to these agents (Evidence A).
- Patients with suspected or confirmed occupational asthma should be referred for expert assessment and advice, if available, because of the economic and legal implications of the diagnosis (Evidence A).

Avoidance of medications that may make asthma worse

Aspirin and other nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) can cause severe exacerbations.²⁶⁹ Beta-blocker drugs, including topical ophthalmic preparations, may cause bronchospasm²⁷⁰ and have been implicated in some asthma deaths. However, beta-blockers have a proven benefit in the management of cardiovascular disease. People with asthma who have had an acute coronary event and received beta-blockers within 24 hours of hospital admission have been found to have lower in-hospital mortality rates than those who did not receive beta-blockers.²⁷¹

Advice

- Always ask people with asthma about concomitant medications, including eyedrops (Evidence D).
- Always ask about asthma and previous reactions before prescribing NSAIDs, and advise patients to stop using these medications if asthma worsens.
- Aspirin and NSAIDs are not generally contraindicated in asthma unless there is a history of previous reactions to these agents (Evidence A). (See Aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease, p.138).
- For people with asthma who may benefit from oral or ophthalmic beta-blocker treatment, a decision to prescribe these medications should be made on a case-by-case basis, and treatment should only be initiated under close medical supervision by a specialist (Evidence D).
- Asthma should not be regarded as an absolute contraindication to use cardioselective beta-blockers when they are indicated for acute coronary events, but the relative risks and benefits should be considered (Evidence D). The prescribing physician and patient should be aware of the risks and benefits of treatment.²⁷²

Avoidance of indoor allergens

Because many asthma patients react to multiple factors that are ubiquitous in the environment, avoiding these factors completely is usually impractical and very burdensome for the patient. Inhaled corticosteroid-containing medications to maintain good asthma control have an important role because patients are often less affected by environmental factors when their asthma is well controlled.

There is conflicting evidence about whether measures to reduce exposure to indoor allergens are effective at reducing asthma symptoms.^{273,274} The majority of single interventions have failed to achieve a sufficient reduction in allergen load to lead to clinical improvement.^{273,275,276} It is likely that no single intervention will achieve sufficient benefits to be cost effective (Box 3-7, p.68). One study of insecticidal bait in homes eradicated cockroaches for a year and led to a significant decrease in symptoms, improvement in pulmonary function, and less health care use for children with moderate to severe asthma.²⁷⁷

House dust mites

House dust mites (HDM) live and thrive in many sites throughout the house, so they are difficult to reduce and impossible to eradicate. A systematic review of multi-component interventions to reduce allergens, including HDM, showed no benefit for asthma in adults and a small benefit for children.²⁷⁸ One study that used a rigorously applied integrated approach to HDM control led to a significant decrease in symptoms, medication use and improvement in pulmonary function for children with HDM sensitization and asthma.²⁷⁹ However, this approach is complicated and expensive and is not generally recommended. A study in HDM-sensitized children recruited after emergency department presentation showed a decrease in emergency department visits, but not oral corticosteroids, with the use of mite-impermeable encasement of the mattress, pillow and duvet.²⁸⁰

Furred pets

Complete avoidance of pet allergens is impossible for sensitized patients as these allergens are ubiquitous outside the home²⁸¹ in schools,²⁸² public transport, and even cat-free buildings, probably transferred on clothes.²⁸² Although removal of such animals from the home of a sensitized patient is encouraged,²⁸³ it can be many months before allergen levels decrease,²⁸⁴ and the clinical effectiveness of this and other interventions remains unproven.²⁸⁵

Pest rodents

Symptomatic patients suspected of domestic exposure to pest rodents should be evaluated with skin prick tests or specific immunoglobulin E, as exposure may not be apparent unless there is an obvious infestation.²⁸⁶ High-level evidence for the effectiveness of removing rodents is lacking, as most integrated pest management interventions also remove other allergen sources;²⁸⁶ one non-sham-controlled study showed comparable clinical improvement with pest reduction education and integrated pest management.²⁸⁷

Box 3-7. Effectiveness of avoidance measures for indoor allergens

Allergen and avoidance measure	Degree of effectiveness (evidence level)	
	Reduction in allergen levels	Clinical benefit
House dust mites		
• Encase bedding in impermeable covers	Some (A)	Adults - none (A) Children - some (A)
• Wash bedding on hot cycle (55–60°C)	Some (C)	None (D)
• Replace carpets with hard flooring	Some (B)	None (D)
• Acaricides and/or tannic acid	Little (C)	None (D)
• Minimize objects that accumulate dust	None (D)	None (D)
• Vacuum cleaners with integral HEPA filter and double-thickness bags	Little (C)	None (D)
• Remove, hot wash, or freeze soft toys	None (D)	None
Pets		
• Remove cat/dog from the home	Little (C)	None (D)
• Keep pet from the main living areas/bedrooms	Little (C)	None (D)
• HEPA-filter air cleaners	Some (B)	None (A)
• Wash pet	Little (C)	None (D)
• Replace carpets with hard flooring	None (D)	None (D)
• Vacuum cleaners with integral HEPA filter and double-thickness bags	None (D)	None (D)
Cockroaches		
• Bait plus professional extermination of cockroaches	Minimal (D)	None (D)
• Baits placed in homes	Some (B)	Some (B)
Rodents		
• Integrated pest management strategies	Some (B)	Some (B)
Fungi		
• Remediation of dampness or mold in homes	A	A
• Air filters, air conditioning	Some (B)	None (D)

HEPA: high-efficiency particle air. This table is adapted from Custovic et al.²⁸⁸

Cockroaches

Avoidance measures for cockroaches are only partially effective in removing residual allergens²⁸⁹ and evidence of clinical benefit is lacking.

Fungi

Fungal exposure has been associated with asthma exacerbations. The number of fungal spores can best be reduced by removing or cleaning mold-laden objects.²⁹⁰ Air conditioners and dehumidifiers may be used to reduce humidity to less than 50% and to filter large fungal spores. However, air conditioning and sealing of windows have also been associated with increases in fungal and HDM allergens.²⁹¹

Advice

- Allergen avoidance is not recommended as a general strategy for people with asthma (Evidence A).
- For sensitized patients, although it would seem logical to attempt to avoid allergen exposure in the home, there is little evidence for clinical benefit with single avoidance strategies (Evidence A) and only limited evidence for benefit with multi-component avoidance strategies (in children) (Evidence B).
- Although allergen avoidance strategies may be beneficial for some sensitized patients (Evidence B), they are often complicated and expensive, and there are no validated methods for identifying those who are likely to benefit (Evidence D).

Healthy diet

In the general population, a diet high in fresh fruit and vegetables has many health benefits, including prevention of many chronic diseases and forms of cancer. Many epidemiological studies report that a high fruit and vegetable diet is associated with a lower risk of asthma and lung function decline. There is some evidence that increasing fruit and vegetable intake leads to an improvement in asthma control and a reduced risk of exacerbations.²⁹²

Advice

- Encourage patients with asthma to consume a diet high in fruit and vegetables for its general health benefits (Evidence A).

Weight reduction for obese patients

Asthma can be more difficult to control in obese patients,²⁹³⁻²⁹⁵ the risk of exacerbations is greater,^{108,109} and response to ICS may be reduced.²⁹⁶ There is limited evidence about the effect of weight loss on asthma control. Studies have ranged from dietary restriction to multifactorial interventions with exercise training and cognitive behavioral therapy, but populations have generally been small, and interventions and results have been heterogeneous.²⁹⁷ In some studies, weight loss has improved asthma control, lung function and health status, and reduced medication needs in obese patients with asthma.^{298,299} The most striking results have been observed after bariatric surgery,³⁰⁰⁻³⁰² but even 5–10% weight loss with diet, with or without exercise, can lead to improved asthma control and quality of life.³⁰³

Database studies report that patients with asthma and diabetes who are treated with glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists (GLP-1RA) have lower asthma exacerbation rates than those treated with other diabetes drugs.³⁰⁴ Several potential mechanisms have been proposed, including mechanical (due to weight loss) or an anti-inflammatory effect. Prospective intervention studies are underway.

Advice

- Include weight reduction in the treatment plan for obese patients with asthma (Evidence B). Increased exercise alone appears to be insufficient (Evidence B).

Breathing exercises

A systematic review of studies of breathing and/or relaxation exercises in adults with asthma and/or dysfunctional breathing, including the Buteyko method and the Papworth method, reported improvements in symptoms, quality of life and/or psychological measures, but with no consistent effect on lung function and no reduction in risk of exacerbations.³⁰⁵

Studies of non-pharmacological strategies, such as breathing exercises, can only be considered high quality when control groups are appropriately matched for level of contact with healthcare providers and for asthma education. A study of two physiologically contrasting breathing exercises, which were matched for contact with healthcare providers and instructions about rescue inhaler use, showed similar improvements in reliever use and ICS dose after down-titration in both groups.³⁰⁶ This suggests that perceived improvement with breathing exercises may be largely due to factors such as relaxation, voluntary reduction in use of rescue medication, or engagement of the patient in their care. The cost of some commercial programs may be a potential limitation. Breathing exercises used in some of these studies are available at www.breathestudy.co.uk³⁰⁷ and www.woolcock.org.au/resources/breathing-techniques-asthma.³⁰⁶

Advice

- Breathing exercises may be considered as a supplement to conventional asthma management strategies for symptoms and quality of life, but they do not improve lung function or reduce exacerbation risk (Evidence A).

Avoidance of indoor air pollution

In addition to passive and active smoking, other major indoor air pollutants that are known to impact on respiratory health include nitric oxide, nitrogen oxides, carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, sulfur dioxide, formaldehyde, and biologicals (endotoxin).^{308,309} Sources include cooking and heating devices using gas and solid biomass fuels, particularly if they are not externally flued (vented). Installation of non-polluting, more effective heating (heat pump, wood pellet burner, flued gas) in the homes of children with asthma does not significantly improve lung function but significantly reduces symptoms of asthma, days off school, healthcare utilization, and pharmacist visits.³¹⁰ Air filters can reduce fine particle exposure, but there is no consistent effect on asthma outcomes.^{311,312}

Advice

- Encourage people with asthma to use non-polluting heating and cooking sources, and for sources of pollutants to be vented outdoors where possible (Evidence B).

Strategies for dealing with emotional stress

Emotional stress may lead to asthma exacerbations in children³¹³ and adults. Hyperventilation associated with laughing, crying, anger, or fear can cause airway narrowing.^{314,315} Panic attacks have a similar effect.^{316,317} However, it is important to note that asthma is not primarily a psychosomatic disorder.

During stressful times, medication adherence may also decrease.

Advice

- Encourage patients to identify goals and strategies to deal with emotional stress if it makes their asthma worse (Evidence D).
- There is insufficient evidence to support one strategy over another, but relaxation strategies and breathing exercises may be helpful in reducing asthma symptoms (Evidence B).
- Arrange a mental health assessment for patients with symptoms of anxiety or depression (Evidence D).

Interventions addressing social risks

A systematic review of social risk intervention studies based in the USA found that interventions that addressed these challenges, including health and health care, neighborhood and built environment, and social and community context, were associated with a marked reduction in pediatric emergency department visits and hospitalizations for asthma.³¹⁸ Data are needed from studies in other countries and other socioeconomic settings.

Avoidance of outdoor allergens

For patients sensitized to outdoor allergens such as pollens and molds, these may be impossible to avoid completely. Thunderstorms and other weather events may increase the level of respirable grass pollen allergens, fungal spores or other allergens and can trigger epidemics of asthma exacerbations in the community.³¹⁹⁻³²³

Advice

- For sensitized patients, exposure may be reduced when pollen and mold counts are highest by closing windows and doors, remaining indoors, and using air conditioning (Evidence D).
- The impact of providing information in the media about outdoor allergen levels is difficult to assess.

Avoidance of outdoor air pollution

Meta-analysis of epidemiological studies showed a significant association between air pollutants such as ozone, nitrogen oxides, acidic aerosols, and particulate matter and symptoms or exacerbations of asthma, including emergency department visits and hospitalizations.¹¹⁶ Use of digital monitoring identified a lag of 0–3 days between higher levels of multiple pollutants and increased asthma medication use.¹¹⁸ Proximity to main roads at home and school is associated with greater asthma morbidity.³²⁴ Certain weather and atmospheric conditions, like thunderstorms,^{319,320} may trigger asthma exacerbations by a variety of mechanisms, including dust and pollution, by

increasing the level of respirable allergens, and causing changes in temperature and/or humidity. Reduction of outdoor air pollutants usually requires national or local policy changes. For example, short-term traffic restrictions imposed in Beijing during the 2008 Olympics reduced pollution and was associated with a significant fall in asthma outpatient visits.³²⁵

Advice

- In general, when asthma is well controlled, there is no need for patients to modify their lifestyle to avoid unfavorable outdoor conditions (air pollutants, weather).
- During unfavorable environmental conditions (very cold weather, low humidity or high air pollution), it may be helpful to avoid strenuous outdoor physical activity and stay indoors in a climate-controlled environment, if possible, and to avoid polluted environments during viral infections (Evidence D).

Avoidance of food and food chemicals

Food allergy as an exacerbating factor for asthma is uncommon and occurs primarily in young children. Confirmed food allergy is a risk factor for asthma-related mortality.¹¹⁰

Food chemicals, either naturally occurring or added during processing, may also trigger asthma symptoms especially when asthma is poorly controlled. Sulfites (common food and drug preservatives found in such foods as processed potatoes, shrimp, dried fruits, beer, and wine) have often been implicated in causing severe asthma exacerbations.³²⁶ However, the likelihood of a reaction is dependent on the nature of the food, the level and form of residual sulfite, the sensitivity of the patient, and the mechanism of the sulfite-induced reaction.³²⁶ There is little evidence to support any general role for other dietary substances including benzoate, the yellow dye, tartrazine, and monosodium glutamate in worsening asthma.

Advice

- Ask people with asthma about symptoms associated with any specific foods (Evidence D).
- Food avoidance should not be recommended unless an allergy or food chemical sensitivity has been clearly demonstrated (Evidence D), usually by carefully supervised oral challenges.¹¹⁰
- Patients with suspected or confirmed food allergy should be referred for expert advice about management of asthma and anaphylaxis (Evidence D). For more details, see p.128.
- If food allergy is confirmed, food allergen avoidance can reduce asthma exacerbations (Evidence D).
- If food chemical sensitivity is confirmed, complete avoidance is not usually necessary, and sensitivity often decreases when overall asthma control improves (Evidence D).²⁶⁷

REFERRAL FOR EXPERT ADVICE

For most patients asthma can usually be managed in primary care, but some clinical situations warrant referral for expert advice regarding diagnosis and/or management (Box 3-8). This list is based on consensus. Indications for referral may vary, because the level at which asthma care is mainly delivered (primary care or specialist care) varies substantially between countries.

Box 3-8. Indications for considering referral for expert advice, where available

Difficulty confirming the diagnosis of asthma

- Patient has symptoms of chronic infection, or features suggesting a cardiac or other non-pulmonary cause (Box 1-3, p.30) (immediate referral recommended).
- Diagnosis is unclear, even after a trial of therapy with ICS or systemic corticosteroids.
- Patient has features of both asthma and COPD, and there is doubt about priorities for treatment.

Suspected occupational asthma

- Refer for confirmatory testing and identification of sensitizing or irritant agent, and specific advice about eliminating exposure and pharmacological treatment. See specific guidelines⁷⁵ for details.

Persistent or severely uncontrolled asthma or frequent exacerbations

- Symptoms remain uncontrolled, or patient has ongoing exacerbations or low lung function despite correct inhaler technique and good adherence on Step 4 treatment (medium-dose ICS-LABA, Box 4-6, p.83; children 6–11 years, Box 4-12, p.104). Before referral, depending on the clinical context, identify and treat modifiable risk factors (Box 2-2, p.41; Box 3-5, p.61) and comorbidities (Section 6, p.126).
- Patient frequently uses asthma-related health care, e.g., multiple ED visits or urgent primary care visits.
- For more information, see Section 8 (p.149) on difficult-to-treat and severe asthma, including a decision tree

Any risk factors for asthma-related death (see Box 9-1, p.172)

- Near-fatal asthma attack (ICU admission, or mechanical ventilation for asthma) at any time in the past
- Suspected or confirmed anaphylaxis or food allergy in a patient with asthma (see p.128)

Evidence of, or risk of, significant treatment side-effects

- Significant side-effects from treatment
- Need for long-term oral corticosteroid use
- Frequent courses of oral corticosteroids (e.g., two or more courses a year)

Symptoms suggesting complications or sub-types of asthma

- e.g., aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease (p.138); allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis (ABPA) (p.138)

Additional reasons for referral in children 6–11 years

- Doubts about diagnosis of asthma e.g., respiratory symptoms are not responding well to treatment in a child who was born prematurely
- Symptoms or exacerbations that remain uncontrolled despite medium-dose ICS (Box 4-2B, p.77) with correct inhaler technique and good adherence
- Suspected side-effects of treatment (e.g., growth delay)
- Concerns about the child's welfare or well-being

COPD: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; ED: emergency department; ICU: intensive care unit; ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist. For indications for referral in children 0–5 years, see p.202.

4. Medications and treatment regimens for adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years

KEY POINTS

For safety, GINA does not recommend treatment of asthma in adults, adolescents or children 6–11 years with short-acting beta₂-agonist (SABA) alone. Instead, they should receive inhaled corticosteroid (ICS)-containing treatment to reduce their risk of severe exacerbations and to control symptoms.

Prevention of severe exacerbations is a high priority across all treatment steps, to reduce the risk and burden to patients and the burden to the health system, and to reduce the need for oral corticosteroids (OCS), which have cumulative long-term adverse effects. Use of an anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR), i.e., containing a low dose of ICS plus a rapid-acting bronchodilator, significantly reduces exacerbations compared with use of a SABA reliever.

Treatment tracks for adults and adolescents

For clarity, the treatment figure for adults and adolescents shows two “tracks”, largely based on the choice of reliever. Treatment may be stepped up or down within a track using the same reliever at each step, or treatment may be switched between tracks, according to the individual patient’s needs.

Track 1, in which the reliever is low-dose ICS-formoterol, is the preferred approach recommended by GINA. When a patient at any step has asthma symptoms, they use low-dose ICS-formoterol as needed for symptom relief. **In Steps 3–5, they also take ICS-formoterol as regular daily (‘maintenance’) treatment. This approach is preferred because it reduces the risk of severe exacerbations, compared with using a SABA reliever, with similar symptom control, and because of the simplicity for patients and clinicians of needing only a single medication, device and dose across treatment Steps 1–4.**

Medications and doses for Track 1 are explained in Box 4-8, p.90, including the total number of inhalations in a day at which medical review is recommended. Based on extensive evidence with budesonide-formoterol, GINA suggests that the same advice should apply for beclometasone-formoterol.

Track 2, in which the reliever is an ICS-SABA or SABA, is an alternative if Track 1 is not possible, or if a patient is stable, with good adherence and no exacerbations in the past year on their current therapy. In Step 1, the patient takes a SABA and a low-dose ICS together for symptom relief (in combination if available, or with the ICS taken immediately after the SABA). In Steps 2–5, the reliever is combination ICS-SABA or, if this is not available, SABA. With separate maintenance and reliever inhalers, ensure that the patient understands the difference, and that they are trained in correct technique for each. Before considering a SABA reliever, consider whether the patient is likely to adhere to their ICS-containing treatment, as poor adherence (with resulting SABA-only treatment) will increase the risk of exacerbations.

Steps 1 and 2 for adults and adolescents

Track 1: (Steps 1–2 combined) In adults and adolescents who were considered by their clinician to have mild asthma, and were taking SABA alone or had controlled asthma on daily low-dose ICS or leukotriene receptor antagonist (LTRA), treatment with as-needed-only low-dose ICS-formoterol reduced the risk of severe exacerbations and emergency department visits or hospitalizations by about two-thirds, compared with SABA-only treatment. As-needed-only low-dose ICS-formoterol reduced the risk of emergency department visits and hospitalizations, compared with daily ICS, with no clinically important difference in symptom control. In patients previously using SABA alone, as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol also significantly reduced the risk of severe exacerbations needing OCS, compared with daily ICS.

Track 2: Taking regular daily low-dose ICS, plus as-needed SABA (Step 2), is highly effective in reducing asthma symptoms and reducing the risk of asthma-related exacerbations, hospitalization and death, compared with SABA alone. However, adherence to ICS in the community is poor, resulting in patients taking SABA alone and therefore at increased risk of exacerbations. In adults and adolescents using SABA alone or with daily ICS or leukotriene receptor

antagonist, use of as-needed combination ICS-SABA substantially reduced the risk of severe exacerbations compared with SABA reliever. If combination ICS-SABA is not available, the patient can be prescribed ICS to be taken whenever they use their SABA reliever, but evidence supporting this treatment option is limited to small studies that were not powered to detect differences in exacerbation rates.

Steps 1 and 2 for children 6–11 years

Step 1 options for children 6–11 years now include the anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR) regimens of as-needed-only low-dose combination ICS-formoterol, or as-needed-only ICS-SABA with combination or separate inhalers, to reduce the risk of exacerbations compared with SABA-only treatment. In Step 2, these AIR-only regimens are also suggested as alternative options to daily ICS with as-needed SABA.

The treatment figure for children 6–11 years (Box 4-12, p.104) reflects the best available evidence at each step, but not how to transition between steps 1, 2 and 3 in clinical practice if required for better symptom control or to reduce exacerbations. Pragmatic advice is:

- For children prescribed as-needed-only ICS-formoterol, the suggested next step (if needed) is low-dose ICS-formoterol MART.
- For children prescribed as-needed-only combination ICS-SABA, the suggested next step (if needed) is daily ICS plus as-needed ICS-SABA
- For children prescribed as-needed ICS+SABA with separate inhalers, the suggested next step (if needed) is daily ICS plus as-needed SABA, with extra ICS taken whenever SABA is taken.

Consider step-up if asthma remains uncontrolled despite good adherence and inhaler technique

Before considering any step up, **first confirm that the symptoms are due to asthma and identify and address common problems** such as inhaler technique, adherence, allergen exposure and multimorbidity; provide patient education.

For adults and adolescents, the preferred Step 3 treatment is the Track 1 regimen with low-dose ICS-formoterol as maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART). This reduces the risk of severe exacerbations, with similar or better symptom control, compared with maintenance treatment using a combination of an ICS and a long-acting beta₂-agonist (LABA) as controller, plus as-needed SABA. If needed, the maintenance dose of ICS-formoterol can be increased to medium (i.e., Step 4) by increasing the number of maintenance inhalations. For children 6–11 years, MART is also a preferred treatment option at Steps 3 and 4 using a lower-dose ICS-formoterol inhaler.

ICS-formoterol should not be used as the reliever for patients taking a different ICS-LABA maintenance treatment, because clinical evidence for safety and efficacy is lacking.

Other Step 3 options for adults and adolescents in Track 2, and in children, include maintenance ICS-LABA plus as-needed SABA or plus as-needed ICS-SABA (if available) or, for children 6–11 years, medium-dose ICS plus as-needed SABA. For children, consider trying other controller options at the same step before stepping up.

Step down to find the minimum effective treatment

Once good asthma control has been achieved and maintained for 2–3 months, consider stepping down gradually to find the patient's lowest treatment that controls both symptoms and exacerbations.

Provide the patient with a written asthma action plan, monitor closely, and schedule a follow-up visit.

Do not completely withdraw ICS unless a short break is necessary to confirm the diagnosis of asthma.

Tables defining low, medium or high daily doses of ICS do not represent equivalent potency. If a patient is switched from one medication to another, monitor asthma stability.

For all patients with asthma, provide asthma education and training in essential skills

After choosing the right class of medication for the patient, the choice of inhaler device depends on which inhalers delivering the required medication are available to the patient, which of these inhalers the patient can use correctly after training, and their relative environmental impact. Check inhaler technique frequently.

Provide inhaler skills training: this is essential for medications to be effective, but technique is often incorrect.

Encourage adherence to ICS-containing medication, even when symptoms are infrequent.

Provide training in asthma self-management (self-monitoring of symptoms and/or peak expiratory flow [PEF]), written asthma action plan and regular medical review) to control symptoms and minimize the risk of exacerbations.

For patients with one or more risk factors for exacerbations

Prescribe ICS-containing medication, in adults and adolescents preferably from Track 1 options, i.e., with as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol as reliever; provide a written asthma action plan; and arrange review more frequently than for lower-risk patients.

Identify and address modifiable risk factors (e.g., smoking, low lung function, over-use of SABA).

Consider non-pharmacological strategies and interventions to assist with symptom control and risk reduction, (e.g., smoking cessation advice, breathing exercises, some avoidance strategies).

Difficult-to-treat and severe asthma (see Section 8, p.149)

Patients who have poor symptom control and/or exacerbations, despite medium- or high-dose ICS-LABA treatment, should be assessed for contributing factors, and asthma treatment should be optimized.

If the problems continue or diagnosis is uncertain, refer to a specialist center for phenotypic assessment and consideration of add-on therapy including biologics.

Allergen immunotherapy

Allergen-specific immunotherapy may be considered as add-on therapy for patients with asthma who have clinically significant sensitization to aeroallergens, and stable but not well-controlled asthma. See p.114 for details.

For all patients, use your own professional judgment, and always check local eligibility and payer criteria.

CATEGORIES OF ASTHMA MEDICATIONS

The pharmacological options for long-term treatment of asthma fall into the following main categories (Box 4-1, p.76):

- **Controller medications:** Medications that reduce symptoms and future risk. “Controller” now mainly refers to medications containing ICS, which reduce airway inflammation, control symptoms, and reduce risks such as exacerbations and the associated decline in lung function.¹³³ In GINA Track 1, controller treatment is delivered through an anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR), low-dose ICS-formoterol, taken when symptoms occur and before exercise or allergen exposure; in Steps 3–5, the patient also takes maintenance controller treatment as daily or twice-daily ICS-formoterol. This is called “maintenance-and-reliever therapy” (MART). The dose and regimen of controller medications should be optimized to minimize the risk of medication side-effects, including risks of needing OCS. In the past, the term “controller” referred only to maintenance medication (Box 4-1), mainly ICS and ICS-LABA.

- **Reliever medications:** All patients should be provided with a reliever inhaler for as-needed relief of breakthrough symptoms, including during worsening asthma or exacerbations. They are also recommended for short-term prevention of exercise-induced bronchoconstriction.

Relievers include the anti-inflammatory relievers (ICS-formoterol and ICS-SABA), and SABA. Combination ICS-LABA with non-formoterol LABAs cannot be used as a reliever, due to a slower onset of action (e.g., ICS-salmeterol), or due to lack of safety and/or efficacy with more than once-daily use (e.g., ICS-vilanterol, ICS-indacaterol). ICS-formoterol should not be used as the reliever for patients taking maintenance ICS-LABA with a non-formoterol LABA.³²⁷

Over-use of SABA (e.g., dispensing of three or more 200-dose canisters in a year, corresponding to average use more than daily), is associated with increased risk of asthma exacerbations, compared with 0–2 canisters/year.^{102,103} Regular SABA also increases the risk of poor symptom control.³²⁸

- **Add-on therapies, including those for patients with severe asthma** (Section 8, p.149).

When compared with medications used for other chronic diseases, most of the medications used for treatment of asthma have very favorable therapeutic ratios. See Box 4-2 (p.77) for low, medium and high ICS doses.

Box 4-1. Terminology for asthma medications

Term	Definition	Notes
Maintenance treatment	Asthma treatment that is prescribed for use every day (or on a regularly scheduled basis)	Medications intended to be used continuously, even when the person does not have asthma symptoms. Examples include ICS-containing medications (ICS, ICS-LABA, ICS-LABA-LAMA), LTRA,* and biologic therapy. The term “maintenance” describes the prescribed frequency of administration, not a particular class of asthma medicine.
Controller	Medication targeting both domains of asthma control (symptom control and future risk)	In the past, “controller” was largely used for ICS-containing medications prescribed for regular daily treatment, so “controller” and “maintenance” became almost synonymous. However, this became confusing after the introduction of combination ICS-containing relievers for as-needed use. To avoid confusion, “ICS-containing treatment” and “maintenance treatment” have been substituted as appropriate where the intended meaning was unclear.
Reliever	Asthma inhaler taken as needed, for quick relief of asthma symptoms	Sometimes called rescue inhalers. As well as being used for symptom relief, reliever inhalers can also be used before exercise, to prevent exercise-induced asthma symptoms. Includes SABAs (e.g., salbutamol [albuterol], terbutaline, ICS-salbutamol), as-needed ICS-formoterol, and as-needed ICS-SABA. SABA-containing relievers should not be used for regular maintenance use, or to be taken when the person does not have asthma symptoms (except before exercise).
Anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR)	Reliever inhaler that contains both a low-dose ICS and a rapid-acting bronchodilator	Includes budesonide-formoterol, beclometasone-formoterol, and ICS-salbutamol (ICS-albuterol) combinations. Patients can also use AIRs as needed before exercise or allergen exposure to prevent asthma symptoms and bronchoconstriction. The anti-inflammatory effect of as-needed ICS-formoterol was demonstrated by reduction in FeNO in several studies. ^{214,215,329} AIR can be used as-needed at Steps 1–2 as the person’s sole asthma treatment, without a maintenance treatment (also called “ AIR-only ”). Some ICS-formoterol combinations can be used as both maintenance treatment and reliever treatment at Steps 3–5 (see MART , below). For medications and doses, see Box 4-8 (p.90). Combination ICS-LABA with non-formoterol LABA cannot be used as a reliever, and ICS-formoterol should not be used as the reliever with maintenance ICS-non-formoterol-LABA (p.75). ³²⁷
Maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART)	Treatment regimen in which the patient uses an ICS-formoterol inhaler every day (maintenance dose), and also uses the same medication as needed for relief of asthma symptoms (reliever doses)	MART (Maintenance-And-Reliever Therapy) can be delivered only with combination ICS-formoterol inhalers such as budesonide-formoterol and beclometasone-formoterol. Other ICS-formoterol inhalers can also potentially be used, but combinations of ICS with non-formoterol LABAs, or ICS-SABA, cannot be used for MART. MART is also sometimes called SMART (single-inhaler maintenance-and-reliever therapy); the meaning is the same. For medications and doses, see Box 4-8 (p.90).

*If prescribing LTRA, advise patient/caregiver about risk of neuropsychiatric adverse effects.³³⁰

AIR: anti-inflammatory reliever; FeNO: fractional exhaled nitric oxide; ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; LAMA: long-acting muscarinic antagonist; LTRA: leukotriene receptor antagonist; MART: maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist.

Box 4-2. Low, medium and high daily metered doses of inhaled corticosteroids (alone or with LABA)

This is not a table of equivalence, but suggested total daily doses for “low”, “medium” and “high” dose ICS options for adults/adolescents (Box 4-6, p.83) and children 6–11 years (Box 4-12, p.104), based on product information.

The table does NOT imply potency equivalence. For example, if you switch treatment from a “medium” dose of one ICS to a “medium” dose of another ICS, this may represent a decrease (or an increase) in potency, and the patient’s asthma may become unstable (or they may be at increased risk of adverse effects).

A patient’s asthma should be monitored for stability after any change of treatment or inhaler device. Doses and potency may also differ by country, depending on local products, inhaler devices, regulatory labelling and clinical guidelines or, for one product, with addition of a LAMA to an ICS-LABA.³³¹

Low-dose ICS provides most of the clinical benefit of ICS for most patients with asthma. However, ICS responsiveness varies between patients, so some patients may need **medium-dose ICS** if their asthma is uncontrolled, or they have ongoing exacerbations, despite good adherence and correct technique with low-dose ICS (with or without LABA). **High-dose ICS** (in combination with LABA or separately) is needed by very few patients, and its long-term use is associated with an increased risk of local and systemic side-effects, which must be balanced against the potential benefits. The timing of medication use also affects outcomes, particularly for exacerbations, as seen with an anti-inflammatory reliever in GINA Track 1. **For Track 1 medications and doses, see Box 4-8, p.90.**

Daily doses in this table are shown as metered doses. See product information for delivered doses.

Inhaled corticosteroid (alone or in combination with LABA)	Total daily ICS dose (mcg) – see notes above		
	Low	Medium	High
Adults and adolescents (12 years and older)			
Beclometasone dipropionate (pMDI, standard particle, HFA)	200–500	>500–1000	>1000
Beclometasone dipropionate (DPI or pMDI, extrafine particle, HFA)	100–200	>200–400	>400
Budesonide (DPI, or pMDI, standard particle, HFA)	200–400	>400–800	>800
Ciclesonide (pMDI, extrafine particle, HFA)	80–160	>160–320	>320
Fluticasone furoate (DPI)	100	200	
Fluticasone propionate (DPI)	100–250	>250–500	>500
Fluticasone propionate (pMDI, standard particle, HFA)	100–250	>250–500	>500
Mometasone furoate (DPI)	Depends on DPI device – see product information		
Mometasone furoate (pMDI, standard particle, HFA)	200–400		>400
Children 6–11 years – see notes above (for children 5 years and younger, see Box 11-3, p.208)			
Beclometasone dipropionate (pMDI, standard particle, HFA)	100–200	>200–400	>400
Beclometasone dipropionate (pMDI, extrafine particle, HFA)	50–100	>100–200	>200
Budesonide (DPI, or pMDI, standard particle, HFA)	100–200	>200–400	>400
Budesonide (nebulas)	250–500	>500–1000	>1000
Ciclesonide (pMDI, extrafine particle*, HFA)	80	>80–160	>160
Fluticasone furoate (DPI)	50		n.a.
Fluticasone propionate (DPI)	50–100	>100–200	>200
Fluticasone propionate (pMDI, standard particle, HFA)	50–100	>100–200	>200
Mometasone furoate (pMDI, standard particle, HFA)	100		200

DPI: dry-powder inhaler; HFA: hydrofluoroalkane propellant; ICS: inhaled corticosteroids; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; pMDI: pressurized metered-dose inhaler. ICS by pMDI should preferably be used with a spacer.

For new preparations, including generic ICS, the manufacturer’s information should be reviewed carefully, as products containing the same molecule may not be clinically equivalent. Combination inhalers that include a long-acting muscarinic antagonist (LAMA) may have different ICS dosing – see product information.

ICS-CONTAINING MEDICATION

Why should ICS-containing medication be commenced from time of asthma diagnosis?

For the best outcomes, ICS-containing treatment should be initiated when (or as soon as possible after) the diagnosis of asthma is made. All patients should also be provided with a reliever inhaler for quick symptom relief, preferably an anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR).

GINA recommends ICS-containing medication from diagnosis for several reasons:

- As-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol reduces the risk of severe exacerbations and emergency department visits or hospitalizations by 65%, compared with SABA-only treatment.²¹⁰ This anti-inflammatory reliever regimen (AIR-only) significantly reduces severe exacerbations regardless of the patient's baseline symptom frequency, lung function, exacerbation history or inflammatory profile (high or low blood eosinophils or fractional concentration of exhaled nitric oxide [FeNO]).^{214,215}
- Starting treatment with SABA alone trains patients to regard it as their main asthma treatment, and increases the risk of poor adherence when daily ICS is subsequently prescribed.
- Early initiation of low-dose ICS in patients with asthma leads to a greater improvement in lung function than if symptoms have been present for more than 2–4 years.^{332,333} One study showed that after this time, higher ICS doses were required, and lower lung function was achieved.³³³
- Patients not taking ICS who experience a severe exacerbation have a greater long-term decline in lung function than those who are taking ICS.¹³³
- For patients with occupational asthma, early removal from exposure to the sensitizing agent and early ICS-containing treatment increase the probability of resolution of symptoms, and improvement of lung function and airway hyperresponsiveness.^{75,76}

For adults and adolescents, recommended options for initial asthma treatment, based on evidence (where available) and consensus, are listed in Box 4-4 (p.81) and shown in Box 4-5 (p.82). Treatment for adults and adolescents is shown in two tracks, depending on the reliever inhaler (Box 4-6, p.83).

For children 6–11 years, recommendations about initial treatment are shown in Box 4-10 (p.102) and Box 4-11 (p.103).

The patient's response should be reviewed, and treatment stepped down once good control is achieved. Recommendations for a stepwise approach to ongoing treatment are found in Box 4-12 (p.104).

Does FeNO help in deciding whether to commence ICS?

In studies mainly limited to non-smoking adult patients, FeNO >50 parts per billion (ppb) was associated with a good short-term (weeks) symptomatic response to ICS.^{334,335} However, these studies did not examine the longer-term risk of exacerbations. In two 12-month studies in patients with mild asthma or taking SABA alone, severe exacerbations were reduced with as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol versus as-needed SABA and versus maintenance ICS, independent of baseline inflammatory characteristics including FeNO.^{214,215}

Several factors are associated with variation in FeNO levels between and within patients.⁵⁸ See biomarker overview for details (p.237).

Consequently, in patients with a diagnosis or suspected diagnosis of asthma, high FeNO can support the decision to start ICS, but low FeNO cannot be used to decide against treatment with ICS. For example, low FeNO may incorrectly phenotype obese adults with asthma as having non-eosinophilic asthma.^{29,57} Based on past and current evidence, GINA recommends treatment with as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol (preferred) or with daily low-dose ICS plus as-needed SABA (alternative) for all adults and adolescents with mild asthma, to reduce the risk of severe exacerbations.^{9,214,215,336,337}

Choice of medication, device and dose

In clinical practice, the choice of medication, device and dose for maintenance and for reliever for each individual patient should be based on assessment of symptom control, risk factors, which inhalers are available for the relevant medication class, which of these the patient can use correctly after training, their cost, their environmental impact and the patient's likely adherence. For more detail about choice of inhaler, see Section 5 (p.117) and Box 5-1 (p.118). Monitor the response to treatment and any side-effects, and adjust the dose accordingly (Box 4-6, p.83). There is insufficient good-quality evidence to support use of extrafine-particle ICS aerosols over others.³³⁸

Once good symptom control has been maintained for 2–3 months, and if the patient has not had any exacerbations, asthma treatment can be carefully down-titrated to the minimum medications and dose that will maintain good symptom control and minimize exacerbation risk, while reducing the potential for side-effects (Box 4-6, p.83). For patients with severe asthma who have had a good asthma response to biologic therapy, a longer period of stability is recommended before the ICS dose is reduced, and reduction and cessation of OCS should be undertaken first. More details are given in Section 8, p.149. If a high daily dose of ICS is being considered (except for short periods), the patient should be referred for expert assessment and advice, where possible (Section 8, p.149).

GINA recommends that all adults and adolescents and all children 6–11 years should receive ICS-containing medication, incorporated in their maintenance and/or anti-inflammatory reliever treatment as part of personalized asthma management. For adults and adolescents, treatment options are shown in Box 4-6 (p.83) and, for children aged 6–11 years, in Box 4-12 (p.104). Clinicians should check local eligibility and payer criteria before prescribing.

Adjusting ongoing asthma treatment in adults, adolescents, and children aged 6–11 years

Once asthma treatment has begun (Box 4-4, Box 4-5, Box 4-10 and Box 4-11, p.81), ongoing treatment decisions are based on a personalized cycle of assessment, adjustment of treatment, and review of the response. For each patient, in addition to treatment of modifiable risk factors, asthma medication can be adjusted up or down in a stepwise approach (adults and adolescents: Box 4-6, p.83, children 6–11 years, Box 4-12, p.104) to achieve good symptom control and minimize future risk of exacerbations, persistent airflow limitation and medication side-effects. When good asthma control has been maintained for 2–3 months, treatment may be stepped down to find the patient's minimum effective treatment (Box 4-13, p.112).

People's ethnic and racial backgrounds may be associated with different responses to treatment. These are not necessarily associated with genetic differences.³³⁹ The contributors are likely to be multifactorial, including differences in exposures, social disadvantage, diet and health-seeking behavior.

If a patient has persisting uncontrolled symptoms and/or exacerbations despite 2–3 months of ICS-containing treatment, assess and correct the following common problems before considering any step up in treatment:

- Incorrect inhaler technique
- Poor adherence
- Persistent exposure at home/work to agents such as allergens, tobacco smoke, indoor or outdoor air pollution, or to medications such as beta-blockers or (in some patients) nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)
- Comorbidities that may contribute to respiratory symptoms and poor quality of life
- Incorrect diagnosis.

The evidence supporting treatment options at each step is summarized below:

See: [Treatment options for adults and adolescents, p.80](#)

See: [Treatment options for children 6–11 years, p.102.](#)

ADULTS AND ADOLESCENTS: ASTHMA TREATMENT TRACKS

The steps below refer to the recommended asthma treatment options shown in Box 4-6 (p.83). Treatment recommendations for adults and adolescents are shown in two treatment Tracks (Box 4-3), for clarity. Suggested low, medium and high doses for a range of ICS formulations are shown in Box 4-2 (p.77). Medication options and doses for GINA Track 1 are listed in Box 4-8 (p.90). Details about treatment steps for children 6–11 years start on p.102.

Box 4-3. Asthma treatment tracks for adults and adolescents

Asthma treatment for adults and adolescents is in two Tracks

For adults and adolescents, the main treatment figure (Box 4-6, p.83), shows the options for ongoing treatment as two treatment “tracks”. The key difference is the medication that is used for symptom relief. In Track 1 (preferred), the reliever is as needed low-dose ICS formoterol, and in Track 2, as-needed ICS-SABA or as-needed SABA.

The main reason for showing treatment in two tracks is to show clinicians how to step treatment up and down using the same reliever at each step. It also shows that ICS-formoterol should not be used as the reliever along with a combination ICS-non-formoterol-LABA, due to lack of evidence about efficacy and safety (p.75).³²⁷

Track 1: The reliever is as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol

This is the preferred approach recommended by GINA for adults and adolescents, because using low-dose ICS formoterol (an anti-inflammatory reliever [AIR]) reduces the risk of severe exacerbations, compared with regimens that use SABA as reliever, with similar symptom control. Both ICS and formoterol contribute to the risk reduction.³⁴⁰ In addition, the treatment regimen is simpler, with patients using a single medication, single dose, and single inhaler device for reliever and for maintenance treatment if prescribed, across treatment steps:

- With this approach, when a patient at any treatment step has asthma symptoms, they use low-dose ICS-formoterol in a single inhaler for symptom relief. In Steps 1–2, this provides their anti-inflammatory therapy.
- In Steps 3–5, patients also take ICS formoterol as their daily maintenance treatment; together, this is called “maintenance-and-reliever therapy” (MART). ICS-formoterol is the only ICS-LABA that can be used for MART.

Medications and doses for GINA Track 1 are shown in Box 4-8 (p.90).

Track 2: The reliever is as-needed low-dose ICS-SABA or, if not available, as-needed SABA

This is an alternative approach if Track 1 is not possible, or if a patient’s asthma is stable with good adherence and no exacerbations on their current therapy.

In Step 1, the patient takes a combination low-dose ICS-SABA (an anti-inflammatory reliever) for symptom relief. If ICS-SABA is not available, the patient takes a separate low-dose ICS inhaler immediately after they take SABA.

In Steps 2–5, a combination ICS-SABA or a SABA (alone) is used for symptom relief, and the patient takes maintenance ICS-containing medication regularly every day.

Before prescribing a regimen with a SABA reliever, consider whether the patient is likely to adhere to their maintenance therapy, as poor adherence will increase the risk of exacerbations.

If the reliever and maintenance medication are in different devices, make sure that the patient can use each inhaler correctly. If changing between steps requires a different inhaler device, train the patient how to use the new inhaler.

Stepping up and down

Treatment can be stepped up or down along one track, using the same reliever at each step, or it can be switched between tracks, according to the individual patient’s needs and preferences. Before stepping up, check for common problems such as incorrect inhaler technique, poor adherence, and environmental exposures, and confirm that the symptoms are due to asthma (Box 2-4, p.52).

Other therapies

Brief information about allergen immunotherapy and non-pharmacologic interventions is included in the treatment figure, below the two Tracks. Readers are referred to the text for information about other controller options that have less evidence for their safety and/or efficacy compared with the treatments in Tracks 1 and 2.

ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist

INITIAL ASTHMA TREATMENT FOR ADULTS AND ADOLESCENTS

Box 4-4. Initial asthma treatment for adults and adolescents with a diagnosis of asthma

These recommendations are based on evidence, where available, and on consensus.

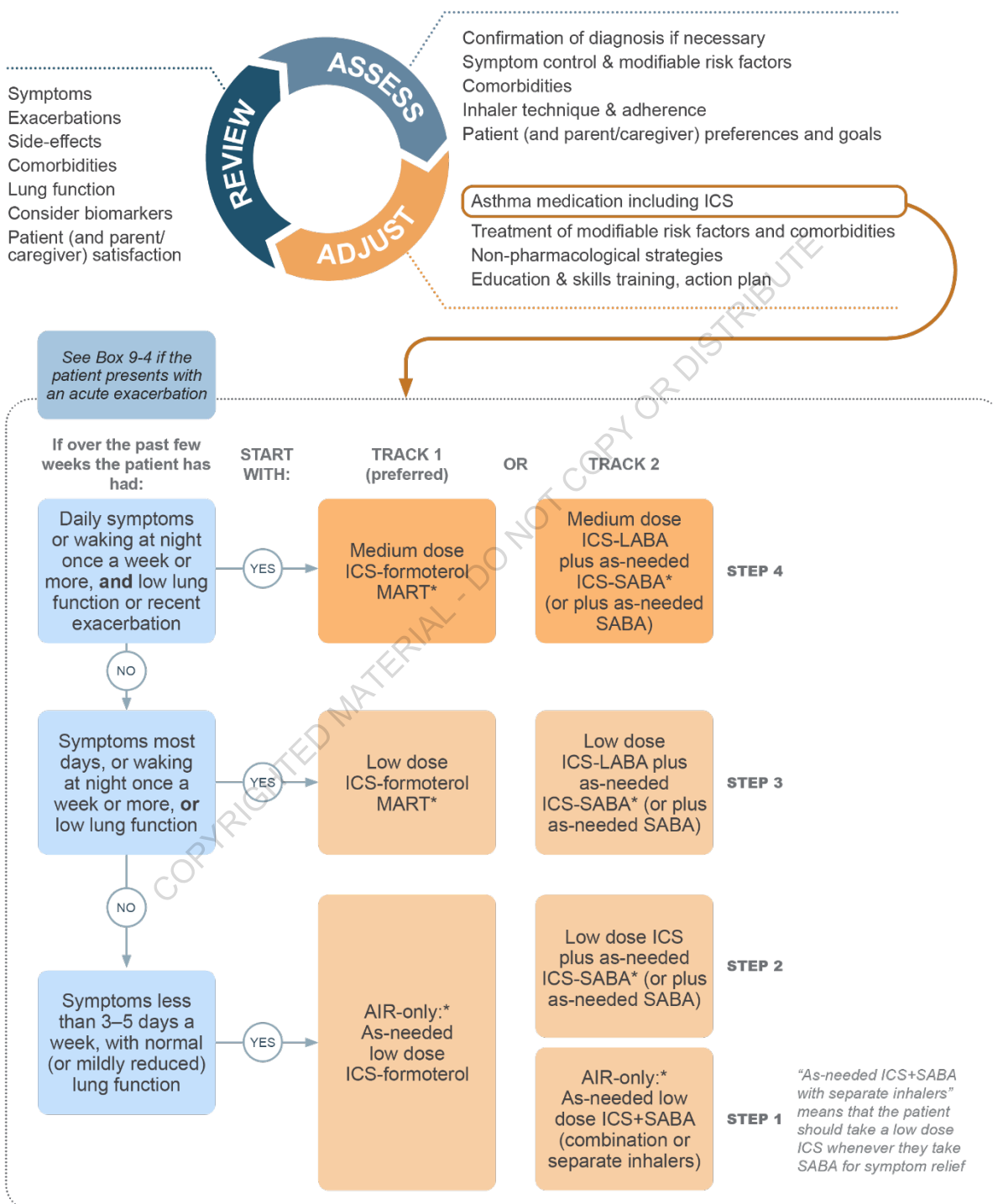
Presenting symptoms	Preferred INITIAL treatment (Track 1)	Alternative INITIAL treatment (Track 2)
Infrequent asthma symptoms, e.g., 2 days/week or less	As-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol (Evidence A)	As-needed low-dose ICS+SABA in combination or separate inhalers (Evidence B). Patients with such infrequent symptoms are highly unlikely to be adherent with daily ICS if prescribed.
Asthma symptoms less than 3–5 days/week, with normal or mildly reduced lung function		Low-dose ICS (i.e., daily treatment) plus as-needed low-dose ICS-SABA (Evidence B) or plus as-needed SABA. Before choosing this option, consider likely adherence to daily ICS.
Asthma symptoms most days (e.g., ≥ 4 days/week), or night waking due to asthma once a week or more, or low lung function. See p.87 for additional considerations.	Low-dose ICS-formoterol maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) (Evidence A)	Low-dose ICS-LABA plus as-needed combination ICS-SABA (Evidence B) OR Medium-dose ICS plus as-needed SABA (Evidence A). Consider probability of adherence to daily maintenance treatment.
Daily asthma symptoms or waking at night with asthma once a week or more, and with low lung function or recent exacerbation.	Medium-dose ICS-formoterol maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) (Evidence B).	Medium-dose ICS-LABA plus as-needed combination ICS-SABA (Evidence B) or plus as-needed SABA. Consider probability of adherence to daily maintenance treatment.
Initial asthma presentation is during an acute exacerbation	Treat as for exacerbation (Box 9-4, p.180 and Box 9-6, p.186), including short course of OCS if severe; commence medium-dose MART (Evidence D).	Treat as for exacerbation (Box 9-4, p.180 and Box 9-6, p.186), including short course of OCS if severe; commence medium-dose ICS-LABA plus as-needed SABA (Evidence D).
Before starting initial controller treatment:		
- Record evidence for the diagnosis of asthma. - Record the patient's level of symptom control and risk factors, including lung function (Box 2-2, p.41). - Consider factors influencing choice between available treatment options (Box 3-4, p.58), including whether patient is likely to adhere to daily ICS-containing treatment, particularly if the reliever is SABA. - Choose a suitable inhaler (Box 5-1, p.118) and ensure that the patient can use the inhaler correctly. If separate reliever and maintenance inhalers are needed, try to avoid devices that require different techniques. - Schedule an appointment for a follow-up visit.		
After starting initial controller treatment:		
- Review patient's response (Box 2-2, p.41) after 2–3 months, or earlier depending on clinical urgency. - See Box 4-6 (p.83) for recommendations for ongoing treatment and other key management issues. - Check adherence and inhaler technique frequently. - Step down treatment when good control has been maintained for 3 months (Box 4-13, p.112).		

ICS: inhaled corticosteroids; LABA: long-acting β_2 -agonist; MART: maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol; OCS: oral corticosteroid; SABA: short-acting β_2 -agonist.

Also consider cost and probability of adherence to maintenance treatment, and check local eligibility/payer criteria. See Box 4-2 (p.77) for low, medium and high ICS doses, and Box 4-8 (p.90) for Track 1 medications and doses.

Box 4-5. Flowchart for selecting initial treatment in adults and adolescents with a diagnosis of asthma

GINA 2026 STARTING TREATMENT in adults and adolescents 12+ years with a diagnosis of asthma



*AIR: anti-inflammatory reliever; ICS: inhaled corticosteroids; LABA: long-acting β_2 -agonist; MART: maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol; SABA: short-acting β_2 -agonist. These recommendations are based on evidence, where available, and on consensus. See Box 4-2 (p.77) for low, medium and high ICS doses for adults and adolescents. See Box 4-8 (p.91), for Track 1 medications and doses. Check local payer criteria.

ASTHMA TREATMENT STEPS IN ADULTS AND ADOLESCENTS

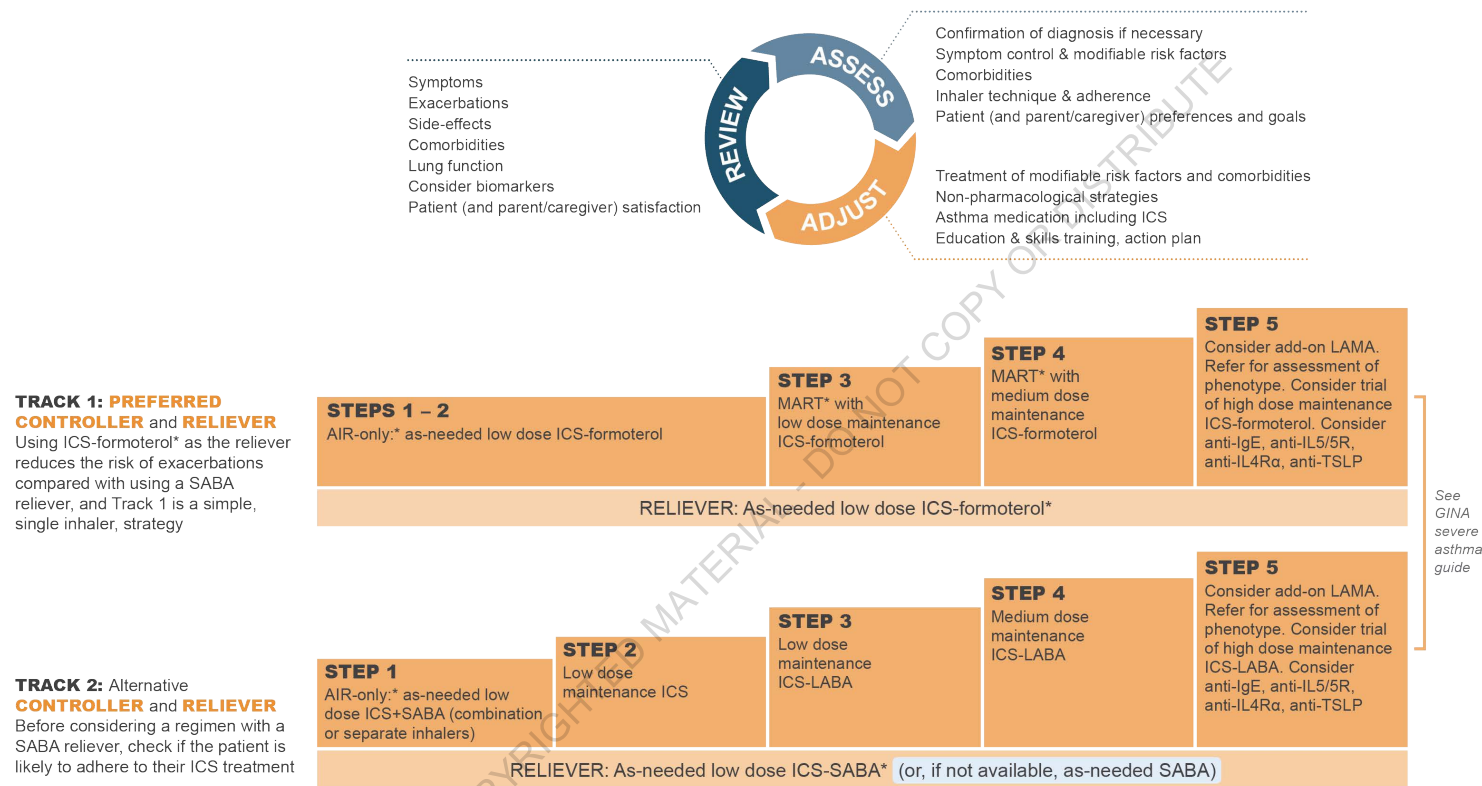
Box 4-6. Personalized management for adults and adolescents to control symptoms and minimize future risk

GINA 2026

Adults & adolescents 12+ years

Personalized asthma management

Assess, Adjust, Review for individual patient needs



Anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR). ICS+SABA with separate inhalers means that the patient takes ICS whenever they take SABA. MART is maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol.

Track 2 reliever: if ICS-formoterol* and ICS-SABA* are not available, use SABA reliever, but closely monitor adherence with maintenance ICS to avoid SABA-only treatment.

Non-pharmacologic strategies for asthma include smoking cessation, physical activity, pulmonary rehabilitation, weight reduction, vaccinations (see text for more).

Allergen immunotherapy, e.g. HDM SLIT: consider for patients with clinically relevant sensitization and not-well-controlled (but stable) asthma. See text for more information and safety advice.

See text for additional controller options at each step that have less evidence for efficacy or for safety than Tracks 1 and 2. Maintenance OCS should only ever be used as last resort.

*AIR: Anti-inflammatory reliever; Ig: immunoglobulin; ICS: inhaled corticosteroids; HDM: house dust mite; IL: interleukin; LABA: long-acting β_2 -agonist; LAMA: long-acting muscarinic antagonist; MART: maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol; OCS: oral corticosteroid; SABA: short-acting β_2 -agonist; SLIT: sublingual immunotherapy; TSLP: thymic stromal lymphopoietin. For initial asthma treatment, see Box 4-4 (p.81) and Box 4-5 (p.82). For low, medium and high ICS doses, see Box 4-2 (p.77). For Track 1 medications, see Box 4-8 (p.90).

TRACK 1 (PREFERRED): TREATMENT STEPS 1–4 FOR ADULTS AND ADOLESCENTS USING ICS-FORMOTEROL RELIEVER

Track 1 is the preferred approach recommended by GINA for adults and adolescents with asthma, because using low-dose ICS formoterol (an anti-inflammatory reliever; AIR) reduces the risk of severe exacerbations, compared with regimens that use SABA as reliever, with similar symptom control and lung function. In addition, the treatment regimen is simpler, with patients using a single medication, single dose and single inhaler device for their reliever and maintenance treatment (if prescribed), across treatment steps.

With the AIR approach in Track 1, when a patient at any treatment step has asthma symptoms, they use low-dose ICS-formoterol in a single inhaler for symptom relief. In Steps 1–2, this provides their anti-inflammatory therapy. In Steps 3–5, patients also take ICS formoterol as their daily maintenance treatment; together, this is called “maintenance-and-reliever therapy” (MART). ICS-formoterol is the only ICS-LABA that can be used for MART. Details about medications and doses for Track 1 are in Box 4-8, p.90. Details below are for Track 1, Steps 1–4. In Step 5, treatment options for Tracks 1 and 2 are similar, so the information is shown for both Tracks together, starting on p.98 and in Section 8, p.149.

Box 4-7. Track 1 (preferred) treatment Steps 1–4 for adults and adolescents

GINA TRACK 1 example with
budesonide-formoterol 160/4.5 mcg
or BDP-formoterol 100/6 mcg,
by DPI or pMDI

STEPS 1 – 2
Take 1 inhalation as
needed (AIR-only*)

STEP 3
Take 1 inhalation
morning and evening,
and 1 inhalation
as needed
(Step 3 MART*)

STEP 4
Take 2 inhalations
morning and evening,
and 1 inhalation
as needed
(Step 4 MART*)

STEP 5
Refer for expert
assessment,
phenotyping,
and add-on
treatment for
severe asthma

See Box 4-8 for other formulations.

GINA TRACK 1: the PREFERRED treatment for adults and adolescents.

Using low dose ICS-formoterol as an anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR*), with or without maintenance ICS-formoterol, reduces the risk of exacerbations compared with using a SABA reliever, and is a simple regimen, with a single medication, device and dose across treatment steps.

See Box 4-8 (p.90) for details of medications and doses. AIR: anti-inflammatory reliever; BDP: beclometasone dipropionate; DPI: dry-powder inhaler; ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; MART: maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol; pMDI: pressurized metered-dose inhaler; SABA: short-acting beta₂ agonist

Check local eligibility and payer criteria for doses and formulations.

For symptom relief with ICS-formoterol, take 1 inhalation whenever needed. If symptoms persist after a few minutes, another dose can be taken. Seek medical care if more than 12 inhalations (total of reliever doses and maintenance doses, if prescribed) are needed in any 24-hour period.

Use 1 inhalation of ICS-formoterol before exercise, if needed, or before expected allergen exposure.

Track 1 (preferred) Step 1–2 treatment for adults and adolescents: as-needed low-dose combination ICS-formoterol

In Track 1, Steps 1–2, low-dose combination ICS-formoterol is used as needed for symptom relief, and before exercise or before expected allergen exposure.

Information about Steps 1 and 2 below is combined, because the recommended treatment (as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol) is the same.

In Track 1, Step 1–2 treatment with as-needed-only low-dose combination ICS-formoterol is recommended for:

- Step-down treatment for patients whose asthma is well controlled on low-dose maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol (Evidence D) or on regular low-dose ICS with as-needed SABA (Evidence A)
- Initial treatment for patients previously using SABA alone (or with newly diagnosed asthma), with normal or mildly reduced lung function. Some clinical factors, outlined below, may prompt consideration of starting treatment instead at Step 3, with low-dose ICS-formoterol maintenance-and-reliever therapy.

Populations studied

The populations studied in the large randomized controlled trials of as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol^{20,214,215,336,337} included almost 10,000 adults and adolescents with asthma that was considered to be mild, and was either uncontrolled on SABA alone, or controlled on low-dose ICS or LTRA. In the two largest studies, post-bronchodilator forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV₁) was required to be ≥80% predicted at baseline.^{336,337}

Evidence

Use of low-dose ICS-formoterol as needed for symptom relief (an anti-inflammatory reliever) for adults and adolescents (Evidence A) is supported by evidence from four randomized controlled trials, and by systematic review and meta-analysis of all four studies for several outcomes.²¹⁰ The two largest studies were double-blind, and two were pragmatic and open-label, intended to evaluate the treatment as it would be used in clinical practice, without patients required to take a twice-daily maintenance inhaler.

The key findings with as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol, as follows, support the Step 1–2 recommendations:

- A large double-blind study found a 64% reduction in severe exacerbations requiring OCS, compared with SABA-only treatment,³³⁶ with a similar finding in an open-label study in patients previously taking SABA alone (Evidence A).²¹⁴ In the Cochrane meta-analysis, as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol reduced the risk of severe exacerbations requiring OCS by 55%, and reduced the risk of emergency department visits or hospitalizations by 65%, compared with SABA alone (Evidence A).²¹⁰ An open-label study in children 5–15 years taking SABA-alone found a 45% reduction in moderate-severe exacerbations with as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol compared with SABA alone, with the greatest benefit seen in those aged 12–15 years.²⁰
- Two large double-blind studies showed as-needed budesonide-formoterol was non-inferior for severe exacerbations, compared with regular ICS.^{336,337} In two open-label randomized controlled trials, representing the way that patients with mild asthma would use as-needed ICS-formoterol in real life, as-needed budesonide-formoterol was superior to maintenance ICS in reducing the risk of severe exacerbations (Evidence A).^{214,215}
- A Cochrane review provided moderate to high certainty evidence that as-needed ICS-formoterol was clinically effective in adults and adolescents with mild asthma, significantly reducing important clinical outcomes including need for oral corticosteroids, severe exacerbation rates, and emergency department visits or hospital admissions, compared with daily ICS plus as-needed SABA (Evidence A).²¹⁰
- In the four studies with ICS comparator, the as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol strategy was associated with a substantially lower average ICS dose than the maintenance low-dose ICS strategy.^{214,215,336,337}
- Clinical outcomes with as-needed ICS-formoterol were similar in adolescents as in adults.³⁴¹

- A post hoc analysis of one study³³⁶ found that a day with >2 doses of as-needed budesonide-formoterol reduced the short-term (21 day) risk of severe exacerbations, compared with as needed terbutaline alone, suggesting that timing of use of ICS-formoterol is important.¹⁴⁴
- No new safety signals were seen with as-needed budesonide-formoterol in these studies.^{214,215,336,337,342}

Considerations for recommending as-needed-only low-dose ICS-formoterol as preferred treatment for Steps 1–2

The most important considerations for GINA are:

- The need to prevent severe exacerbations in patients with mild or infrequent symptoms; these can occur with unpredictable triggers such as viral infection, allergen exposure, pollution or stress.
- The desire to avoid the need for daily ICS in patients with mild asthma, who in clinical practice are often poorly adherent with prescribed ICS, leaving them exposed to the risks of SABA-only treatment.³⁴³
- The greater reduction in severe exacerbations with as-needed ICS-formoterol, compared with daily ICS, among patients previously taking SABA alone, with no significant difference for patients with well-controlled asthma on ICS or LTRA at baseline.^{214,344}
- The very small differences in FEV₁, (approximately 30–50 mL), symptom control (difference in 5-question Asthma Control Questionnaire [ACQ-5] score of approximately 0.15 versus minimal clinically important difference 0.5), and symptom-free days (mean difference 10.6 days per year),^{336,337} compared with regular ICS were considered to be less important. These differences did not increase over the 12-month studies. The primary outcome variable of one study³³⁶ was “well-controlled asthma weeks”, but this outcome was not considered reliable because it was based on an older concept of asthma control, and was systematically biased against the as-needed ICS-formoterol treatment group because much less ICS was permitted in a week for patients on ICS-formoterol than those on maintenance ICS before the week was classified as not well controlled.
- The similar reduction in FeNO with as-needed budesonide-formoterol as with maintenance ICS, and the lack of significant difference in treatment effect with as-needed budesonide-formoterol by patients’ baseline eosinophils or baseline FeNO.^{214,215} In children 5–15 years receiving as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol, greater benefit for reduction in exacerbations compared with SABA alone was seen in those with baseline FeNO >44 ppb.²⁰

Considerations for the GINA recommendation against SABA-only treatment of asthma

Several important considerations support GINA’s longstanding position of recommending as-needed-only low-dose ICS-formoterol for adults and adolescents with infrequent asthma symptoms (i.e., eliminating SABA-only treatment):⁹

- Patients with few interval asthma symptoms can still have severe or fatal exacerbations.²⁰⁷ GINA recommends assessing and addressing risk factors for exacerbations as well as symptom control (Box 2-2, p.41).
- The historic distinction between so-called “intermittent” and “mild persistent” asthma is arbitrary, with no evidence of difference in response to ICS.²⁰⁹ A large reduction in risk of severe exacerbations with as-needed ICS-formoterol, compared with as-needed SABA, was seen even in patients with SABA use twice a week or less at baseline.²¹⁴
- A post hoc analysis of one study found that a single day with increased as-needed budesonide-formoterol reduced the short-term (21-day) risk of severe exacerbations compared to as needed SABA alone, suggesting that timing of use of ICS-formoterol is important.¹⁴⁴
- In patients with infrequent symptoms, adherence to prescribed daily ICS is very poor,³⁴⁵ exposing them to risks of SABA-only treatment if they are prescribed daily ICS plus as-needed SABA.
- There is a lack of evidence for the safety or efficacy of SABA-only treatment. Historic recommendations for SABA-only treatment were based on the assumption that patients with mild asthma would not benefit from ICS.²⁰⁹
- Taking SABA regularly for as little as one week significantly increases exercise-induced bronchoconstriction, airway hyperresponsiveness and airway inflammation, and decreases bronchodilator response.^{346,347}

- Even modest over-use of SABA (indicated by dispensing of 3 or more 200-dose canisters a year) is associated with increased risk of severe exacerbations¹⁰² and, in one study, asthma mortality.¹⁰³
- Even occasional courses of OCS are associated with a significant increase in risk of cumulative long-term adverse effects, including osteoporosis, diabetes, heart failure, cataract, depression and obesity.¹⁷⁹
- GINA places a high priority on avoiding patients becoming reliant on SABA, and on avoiding conflicting messages in asthma education. Previously, patients were initially provided only with SABA for symptom relief, but later, despite this treatment being effective from the patient's perspective, they were told that to reduce their SABA use, they needed to take a daily maintenance treatment, even when they had no symptoms. Recommending that all patients should be provided with ICS-containing treatment (including, in mild asthma, the option of as-needed ICS-formoterol) from the start of therapy allows consistent messaging about the need for both symptom relief and risk reduction, and may avoid establishing patient reliance on SABA as their main asthma treatment.

Considerations for starting treatment with low-dose maintenance-and-reliever therapy (Step 3 MART) instead of as-needed-only ICS-formoterol (Steps 1–2)

There is no specific evidence to guide this decision, but by consensus, we suggest starting with Step 3 MART (if permitted by local regulators) if the patient has symptoms most days or is waking at night due to asthma more than once a week (to rapidly reduce symptom burden), or if they have impaired perception of (expiratory) airflow limitation (e.g., low initial lung function but few symptoms), a recent severe exacerbation or a history of a life-threatening asthma exacerbation, have severe airway hyperresponsiveness, or are currently exposed to a seasonal allergic trigger. In one open-label study, current smokers had a significantly longer time to first severe exacerbation with medium-dose MART (i.e., Step 4) than with low-dose MART (Step 3).³⁴⁸

Anti-inflammatory reliever treatment with as-needed-only ICS-formoterol ('AIR-only') is the preferred treatment for Steps 1 and 2 in adults/adolescents, so these steps have been combined in the treatment figure (Track 1, Box 4-6, p.83) to avoid confusion.

Practice points for as-needed-only ICS-formoterol in mild asthma

The usual dose of as-needed budesonide-formoterol in mild asthma is a single inhalation of 160/4.5 mcg (metered dose 200/6 mcg), taken whenever needed for symptom relief. Patients should be advised to contact medical care if they have needed to use more than the equivalent of 54 mcg formoterol (72 mcg metered dose) in a 24-hour period. However, in randomized controlled trials (RCTs) in mild asthma, such high usage was rarely seen, with average use around 3–4 doses per week.^{214,336,337} For more details about medications and doses for as-needed-only ICS-formoterol, see Box 4-8 (p.90).

Rinsing the mouth is not generally needed after as-needed doses of low-dose ICS-formoterol, as this was not required in any of the mild asthma studies (or in MART studies), and there was no increase in risk of oral candidiasis.³⁴²

Other ICS-formoterol formulations have not been studied for as-needed-only use, but beclometasone-formoterol may also be suitable, as it is well-established for as-needed use within maintenance-and-reliever therapy in GINA Steps 3–5.²⁵⁴ Combinations of ICS with non-formoterol LABA cannot be used as-needed for symptom relief.

For **pre-exercise use** in patients with mild asthma, one 6-week study showed that use of low-dose budesonide-formoterol for symptom relief and before exercise reduced exercise-induced bronchoconstriction to a similar extent as regular daily low-dose ICS with SABA for symptom relief and before exercise.²⁶⁶ This suggests that patients with mild asthma who are prescribed as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol to prevent exacerbations and control symptoms can use the same medication before exercising, if needed, and do not need to be prescribed a SABA for pre-exercise use (Evidence B).

Patient preferences: from qualitative research, most patients in a pragmatic open-label study preferred as-needed ICS-formoterol for ongoing treatment rather than regular daily ICS with a SABA reliever. They reported that shared decision-making would be important in choosing between these treatment options.³⁴⁹

Asthma action plan: Simple action plans for AIR-only and MART are available online.^{350,351}

Track 1 (preferred) Step 3 treatment for adults and adolescents: low-dose ICS-formoterol maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART)

For adults and adolescents, the preferred Step 3 option is low-dose ICS-formoterol as both maintenance and reliever treatment (MART). In this regimen, low-dose ICS-formoterol, either budesonide-formoterol or beclometasone-formoterol, is used as both the daily maintenance treatment and as an anti-inflammatory reliever for symptom relief. The low-dose ICS-formoterol can also be used before exercise, and before expected allergen exposure.

Before considering a step-up, check for common problems such as incorrect inhaler technique, poor adherence, and environmental exposures, and confirm that the symptoms are due to asthma (Box 2-4, p.52).

Populations studied

Double-blind studies included adult and adolescent patients with ≥ 1 exacerbation in the previous year despite maintenance low-dose ICS or ICS-LABA treatment, with poor symptom control. Open-label studies were conducted in patients taking at least low-dose ICS or ICS-LABA, with suboptimal asthma control; they did not require a history of exacerbations.²⁵⁵

Evidence

Low-dose ICS-formoterol MART reduced severe exacerbations and provided similar levels of asthma control at relatively low doses of ICS, compared with a fixed dose of ICS-LABA as maintenance treatment or a higher dose of ICS, both with as-needed SABA (Evidence A).^{255,352-356} In a meta-analysis, switching patients with uncontrolled asthma from Step 3 treatment plus SABA reliever to MART was associated with a 29% reduced risk of severe exacerbation, compared with stepping up to Step 4 ICS-LABA maintenance plus SABA reliever, and a 30% reduced risk, compared with staying on the same treatment with SABA reliever.³⁵⁷ In open-label studies that did not require a history of severe exacerbations, maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol also significantly reduced severe exacerbations with a lower average dose of ICS, compared with conventional best practice including SABA reliever.^{255,358}

The benefit of the MART regimen in reducing the risk of severe exacerbations requiring OCS appears to be due to the increase in doses of both the ICS and the formoterol at a very early stage of worsening asthma. As for patients using as-needed-only ICS-formoterol (p.85), this reduces the risk of progressing to a severe exacerbation in the next 3 weeks.¹⁴²⁻¹⁴⁴

Other considerations

Use of ICS-formoterol as an anti-inflammatory reliever across treatment steps provides a simple regimen with easy transition if treatment needs to be stepped up (e.g., from Step 1–2 to Step 3, or Step 3 to Step 4), without the need for an additional medication or different prescription, or a different inhaler type (see Box 4-8, p.90).

Practice points for maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with low-dose ICS-formoterol

Medications: ICS-formoterol MART for Step 3 treatment can be prescribed with low-dose budesonide-formoterol (≥ 12 years) or low-dose beclometasone-formoterol (≥ 18 years). The usual dose for MART with budesonide-formoterol is 160/4.5 mcg delivered dose (200/6 mcg metered dose) and the usual dose for MART with beclometasone-formoterol is 84.6/5 mcg delivered dose (100/6 mcg metered dose) for pressurized metered-dose inhaler (pMDI) and 81.9/5 mcg delivered dose (100/6 mcg metered dose) for dry-powder inhaler (DPI). Each of these combinations is prescribed as one inhalation twice daily plus one inhalation whenever needed for symptom relief.

Doses: For MART with budesonide-formoterol, patients should be advised to seek medical care if they have needed to use more than the equivalent of a total of maintenance-and-reliever doses of 54 mcg delivered dose (72 mcg metered dose) in a 24 hour period. There is extensive evidence from large studies for the safety and efficacy of formoterol (or budesonide-formoterol) up to this dose in a single day,^{254,255} with or without ICS.^{342,359,360} Based on this evidence, GINA suggests that the same advice should also apply to MART with beclometasone-formoterol (total 12 inhalations, total metered dose 72 mcg). Most patients need far fewer doses than this. For a summary of medications and doses, see Box 4-8 (p.90).

ICS-formoterol should not be used as the reliever for patients taking a different ICS-LABA maintenance treatment, since clinical evidence for safety and efficacy is lacking. Use of ICS-formoterol with other LABAs may be associated with increased adverse effects.³²⁷

Rinsing the mouth is not generally needed after as-needed doses of ICS-formoterol, as this was not required in any of the MART studies, and there was no increase in risk of oral candidiasis.²⁵⁴

Additional practice points can be found in an article describing how to use MART, including a customizable **written asthma action plan** for use with this regimen.³⁵⁰ Other action plans for MART are available online.^{350,351}

Track 1 (preferred) Step 4 treatment for adults and adolescents: medium-dose ICS-formoterol maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART)

At a population level, most benefit from ICS is obtained at low dose, but individual ICS responsiveness varies, and some patients whose asthma is uncontrolled on low-dose ICS-LABA despite good adherence and correct inhaler technique may benefit from increasing the maintenance dose to medium, usually by taking twice the number of inhalations (see Box 4-8, p.90). High-dose ICS-formoterol is not recommended in Track 1 Step 4.

Before stepping up, check for common problems such as incorrect inhaler technique, poor adherence, and environmental exposures, and confirm that the symptoms are due to asthma (Box 2-4, p.52).

Patients prescribed MART use low-dose ICS-formoterol as needed for symptom relief, and before exercise or allergen exposure if needed.

For adult and adolescent patients, combination ICS-formoterol as maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) is more effective in reducing exacerbations than the same dose of maintenance ICS-LABA or higher doses of ICS³⁵⁵ or ICS-LABA²⁵⁴ (Evidence A). The greatest reduction in risk was seen in patients with a history of severe exacerbations,²⁵⁴ but MART was also significantly more effective than conventional best practice with as-needed SABA in open-label studies in which patients were not selected for greater exacerbation risk.²⁵⁵

In Step 4, the MART regimen can be prescribed with medium-dose maintenance budesonide-formoterol or beclometasone-formoterol treatment, by increasing the maintenance dose of low-dose ICS-formoterol to 2 inhalations twice-daily. The reliever dose remains 1 inhalation of low-dose ICS-formoterol, taken as needed.

The usual dose for MART with budesonide-formoterol is 160/4.5 mcg delivered dose (200/6 mcg metered dose) and the usual dose for MART with beclometasone-formoterol is 84.6/5 mcg delivered dose (100/6 mcg metered dose) for pMDI and 81.9/5 mcg delivered dose (100/6 mcg metered dose) for DPI. For Step 4, each of these combinations is prescribed as two inhalations twice-daily plus one inhalation whenever needed for symptom relief.

As in Step 3, patients should be advised to seek medical care if they have needed to use more budesonide-formoterol in a single day (total of maintenance doses and reliever doses) than the equivalent of formoterol 54 mcg delivered dose (72 mcg metered dose), with extensive evidence from large studies for its safety^{342,359,360} and efficacy^{254,255} up to this dose in a single day. Based on this evidence, GINA suggests that the same total dose of formoterol in a single day should also apply for MART with beclometasone-formoterol (total 12 inhalations, total metered dose 72 mcg). Most patients need far fewer doses than this.

For practice points, see information for GINA Step 3 and an article for clinicians.³⁵⁰ For a summary of medications and doses, see Box 4-8 (p.90).

Box 4-8A. Preferred medications and doses for GINA Track 1 AIR/MART regimens

GINA Track 1 – general principles

In **GINA Track 1**, the **reliever inhaler is low-dose ICS-formoterol**, with or without maintenance ICS-formoterol. This is the preferred treatment approach for adults and adolescents with asthma for several reasons:

- It reduces severe exacerbations and OCS exposure across treatment steps, compared with using a SABA reliever.
- It uses a single medication, a single dose, and a single inhaler device for both reliever and maintenance treatment. This is less confusing for patients and clinicians, and it avoids potential problems with selective non-adherence or with different inhaler technique.
- The patient's treatment can be stepped up and down if needed without changing the medication or inhaler device. This cannot be done with any other ICS-LABA.
- ICS-formoterol can also be used before exercise and before allergen exposure.

Low-dose ICS-formoterol is called an **anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR)** because it relieves symptoms and reduces inflammation. AIR with ICS-formoterol significantly reduces the risk of severe exacerbations across treatment steps, compared with using a SABA reliever, with similar symptom control, lung function and adverse effects.

Steps 1–2 (called AIR-only or AIR): low-dose ICS-formoterol is used as needed for symptom relief without any maintenance treatment. In adults and adolescents, it reduces the risk of severe exacerbations by 55% and of ED visits and hospitalizations by 65%, compared with SABA alone, and reduces ED visits/hospitalizations by 37%, compared with daily ICS plus as-needed SABA.²¹⁰ In children 5–15 years, AIR-only reduces the risk of exacerbations by 45% compared with SABA alone.²⁰ Starting treatment with as-needed ICS-formoterol avoids training patients to regard SABA as their main asthma treatment.

Steps 3–5 (MART): maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol reduces the risk of severe exacerbations by 32% compared with the same dose of ICS-LABA,²⁵⁴ by 23% compared with a higher dose of ICS-LABA,²⁵⁴ and by 17% compared with usual care.²⁵⁵ MART is also an option for children 6–11 years in Steps 3–4.

Asthma action plan: Simple action plans for AIR/MART are available online.^{350,351} In AIR/MART action plans, the patient is instructed to take extra as-needed doses of ICS-formoterol whenever needed for symptom relief, and (for MART) to keep taking their usual maintenance dose. See p.174 for more details about action plans.

Which medications can be used in GINA Track 1, and how often?

Most evidence for AIR/MART for adults/adolescents is with budesonide-formoterol DPI, usually 160/4.5 mcg delivered dose (200/6 mcg metered dose), and for children 6–11 years, with 80/4.5 mcg delivered dose (100/6 mcg metered dose). Beclometasone dipropionate-formoterol labelled 100/6 mcg is also effective for MART in adults. Other low-dose combination ICS-formoterol products (e.g., mometasone-formoterol) may be suitable but have not been studied.

For as-needed use of anti-inflammatory relievers, patients should take **1 inhalation whenever needed** for symptom relief, or before exercise or allergen exposure, instead of a SABA reliever. An extra inhalation of ICS-formoterol can be taken whenever needed, including, if needed, within a few minutes after an initial dose is taken for symptom relief.

Patients do not need to wait a certain number of hours before taking more ICS-formoterol reliever doses (unlike SABA).

In a single day, if a patient needs more than the maximum total number of inhalations of ICS-formoterol shown on the next page (total as-needed plus maintenance doses, if used) they should seek medical care. Most patients need far less than this.

See the next page for more details about medications and dosing for AIR/MART.

AIR: anti-inflammatory reliever; DPI: dry-powder inhaler; ED: emergency department; ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; MART: maintenance-and-reliever therapy; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist; OCS: oral corticosteroid

Box 4-8B. Medications and doses for anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR) therapy with ICS-formoterol

Medications: mcg/inhalation*	Dosing frequency for AIR/MART with ICS-formoterol, by age group and treatment step	
Children 6–11 years		
Budesonide-formoterol DPI or pMDI 80/4.5 (100/6) or beclometasone-formoterol† DPI or pMDI 100/6 (Seek medical care if >8 total inhalations needed in a 24-hour period)	Step 1–2 AIR-only	1 inhalation as needed
	Step 3 MART	1 inhalation once daily plus 1 as needed
	Step 4 MART	1 inhalation twice daily plus 1 as needed
	Step 5 MART	Not recommended
Adolescents 12–17 years		
Budesonide-formoterol DPI or pMDI 160/4.5 (200/6) or beclometasone-formoterol† DPI or pMDI 100/6 (Seek medical care if >12 total inhalations needed in a 24-hour period)	Step 1–2 AIR-only	1 inhalation as needed
	Step 3 MART	1 inhalation twice (or once) daily plus 1 as needed
	Step 4–5 MART	2 inhalations twice daily plus 1 as needed
Adults 18 years and older		
Budesonide-formoterol DPI or pMDI 160/4.5 (200/6) or beclometasone-formoterol† DPI or pMDI 100/6 (Seek medical care if >12 total inhalations needed in a 24-hour period)	Step 1–2 AIR-only	1 inhalation as needed
	Step 3 MART	1 inhalation twice (or once) daily plus 1 as needed
	Step 4–5 MART	2 inhalations twice daily plus 1 as needed

AIR: anti-inflammatory reliever; DPI: dry-powder inhaler; MART: maintenance-and-reliever therapy; pMDI: pressurized metered-dose inhaler. Check local payer criteria, if relevant, for medications and doses. For ICS-formoterol by pMDI, use of a spacer is recommended.

* Budesonide-formoterol doses are shown as **delivered dose** (metered dose), reflecting the most common labelling convention. The beclometasone-formoterol dose is shown as the **metered dose** since this is the standard labelling convention. The delivered dose of beclometasone-formoterol 100/6 mcg is 84.6/5 mcg for pMDI, and 81.9/5 mcg for DPI.

† Beclometasone-formoterol has not been studied for as-needed-only use (Steps 1–2), but it may be suitable given its efficacy for MART in adults with moderate-severe asthma.³⁵³ For more details, see p.88.

Other budesonide-formoterol formulations

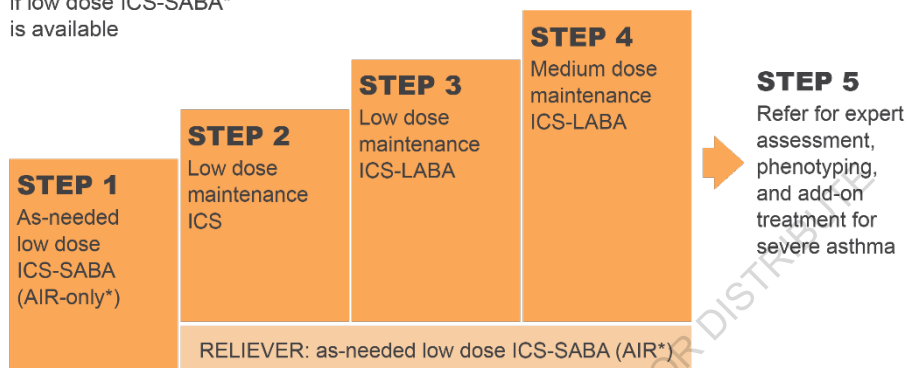
- **Budesonide-formoterol 80/2.25 mcg (metered dose 100/3 mcg) pMDI** is available in a few countries, and can be used as an anti-inflammatory reliever with **double** the above number of actuations per dose as for budesonide-formoterol 160/4.5 (200/6) mcg.
For AIR-only (Step 1), the standard dose with budesonide-formoterol 80/2.25 (100/3) is 2 inhalations as-needed.
For Step 3 MART, the dose is 2 inhalations twice daily and 2 inhalations as needed.
For Step 4 MART, the dose is 4 inhalations twice daily and 2 inhalations as needed. With this formulation, patients should be advised to seek medical care if they need >24 inhalations (total of maintenance doses plus as-needed doses) in any 24-hour period.
- **Budesonide-formoterol 80/4.5 (100/6) mcg is the recommended AIR dose for children 6–11 years.** This formulation is **not** recommended by GINA for adults/adolescents, since most evidence for MART and all evidence for as-needed-only use is with budesonide-formoterol 160/4.5 (200/6) mcg.
- Budesonide-formoterol 320/9 (400/12) mcg should **not** be used as an anti-inflammatory reliever.
- Beclometasone-formoterol 200/6 mcg pMDI or DPI should **not** be used as an anti-inflammatory reliever. The delivered dose of this formulation is 177.7/5.1 mcg by pMDI and 158.8/4.9 mcg by DPI.

TRACK 2 (ALTERNATIVE): TREATMENT STEPS 1–4 FOR ADULTS AND ADOLESCENTS USING ICS-SABA OR SABA RELIEVER

This is an alternative approach if Track 1 is not possible, or if a patient's asthma is stable with good adherence and no exacerbations on their current therapy.

Box 4-9A. Track 2 (alternative) treatment Steps 1–4 for adults and adolescents with ICS-SABA reliever

GINA TRACK 2 example
if low dose ICS-SABA*
is available



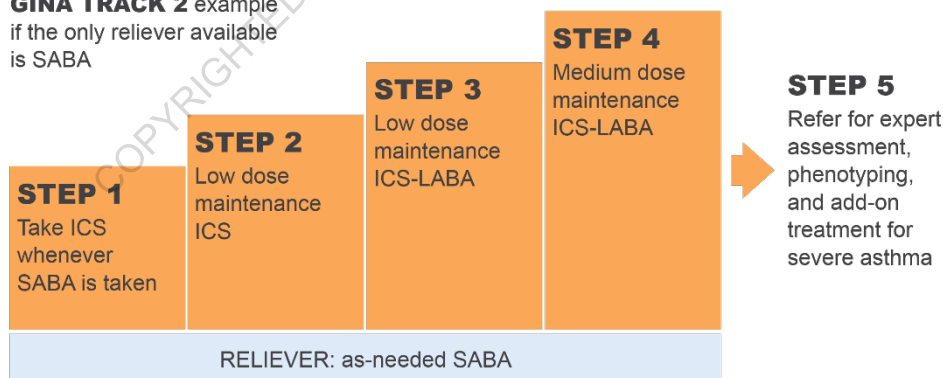
GINA TRACK 2: Alternative CONTROLLER and RELIEVER for adults and adolescents, if combination ICS-SABA is available.

In Steps 2–4, ensure patient understands the difference between their controller and reliever inhalers. If controller and reliever are in different types of inhaler device, or if changing steps requires a change in device, train patient in the correct inhaler technique.

ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist

Box 4-9B. Track 2 (alternative) treatment Steps 1–4 for adults and adolescents with SABA reliever

GINA TRACK 2 example
if the only reliever available
is SABA



GINA TRACK 2: Alternative CONTROLLER and RELIEVER for adults and adolescents, if the only reliever available is SABA.

Before considering a regimen with SABA reliever, check if the patient is likely to adhere to daily ICS treatment. If controller and reliever are in different types of inhaler device, or if changing steps requires a change in device, train patient in the correct inhaler technique.

ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist

Track 2 (alternative) Step 1 treatment options for adults and adolescents: as-needed low-dose combination ICS-SABA (or, if not available, taking low-dose ICS whenever SABA is taken)

If ICS-formoterol is not available, anti-inflammatory reliever therapy can be delivered with as-needed low-dose combination ICS-SABA (Box 4-9A). If combination ICS-SABA is not available, the patient can be asked to take low-dose ICS whenever they take SABA (Box 4-9B). This avoids SABA-only treatment, and may also be useful in regions where the cost of ICS-formoterol or ICS-SABA is currently prohibitive.

Populations studied

Evidence for as-needed-only combination ICS-SABA is from a decentralized study of adults (and a small number of adolescents) with uncontrolled asthma while taking SABA alone, or regular low-dose ICS or LTRA (BATURA).²¹ Another study was in adults whose asthma was controlled after 4 weeks' treatment with medium-dose ICS (BEST).³⁶¹

All the evidence for taking ICS whenever SABA is taken with separate inhalers is from studies in patients whose asthma was controlled or partly controlled on daily low-dose ICS, i.e., it has been evaluated as a step-down treatment option.

Evidence

The BATURA study²¹ evaluated the as-needed use of a combination ICS-SABA inhaler delivering budesonide 80 mcg (100 mcg metered dose) plus 90 mcg salbutamol (albuterol, 100 mcg metered dose), compared with salbutamol 90 mcg delivered dose (100 mcg metered dose), with each taken 2 inhalations as needed for symptom relief. Patients using maintenance ICS or LTRA were asked to continue taking this during the study. As-needed ICS-SABA significantly reduced the proportion of patients with a severe exacerbation, compared with as-needed salbutamol alone (5.1% vs 9.1%, hazard ratio, 0.53; 95% confidence interval 0.39 to 0.73; $P < 0.001$). The annualized rate of severe exacerbations was reduced by 53%. Mean usage of the as-needed inhaler was similar at 1.5–1.8 inhalations/day. There was no difference in health-related quality of life. No lung function data were recorded in the BATURA study.²¹

In the BEST study, morning peak flow was higher, and the number of exacerbations was lower, with as-needed combination medium-dose beclometasone-salbutamol compared with salbutamol alone, and there was no significant difference between as-needed ICS-SABA and regular ICS or ICS-SABA.³⁶¹

The evidence for taking ICS whenever SABA is taken, using separate ICS and SABA inhalers, is from one small study in adults and two small studies in children and adolescents.³⁶²⁻³⁶⁴ These studies showed no difference in exacerbations compared with daily ICS but, in the study that included a SABA-only arm, SABA alone was the worst option for treatment failure. All three studies used beclometasone dipropionate, with 2 inhalations of beclometasone 50 mcg (40 mcg delivered dose) taken for each 2 inhalations of salbutamol (albuterol) 90 mcg delivered dose (100 mcg metered dose).

Other considerations

In making this recommendation, the most important considerations were reducing the risk of severe exacerbations, and the difficulty of achieving good adherence to regular ICS in patients with infrequent symptoms. For definitions of low-dose ICS see Box 4-2 (p.77).

Patients with symptoms less than 1–2 days a week are extremely unlikely to take ICS regularly even if prescribed, leaving them exposed to the risks of SABA-only treatment, so taking ICS whenever SABA is taken is likely to be a better option in such patients, particularly if combination ICS-SABA is available.

SABA-only treatment is not recommended by GINA for adults, adolescents or children 6–11 years with asthma.

Although inhaled SABAs are highly effective for the quick relief of asthma symptoms,³⁶⁵ patients whose asthma is treated with SABA alone (compared with ICS) are at increased risk of asthma-related death, compared with use of any ICS (Evidence A)^{103,366} and of urgent asthma-related healthcare (Evidence A),³⁶⁷ even if they have good symptom control.³⁶⁸

The risk of severe exacerbations requiring urgent health care is substantially reduced in adults and adolescents by either as-needed ICS-formoterol,²¹⁰ or by regular low-dose ICS with as-needed SABA.³⁴³ The risk of asthma exacerbations and mortality increases incrementally with higher SABA use, including in patients treated with SABA alone.¹⁰³ One long-term study of regular SABA in patients with newly diagnosed asthma showed worse outcomes and lower lung function than in

patients who were treated with daily low-dose ICS from the start.³⁶⁹ Starting treatment of asthma with SABA alone encourages patients to regard it as their main (and often only) asthma treatment, leading to poor adherence if ICS-containing therapy is prescribed.

Practice points

If a patient prescribed budesonide-salbutamol (budesonide-albuterol) needs to take more than 12 inhalations (i.e., 6 doses) in a 24-hour period, they should contact medical care the same day. The Product Information states that this is the maximum dose that can be taken in a day.

If combination ICS-SABA is not available, the patient needs to carry both ICS and SABA inhalers with them for as-needed use, so selective adherence with the SABA is a potential risk. See Box 4-2 (p.77) for ICS doses.

Track 2 (alternative) Step 2 treatment options for adults and adolescents: low-dose maintenance ICS plus as-needed low-dose ICS-SABA (or, if this is not available, plus as-needed SABA)

Regular daily low-dose ICS with as-needed SABA was standard of care for mild asthma for the past 30 years. Most past guidelines recommended daily ICS only for patients with asthma symptoms more than twice a week, based on an assumption that patients with less frequent symptoms did not need, and would not benefit from, ICS.²⁰⁹

Population studied

Most studies of daily low-dose ICS have included patients with symptoms 3–7 days per week.

Evidence

Regular daily low-dose ICS plus as-needed SABA is a long-established treatment for mild asthma. There is a large body of evidence from RCTs and observational studies showing that the risks of severe exacerbations, hospitalizations and mortality are substantially reduced with regular low-dose ICS, compared with SABA alone; symptoms and exercise-induced bronchoconstriction are also reduced (Evidence A).^{343,366,370-372} Severe exacerbations are halved with low-dose ICS even in patients with symptoms 0–1 days a week.²⁰⁹ In a meta-analysis of long-term cohort studies, regular ICS was associated with a very small increase in pre-bronchodilator FEV₁% predicted, but there is insufficient evidence that it protects from development of persistent airflow limitation.³⁷³

There are no randomized controlled trials of maintenance low-dose ICS plus as-needed combination ICS-SABA, but it is reasonable to assume that, if available, this would be preferable to maintenance ICS plus as-needed SABA because of the risk of SABA-only treatment if ICS adherence is poor.

Other considerations

Clinicians should be aware that adherence to maintenance ICS treatment in the community is extremely low. They should consider the high probability that patients with infrequent symptoms will not take daily ICS if prescribed, increasing their risk of severe exacerbations. Over-use of SABA, indicated by dispensing of three or more 200-dose canisters of SABA in a year (i.e., average use more than daily), is associated with an increased risk of severe exacerbations^{102,103} and, in one study, with increased mortality,¹⁰³ even in patients also taking ICS-containing treatment.

Track 2 (alternative) Step 3 treatment for adults and adolescents: maintenance low-dose ICS-LABA plus as-needed combination low-dose ICS-SABA (or, if this is not available, plus as-needed SABA)

Before considering a step-up, check for common problems such as incorrect inhaler technique, poor adherence, and environmental exposures, and confirm that the symptoms are due to asthma (Box 2-4, p.52).

Currently approved combination ICS-LABA inhalers for Step 3 maintenance treatment of asthma include low doses of fluticasone propionate-formoterol, fluticasone furoate-vilanterol, fluticasone propionate-salmeterol, beclometasone-formoterol, budesonide-formoterol, mometasone-formoterol, and mometasone-indacaterol (see Box 4-2, p.77).

Almost all studies of maintenance low-dose ICS-LABA have been with SABA reliever.

Maintenance low-dose ICS-LABA plus as-needed combination low-dose ICS-SABA

This is an alternative approach if combination low-dose ICS-SABA is available and MART is not possible, or if a patient's asthma is stable with good adherence and no exacerbations on their current therapy.

Population

Evidence is from one double-blind randomized clinical trial, the MANDALA study.³⁷⁴ The population relevant to Step 3 recommendations comprised patients with poor asthma control and a history of severe exacerbations who were taking maintenance low-dose ICS-LABA or medium-dose ICS. In this study, patients were randomized to as-needed ICS-SABA or as-needed SABA, and were told to continue taking their usual maintenance treatment.

Evidence

In the sub-group taking Step 3 maintenance treatment, as-needed use of 2 inhalations of budesonide-salbutamol (budesonide-albuterol) 80/90 mcg delivered dose (100/100 mcg metered dose), taken for symptom relief, increased the time to first severe exacerbation by 41%, compared with as-needed salbutamol (hazard ratio 0.59; CI 0.42–0.85). The proportion of patients with a clinically important difference in ACQ-5 was slightly higher with the budesonide-salbutamol reliever. A formulation with a lower ICS dose did not significantly reduce severe exacerbations.³⁷⁴ Overuse of the reliever inhaler and ICS-related adverse events were infrequent, and similar between groups.³⁷⁵

Other considerations

There are no head-to-head comparisons between this regimen and ICS-formoterol maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART), both of which include an anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR). However, ICS-SABA is not recommended for regular use, and its use as the reliever in Steps 3–5 requires the patient to have different maintenance and reliever inhalers. This regimen is therefore more complex for patients, and increases the risk of incorrect inhaler technique or selective poor adherence, than GINA Track 1 with ICS-formoterol, in which the same medication is used for both maintenance and reliever doses. Transition between treatment steps with as-needed ICS-SABA may also be more complex than with as-needed ICS-formoterol.

Practice points

The recommended maximum amount of as-needed ICS-SABA that can be taken in a day is 6 doses, where each dose is 2 puffs of budesonide-salbutamol 80/90 mcg delivered dose (100/100 mcg metered dose). Patients should be advised to seek medical care if they need more than this. It is essential to educate patients about the different purpose of their maintenance and reliever inhalers, and to train them in correct inhaler technique with both devices if they are different; this also applies to SABA relievers.

Maintenance low-dose ICS-LABA plus as-needed SABA

This is an alternative approach if neither ICS-formoterol nor ICS-SABA is available, or if a patient's asthma is stable with good adherence and no exacerbations on their current therapy. For patients whose asthma is not well-controlled despite taking maintenance ICS, changing to maintenance combination ICS-LABA provides additional improvements in symptoms and lung function with a reduced risk of exacerbations, compared with the same dose of ICS (Evidence A),^{376,377} but there is only a small reduction in reliever use.^{378,379} In these studies, the reliever was as-needed SABA. However, before prescribing a regimen with SABA reliever, consider whether the patient is likely to adhere to their ICS-containing treatment, as poor adherence increase the risk of exacerbations. A large real-world study showed that fluticasone furoate-vilanterol was more effective for symptom control compared with usual care, but there was no significant difference in risk of exacerbations.^{380,381}

Track 2 (alternative) Step 4 treatment for adults and adolescents: medium-dose ICS-LABA plus as-needed combination low-dose ICS-SABA (or, if not available, plus as-needed SABA)

This is an alternative approach if MART is not possible, or if a patient's asthma is stable with good adherence and no exacerbations on their current therapy.

Maintenance medium-dose ICS-LABA plus as-needed combination low-dose ICS-SABA

Population

In the double-blind MANDALA study,³⁷⁴ the population relevant to Step 4 recommendations comprised patients with poor asthma control and a history of severe exacerbations who were taking maintenance medium-dose ICS-LABA or high-dose ICS.

Evidence

In patients with uncontrolled asthma while taking low- to medium-dose ICS-LABA or medium- to high-dose ICS, the risk of severe asthma exacerbations was reduced by 26% with as-needed budesonide-salbutamol (budesonide-albuterol) 2 inhalations of 80/90 mcg delivered dose (100/100 mcg metered dose) compared with as-needed SABA (hazard ratio, 0.74; 95% confidence interval, 0.62 to 0.89). There was a significant interaction by maintenance treatment, with greater benefit seen in patients taking Step 3 maintenance treatment than in those taking Step 4 treatment.³⁷⁴ Overuse of the reliever inhaler and ICS-related adverse events were infrequent, and similar between groups.³⁷⁵ More studies of ICS-SABA reliever in patients taking medium-dose ICS-LABA are needed.

Other considerations

There are no head-to-head comparisons between this regimen and ICS-formoterol MART, both of which include an anti-inflammatory reliever. However, as ICS-SABA is not recommended for regular use, and its use as the reliever in Steps 3–5 requires the patient to have different maintenance and reliever inhalers, this regimen is more complex for patients than GINA Track 1 with ICS-formoterol in which the same medication is used for both maintenance and reliever doses.

Practice points

The recommended maximum amount of as-needed ICS-SABA that can be taken in a day is 6 doses, where each dose is 2 puffs of budesonide-salbutamol 80/90 mcg delivered dose (100/100 mcg metered dose). Patients should be advised to seek medical care if they need more than this. It is essential to educate patients about the different purpose of their maintenance and reliever inhalers, and to train them in correct inhaler technique with both devices if they are different; this also applies to SABA relievers.

Maintenance medium-dose ICS-LABA plus as-needed SABA

This is an alternative approach if MART is not possible, or if a patient's asthma is stable with good adherence and no exacerbations on their current therapy. As above, individual ICS responsiveness varies, and some patients whose asthma is uncontrolled or who have frequent exacerbations on low-dose ICS-LABA despite good adherence and correct inhaler technique may benefit from maintenance medium-dose ICS-LABA (Evidence B)³⁸² plus as-needed SABA, if MART is not available. However, before prescribing a regimen with SABA reliever, consider whether the patient is likely to adhere to their ICS-containing treatment, as poor adherence will increase the risk of exacerbations.

Occasionally, high-dose ICS-LABA may be needed, but if possible it should be limited to 3–6 months, to reduce the risk of adverse effects.

OTHER MEDICATIONS FOR ADULTS AND ADOLESCENTS (TRACKS 1 AND 2)

Other medications that have been studied for Step 1 or 2 in adults and adolescents

The medications below have limited indications, or less evidence for efficacy or safety, than the medications shown in the two treatment tracks.

Specific immunotherapy (see p.114): For adult patients sensitized to house dust mite, with suboptimally controlled asthma despite low- to high-dose ICS, consider adding sublingual immunotherapy (SLIT), provided FEV₁ is >70% predicted.^{383,384}

Leukotriene receptor antagonists (LTRAs): LTRAs, which include montelukast, zafirlukast and zileuton, are less effective than ICS,³⁸⁵ particularly for exacerbations (Evidence A). Before prescribing montelukast, healthcare providers should consider its benefits and risks, and patients or parents/caregivers should be counselled about the risk of neuropsychiatric events.³³⁰

Daily low-dose ICS-LABA as initial treatment: Regular daily combination low-dose ICS-LABA as the initial maintenance controller treatment (including in patients previously treated with SABA alone) reduces symptoms and improves lung function, compared with low-dose ICS.³⁸⁶ However, it is often more expensive and does not further reduce the risk of exacerbations, compared with ICS alone (Evidence A).³⁸⁶

Seasonal ICS-containing treatment: For patients with purely seasonal allergic asthma, e.g., with birch pollen, with no interval asthma symptoms, regular daily ICS or as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol should be started immediately symptoms commence, and be continued for four weeks after the relevant pollen season ends (Evidence D).

Other medications that have been studied for Step 3 in adults and adolescents

The medications below have limited indications, or less evidence for efficacy or safety, than the medications shown in the two treatment tracks.

Specific allergen immunotherapy (see p.114): For adult patients sensitized to house dust mite, with suboptimally controlled asthma despite low- to high-dose ICS, consider adding SLIT, provided FEV₁ is >70% predicted.^{383,384}

Medium-dose ICS: Another option for adults and adolescents is to increase ICS to medium dose¹⁹³ (see Box 4-2, p.77) but, at population level, this is less effective than adding a LABA (Evidence A).^{387,388} Other less efficacious options are low-dose ICS-containing therapy plus either LTRA³⁸⁵ (Evidence A for lower efficacy than ICS) or low-dose, sustained-release theophylline³⁸⁹ (lack of efficacy, and safety concerns). Note the concerns about neuropsychiatric adverse effects with montelukast.³³⁰

Other medications that have been studied for Step 4 in adults and adolescents

The medications below have specific indications, or less evidence for efficacy or safety, than the medications shown in the two treatment tracks.

Long-acting muscarinic antagonists (LAMAs): a small number of studies evaluated addition of a separate LAMA (tiotropium) if asthma was uncontrolled despite low- or medium-dose ICS or low-dose ICS-LABA,³⁹⁰⁻³⁹² but there is insufficient evidence to support this; there are no combination ICS-LABA-LAMA inhalers with a low ICS dose. Instead, for patients experiencing exacerbations despite good adherence and correct inhaler technique with low-dose ICS-LABA, treatment should be switched to maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol (Track 1, Step 3), or the ICS-LABA dose should be increased to at least medium (Track 2, Step 4), before considering adding a LAMA.

Allergen immunotherapy (see p.114): Consider adding sublingual immunotherapy (SLIT) for adult patients with sensitization to house dust mite, with suboptimally controlled asthma despite low- to high-dose ICS, but only if FEV₁ is >70% predicted.^{383,384}

Other medications with less evidence for efficacy and/or safety: For medium- or high-dose budesonide, efficacy may be improved if the total daily dose is divided into four doses (Evidence B),^{393,394} but adherence may be an issue. Other medications for adults or adolescents that have been added to a medium or high-dose ICS, but that are less efficacious than adding LABA, include LTRA (Evidence A),³⁹⁵⁻³⁹⁹ or low-dose sustained-release theophylline (Evidence B),⁴⁰⁰ but

neither of these has been compared with maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol. Note the concern about potential neuropsychiatric adverse effects with montelukast.³³⁰

In an open-label study, provision of beclometasone inhalers for use whenever the patient used their SABA inhaler or nebulizer resulted in a 15% reduction in risk of severe exacerbations.⁴⁰¹ There was no clinically important difference in symptom control. Those who received the extra ICS reported obtaining fewer refills of their usual ICS-containing therapy.⁴⁰¹ This approach would require many patients to have three different inhalers, with substantial potential for confusion or incorrect inhaler technique.

STEP 5 (TRACKS 1 AND 2) IN ADULTS AND ADOLESCENTS

Preferred treatment at Step 5 in adults and adolescents: refer for expert assessment, phenotyping, and add-on therapy (for more details, see Section 8, p.149)

Patients of any age with persistent symptoms or exacerbations despite correct inhaler technique and good adherence on Step 4 treatment, should be referred promptly to a clinician with expertise in investigation and management of severe asthma, if available (Evidence D).²⁰²

In severe asthma, as in mild-moderate asthma,⁴⁰² participants in randomized controlled trials may not be representative of patients seen in clinical practice. For example, a registry study found that over 80% of patients with severe asthma would have been excluded from major regulatory studies evaluating biologic therapy.⁴⁰³

Recommendations from the **GINA Short Guide and decision tree** on the diagnosis and management of difficult-to-treat and severe asthma in adolescent and adult patients are included in Section 8 (p.149). These recommendations emphasize the importance of first optimizing existing therapy and treating modifiable risk factors and comorbidities (see Box 8-2, p.152). If the patient still has uncontrolled symptoms and/or exacerbations, additional treatment options that may be considered may include the following (**always check local eligibility and payer criteria**).

A short trial of combination high-dose ICS-LABA

Combination high-dose ICS-LABA may be considered in adults and adolescents, but for most patients, the increase in ICS dose generally provides little additional benefit (Evidence A),^{187,193,388} and there is an increased risk of side-effects, including adrenal suppression.⁴⁰⁴ A high dose is recommended only on a trial basis for 3–6 months when good asthma control cannot be achieved with medium-dose maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with ICS-formoterol or medium-dose ICS plus LABA and/or a third controller (Evidence B).^{398,400} Note safety concerns with montelukast.³³⁰

Maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with ICS-formoterol

If a patient treated with medium-dose MART requires addition of biologic therapy, it is not logical to switch them from MART to conventional ICS-LABA plus as-needed SABA, as this may increase the risk of exacerbations. There is little evidence about initiating MART in patients receiving add-on treatment such as LAMA or biologic therapy.⁴⁰⁵ However, in one study,⁴⁰⁵ patients with severe eosinophilic asthma that was well controlled on benralizumab and high-dose ICS-LABA were randomized to budesonide-formoterol, either as high dose maintenance plus as-needed SABA, or as medium-dose MART with subsequent 8-weekly options for down-titration. Asthma remained stable after the switch from high-dose ICS-formoterol to medium-dose MART, supporting the safety of MART in this population on Step 5 treatment. Most patients randomized to MART were able to further reduce their ICS-formoterol dose, but there was an increase in FeNO and decrease in FEV₁ in those who stepped down to as-needed-only ICS-formoterol,⁴⁰⁵ suggesting that maintenance doses of ICS-formoterol should not be stopped.

Add-on long-acting muscarinic antagonists

Add-on long-acting muscarinic antagonists (LAMA) can be prescribed as a Step 5 option if asthma is not well-controlled with medium- or high-dose ICS-LABA despite good adherence and correct inhaler technique.

Add-on LAMA options are:

- Medium- or high-dose ICS-LABA plus a separate tiotropium inhaler (patients aged ≥ 6 years)
- a combination 'triple' inhaler (ICS-LABA-LAMA) containing medium- or high-dose ICS: beclometasone-formoterol-glycopyrronium, fluticasone furoate-vilanterol-umeclidinium, mometasone-indacaterol-glycopyrronium (all approved for ≥ 18 years) or budesonide-formoterol-glycopyrronium (≥ 12 years).

Adding LAMA to medium- or high-dose ICS-LABA resulted in a small increase in lung function (Evidence A),^{331,392,406-412} but no difference in quality of life, and no clinically important change in symptoms.⁴¹¹⁻⁴¹³ Meta-analyses that included triple therapy with combination or separate inhalers reported an overall 16%–17% reduction in risk of severe exacerbations requiring oral corticosteroids (Evidence A),^{406,410,411,413} with one subgroup analysis suggesting that this benefit was primarily in patients with a history of exacerbations in the previous year.⁴¹³ Another triple therapy studied with broader inclusion criteria found a similar effect for severe exacerbations in patients with/without an exacerbation history.⁴¹²

For patients with exacerbations despite ICS-LABA, it is essential that sufficient ICS is given (i.e., at least medium-dose ICS-LABA) before evaluating the need for adding a LAMA.

Which reliever is appropriate for patients prescribed triple therapy?

- For patients prescribed ICS-LABA-LAMA with a non-formoterol LABA, the appropriate reliever is ICS-SABA or SABA
- For patients prescribed ICS-formoterol-LAMA, the reliever can be ICS-formoterol, ICS-SABA or SABA
- Patients prescribed ICS-formoterol MART with a separate LAMA can continue to use ICS-formoterol as their reliever.

Since each of these options requires two inhalers, ensure that the patient knows which is their maintenance inhaler and which is their reliever inhaler, and the correct technique for each.

Add-on biologic therapy

Options recommended by GINA for patients with uncontrolled severe asthma despite optimized maximal therapy (see more details in Section 8, p.149) include:

- *Add-on anti-immunoglobulin E (anti-IgE)* (subcutaneous (SC) omalizumab or biosimilar omalizumab-igec) for patients aged ≥ 6 years with severe allergic asthma (Evidence A)^{414,415}
- *Add-on anti-interleukin-5/5R α* (SC mepolizumab for ages ≥ 6 years, SC benralizumab or SC depemokimab for ages ≥ 12 years, or IV reslizumab for ages ≥ 18 years) for patients with severe eosinophilic asthma (Evidence A).⁴¹⁵⁻⁴²¹
- *Add-on anti-interleukin-4R α* (SC dupilumab) for patients aged ≥ 6 years with severe eosinophilic/Type 2 asthma, or those requiring treatment with maintenance OCS (Evidence A)^{415,422-425}
- *Add-on anti-thymic stromal lymphopoietin (anti-TSLP)* (SC tezepelumab) for patients aged ≥ 12 years with severe asthma (Evidence A).⁴²⁶⁻⁴²⁸

Factors relevant to the choice between available biologic therapies are described in Section 8, p.162.

Azithromycin

Add-on azithromycin (three times a week) can be considered after specialist referral for adult patients with persistent symptomatic asthma despite high-dose ICS-LABA. Before considering add-on azithromycin, sputum should be checked for atypical mycobacteria, ECG should be checked for long QTc (and re-checked after a month on treatment), and the risk of increasing antimicrobial resistance should be considered.⁴²⁹ Diarrhea is more common with azithromycin 500 mg 3 times per week.⁴³⁰ Treatment for at least 6 months is suggested, as a clear benefit was not seen by 3 months in the clinical trials.^{430,431} The evidence for this recommendation includes a meta-analysis of two clinical trials^{430,431} in adults with persistent asthma symptoms that found reduced asthma exacerbations among those taking medium or high-dose ICS-LABA who had either an eosinophilic or non-eosinophilic profile and in those taking high-dose ICS-LABA (Evidence B).⁴³² The option of add-on azithromycin for adults is recommended only after specialist consultation because of the potential for development of antibiotic resistance at the patient or population level.⁴³⁰

Sputum-guided treatment

For adults with persisting symptoms and/or exacerbations despite high-dose ICS or ICS-LABA, treatment may be adjusted based on eosinophilia (>3%) in induced sputum. In severe asthma, this strategy leads to reduced exacerbations and/or lower doses of ICS (Evidence A),⁴³³ but few clinicians currently have access to routine sputum testing. There are no published randomized studies comparing sputum-guided treatment with biologic therapy in patients with severe asthma.

Bronchial thermoplasty

Add-on treatment with bronchial thermoplasty has been an option for some adult patients with severe asthma (Evidence B), but evidence is limited and in selected patients ^{202,434} (see Bronchial thermoplasty, p.116). There is a lack of evidence about long-term effects, including effects on lung function, compared with usual care of sham treatment. There have been no head-to-head comparisons with biologic therapy.

Oral corticosteroids

As a last resort, if biologic therapy is not available, add-on low-dose OCS (≤ 7.5 mg/day prednisone-equivalent) may be considered for some adults with severe asthma (Evidence D),²⁰² but maintenance OCS is associated with substantial cumulative side effects (Evidence A).¹⁷⁹⁻¹⁸² It should only be considered for adults with poor symptom control and/or frequent exacerbations despite good inhaler technique and adherence on Step 5 treatment, and after exclusion of other contributory factors and trial of other add-on treatments including biologics where available and affordable. Patients should be counseled about potential side-effects.^{181,182} They should be assessed and monitored for risk of adrenal suppression and corticosteroid-induced osteoporosis, and those expected to be treated for ≥ 3 months should be provided with relevant lifestyle counseling and prescription of therapy for prevention of osteoporosis and fragility fractures (where appropriate).¹⁸³

NON-RECOMMENDED BRONCHODILATORS

Fenoterol: This short-acting β_2 -agonist is not recommended because of its higher risk of adverse effects (including hypokalemia and cardiovascular effects), and its association with increased asthma mortality.⁴³⁵

Oral bronchodilators: Oral adrenergic agonists (including oral ephedrine) and theophylline have a higher risk of side-effects than inhaled SABA and are not recommended. For clinicians in regions without access to inhaled therapies, advice on minimizing the frequency and dose of these oral medications has been provided elsewhere.³² No long-term safety studies have been performed to assess the risk of severe exacerbations associated with oral SABA or theophylline use in patients not also taking ICS.

Anticholinergic agents in the absence of ICS: In adults, inhaled short-acting muscarinic antagonists (SAMA) like ipratropium are potential alternatives to SABA for routine relief of asthma symptoms; however, these agents have a slower onset of action than inhaled SABA. Like SABAs (p.94) they should not be used without ICS. Use of long-acting muscarinic antagonists (LAMA) in asthma without concomitant ICS is associated with an increased risk of severe exacerbations.⁴³⁶

Formoterol without ICS: The rapid-onset LABA, formoterol, is as effective as SABA as a reliever medication in adults and children,⁴³⁷ and reduces the risk of severe exacerbations by 15–45%, compared with as-needed SABA,^{340,360,438} but use of regular or frequent LABA without ICS is strongly discouraged because of the risk of exacerbations (Evidence A).^{171,439}

Regular use of SABA is not recommended. Even 1–2 weeks of regular use of SABA 2–4 times/day results in increased airway hyperresponsiveness, increased airway inflammation, increased allergic response, and reduced bronchodilator effect.³⁴⁷

VACCINATIONS

Respiratory viruses, including influenza, respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) and severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus (SARS-CoV-2), cause acute illnesses with substantial morbidity and mortality worldwide, and are a common cause of exacerbations in both children and adults with asthma. Vaccination against influenza, RSV and COVID-19 does not only prevent severe disease (e.g., requiring hospitalization) across general populations, but also protects against virus-induced exacerbations of asthma. A systematic review of immunizations against influenza, RSV and COVID-19 licensed by the US Food and Drug Administration supports the consistent effectiveness and safety of these immunizations in the general population.⁴⁴⁰

Influenza

Influenza causes significant morbidity and mortality in the general population, and contributes to some acute asthma exacerbations. During the COVID-19 pandemic, many countries reported a reduction in influenza-related illness, likely due to the handwashing, masks and social/physical distancing introduced because of the pandemic.^{441,442}

The risk of influenza infection itself can be reduced by annual vaccination. A 2025 systematic review of influenza vaccination in the general population showed a pooled vaccine effectiveness against hospitalization of 48% in adults (18–64 years) and 67% in children.⁴⁴⁰ A 2017 systematic review and meta-analysis, which included observational studies with a wide range of study designs, suggested that influenza vaccination reduced the risk of asthma exacerbations, but bias could not be excluded for most of the studies.^{443,443} Systematic reviews have found no significant safety concerns or increased risk for asthma-related outcomes after influenza vaccination with live attenuated virus.^{443,444}

Respiratory syncytial virus

Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) infection causes lower respiratory tract disease in infants, including bronchiolitis and pneumonia. It also causes lower respiratory tract infections in older children and adults, and may exacerbate asthma. Children and the elderly are more likely to experience severe disease with RSV infection. RSV vaccines prevent RSV-related acute respiratory infection; an adjuvanted RSV-subunit vaccine reduced upper and lower respiratory tract disease in adults 60 years or older, including in those with underlying coexisting conditions such as asthma.^{445,446} Both maternal immunization with RSVpreF vaccination, and nirsevimab for infants, showed strong effectiveness against RSV-associated hospitalization in infants. There was no association with preterm birth when the RSV vaccine was administered at 32 to 36 weeks' gestation. In older adults (≥60 years), RSVpreF and RSVpreF3-AS01 vaccines were associated with high effectiveness against hospitalization (≥68%).⁴⁴⁰ Specific data about impact on asthma exacerbations are not yet available.

Other vaccines

People with asthma, particularly children and the elderly, are at higher risk of pneumococcal disease.⁴⁴⁷ Pneumococcal vaccine protects against invasive pneumococcal infection, but asthma alone is not a specific indication for pneumococcal vaccination.⁴⁴⁸ Pertussis infection may trigger or mimic asthma exacerbations, and pertussis vaccination reduces the risk of severe pertussis-related disease, but there is limited evidence on the efficacy and safety of vaccines in preventing asthma exacerbations in adults (and hence for an asthma-specific recommendation). For information about COVID-19 vaccines, see p.131.

Advice

Advise patients with moderate to severe asthma to receive an influenza vaccination every year, or at least when vaccination of the general population is advised (Evidence C). Follow local immunization schedules.

Advise vaccination against pneumococcal, pertussis, influenza, RSV and COVID-19 for children, adults and the elderly with asthma, following their local immunization schedule. Advice about COVID-19 vaccination is on p.131.

Check local advice for information about co-administration of different vaccines on the same day.

ABOUT ASTHMA TREATMENT FOR CHILDREN 6–11 YEARS

For general principles of asthma treatment, and non-pharmacological strategies, see Section 3, p.53.

For flowchart about initial asthma treatment for children 6–11 years, see p.102.

For asthma treatment steps in children 6–11 years, see p.104.

INITIAL ASTHMA TREATMENT IN CHILDREN 6–11 YEARS

Box 4-10. Initial asthma treatment for children aged 6–11 years with a diagnosis of asthma

Presenting symptoms	Preferred INITIAL treatment
Infrequent asthma symptoms, e.g., 2 days/week or less	As-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol (Evidence B), OR As-needed low-dose ICS+SABA using combination ICS-SABA inhaler (Evidence C) or ICS taken whenever SABA is taken (Evidence B)
Asthma symptoms 3–4 days/week	Daily low-dose ICS plus as-needed SABA (Evidence A) or plus as-needed ICS-SABA (Evidence B) Other, non-preferred options include as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol (Evidence C for Step 2), taking low-dose ICS whenever SABA is taken in combination or separate inhalers (Evidence B), or daily LTRA* (but ICS has greater effectiveness for exacerbations than LTRA, Evidence A). Consider the probability of adherence to maintenance treatment if reliever is SABA.
Asthma symptoms most days (e.g., 4–5 days/week), or waking due to asthma once a week or more, or low lung function	Low-dose ICS-LABA or medium-dose ICS, plus as-needed SABA (Evidence A) or plus as-needed ICS-SABA (Evidence C), OR Low-dose ICS-formoterol maintenance-and-reliever (MART) (Evidence B) Other, non-preferred options include daily low-dose ICS and LTRA,* plus as-needed ICS-SABA or as-needed SABA.
Daily asthma symptoms, or waking at night once or more a week, and low lung function or recent exacerbation	Medium-dose ICS-LABA plus as-needed SABA or plus as-needed ICS-SABA, OR Low-dose ICS-formoterol maintenance-and-reliever (MART)
Initial asthma presentation is during an acute exacerbation.	Treat as for exacerbation (Box 9-4, p.180), including a short course of OCS if the exacerbation is severe; commence Step 3 or Step 4 treatment before discharge.

Before starting initial controller treatment:

- Record evidence for the diagnosis of asthma, if possible.
- Record the child's level of symptom control and risk factors, including lung function (Box 2-2, p.41; Box 2-3, p.44).
- Consider factors influencing choice between available treatment options (Box 3-4, p.58).
- Choose a suitable inhaler (Box 5-1, p.118) and ensure that the child can use the inhaler correctly.
- Schedule an appointment for a follow-up visit.

After starting initial controller treatment:

- Review child's response (Box 2-2, p.41) after 2–3 months, or earlier depending on clinical urgency.
- See Box 4-12 (p.104) for recommendations for ongoing treatment and other key management issues.
- Step down treatment once good control has been maintained for 3 months.

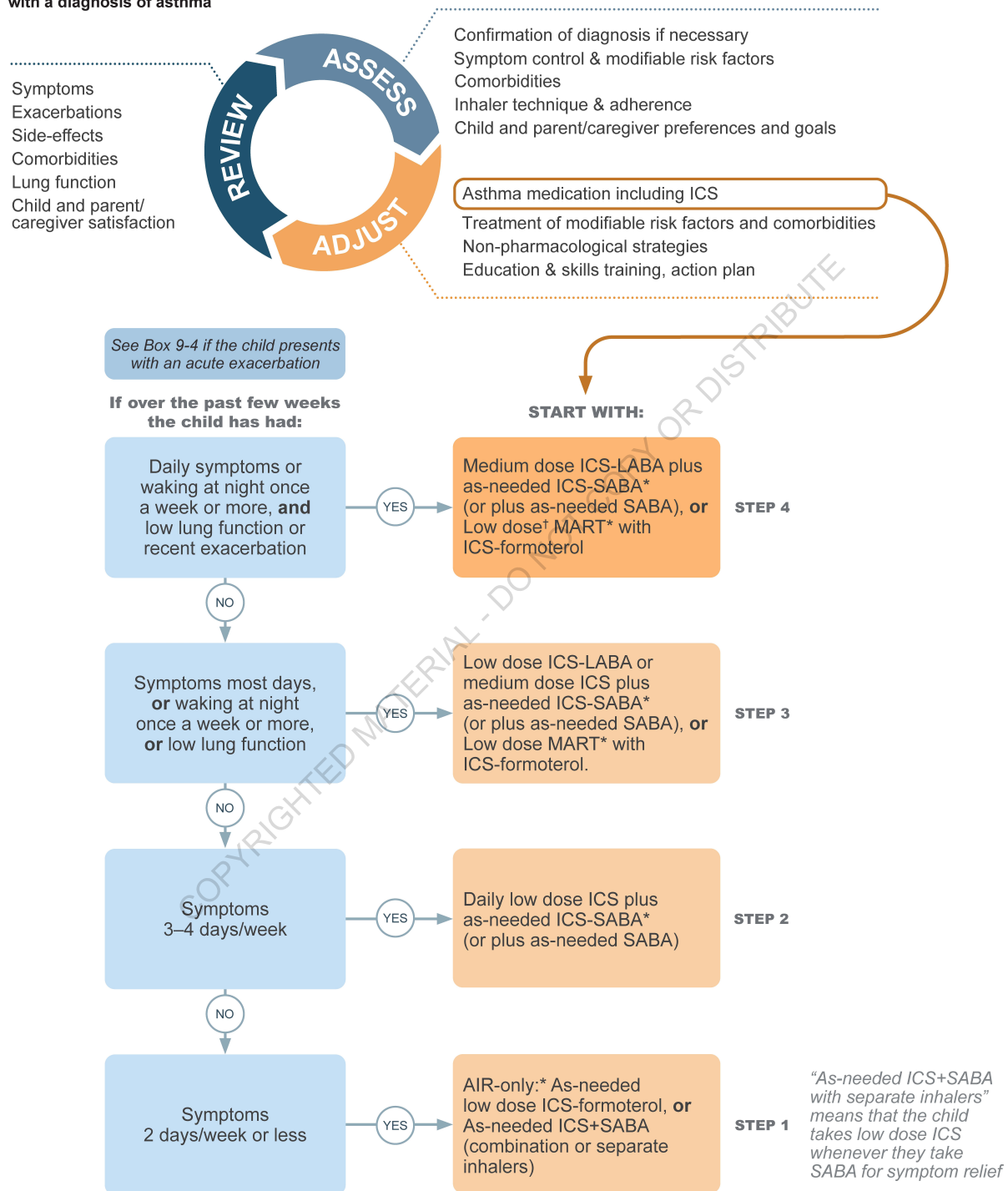
These recommendations are based on evidence, where available, and on consensus.

*If prescribing LTRA, advise about the risk of neuropsychiatric adverse effects.³³⁰ See Box 4-2 (p.77) for low, medium and high ICS doses in children, and Box 4-8 (p.90) for MART doses in children. See list of abbreviations (p.12).

Box 4-11. Flowchart for selecting initial treatment in children aged 6–11 years with a diagnosis of asthma

GINA 2026 – STARTING TREATMENT

in children aged 6–11 years
with a diagnosis of asthma



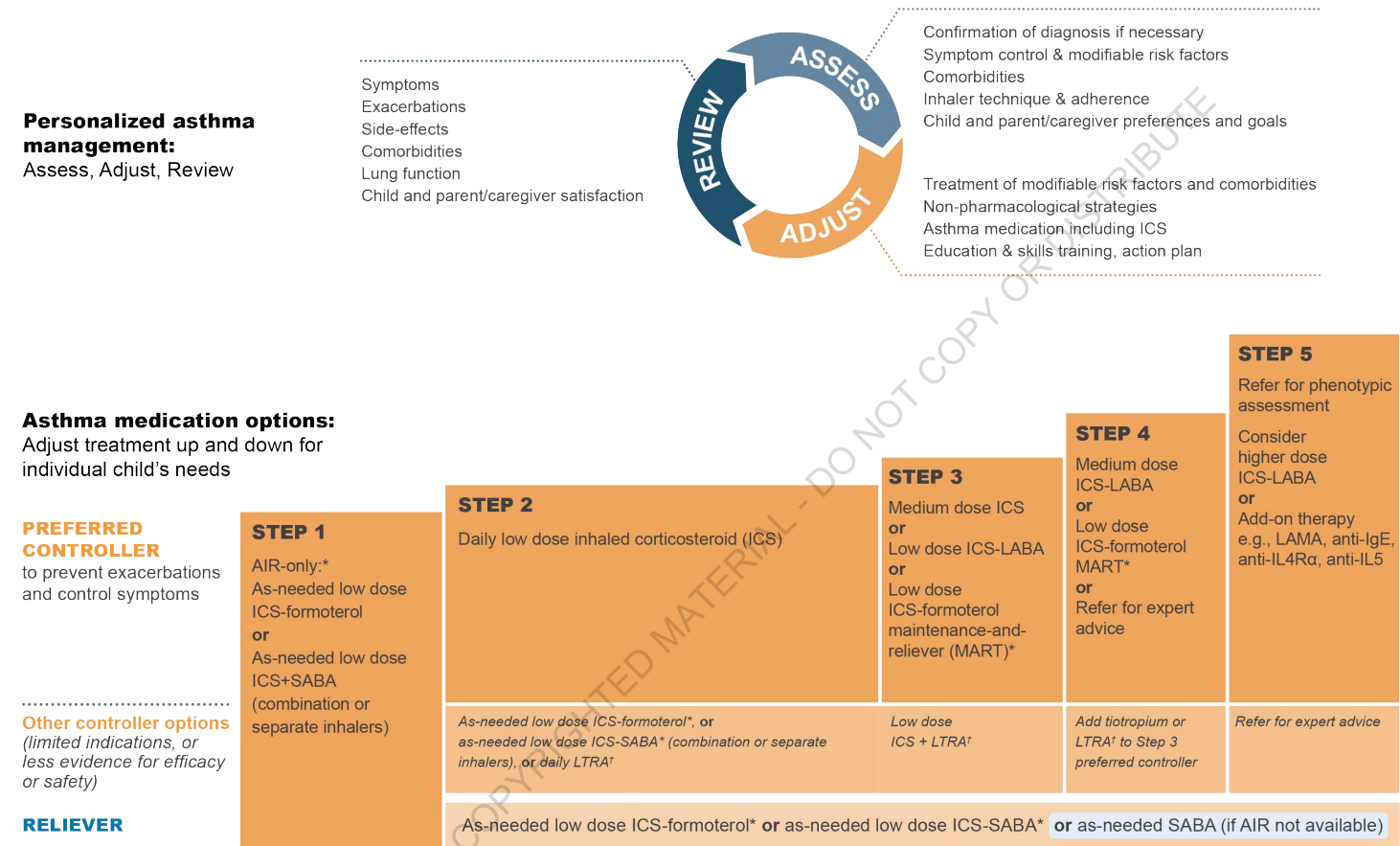
These recommendations are based on evidence, where available, and on consensus.

[†] Step 4 MART dose is double the Step 3 MART ICS dose (still a low daily ICS dose). AIR: anti-inflammatory reliever. ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; MART: maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist. See Box 4-2 (p.77) for low, medium and high ICS doses in children. See Box 4-8 (p.90) for medications and doses for MART in children.

ASTHMA TREATMENT STEPS FOR CHILDREN 6–11 YEARS

Box 4-12. Personalized management for children 6–11 years to control symptoms and minimize future risk

GINA 2026
Children 6–11 years



Anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR). ICS+SABA with separate inhalers means that the patient takes low dose ICS whenever they take SABA. Consider add-on allergen immunotherapy at Steps 1–3 for children with clinically relevant sensitization and not well-controlled (but stable) asthma. See text for details.

See list of abbreviations (p.12). *Anti-inflammatory reliever therapy (AIR); see Box 4-8. †If prescribing leukotriene receptor antagonists, note concerns about potential neuropsychiatric adverse effects. ³³⁰ ‡Step 4 MART dose is double the Step 3 dose (still a low daily dose). For initial asthma treatment in children aged 6–11 years, see Box 4-10 (p.102) and 4-11 (p.103). See Box 4-2 (p.77) for low, medium and high ICS doses in children. See Box 4-8 (p.90) for MART doses for children 6–11 years.

The steps below refer to the recommended asthma treatment options shown in Box 4-12 p.104.

Suggested low, medium and high doses for a range of ICS formulations are shown in Box 4-2 (p.77).

Preferred Step 1 treatment for children 6–11 years: anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR) with as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol or as-needed low-dose ICS+SABA (combination or separate inhalers)

Step 1 applies to children 6–11 years who are using SABA alone and have symptoms twice a week or less, or with asthma symptoms that are well controlled on low-dose ICS. The recommended treatment is anti-inflammatory reliever treatment: either as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol, or as-needed low-dose ICS+SABA (in combination or separate inhalers).

Populations studied

The CARE study²⁰ compared as-needed ICS-formoterol with as-needed SABA in children aged 5–15 years with a diagnosis of asthma who were using SABA alone, and had a worsening of asthma or an exacerbation requiring urgent medical review in the last 12 months, or with average SABA use at least 2 days per month. Children using >6 SABA inhalers in the last 12 months, or with use of other asthma medications in the last 6 months, were excluded.

Two studies compared as-needed ICS+SABA with as-needed SABA in separate inhalers. The TREXA study³⁶² was in children 5–18 years with mild persistent asthma that was well controlled during a 4-week run-in on low-dose ICS with as-needed SABA. The ASIST study³⁶⁴ was in African-American children aged 6–17 years whose asthma was well controlled on low-dose ICS with as-needed SABA in a run-in period of 2–4 weeks. Results of these two studies for children 6–11 years have not been published separately.

Evidence

The CARE study²⁰ compared as-needed combination low-dose budesonide-formoterol (50/3 mcg metered dose, 2 inhalations) with salbutamol (albuterol; 100 mcg metered dose, 2 inhalations), each taken as needed for symptom relief. The budesonide-formoterol group showed a significant reduction in the annualized rate of asthma exacerbations (primary outcome); 0.23 vs 0.41/participant/year; relative rate 0.55 (95% CI 0.35–0.86; $p=0.012$). There were greater reductions in exacerbations in those aged 12–15 years, in males, and in children with elevated FeNO at baseline. There was no difference in growth velocity between the treatment arms.²⁰

Both the TREXA and ASIST studies used separate inhalers for co-administered salbutamol (albuterol, 90 mcg delivered dose, 100 mcg metered dose) and beclometasone dipropionate 40 mcg delivered dose (50 mcg metered dose) in the intervention group: 2 puffs of beclometasone dipropionate for each 2 puffs of salbutamol, with the inhalers taped together, back-to-back, in the TREXA study. In the TREXA study, the comparators were as-needed SABA and as-needed ICS+SABA, each with or without regular (maintenance) ICS. The highest rate of exacerbations was among the children receiving SABA alone, and there was a significant reduction in treatment failures in the group that took ICS whenever SABA was taken, as well as in the other ICS-containing groups. There was no difference in linear growth between the groups receiving as-needed ICS+SABA and as-needed SABA.³⁶² In the ASIST study, symptom-based adjustment of ICS dose was associated with similar outcomes as with physician-adjusted treatment, with lower average ICS dose (Evidence B).³⁶⁴ Exacerbations and symptoms were similar with this regimen as with maintenance ICS plus as-needed SABA.

There are no studies of as-needed-only combination ICS-SABA in children 6–11 years, but the evidence from TREXA suggests that this would likely be safer than SABA-only treatment, in terms of risk of exacerbations.

Other considerations

From the available clinical trials, there is no clear efficacy advantage between as-needed combination ICS-formoterol and as-needed ICS+SABA. However, if separate ICS and SABA inhalers are used in clinical practice, it is highly likely that the SABA inhaler would be used preferentially, leaving the child vulnerable to exacerbations.

The medication used in the CARE study (budesonide-formoterol metered dose 50/3 mcg pMDI, 2 inhalations per dose) is no longer manufactured. GINA suggests that the most appropriate formulation for as-needed-only use in children 6–11 years is budesonide-formoterol delivered dose 80/4.5 mcg (metered dose 100/6 mcg) by DPI or by pMDI, 1 inhalation as

needed. Medical care should be sought if the child has needed more than 8 inhalations in a 24-hour period (Box 4-8, p.90).

Neither of the studies of as-needed ICS+SABA with separate inhalers was sufficiently powered to examine severe exacerbations as an outcome. In the TREXA study, there were no differences in asthma symptom control or airway hyperresponsiveness between the treatment groups. The children receiving daily ICS had lower linear growth than those receiving as-needed SABA or as-needed ICS+SABA.³⁶² In the ASIST study, interviews with parents/caregivers indicated that those whose children were randomized to as-needed ICS-SABA felt more in control of their child's asthma than those whose children were randomized to physician-based adjustment.³⁶⁴

Not recommended

GINA does not recommend SABA-only treatment for children 6–11 years (or for adults or adolescents). Although inhaled SABAs are highly effective for the quick relief of asthma symptoms,³⁶⁵ children whose asthma is treated with SABA alone (compared with ICS) are at increased risk of asthma-related death, compared with use of any ICS (Evidence A)³⁶⁶ and urgent asthma-related health care (Evidence A).³⁶⁷ In the TREXA study, the worst outcomes were in children treated with SABA alone.³⁶²

Regular SABA treatment or SABA over-use (at any treatment step) is also not recommended in children. Dispensing of 3 or more canisters in a year (average usage 12 inhalations/week) is associated with double the risk of emergency department visits.¹⁰²

GINA does not recommend use of oral SABA or theophylline, because of the higher risk of side-effects and lower efficacy. For clinicians in regions without access to inhaled therapies, advice on minimizing the frequency and dose of these oral medications has been provided elsewhere.³² No long-term safety studies have been performed to assess the risk of severe exacerbations associated with oral SABA or theophylline use in children not also taking ICS.

The rapid-onset LABA, formoterol, is as effective as SABA as a reliever medication in children as well as in adults,⁴³⁷ and reduces the risk of severe exacerbations by 15–45%, compared with as-needed SABA,^{340,360,438} but use of regular or frequent LABA **without** ICS is strongly discouraged because of the risk of exacerbations (Evidence A).^{171,439}

Preferred Step 2 treatment for children 6–11 years: daily low-dose ICS plus as-needed ICS-SABA or as-needed SABA

The preferred controller option for children at Step 2 is daily low-dose ICS plus as-needed ICS-SABA or as-needed SABA (see Box 4-2, p.77 for dose ranges for maintenance ICS in children). Daily ICS reduces the risk of severe exacerbations, compared with SABA-only treatment.³⁴³

Evidence

Evidence in children includes the large long-term START study,⁴⁴⁹ in which patients aged 6–66 years with newly diagnosed asthma were provided with placebo or low-dose budesonide (200 mcg/day for children <11 years) for 3 years. Low-dose ICS reduced the risk of severe exacerbations requiring emergency room visit or hospitalization by 40%, improved lung function, increased symptom-free days and decreased days lost from school years).⁴⁴⁹

Alternative Step 2 treatment option for children 6–11 years: as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol, or as-needed low-dose ICS-SABA (or, if neither is available, as-needed SABA)

To date, there are no published studies comparing as-needed-only ICS-formoterol with daily ICS plus as-needed SABA in children 6–11 years, leaving an evidence gap between the recommendation for as-needed-only ICS-formoterol as an option in Step 1, and maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) as an option in Steps 3 and 4. There are also no studies comparing as-needed-only ICS-SABA with daily ICS plus as-needed SABA.

However, as-needed-only ICS+SABA has been evaluated in small studies with separate ICS and SABA inhalers, showing similar asthma outcomes as with daily ICS.^{362,364}

Another alternative option at Step 2 is daily LTRA, which, overall, is less effective than ICS,³⁸⁵ and there are concerns about potential neuropsychiatric adverse events.³³⁰

Practice points

The treatment figure for children 6–11 years (Box 4-12, p.104) reflects the best available evidence at each step, but not how to transition between steps 1, 2 and 3 in clinical practice if required for better symptom control or to reduce exacerbations. **If step-up is needed**, consensus recommendations are based on the child's previous Step 1 treatment:

- For children prescribed as-needed-only ICS-formoterol, the suggested next step is low-dose ICS-formoterol MART (see Box 4-8, p.90).
- For children prescribed as-needed-only combination ICS-SABA, the suggested next step is daily low-dose ICS plus as-needed low-dose ICS-SABA
- For children prescribed as-needed ICS+SABA with separate inhalers, the suggested next step is daily low-dose ICS plus as-needed SABA, with extra ICS taken whenever SABA is taken.

Not recommended

Sustained-release theophylline has only weak efficacy in asthma (Evidence B)^{400,450,451} and side-effects are common, and may be life-threatening at higher doses.⁴⁵² Chromones (nedocromil sodium and sodium cromoglycate) have been discontinued globally.

Preferred Step 3 treatment options for children 6–11 years: regular medium-dose ICS or low-dose ICS-LABA plus as-needed ICS-SABA (or plus as-needed SABA), or MART with low-dose ICS-formoterol

In children, after checking inhaler technique and adherence, and treating modifiable risk factors, there are three preferred options at a population level:

- Increase ICS to medium dose (see Box 4-2, p.77) plus as-needed SABA reliever (Evidence A),⁴⁵³ or plus as-needed ICS-SABA reliever (Evidence D)
- Change to combination low-dose ICS-LABA plus as-needed SABA reliever (Evidence A),⁴⁵⁴ or plus as-needed ICS-SABA (Evidence D)
- Switch to maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with a low dose of ICS-formoterol (Evidence B).⁴⁵⁵ For a summary of medications and doses, see Box 4-8 (p.90).

Evidence

In a large study of children aged 4–11 years with a history of an exacerbation in the previous year, combination ICS-LABA was non-inferior to the same dose of ICS alone for severe exacerbations, with no difference in symptom control or reliever use.⁴⁵⁶ In children, a single study of maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with a low dose of budesonide-formoterol (80/4.5 mcg delivered dose [100/6 mcg metered dose] one inhalation once daily and one inhalation as needed) showed a large reduction in exacerbations, compared with the same dose of budesonide-formoterol plus SABA reliever, or compared with higher-dose ICS.⁴⁵⁵

Individual children's responses vary, so it may be appropriate to try other Step 3 controller options above before considering Step 4 treatment.⁴⁵⁷

Other Step 3 treatment options for children 6–11 years

A 2014 systematic review and meta-analysis did not support the addition of LTRA to low-dose ICS in children, compared with adding LABA.⁴⁵⁸ Note concerns about the risk of neuropsychiatric adverse effects with montelukast.³³⁰

Preferred Step 4 treatment options for children 6–11 years: increase treatment to medium-dose ICS-LABA plus as-needed SABA, or MART with low-dose ICS-formoterol, or refer for expert advice

For children whose asthma is not adequately controlled by Step 3 treatment with low-dose maintenance ICS-LABA with as-needed ICS-SABA or with as-needed SABA, treatment may be increased to medium-dose ICS-LABA (Evidence B).⁴⁵⁶ For those prescribed maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with budesonide-formoterol, the maintenance dose may be increased to 80/4.5 mcg delivered dose (100/6 mcg metered dose) twice daily (Evidence D); this is still a low-dose regimen. For a summary of medications and doses, see Box 4-8 (p.90). Referral for expert advice may also be considered.

If asthma is not well controlled on Step 3 treatment with medium-dose ICS (Box 4-2B, p.77), consider the above Step 4 options of medium-dose ICS-LABA or low-dose MART with ICS-formoterol.

Other Step 4 options for children 6–11 years that may be considered include:

Tiotropium: For children 6–11 years whose asthma is not well-controlled on Step 3 treatment, tiotropium (a long-acting muscarinic antagonist) by mist inhaler may added to the 'preferred' Step 3 treatment. It modestly improves lung function and reduces exacerbations (Evidence A),⁴¹⁰ largely independent of baseline IgE or blood eosinophils.⁴⁵⁹

LTRA: If not trialed before, LTRA could be added to the preferred Step 3 treatment (but note the concern about risks of neuropsychiatric adverse effects with montelukast).³³⁰

Add-on theophylline is not recommended for use in children due to lack of efficacy and safety data.

Preferred treatment at Step 5 in children 6–11 years: refer for expert assessment, phenotyping, and add-on therapy

Children with persistent asthma symptoms or exacerbations despite correct inhaler technique and good adherence on Step 4 treatment should be referred to a clinician with expertise in investigation and management of severe asthma, if available (Evidence D).²⁰²

In severe asthma, as in mild–moderate asthma,⁴⁰² participants in randomized controlled trials may not be representative of patients seen in clinical practice. For example, a registry study found that over 80% of patients with severe asthma would have been excluded from major regulatory studies evaluating biologic therapy.⁴⁰³

Add-on long-acting muscarinic antagonist

Tiotropium, a long-acting muscarinic antagonists (LAMA), can be prescribed as an add-on treatment in a separate inhaler for patients aged ≥6 years if asthma is not well controlled with medium or high-dose ICS-LABA.^{410,459}

Add-on biologic therapy

Options recommended by GINA for children aged 6–11 years with uncontrolled severe asthma despite optimized maximal therapy (see Section 8 for more details) include:

- **Add-on anti-immunoglobulin E (anti-IgE)** (omalizumab or biosimilar omalizumab-igec) for patients aged ≥6 years with severe allergic asthma (Evidence A)⁴¹⁴
- **Add-on anti-interleukin-5/5Ra** (subcutaneous mepolizumab for patients aged ≥6 years with severe eosinophilic asthma (Evidence A).^{419,420}
- **Add-on anti-interleukin-4Ra** (subcutaneous dupilumab) for patients aged ≥6 years with severe eosinophilic/Type 2 asthma.⁴²⁵

Each of these biologic therapies has been shown in placebo-controlled trials to significantly reduce the risk of severe asthma exacerbations (and hence the risk of needing OCS) in this age-group.

When choosing between biologic therapies for children with severe Type 2 asthma, consider the following:

- Local payer eligibility criteria
- Predictors of good asthma response
- Comorbidities with a co-indication for biologic therapy (see Box 8-6, p.166)
- Practical issues: cost, dosing frequency, and patient/parent preference.

Maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with ICS-formoterol

There is no direct evidence about initiating MART in children receiving add-on treatment such as LAMA or biologic therapy. Switching a patient from MART with ICS-formoterol to conventional ICS-LABA plus as-needed SABA may increase the risk of exacerbations.

High-dose ICS-LABA

Increasing the ICS-LABA dose to a high pediatric ICS dose (Box 4-2B, p.77) can be considered if no other options are available, but adverse effects must be considered.

COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL - DO NOT COPY OR DISTRIBUTE

REVIEWING RESPONSE AND ADJUSTING TREATMENT – ADULTS, ADOLESCENTS AND CHILDREN 6–11 YEARS

How often should asthma be reviewed?

Each patient's asthma should be reviewed regularly to monitor symptom control, risk factors and occurrence of exacerbations, and to document response to any treatment changes. For most controller medications, improvement in symptoms and lung function begins within days of initiating treatment, but the full benefit may only be reached after 3–4 months,⁴⁶⁰ or even later in patients with severe and chronically under-treated asthma.⁴⁶¹

All healthcare providers should be encouraged to assess asthma control, adherence and inhaler technique at every visit, not just when the patient presents because of their asthma.⁴⁶² The frequency of visits depends upon the patient's initial level of control, their response to treatment, and their level of engagement in self-management.

Ideally, patients should be seen 1–3 months after starting treatment and every 3–12 months thereafter. After an exacerbation, a review visit within 1 week should be scheduled (Evidence D).⁴⁶³

Stepping up asthma treatment

Asthma is a variable condition, and adjustments of controller treatment by the clinician and/or the patient may be needed.⁴⁶⁴

Day-to-day adjustment using an anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR)

For patients whose reliever inhaler is combination budesonide-formoterol or beclometasone-formoterol (with or without maintenance ICS-formoterol), the patient adjusts the number of as needed doses of ICS-formoterol from day to day according to their symptoms. This strategy reduces the risk of developing a severe exacerbation requiring OCS within the next 3–4 weeks.¹⁴²⁻¹⁴⁴ As-needed combination budesonide-salbutamol (budesonide-albuterol) is an anti-inflammatory reliever option that reduces the risk of severe exacerbations compared with SABA-only reliever in Step 1²¹ and in Steps 3–5.³⁷⁴

Short-term step-up (for 1–2 weeks)

A short-term increase in maintenance ICS dose for 1–2 weeks may be necessary (e.g., during viral infections or seasonal allergen exposure). This increase may be initiated by the patient according to their written asthma action plan (Box 9-2, p.174), or by the healthcare provider.

Sustained step-up (for at least 2–3 months)

Although at a group level most benefit from ICS is obtained at low dose, individual ICS responsiveness varies; some patients whose asthma is uncontrolled on low-dose ICS-LABA despite good adherence and correct technique may benefit from increasing the maintenance dose to medium. A step-up in treatment may be recommended (Box 4-6, p.83) after confirming that the symptoms are due to asthma, inhaler technique and adherence are satisfactory, and modifiable risk factors such as smoking have been addressed (Box 3-5, p.61). Any step-up should be regarded as a therapeutic trial; if there is no response after 2–3 months, treatment should be reduced to the previous level, and alternative treatments or referral considered.

Stepping down treatment when asthma is well controlled

Once good asthma control has been achieved and maintained for 2–3 months and lung function has reached a plateau, treatment can often be successfully reduced, without loss of asthma control. The aims of stepping down are:

- To find the patient's minimum effective treatment, i.e., to maintain good control of symptoms and exacerbations, and to minimize the costs of treatment and potential for side-effects
- To encourage the patient to continue ICS-containing treatment. Patients prescribed maintenance controller treatment in either Track often experiment with intermittent treatment through concern about the risks or costs of daily treatment.⁴⁶⁵ For patients prescribed GINA Track 1 MART, the ICS-formoterol reliever provides a safety net during planned step-down or if adherence to maintenance doses is poor. However, for patients prescribed maintenance controller with a SABA reliever (GINA Track 2, Steps 2–5), poor adherence leaves them exposed to the risks of SABA-only treatment. Step-down options for patients on different treatment steps are shown in Box 4-13 (p.112).

Before stepping down

The optimal approach to stepping down will differ between patients, depending on their current treatment, risk factors and preferences. There are few data on the optimal timing, sequence and magnitude of treatment reductions in asthma. Factors associated with a greater risk of exacerbation after step-down include a history of exacerbations and/or emergency department visit for asthma in the previous 12 months,^{466,467} and a low baseline FEV₁.⁴⁶⁷ Other predictors of loss of control during dose reduction include airway hyperresponsiveness and sputum eosinophilia,⁴⁶⁸ but these tests are not readily available in primary care.

Any treatment step-down should be considered as a therapeutic trial, evaluating the response in terms of both symptom control and exacerbation frequency. Before stepping down, the patient should be given a written asthma action plan and instructions for how and when to re-start their previous treatment if their symptoms worsen.

How to step asthma treatment down

Decisions about treatment step-down should be based on individual assessment. In one study of patients with well-controlled asthma on medium-dose ICS-LABA, reducing the ICS dose and removing the LABA had similar effects on a composite treatment failure outcome. However, stopping LABA was associated with lower lung function and more hospitalizations, and decreasing the ICS dose was inferior to maintaining a stable dose of ICS-LABA.⁴⁶⁹

If treatment is stepped down too far or too quickly, the risk of exacerbations may increase even if symptoms remain reasonably controlled (Evidence B).⁴⁷⁰ Higher baseline FeNO has not been demonstrated to predict exacerbations following step-down of ICS dose.^{471,472} A meta-analysis suggested that greater reduction in ICS dose may be able to be achieved in patients with baseline FeNO <50 ppb, but the authors point to the need for further research.⁴⁷² Complete cessation of ICS is associated with a significantly increased risk of exacerbations (Evidence A).⁴⁷³

Stepping down from daily low-dose ICS plus as-needed SABA to as needed-only ICS-formoterol provides similar or greater protection from severe exacerbations and need for urgent health care, with similar symptom control and lung function and a much lower average daily ICS dose, compared with treatment with daily low-dose ICS plus as-needed SABA.²¹⁰ Step-down strategies for different controller treatments are summarized in Box 4-13 (p.112); these are based on current evidence, but more research is needed. Few step-down studies have been performed in children.

Box 4-13. Options for stepping down treatment in adults and adolescents once asthma is well controlled

General principles of stepping down asthma treatment (adults and adolescents):

- Consider stepping down when asthma symptoms have been well controlled and lung function has been stable for at least 3 months (Evidence D). If the patient has risk factors for exacerbations (Box 2-2, p.41), for example a history of exacerbations in the past year,⁴⁶⁶ or persistent airflow limitation, step down only with close supervision.
- Choose an appropriate time (no respiratory infection, patient not travelling, not pregnant).
- Approach each step as a therapeutic trial: engage the patient in the process, document their asthma status (symptom control, lung function and risk factors, Box 2-2, p.41), provide clear instructions, provide a written asthma action plan (Box 9-2, p.174) and ensure the patient has sufficient medication to resume their previous dose if necessary, monitor symptoms and/or PEF, and schedule a follow-up visit (Evidence D).
- Stepping down ICS doses by 25–50% at 3-month intervals is feasible and safe for most patients (Evidence A).⁴⁷⁴

Current step	Current medication and dose	Options for stepping down if asthma is well controlled and lung function stable for ≥3 months	Evidence
Step 5	High-dose ICS-LABA plus oral corticosteroids (OCS)	If Type 2-high severe asthma, add biologic therapy if eligible and reduce OCS (see Box 8-4, p.154 for more details)	A
		Optimize inhaled therapy to reduce OCS dose	D
		Use sputum-guided approach to reducing OCS	B
		For low-dose OCS, use alternate-day dosing	D
	Biologic therapy plus high-dose ICS-LABA	Cease other add-on medications especially OCS, then consider reducing ICS-LABA dose ⁴⁰⁵ (see Box 8-5 (p.155) and p.155)	B
Step 4	Moderate- to high-dose ICS-LABA maintenance treatment	Continue combination ICS-LABA and reduce ICS component by 50%, by using available formulations	B
		<i>Caution:</i> Discontinuing LABA may lead to deterioration ⁴⁷⁵	A
		Switch to maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with ICS-formoterol, with lower maintenance dose ³⁵⁷	A
	Medium-dose ICS-formoterol* as maintenance and reliever	Reduce maintenance ICS-formoterol* to low dose, and continue as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol* reliever	D
	High-dose ICS plus second controller	Reduce ICS dose by 50% and continue second controller ⁴⁷⁴	B
Step 3	Low-dose ICS-LABA maintenance	Reduce ICS-LABA to once daily	D
		<i>Caution:</i> Discontinuing LABA may lead to deterioration ⁴⁷⁵	A
	Low-dose ICS-formoterol* as maintenance and reliever	Reduce maintenance ICS-formoterol* dose to once daily and continue as needed low-dose ICS-formoterol* reliever	C
		Consider stepping down to as-needed-only low-dose ICS-formoterol	D
	Medium- or high-dose ICS	Reduce ICS dose by 50% ⁴⁷⁴	A
		Adding LABA may allow ICS dose to be stepped down ⁴⁷⁶	B
Step 2	Low-dose maintenance ICS	Once-daily dosing (budesonide, ciclesonide, mometasone, fluticasone furoate) ^{477,478}	A
		Switch to as-needed-only low-dose ICS-formoterol ^{215,336,337,344}	A
		Switch to taking ICS whenever SABA is taken ³⁶¹⁻³⁶⁴	B
		<i>Caution:</i> Do not completely stop ICS, because the risk of exacerbations is increased with SABA-only treatment ^{344,473}	A

ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist; OCS: oral corticosteroid *MART: low-dose budesonide-formoterol or beclometasone-formoterol (p.75).

Other strategies for adjusting asthma treatment

Some alternative strategies for adjusting asthma maintenance ICS-containing treatment have been evaluated:

- **Treatment guided by sputum eosinophil count:** in adults with frequent exacerbations and moderate-severe asthma, this approach leads to a reduced risk of exacerbations and similar levels of symptom control and lung function, compared with guidelines-based treatment.⁴³³ However, few clinics have routine access to induced sputum analysis. There is insufficient evidence to assess this approach in children.⁴³³ Sputum-guided treatment is recommended for adult patients with moderate or severe asthma who are managed in (or can be referred to) centers experienced in this technique (Evidence A).^{202,433}
- **Treatment guided by fractional concentration of exhaled nitric oxide (FeNO):** In several studies of FeNO-guided treatment, problems with the design of the intervention and/or control algorithms make comparisons and conclusions difficult.⁴⁷⁹ Results of FeNO measurement at a single point in time should be interpreted with caution.^{59,334} The relationship between FeNO and other Type 2 biomarkers is lost or altered in obesity.^{29,57} In a 2016 meta-analysis, FeNO-guided treatment in children and young adults with asthma was associated with a significant reduction in the number of patients with ≥ 1 exacerbation (OR 0.67; 95% CI 0.51–0.90) and in exacerbation rate (mean difference -0.27 ; 95% -0.49 to -0.06 per year), compared with guidelines-based treatment (Evidence A);⁴⁸⁰ FeNO-guided treatment was associated with similar benefits when compared with non-guidelines-based algorithms.⁴⁸⁰ However, a subsequent good-quality multicenter clinical trial in children with asthma in secondary and primary care centers found that the addition of FeNO to symptom-guided treatment did not reduce severe exacerbations over 12 months.⁴⁸¹ In non-smoking adults with asthma, no significant reduction in risk of exacerbations and in exacerbation rates was observed with FeNO-guided treatment, compared with treatment strategies similar to those in most guidelines; a difference was seen only in studies with other (non-typical) comparator approaches to adjustment of treatment.⁴⁸² In a large study in pregnant women, there was no reduction in exacerbations with FeNO-guided treatment, compared with usual care.⁴⁸³ In adults and in children, no significant differences were seen in symptoms or ICS dose with FeNO-guided treatment, compared with other strategies.^{480,482}
- **Treatment guided by combination biomarkers:** An RCT in patients taking high-dose ICS-LABA compared a treatment adjustment strategy based on a composite of Type 2 biomarkers only with an algorithm based on ACQ-7 and history of recent exacerbation, but the findings were inconclusive because a substantial proportion of patients did not follow recommendations for treatment change.⁴⁸⁴
- **Selection of add-on treatment for patients with severe asthma:** The assessment of severe asthma includes identification of the inflammatory phenotype, based on blood or sputum eosinophils or FeNO, to assess the patient's eligibility for various add-on treatments including biologic therapy. A higher baseline blood eosinophil count and/or FeNO predicts a good asthma response to some biologic therapies (see Box 8-3, p.153 and Box 8-4, p.154).

Further studies are needed to identify the subpopulations of patients with asthma who are most likely to benefit from biomarker-guided adjustment of maintenance ICS-containing treatment, and the optimal frequency of monitoring, including for corticosteroid de-escalation strategies. Until more definitive evidence is available to support a specific strategy, GINA continues to recommend a comprehensive clinical evaluation that includes patient-reported symptoms as well as modifiable risk factors, environmental exposures comorbidities and patient preferences, when making treatment decisions for individual patients.

ALLERGEN IMMUNOTHERAPY

Allergen-specific immunotherapy may be considered as add-on therapy for adults and children with asthma who have clinically significant sensitization to aeroallergens, including in those with allergic rhinitis.^{14,15,485,486} It involves the identification of clinically relevant allergens and the administration of extracts in precisely calculated doses to induce desensitization and/or tolerance. Allergen immunotherapy is currently the only intervention with both an immune-modifying effect and long-term effect on the allergic response.

Few studies reporting effects of allergen immunotherapy on asthma have compared immunotherapy with pharmacological therapy, or used standardized outcomes such as exacerbations; furthermore, most studies have been performed in patients with mild asthma.⁴⁸⁷ The allergens most often tested in allergen immunotherapy studies are house dust mite and grass pollens. There is insufficient evidence about the safety and efficacy of allergen immunotherapy in patients with asthma who are sensitized to mold.⁴⁸⁸ More studies are needed to clarify the role of allergen immunotherapy in the development and progression of asthma, and in clinical asthma management.⁴⁸⁷

There are two approaches: subcutaneous immunotherapy (SCIT) and sublingual immunotherapy (SLIT).

Subcutaneous immunotherapy (SCIT)

SCIT involves the administration of extracts in progressively higher doses, usually over a period of 3–5 years. There is considerable variation in the specific SCIT regimens used in clinical practice.

Efficacy of SCIT for treatment of asthma

Systematic reviews and meta-analysis of SCIT in the treatment of adult and pediatric asthma concluded that addition of SCIT led to a reduction in ICS dose requirement and/or the proportion of patients requiring ICS (moderate strength of evidence) and may improve asthma-specific quality of life and lung function, while reducing reliever use and the need for systemic corticosteroids (low strength of evidence).^{15,486} Few studies of SCIT to house dust mite have been conducted only in children, or report results for children separately.⁴⁸⁶ A 2020 systematic review of allergen immunotherapy in children with asthma aged 18 years and younger reported that SCIT led to a reduction in ICS requirement (moderate strength of evidence), and improved asthma-related quality of life and lung function (low strength of evidence).¹⁴

Safety

Safety data, overall, suggest that severe allergic reactions occur in fewer than 0.5–0.7% of patients treated with SCIT.⁴⁸⁹ Serious adverse effects of SCIT are rare, but may include life-threatening anaphylactic reactions. Asthma, especially severe or uncontrolled asthma, has been identified as a major risk factor for severe and fatal adverse reactions to SCIT.⁴⁹⁰ Food allergy is also a risk factor for systemic reactions to SCIT.

Advice

When considering SCIT for adults or children with asthma, the potential benefits, compared with pharmacological treatment and allergen avoidance, must be weighed against the risk of adverse effects and the inconvenience and cost of the prolonged course of therapy (typically 3–5 years), including the minimum 30 minutes of monitoring required after each injection (Evidence D).

If allergen immunotherapy is considered for patients with severe asthma, the potential benefits and risks should be carefully identified and discussed as part of a shared decision-making process. To minimize the risk of severe reactions, SCIT should not be initiated until good asthma control (symptom control and risk factors for exacerbations) has been established.

For each patient, SCIT should be tailored to their specific pattern of allergic sensitization. Given the complexity of making up SCIT extracts, combined with the risk of serious adverse events, SCIT prescription and administration should be limited to practitioners who are specifically trained and experienced in allergy testing and in the formulation and administration of SCIT. Injections should be administered only in a healthcare setting with capability for, and personnel skilled in the management of, severe allergic reactions/anaphylaxis. SCIT should be administered only with high-quality extracts, and standardized extracts should be used, where available.

Healthcare providers who offer SCIT must establish effective safety protocols. The risk of severe adverse events is significantly reduced by systems that ensure appropriate supervision after injections, including training of office staff to track time after injections and monitor patient checkout.⁴⁹⁰

Sublingual immunotherapy (SLIT)

Sublingual immunotherapy involves the administration of extracts either as tablet or drops administered under the tongue, with an induction phase in which the dose is progressively increased. The duration of SLIT depends on the allergens used (house dust mite or grass pollen).

Efficacy of SLIT for treatment of asthma

Several systematic reviews have examined the effect of SLIT for asthma in adults and children,^{491,492} but many of the studies were unblinded or used non-standardized outcomes. In general, there is limited evidence demonstrating effects of SLIT on important outcomes such as asthma exacerbations and quality of life,⁴⁹² and few RCTs have compared SLIT with pharmacological therapy for asthma. A 2020 Cochrane review of 66 trials of SLIT for allergic rhinitis, in which at least 80% of participants also had allergic asthma, concluded that addition of SLIT may reduce the risk of asthma exacerbation requiring OCS or healthcare visits (low strength of evidence), but only one study in adults and one in children reported effects on healthcare visits.⁴⁹² In a 2023 systematic review focusing on individuals (mainly adults) with allergic rhinitis and asthma, SLIT was associated with a significant reduction in asthma symptoms, compared with placebo, but there was no effect on ICS dose, FeNO, lung function or direct treatment cost.⁴⁹³

House dust mite SLIT: European Academy of Allergy & Clinical Immunology (EAACI) guidelines recommend HDM SLIT as add-on treatment in adults with controlled or partially controlled HDM-driven allergic asthma.⁴⁸⁶ In a subsequent systematic review, addition of standardized HDM SLIT resulted in reduction in ICS dose in one RCT and improved asthma symptoms in two RCTs but there was no consistent effect on exacerbations in adolescents and adults with well or partly controlled asthma.⁴⁸⁵ There is no separate evidence for adolescents, but no reason to suppose that effectiveness and/or safety would be different than in adults.

Ragweed SLIT: In children with allergic rhinoconjunctivitis and asthma who were sensitized to ragweed, ragweed SLIT reduced SABA use and nocturnal awakenings during peak ragweed season.⁴⁹⁴

Safety

The rate of serious adverse events associated with SLIT, as reported in RCTs, is estimated at $\leq 1\%$ (moderate certainty of evidence)⁴⁹² with rare cases of anaphylaxis requiring epinephrine (adrenaline).⁴⁸⁵ In a real-world study, the incidence of serious adverse events was lower among those receiving SLIT than among those receiving SCIT.⁴⁹⁵ Adverse events due to SLIT for inhalant allergens are mainly limited to oral and gastrointestinal symptoms and usually reported to be transient and mild.^{492,496-499}

Advice

For adult or adolescent patients with asthma who are sensitized to house dust mite, with persisting asthma symptoms despite low- to medium-dose ICS-containing therapy, consider adding HDM SLIT, but only if FEV₁ is $>70\%$ predicted (Evidence B).

For children with asthma sensitized to ragweed, consider adding SLIT before and during the ragweed season, provided FEV₁ is $\geq 80\%$ predicted. There is insufficient evidence to make a recommendation about HDM SLIT in children with asthma.

As for any treatment, the potential benefits of SLIT for individual patients should include shared decision making and be weighed against the risk of adverse events and the cost for the patient and the health system.

OTHER THERAPIES

Bronchial thermoplasty

Bronchial thermoplasty involves treatment of the airways during three separate bronchoscopies with a localized radiofrequency pulse.¹⁷⁰ In patients taking high-dose ICS-LABA, bronchial thermoplasty was associated with an increase in asthma exacerbations during the 3-month treatment period, and a subsequent decrease in exacerbations, but no beneficial effect on lung function or asthma symptoms, compared with sham control.¹⁷⁰ The sham-controlled trial demonstrated that the treatment was associated with a large placebo effect.¹⁷⁰ Extended follow-up of some treated patients reported a sustained reduction in exacerbations, compared with pre-treatment.⁵⁰⁰ However, there is a need for longer-term follow up of larger cohorts comparing effectiveness and safety, including for lung function, in both active and sham-treated patients.

Advice

For adult patients whose asthma remains uncontrolled despite optimized treatment with high-dose ICS-LABA and referral to a severe asthma specialty center, and who do not have access to biologic therapy or are not eligible for it, bronchial thermoplasty is a potential treatment option at Step 5 in some countries.

However, caution should be used in selecting patients for this procedure. The number of studies is small, people with chronic sinus disease, frequent chest infections or FEV₁ <60% predicted were excluded from the pivotal sham-controlled study, and patients did not have their asthma treatment optimized before bronchial thermoplasty was performed.

If bronchial thermoplasty is considered, it should be performed only in the context of an independent Institutional Review Board-approved systematic registry or a clinical study, so that more evidence about effectiveness and safety of the procedure can be accumulated.²⁰²

Vitamin D

Several cross-sectional studies have shown that low serum levels of Vitamin D are linked to impaired lung function, higher exacerbation frequency and reduced corticosteroid response.⁵⁰¹ Vitamin D supplementation may reduce the rate of asthma exacerbation requiring treatment with systemic corticosteroids or may improve symptom control in asthma patients with baseline 25(OH)D of less than approximately 25–30 nmol/L.^{502,503} There is no good-quality evidence that Vitamin D supplementation leads to improvement in asthma control or reduction in exacerbations, particularly in preschool children and people with severe asthma.⁵⁰⁴

5. Guided asthma self-management education and skills training

KEY POINTS

As with other chronic diseases, people with asthma need education and skills training to manage it well. Effective self-management is achieved through a partnership between the patient/caregiver and their healthcare providers.

Essential components of shared decision-making and self-management education include:

- Choosing the most appropriate inhaler for the patient's asthma treatment: consider available devices, cost, the ability of the patient to use the inhaler after training, environmental impact, and patient satisfaction
- Skills training to use inhaler devices effectively
- Encouraging adherence to medications, appointments and other advice, within an agreed management strategy
- Asthma information
- Training in guided self-management, with self-monitoring of symptoms or peak expiratory flow (PEF), a written asthma action plan to show how to recognize and respond to worsening asthma, and regular review by a healthcare provider or trained healthcare worker.

In developing, customizing and evaluating self-management interventions for different cultures, sociocultural factors should be considered.⁵⁰⁵

SKILLS TRAINING FOR EFFECTIVE USE OF INHALER DEVICES

Delivery of respiratory medications by inhalation achieves a high concentration in the airways, more rapid onset of action, and fewer systemic adverse effects than systemic delivery. However, correct use of an inhaler device is a skill that must be learned and maintained in order for the medication to be delivered effectively.

Poor inhaler technique leads to poor asthma control, increased risk of exacerbations and increased adverse effects.¹⁰⁷ Most patients (up to 70–80%) do not use their inhaler correctly. Unfortunately, many healthcare providers are unable to correctly demonstrate how to use the inhalers they prescribe.⁵⁰⁶ Most people with incorrect technique are unaware that they have a problem. There is no “perfect” inhaler – patients can have problems using any inhaler device. The several factors that should be considered in the choice of inhaler device for an individual patient are described below and in Box 5-1 (p.118).

Strategies for ensuring effective use of inhaler devices are summarized in Box 5-2 (p.119).⁵⁰⁷ These principles apply to all types of inhaler devices. For patients prescribed pressurized metered-dose inhalers (pMDIs), use of a spacer improves delivery of the medicine to the lungs. For inhaled corticosteroids (ICS) spacers also reduce the potential for local side-effects such as dysphonia and oral candidiasis.⁵⁰⁸ With ICS, the risk of candidiasis can also be reduced by rinsing and spitting out after use.

Checking and correcting inhaler technique using a standardized checklist takes only 2–3 minutes and leads to improved asthma control in adults^{509,510} and older children⁵⁰⁷ (Evidence A). A physical demonstration is essential to improve inhaler technique.⁵¹¹ This is easiest if the healthcare provider has placebo inhalers and a spacer. After training, inhaler technique deteriorates with time, so checking and re-training must be repeated regularly. This is particularly important for patients with poor symptom control or a history of exacerbations. Attaching a pictogram^{512,513} or a list of inhaler technique steps⁵¹⁴ to the inhaler substantially increases the retention of correct technique at follow-up. Pharmacists, nurses and trained lay health workers can provide highly effective inhaler skills training.^{507,515-517}

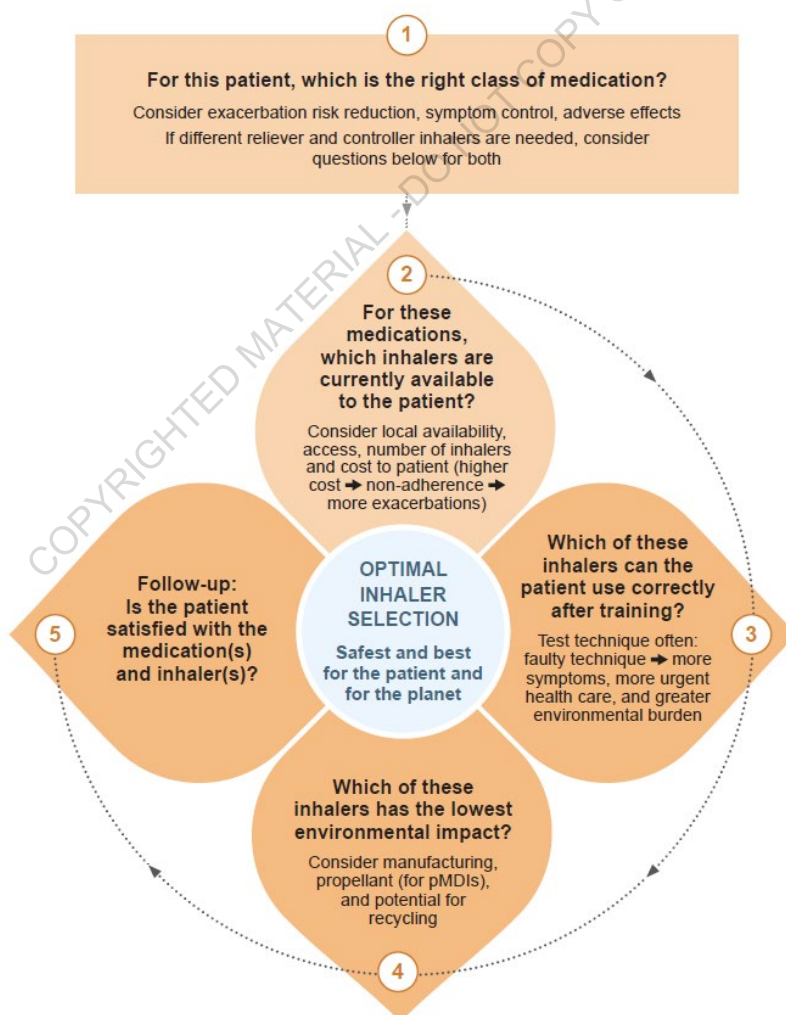
SHARED DECISION-MAKING FOR CHOICE OF INHALER DEVICE

Globally, multiple different devices are available for delivery of inhaled medication, including pMDIs, dry-powder inhalers (DPIs), mist inhalers and nebulizers, although the choice of inhaler device for each medication class in any country is often limited. Initiatives are underway to increase access to ICS-containing inhalers for people with asthma worldwide, with the goal of reducing the risk of severe exacerbations and asthma deaths. As these inhalers become universally available, an equally high priority is to ensure that patients/caregivers are trained to use them correctly.

There is also increasing interest in reducing the impact of asthma and its care (routine and urgent) on the environment, including those due to the manufacture and disposal of inhaler devices, and from the propellants in pMDIs, which are the inhalers most commonly used worldwide.⁵¹⁸⁻⁵²⁰ Strategies include use of dry powder inhalers (if available), recycling of devices and development of propellants with a lower global warming potential. Clinical trials of inhalers with these propellants have been completed or are underway, and the first products are expected to be launched in high-income countries in 2026. There are major concerns about access to affordable inhalers for patients in low- and middle-income countries.¹²

For all age-groups, selecting the right inhaler for the individual patient is crucial to asthma care, not only to reduce patients' symptom burden, but also to reduce the need for emergency health care and hospitalization, which have even greater environmental impacts than use of pMDIs.^{521,522}

Box 5-1. Shared decision-making between healthcare provider and patient about choice of inhalers



pMDI: pressurized metered-dose inhaler.

Box 5-2. Choice and effective use of inhaler devices

CHOOSE

- Choose the most appropriate inhaler device for the patient before prescribing. Consider the preferred medication (Box 4-6, p.83 and Box 4-12, p.104), available devices, patient skills, environmental impact and cost (see Box 5-1, p.118).
- If different options are available, encourage the patient to participate in the choice.
- For pMDIs, use of a spacer improves delivery and (with ICS) reduces the potential for side-effects.
- Ensure that there are no physical barriers, e.g., arthritis, that limit use of the inhaler.
- Avoid use of multiple different inhaler types where possible, to avoid confusion.

CHECK

- Check inhaler technique at every opportunity.
- Ask the patient to show you how they use their inhaler (don't just ask if they know how to use it).
- Identify any errors using a device-specific checklist.

CORRECT

- Show the patient how to use the device correctly with a physical demonstration, e.g., using a placebo inhaler, or using videos.⁵²³
- For using a pMDI with spacer, the preferred technique is with a single slow inhalation and breath-hold, but if the patient is breathless during an exacerbation, tidal breathing may be more feasible, with 5–6 breaths after each actuation.
- For all pMDIs formulated as suspensions, including salbutamol (albuterol), budesonide-formoterol and fluticasone propionate-salmeterol, it is essential to shake the inhaler immediately before each actuation. To avoid confusion, it is simplest to advise that all pMDIs should be shaken immediately before each actuation.
- After training, check technique again, paying attention to problematic steps. You may need to repeat this process 2–3 times within the same session for the patient to master the correct technique.⁵⁰⁹
- Consider an alternative device only if the patient cannot use the inhaler correctly after several repeats of training.
- Re-check inhaler technique frequently. After initial training, errors often recur within 4–6 weeks.⁵²⁴

CONFIRM

- Clinicians should be able to demonstrate correct technique for each of the inhalers they prescribe.
- Inhaler skills training provided by specially trained pharmacists and nurses is highly effective.^{515,516}

ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; pMDI: pressurized metered-dose inhaler

Choosing the medication, inhaler and device

Several factors must be considered in shared decision-making about the choice of inhaler device for the individual patient (Box 5-1, p.118), starting with the choice of the medication itself:

- *Which medication class(es) or individual medication(s) does the patient need to relieve and control symptoms and to prevent asthma exacerbations?* The approach in GINA Track 1 (Box 4-3, p.80) is preferred, because the use of ICS-formoterol as an anti-inflammatory reliever reduces the risk of severe exacerbations and urgent healthcare utilization, compared with using a short-acting beta₂-agonist (SABA) reliever. The Track 1 approach also avoids the risks associated with SABA over-use, and allows simple adjustment across treatment steps with a single medication for both symptom relief and delivery of ICS-containing treatment. Most studies of maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with ICS-formoterol, and all studies of as-needed-only ICS-formoterol have used a DPI.

- *Which inhaler devices are available to the patient for these medications?* The choice of device for any particular medication class in each country is often limited. Consider local availability, access, and cost to the patient. Where more than one medication is needed, a single (combination) inhaler is preferable to multiple inhalers. Also consider the patient's age, since DPIs are not suitable for most children aged ≤ 5 years and some elderly patients; pMDIs (preferably with spacers) remain essential for such patients.
- *Can the patient use the available device(s) correctly after training?* This may be determined by factors including physical dexterity, coordination, inspiratory flow, and cognitive status. Different inhaler types require different inhalation techniques, so it is preferable to avoid prescribing a pMDI and DPI for the same patient. Incorrect inhaler technique increases risk of severe asthma exacerbations. For DPIs, a **strong** inhalation is required. For pMDI and spacer, the preferred technique is with a single **slow** inhalation and breath-hold, but if the patient is breathless during an exacerbation, tidal breathing may be preferable, with 5–6 breaths in and out of spacer after each actuation. Facemask with spacer should be avoided (to reduce exposure of skin and eyes to medications) except for young children, or older people who cannot form a tight seal with their lips (e.g. elderly, frail). For pMDIs formulated as a suspension, including salbutamol (albuterol), it is essential to shake the inhaler **immediately** before each actuation.⁵²⁵
- *What are the environmental implications of the available inhaler(s)?* This has become an important part of inhaler selection, with particular consideration of carbon emissions due to the propellants in pMDIs, but also of environmental effects of inhaler manufacture and potential recycling. However, clinicians need to be aware of the potential to place the additional burden of “green guilt” on patients, as this could reduce adherence and increase the risk of exacerbations.
- *Is the patient satisfied with the medication and inhaler?* The best inhaler for each patient is likely to be the one that they prefer and can use correctly, as this promotes adherence and reduces risk of exacerbations and adverse effects.

In follow-up, review symptom control, asthma exacerbations and adverse events, and check the patient's ability to use their inhaler(s) correctly, ideally at each visit.

ADHERENCE TO MEDICATIONS AND TO OTHER ADVICE

Identifying poor adherence

Poor adherence is defined as the failure of treatment to be taken as agreed upon by the patient and the healthcare provider. There is increasing awareness of the importance of poor adherence in chronic diseases, and of the potential to develop interventions to improve adherence.⁵²⁶ Approximately 50% of adults and children on long-term therapy for asthma sometimes fail to take medications as directed.²¹⁷

In clinical practice, poor adherence may be identified by an empathic question that acknowledges the likelihood of incomplete adherence and encourages an open discussion. See Box 5-3 (p.121) for examples. Checking the date of the last prescription or the date on the inhaler may assist in identifying poor adherence. In some health systems, pharmacists can assist in identifying poorly adherent patients by monitoring dispensing records. Electronic inhaler monitoring has also been used in clinical practice to identify poor adherence in patients with difficult-to-treat asthma.^{203,204}

In clinical studies assessing factors contributing to poor adherence, methods of measuring adherence include using short adherence behavior questionnaires, analysis of dispensing records, dose or pill counting, electronic inhaler monitoring,⁵²⁷⁻⁵²⁹ and drug assay (e.g., for prednisone/prednisolone).⁵³⁰

In patients with difficult-to-treat asthma, a **FeNO suppression test** (with high-dose ICS added to usual treatment for 1 week) can identify when high FeNO is due to poor adherence (with or without incorrect inhaler technique), and can help to distinguish this from relatively corticosteroid-refractory Type 2 inflammation.^{256,531} A study conducted in severe asthma centers found that, in almost two-thirds of adults with uncontrolled asthma and high FeNO despite prescription of high-dose ICS-LABA, FeNO was significantly suppressed within a week of addition of high-dose ICS (electronically monitored); blood eosinophils also decreased. In patients with a positive FeNO suppression test, asthma symptom control and lung function improved when medium-dose ICS-LABA was taken with good adherence for one month.²⁵⁶

Factors contributing to poor adherence

To understand the reasons behind patients' medication-taking behavior, it is important to elicit their beliefs and concerns about asthma and asthma medications. Both intentional and unintentional factors contribute to poor adherence (Box 5-3, p.121). Issues of ethnicity,⁵³² health literacy,^{533,534} and numeracy²²⁹ are often overlooked. Patients may be concerned about known side-effects or about perceived harm.^{465,535}

Box 5-3. Poor adherence to prescribed maintenance treatment in asthma

Factors contributing to poor adherence	How to identify poor adherence in clinical practice
Medication/regimen factors Difficulties using inhaler device (e.g., arthritis) Burdensome regimen (e.g., several times per day) Multiple different inhalers Unintentional poor adherence Misunderstanding about instructions Forgetfulness Absence of a daily routine Cost Intentional poor adherence Perception that treatment is not necessary Denial or anger about asthma or its treatment Inappropriate expectations Concerns about side-effects (real or perceived) Dissatisfaction with healthcare providers Stigmatization Cultural or religious issues Cost	For patients prescribed maintenance treatment, ask an empathic question. Acknowledge the likelihood of incomplete adherence and encourage an open non-judgmental discussion. For example: <i>'Many patients don't use their inhaler as prescribed. In the last 4 weeks, how many days a week have you been taking it – not at all, 1, 2, 3 or more days a week?'</i> ⁵³⁶ <i>'Do you find it easier to remember your inhaler in the morning or the evening?'</i> Check medication usage: • Check the date of the last prescription. • Check the date and dose counter on the inhaler. • In some health systems, prescribing and dispensing frequency can be monitored electronically by clinicians and/or pharmacists. • See review articles for more detail.^{216,537}
Examples of successful adherence interventions	
Shared decision-making for medication/dose choice ^{219,222} Inhaler reminders, either proactively or for missed doses ⁵³⁸⁻⁵⁴⁰ Prescribing low-dose ICS once-daily versus twice-daily ⁵⁴¹ Home visits for a comprehensive asthma program by an asthma nurse ⁵⁴² Electronic monitoring of adherence with feedback to patients. ⁵⁴³ In a systematic review, multidisciplinary care involving one-to-one advice and digitally enhanced communications appeared to offer the greatest benefit for improving adherence. ⁵⁴⁴	

ICS: inhaled corticosteroid

Interventions that improve adherence in asthma

Few adherence interventions have been studied comprehensively in people with asthma. Some examples of successful interventions have been published:

- Shared decision-making for medication/dose choice improved adherence and asthma outcomes.²¹⁹
- Electronic inhaler reminders, either proactively or for missed doses, improved adherence⁵³⁸⁻⁵⁴⁰ and possibly reduced exacerbations and oral corticosteroid use.^{538-540,545,546}

- In a study of children at high risk for poor asthma outcomes, home visits for a comprehensive asthma program by an asthma nurse led to improved adherence and reduced OCS courses over the following several months.⁵⁴²
- In a primary care clinical trial providing adherence information to clinicians did not improve ICS use among patients with asthma unless clinicians chose to view the details of their patients' medication use.⁵⁴⁷
- In a health maintenance organization, an automated voice recognition program with messages triggered when refills were due or overdue led to improved ICS adherence relative to usual care, but no difference in urgent care visits.⁵⁴⁸
- In one study, directly observed administration of maintenance asthma treatment at school, combined with telemedicine oversight, was associated with more symptom-free days and fewer urgent visits than usual care.⁵⁴⁹
- In patients with difficult-to-treat asthma, electronic inhaler monitoring with feedback on adherence and inhaler technique led to improved adherence and reduced need for escalation of treatment.⁵⁴³

Digital interventions for adherence

A 2022 Cochrane review found that a variety of digital intervention strategies improved adherence to maintenance controller medications, especially in those with poor adherence, reduced exacerbations, and improved asthma control, in studies of up to 2 years' duration in adults and children.⁵⁴⁵ Electronic monitoring of inhaler use,⁵⁴⁶ and text messages sent to phones appear to be effective. No harms associated with these technologies were reported. The effects of digital interventions on quality of life, lung function and unscheduled healthcare utilization are unclear.

Improving adherence to maintenance ICS-containing medications may not necessarily translate to improved clinical outcomes.⁵⁵⁰ Further studies are needed of adherence strategies that are feasible for implementation in primary care.

ASTHMA INFORMATION

While education is relevant to asthma patients of all ages, the information and skills training required by each person may vary, as will their ability or willingness to take responsibility. All individuals will require certain core information and skills, but most education must be personalized and provided over several sessions or stages.

For young children, the focus of asthma education will be on the parent/caregiver, but young children can be taught simple asthma management skills. Adolescents may have unique difficulties with adherence, and peer support group education may help in addition to education provided by the healthcare provider.⁵⁵¹ These are complex interventions, and there have been few studies. Regional issues and the adolescent's developmental stage may affect the outcomes of such programs.⁵⁵²

The key features and components of an asthma education program are provided in Box 5-4. Information alone improves knowledge but does not improve asthma outcomes.⁵⁵³ Social and psychological support may also be required to maintain positive behavioral change, and skills are required for effective medication delivery. At the initial consultation, verbal information should be supplemented with written or pictorial^{554,555} information about asthma and its treatment. Patients and their families should be encouraged to make a note of any questions about their asthma or its treatment, and should be given time to address these.

Asthma education and training, for both adults and children, can be delivered effectively by a range of healthcare providers including pharmacists and nurses (Evidence A).^{515,516,556,557} Trained lay health workers (also known as community health workers) can deliver appropriately defined aspects of respiratory care such as asthma self-management education. Asthma education by trained lay health workers has been found to improve patient outcomes and healthcare utilization, compared with usual care,^{517,558} and to a similar extent as nurse-led education in primary care (Evidence B).⁵⁵⁹ These findings suggest the need for additional studies to assess applicability in other settings and populations.

Patients can be encouraged to contact national or local patient organizations to obtain peer support, information, and patient-centered resources.

Box 5-4. Asthma information

Goal: To provide the person with asthma, their family and other caregivers with suitable information and training to manage their asthma in partnership with their healthcare providers

Approach

Focus on the development of the partnership.
Accept that this is a continuing process.
Share information.
Adapt the approach to the patient's level of health literacy (Box 3-1, p.54).
Fully discuss expectations, fears and concerns.
Develop shared goals.

Topics to include

Asthma diagnosis
Rationale for treatment, and differences between relievers and maintenance treatments (if prescribed)
Potential side-effects of medications
Prevention of symptoms and flare-ups: importance of anti-inflammatory treatment
How to recognize worsening asthma and what actions to take; how and when to seek medical attention
Management of comorbidities

TRAINING IN GUIDED ASTHMA SELF-MANAGEMENT

Guided self-management may involve varying degrees of independence, ranging broadly from patient-directed self-management to doctor-directed self-management. With patient-directed self-management patients make changes in accordance with a prior written action plan without needing to first contact their healthcare provider. With doctor-directed self-management, patients still have a written action plan, but refer most major treatment decisions to their physician at the time of a planned or unplanned consultation.

The essential components of effective guided asthma self-management education are:²²⁰

- Self-monitoring of symptoms and/or PEF
- A written asthma action plan to show how to recognize and respond to worsening asthma
- Regular review of asthma control, treatment and skills by a healthcare provider.

Self-management education that includes these components dramatically reduces asthma morbidity, both in adults (Evidence A)^{220,517,560} and children (Evidence A).^{221,560} Benefits include reduction of one-third to two-thirds in asthma-related hospitalizations, emergency department visits and unscheduled doctor or clinic visits, missed work/school days, and nocturnal waking.²²⁰ It has been estimated that the implementation of a self-management program in 20 patients prevents one hospitalization, and successful completion of such a program by 8 patients prevents one emergency department visit.^{220 561} Less intensive interventions that involve self-management education, but not a written action plan, are less effective,⁵⁶² and information alone is ineffective.⁵⁵³ A systematic meta-review of 270 RCTs on supported self-management for asthma confirmed that it reduces unscheduled health care use, improves asthma control, is applicable to a wide range of target groups and clinical settings, and does not increase healthcare costs (Evidence A).⁵⁶⁰

Self-monitoring of symptoms and/or peak expiratory flow (PEF)

Patients/caregivers should be trained to keep track of symptoms (with or without a diary), recognize when symptoms start to worsen, and act when necessary.

PEF monitoring may sometimes be useful:

- In short-term monitoring
 - After an exacerbation, to monitor recovery
 - After a change in treatment, to help in assessing whether the patient has responded
 - When symptoms appear excessive (for objective evidence of degree of lung function impairment)
 - To assist in identification of occupational or domestic triggers for worsening asthma control

- In long-term monitoring
 - For earlier detection of exacerbations, mainly in patients with poor perception of airflow limitation¹⁷²
 - For patients with a history of sudden severe exacerbations
 - For patients who have difficult-to-control or severe asthma.

For patients carrying out PEF monitoring, use of a laterally compressed PEF chart (showing 2 months on a landscape format page) allows more accurate identification of worsening asthma than other charts.²⁰¹ One such chart is available for download from www.woolcock.org.au/resources/asthma-peak-flow-chart.

There is increasing interest in internet or phone-based monitoring of asthma. Based on existing studies, the main benefit is likely to be for more severe asthma (Evidence B).⁵⁶³

Written asthma action plans

Personal written asthma action plans show patients how to make short-term changes to their treatment in response to changes in their symptoms and/or PEF. They also describe how and when to access medical care.^{564,565} “Written” action plans include printed, digital or pictorial plans (i.e., the patient is given a record of the instructions).

The benefits of self-management education for asthma morbidity are greater in adults when the action plans include both a step-up in ICS and the addition of oral corticosteroids (OCS) and, for PEF-based plans, when they are based on personal best rather than percent predicted PEF (Evidence A).⁵⁶⁵

The efficacy of self-management education is similar regardless of whether patients self-adjust their medications according to an individual written plan or whether the medication adjustments are made by a doctor (Evidence A).⁵⁶² Thus, patients who cannot self-manage can still benefit from a structured program of regular medical review.

Action plans for patients using SABA as their reliever

Examples of written asthma action plan templates for asthma treatment with a SABA reliever, including for adult and pediatric patients with low literacy, can be found on several websites (e.g., Asthma UK, www.asthma.org.uk; Asthma Society of Canada, www.asthma.ca; Family Physician Airways Group of Canada, www.fpagc.com; National Asthma Council Australia, www.nationalasthma.org.au) and in research publications.^{566,567}

Action plan for patients using as-needed ICS-formoterol as their reliever

A different type of action plan is needed for patients using as-needed ICS-formoterol as their reliever in GINA Track 1, because the initial action when asthma worsens is for the patient to increase their as-needed doses of ICS-formoterol, rather than taking a SABA and/or increasing their maintenance treatment. An example of such a customized template can be found in a review article about practical use of maintenance-and reliever-therapy (MART).³⁵⁰ A similar action plan template can be used for patients using as-needed-only ICS-formoterol.³⁵¹

Healthcare providers should become familiar with action plans that are relevant to their local healthcare system, treatment options, and cultural and literacy context. Details of the specific treatment adjustments that can be recommended for written asthma action plans are described in Section 9 (Box 9-2, p.174).

REGULAR REVIEW BY A HEALTHCARE PROVIDER OR TRAINED HEALTHCARE WORKER

The third component of effective asthma self-management education is regular review by a healthcare provider or trained healthcare worker. Follow-up consultations should take place at regular intervals. Regular review should include the following:

Ask the patient if they have any questions or concerns

- Discuss issues, and provide additional educational messages as necessary.
- If available, refer the patient to someone trained in asthma education.

Assess asthma control, risk factors for exacerbations, and comorbidities

- Review the patient's level of symptom control and risk factors (Box 2-2, p.41).
- Ask about flare-ups to identify contributory factors and whether the patient's response was appropriate (e.g., was an action plan used?).
- Review the patient's symptom or PEF diary, if they keep one.
- Assess comorbidities.

Assess treatment issues

- Watch the patient use their inhaler, and correct and re-check technique if necessary (Box 5-2, p.119).
- Assess medication adherence and ask about adherence barriers (Box 5-3, p.121).
- Ask about adherence to other interventions (e.g., smoking cessation).
- Review the asthma action plan and update it if level of asthma control or treatment have changed.⁵⁶⁸

A single-page prompt to clinicians has been shown to improve the provision of preventive care to children with asthma during office visits.⁵⁶⁹ Follow-up by telehealthcare is unlikely to benefit patients with asthma that is well controlled at a low treatment step, but may benefit those with severe disease at risk of hospital admission.⁵⁶³

SCHOOL-BASED PROGRAMS FOR CHILDREN

A systematic review found that school-based studies (most conducted in the US and Canada) that included self-management skills for children aged 5–18 years was associated with a 30% decrease in emergency department visits, and a significant decrease in hospitalizations and in days of reduced activity.⁵⁷⁰

6. Managing asthma with multimorbidity and in specific populations

KEY POINTS

Multimorbidity is common in patients with chronic diseases such as asthma. It is important to identify and manage multimorbidity, as it contributes to impaired quality of life, increased healthcare utilization, and adverse effects of medications.

Some comorbidities, such as rhinosinusitis, obesity, anxiety and/or depression, and gastro-esophageal reflux disease (GERD), may also contribute to respiratory symptoms, and some contribute to poor asthma control. These conditions or treatable traits should be managed as part of comprehensive, personalized care for the individual patient.

For patients with dyspnea or wheezing on exertion:

- Distinguish between exercise-induced bronchoconstriction (EIB) and symptoms that result from obesity or a lack of fitness, or are the result of alternative conditions such as inducible laryngeal obstruction.
- Provide advice about preventing and managing EIB
- Recommend pulmonary rehabilitation where appropriate.

All adolescents and adults with asthma should receive inhaled corticosteroid (ICS)-containing treatment to reduce their risk of severe exacerbations. It should be taken every day or, as an alternative in patients with mild asthma, by ICS-formoterol or the combination of ICS and a short-acting beta₂-agonist (SABA) (ICS-SABA) taken as needed for symptom relief.

Refer patients with difficult-to-treat or severe asthma to a specialist or multidisciplinary severe asthma service, after addressing common problems such as incorrect diagnosis, incorrect inhaler technique, ongoing environmental exposures, and poor adherence (see Section 8, p.149).

Women with asthma who are pregnant or planning pregnancy should be advised **not to stop** ICS-containing therapy, as exacerbations increase the risk of adverse perinatal outcomes. The advantages of actively treating asthma in pregnancy with ICS-containing therapy markedly outweigh any potential risks of these medications.

MANAGING MULTIMORBIDITY

Multimorbidity is a common problem in patients with chronic diseases such as asthma. It is associated with worse quality of life, increased healthcare utilization and increased adverse effects of treatment.²¹⁸ Multimorbidity is particularly common among those with difficult-to-treat or severe asthma.¹⁰⁹ Active management of comorbidities such as rhinosinusitis, anxiety and/or depression, obesity and GERD is important, as these conditions may also contribute to respiratory symptom burden and lead to medication interactions. Some comorbidities also contribute to poor asthma control.⁵⁷¹ The advice below covers some of the most common comorbidities of asthma, but is not an exhaustive list.

Obesity

Clinical features

Being overweight or obese is a risk factor for childhood asthma and wheeze, particularly in girls.⁵⁷² Asthma is more difficult to control in obese patients.^{296,573-575} This may be due to a different type of airway inflammation, contributory comorbidities such as obstructive sleep apnea and GERD, mechanical factors, or other as-yet undefined factors. In addition, lack of fitness and reduction in lung volume due to abdominal fat may contribute to dyspnea.

Diagnosis

Document body-mass index (BMI) for all patients with asthma. Because of other potential contributors to dyspnea and wheeze in obese patients, it is important to confirm the diagnosis of asthma with objective measurement of variable

expiratory airflow (Box 1-2, p.28). Asthma is more common in obese than non-obese patients,⁸⁹ but both over- and under-diagnosis of asthma occur in obesity.^{63,90} The relationship between FeNO, blood eosinophils, sputum eosinophils and submucosal eosinophils is altered in the obese,^{29,57} and the finding of low FeNO may lead to asthma in obese adults being incorrectly interpreted as “non-eosinophilic asthma” phenotype.^{29,57}

Management

As for other patients with asthma, ICS treatment is essential in obese patients (Evidence B), although their response may be reduced.²⁹⁶ Weight reduction should be included in the treatment plan for obese patients with asthma (Evidence B). Increased exercise alone appears to be insufficient (Evidence B).³⁰³ Weight loss can improve asthma control, lung function, health status and reduces medication needs in obese patients,^{298,299} but the studies have generally been small, the quality of some studies is poor, and the interventions and results have been variable.²⁹⁷ The most striking results have been observed after bariatric surgery,^{300,301,576} but even 5–10% weight loss can lead to improved asthma control and quality of life.³⁰³ Database studies report that patients with asthma and diabetes who are treated with glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists (GLP-1RA) have lower asthma exacerbation rates than those treated with other diabetes drugs.³⁰⁴ Several potential mechanisms have been proposed, including mechanical (due to weight loss) or an anti-inflammatory effect. Prospective intervention studies are underway. For patients with comorbid obstructive sleep apnea, one study showed a significant reduction in moderate exacerbations with 6 months of continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) therapy.⁵⁷⁷

Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD)

Clinical features

GERD can cause symptoms such as heartburn and epigastric or chest pain, and is also a common cause of dry cough. Symptoms and/or diagnosis of GERD are more common in people with asthma than in the general population,⁵⁷¹ but this may be in part due to cough being attributed to asthma; in addition, some asthma medications, such as beta₂-agonists cause relaxation of the lower esophageal sphincter. Asymptomatic gastroesophageal reflux is not a likely cause of poorly controlled asthma.⁵⁷¹

Diagnosis

In patients with confirmed asthma, GERD should be considered as a possible cause of a dry cough; however, there is no value in screening patients with uncontrolled asthma for GERD (Evidence A). For patients with asthma and symptoms suggestive of reflux, an empirical trial of anti-reflux medication, such as a proton pump inhibitor or motility agent, may be considered, as in the general population. If reflux symptoms persist, specific investigations such as 24-hour pH monitoring or endoscopy may be considered.

Management

Clinical trials of proton pump inhibitors in patients with confirmed asthma, most of whom had a diagnosis of GERD, showed small benefits for lung function, but no significant benefit for other asthma outcomes.^{578,579} In a study of adult patients with symptomatic asthma but without symptoms of GERD, treatment with high-dose proton pump inhibitors did not reduce asthma symptoms or exacerbations.⁵⁸⁰ In general, benefits of proton pump inhibitors in asthma appear to be limited to patients with both symptomatic reflux and night-time respiratory symptoms.⁵⁸¹ Other treatment options include motility agents, lifestyle changes and fundoplication. In summary, symptomatic reflux should be treated, but patients with poorly controlled asthma should not be treated with anti-reflux therapy unless they also have symptomatic reflux (Evidence A).⁵⁷⁹ Few data are available for children with asthma symptoms and symptoms of GERD.^{582,583}

Anxiety and depression

Clinical features

Anxiety symptoms and psychiatric disorders, particularly depressive and anxiety disorders, are more prevalent among people with asthma.^{584,585} Psychiatric comorbidity is also associated with worse asthma symptom control and medication adherence, and worse asthma-related quality of life.⁵⁸⁶ Anxious and depressive symptoms have been associated with increased asthma-related exacerbations and emergency visits.⁵⁷³ Panic attacks may be mistaken for asthma.

Diagnosis

Although several tools are available for screening for anxious and depressive symptomatology in primary care, the majority have not been validated in asthma populations. Difficulties in distinguishing anxiety or depression from asthma symptoms may therefore lead to misdiagnosis. It is important to be alert to possible depression and/or anxiety in people with asthma, particularly when there is a previous history of these conditions. Where appropriate, patients should be referred to psychiatrists or evaluated with a disease-specific psychiatric diagnostic tool to identify potential cases of depression and/or anxiety.

Management

There have been few good-quality pharmacological and non-pharmacological treatment trials for anxiety or depression in patients with asthma. A 2006 systematic review of 15 randomized controlled trials of psychological interventions for adults with asthma included cognitive behavior therapy, psychoeducation, relaxation, and biofeedback.⁵⁷⁴ Results for anxiety were conflicting, and none of the studies found significant treatment differences for depression. A 2024 systematic review found limited randomized controlled trial evidence to support psychological interventions in children or adolescents with asthma, due to substantial heterogeneity, small sample sizes, and non-standardized outcomes of available trials. Drug treatments and cognitive behavior therapy⁵⁷⁵ have shown some benefit for patients with asthma and anxiety, and analysis of 3 placebo-controlled trials of anti-depression medications in patients with asthma and a major depressive disorder showed reduction in oral corticosteroid usage.⁵⁸⁷ However, current evidence is limited in volume and quality.

Food allergy and anaphylaxis

Clinical features

Rarely, food allergy is a trigger for asthma symptoms (<2% of people with asthma). However, in patients with confirmed food-induced allergic reactions (anaphylaxis), co-existing asthma is a strong risk factor for more severe and even fatal reactions. Food-induced anaphylaxis often presents as life-threatening asthma.¹¹⁰ An analysis of 63 anaphylaxis-related deaths in the United States noted that almost all had a past history of asthma; peanuts and tree nuts were the foods most commonly responsible.⁵⁸⁸ A UK study of 48 anaphylaxis-related deaths found that most were regularly treated for asthma, and that in most of these, asthma was poorly controlled.⁵⁸⁹

Diagnosis

Patients with confirmed food allergy should be assessed for asthma. Children with food allergy have a four-fold increased likelihood of having asthma compared with children without food allergy.⁵⁹⁰ Refer patients with suspected food allergy or intolerance for specialist allergy assessment. This may include appropriate allergy testing such as skin prick testing and/or blood testing for specific immunoglobulin E (IgE). On occasion, carefully supervised food challenges may be needed.

Management

Patients who are at risk for anaphylaxis due to confirmed food allergy must carry epinephrine (adrenaline) at all times, and be trained how to self-administer it: either by auto-injector or intranasally (intranasal route is not suitable for small children). The patient and their family must be educated in appropriate food avoidance strategies, and in the medical notes, they should be flagged as being at high risk. It is especially important to ensure that their asthma is well controlled, they have a written action plan, understand the difference between asthma and anaphylaxis, and are reviewed on a regular basis. Omalizumab or biosimilar omalizumab-igec may be indicated for patients with IgE-mediated food allergies.

Epinephrine can be given by IM injection or (with weight and age-restrictions for children) intranasally. Patients with a history of anaphylaxis who also have nasal polyps or previous nasal surgery should check with their healthcare provider whether nasal epinephrine would be suitable for them.

If a patient with asthma and known food allergy presents acutely with features of anaphylaxis, epinephrine should be given first, before immediately starting asthma treatment (see Box 9-4, p.180 and Box 12-7, p.221).

Allergic rhinitis

Clinical features

Evidence clearly supports a link between diseases of the upper and lower airways.⁵⁹¹ Most patients with asthma, either allergic or non-allergic, have concurrent rhinitis, and 10–40% of patients with allergic rhinitis have asthma.⁵⁹² Depending on sensitization and exposure, allergic rhinitis may be seasonal (e.g., ragweed or grass pollen), or perennial (e.g., house dust mite allergens, furred pets in the home), or intermittent (e.g., furred pets at other locations).⁵⁹³ Rhinitis is defined as irritation and inflammation of the mucous membranes of the nose. Allergic rhinitis may be accompanied by ocular symptoms (conjunctivitis).

Diagnosis

Rhinitis can be classified as either allergic or non-allergic depending on whether allergic sensitization is demonstrated. Variation in symptoms by season or with environmental and/or occupational exposure (e.g., furred pets, house dust mite, molds, pollens) suggests allergic rhinitis. Examination of the upper airway should be arranged for patients with severe asthma.

Management

International evidence-based guidelines^{591,594} recommend intranasal corticosteroids for treatment of allergic rhinitis. In a case-control study, treatment of rhinitis with intranasal corticosteroids was associated with less need for asthma-related hospitalization and emergency department visits,⁵⁹⁵ but a meta-analysis found improvement in asthma outcomes only in patients not also receiving ICS.⁵⁹⁶ Allergen immunotherapy is a treatment option for some patients with allergic rhinitis and asthma (p.114).

Chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps (CRSwNP) and without nasal polyps (CRSsNP)

Rhinosinusitis is defined as inflammation of the nose and paranasal sinuses characterized by more than two symptoms including nasal blockage/obstruction and/or nasal discharge (anterior/posterior nasal drip).⁵⁹⁷ Other symptoms may include facial pain/pressure and/or a reduction or loss of smell. Sinusitis rarely occurs in the absence of rhinitis. Rhinosinusitis is defined as acute when symptoms last <12 weeks with complete resolution, and chronic when symptoms occur on most days for at least 12 weeks without complete resolution.

Chronic rhinosinusitis is an inflammatory condition of the paranasal sinuses that encompasses two clinically distinct entities: chronic rhinosinusitis without nasal polyps (CRSsNP) and chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps (CRSwNP).⁵⁹⁸ The heterogeneity of chronic rhinosinusitis may explain the wide variation in prevalence rates in the general population, ranging from 1% to 10% without polyps and 4% with polyps. Chronic rhinosinusitis is associated with more severe asthma, especially in patients with nasal polyps.⁵⁹⁹

Diagnosis

Nasendoscopy and/or computed tomography (CT) of the sinuses can identify changes suggestive of chronic rhinosinusitis with or without nasal polyps. In severe asthma, presence of nasal polyps may help with choice of biologic therapy (see Box 8-4, p.154).

Management

Chronic rhinosinusitis, with or without nasal polyps, has a significant impact on patients' quality of life. Guidelines for the management of chronic rhinosinusitis with or without nasal polyps have been published.^{600,601}

A 2022 systematic review of studies reporting treatment outcomes in patients with both asthma and chronic rhinosinusitis found that medical treatments (including intranasal saline irrigations, intranasal corticosteroids delivered by irrigation, drops (only one small study of each) or sprays, oral antibiotics (small studies with erythromycin), and oral corticosteroids) improved sinonasal-specific quality of life in patients with chronic rhinosinusitis (most commonly with nasal polyps) and comorbid asthma. However, people with chronic rhinosinusitis and asthma may have a lesser response to rhinosinusitis treatments than people who do not have asthma.⁶⁰² There was limited evidence for improvements in lung function and asthma control, and no data on the effect of intranasal corticosteroids on lung function or asthma control.⁶⁰²

The 2022 systematic review found strong RCT evidence that anti-IL4R α and anti-IL5/5R α receptor therapies improve rhinosinusitis, including reducing polyp counts, as well as improving asthma outcomes, in patients with asthma and CRSwNP who have experienced inadequate response to non-biologic therapy.⁶⁰² These biologics were less effective in managing chronic sinusitis without polyps in people with asthma.⁶⁰² The review found no studies that directly compared biologic therapy with endoscopic sinus surgery in patients with CRSwNP and asthma. There was moderate-to-strong evidence that endoscopic sinus surgery improves sinonasal-specific and asthma-specific quality of life in patients with chronic rhinosinusitis and asthma, and may improve asthma symptom control, but there was insufficient evidence for effects on lung function.⁶⁰²

Current evidence supports stepwise treatment to manage chronic rhinosinusitis in people with asthma, beginning with topical nasal saline irrigations and topical nasal steroids as the main treatment. Oral antibiotics can be used as needed after considering the risks and microbial resistance. Oral corticosteroid treatment is effective, but should be minimized due to adverse effects (Box 9-3, p.177).

Several biologics are now approved for treatment of CRSwNP: omalizumab⁶⁰³ and biosimilar omalizumab-igec, mepolizumab,^{604,605} dupilumab,⁶⁰⁶ tezepelumab,⁶⁰⁷ and depemokimab.⁶⁰⁸ In patients with CRSwNP, these biologics improved subjective and objective assessments including nasal symptoms and polyp size, compared with placebo.⁶⁰³⁻⁶⁰⁸ See Box 8-6, p.166 for typical doses and age-groups; check local payer details as they may vary. Endoscopic sinus surgery can be considered in patients with asthma who have inadequate response to medical therapies for chronic rhinosinusitis, but it does not improve asthma outcomes.

Managing asthma during the COVID-19 pandemic

Are people with asthma at higher risk of COVID-19 or severe COVID-19?

People with asthma do not appear to be at increased risk of acquiring COVID-19, and systematic reviews have not shown an increased risk of severe COVID-19 in people with well-controlled mild-to-moderate asthma. Overall, studies to date indicate that people with well-controlled asthma are not at increased risk of COVID-19-related death,^{609,610} and in one meta-analysis, mortality appeared to be lower than in people without asthma.⁶¹¹ However, the risk of COVID-19 death was increased in people who had recently needed oral corticosteroids (OCS) for their asthma,^{441,609} and in hospitalized patients with severe asthma.^{441,612} Therefore, it is important to continue good asthma, with strategies to maintain good symptom control, reduce the risk of severe exacerbations and minimize the need for OCS. In one study of hospitalized patients aged ≥ 50 years with COVID-19, mortality was lower among those with asthma who were using ICS than in patients without an underlying respiratory condition.⁶¹²

In 2020 and 2021, many countries recorded a reduction in asthma exacerbations and influenza-related illness. The reasons are not precisely known, but may be due to handwashing, masks and social/physical distancing that reduced the incidence of other respiratory infections, including influenza.⁴⁴²

During pandemic conditions, advise patients with asthma to continue taking their prescribed asthma medications, particularly inhaled corticosteroid (ICS)-containing medications, and OCS if prescribed

It is important for patients to continue taking their prescribed asthma medications as usual during the COVID-19 pandemic. This includes ICS-containing medications (alone or in combination with a long-acting beta₂-agonist [LABA]), and add-on therapy including biologic therapy for severe asthma. Stopping ICS often leads to potentially dangerous worsening of asthma. See Section 4 (p.73) for information about asthma medications and regimens and non-pharmacologic strategies, and Section 5 (p.117) for guided asthma self-management education and skills training.

For a small proportion of patients with severe asthma, long-term OCS may sometimes be needed, and it is very dangerous to stop these suddenly. See Section 8 (p.149) for advice about investigation and management of difficult-to-treat and severe asthma, including addition of biologic therapy for minimizing use of OCS.

Advise patients to discuss with you before stopping any asthma medication.

Make sure that all patients have a written asthma action plan

A written action plan (printed, digital or pictorial) tells the patient how to recognize worsening asthma, how to increase their reliever and maintenance medications, and when to seek medical help. A short course of OCS may be needed during severe asthma flare-ups (exacerbations). See Box 9-2 (p.174) for more information about specific action plan options for increasing reliever medications (or reliever and maintenance medications), depending on the patient's usual therapeutic regimen.

At present, there is no clear evidence about how to distinguish between worsening asthma due to respiratory viral infections such as rhinovirus and influenza, and COVID-19.

If local risk of COVID-19 is moderate or high, avoid use of nebulizers where possible due to the risk of transmitting infection to other patients/family and to healthcare workers

Nebulizers can transmit respiratory viral particles across distances of at least 1 m.⁶¹³ Use of nebulizers for delivering bronchodilator therapy is mainly restricted to management of life-threatening asthma in acute care settings. Instead, to deliver SABA for acute asthma in adults and children, use a pressurized metered-dose inhaler and spacer, with a tightly fitting face mask, if required. Check the manufacturer's instructions about whether a spacer can be autoclaved. If not (as is the case for many types of spacers), or if in doubt, spacers should be restricted to single patient use. If use of a nebulizer is needed in settings where COVID-19 infection is possible, strict infection control procedures should be followed.

Remind patients not to share inhaler devices or spacers with family members, to avoid transmitting infection.

Avoid spirometry in patients with confirmed/suspected COVID-19

In healthcare facilities, follow local COVID-19 testing recommendations and infection control procedures if spirometry or peak flow measurement is needed.³⁹ Use of an in-line filter minimizes the risk of transmission during spirometry, but many patients cough after performing spirometry; before performing spirometry, coach the patient to stay on the mouthpiece if they feel the need to cough.

If spirometry is not available due to local infection control restrictions, and information about lung function is needed, consider asking patients to monitor lung function at home.

Follow infection control recommendations if any aerosol-generating procedures are needed

Other aerosol-generating procedures include oxygen therapy (including via nasal prongs), sputum induction, manual ventilation, non-invasive ventilation and intubation. Follow local health advice about hygiene strategies and use of personal protective equipment, as new information becomes available in your country or region.

The website of the World Health Organization (WHO) provides comprehensive advice for healthcare providers and health systems about prevention and management of COVID-19 [here](#).

Management of asthma if the patient acquires COVID-19

People with asthma who acquire COVID-19 are not at higher risk of severe COVID-19. However, be aware that those with poorly controlled asthma (e.g., recent need for OCS) are at higher risk of hospitalization for severe disease if they acquire COVID-19.^{441,609,612} Advise patients to continue taking their usual asthma medications. Patients with severe asthma should continue biologic therapy or OCS, if prescribed.

To reduce the risk of transmitting infection, as above, avoid use of nebulizers where possible (use a pressurized metered-dose inhaler [pMDI] and spacer instead), avoid spirometry, and instruct patients to avoid sharing of inhalers/spacers.

Before prescribing antiviral therapies, consult local prescribing guidelines. Check carefully for potential interactions between asthma therapy and COVID-19 therapy. For example, ritonavir-boosted nirmatrelvir (NMV/r) is a potent cytochrome P34 (CYP3A4) inhibitor. While this is unlikely to cause clinically important corticosteroid-related adverse effects, because of the short duration of anti-COVID-19 treatment, be cautious if considering prescribing NMV/r for patients taking ICS-salmeterol or ICS-vilanterol, as the interaction may increase cardiac toxicity of the LABA.¹⁸⁴ Product information indicates that for patients taking ICS-salmeterol or ICS-vilanterol, concomitant treatment with CYP3A4 inhibitors is not recommended. Some drug interaction websites advise stopping ICS-salmeterol or ICS-vilanterol during NMV/r treatment and for a few days afterwards, but this may increase the risk of an asthma exacerbation. Instead, consider prescribing alternative antiviral therapy (if available) or switching to ICS alone or ICS-formoterol (if available) for the duration of NMV/r therapy and a further 5 days.¹⁸⁴ If switching to a different inhaler, remember to teach correct technique with the new inhaler.

Advise people with asthma to be up to date with COVID-19 vaccines

Many types of COVID-19 vaccines have been studied and are in use. New evidence about the vaccines, including in people with asthma, will emerge over time. In general, allergic reactions to the vaccines are rare. Patients with a history of severe allergic reaction to a COVID-19 vaccine ingredient (e.g., polyethylene glycol for Pfizer/BioNTech or Moderna, or polysorbate 80 for AstraZeneca or J&J/Janssen) should receive a different COVID-19 vaccine. However, people with anaphylaxis to foods, insect venom, or other medications can safely receive COVID-19 vaccines. As always, patients should speak to their healthcare provider if they have concerns. Follow local advice about monitoring patients after COVID-19 vaccination.

Usual vaccine precautions apply. For example, ask if the patient has a history of allergy to any components of the vaccine, and if the patient has a fever or another infection, delay vaccination until they are well.

For people with severe asthma, GINA suggests that, if possible, the first dose of biologic therapy and COVID-19 vaccine should not be given on the same day, to allow adverse effects of either to be more easily distinguished.

Remind people with asthma to have an annual influenza vaccination (p.116). Influenza vaccine and COVID-19 vaccine can be given on the same day.

MANAGING ASTHMA IN SPECIFIC POPULATIONS, SETTINGS OR CONTEXTS

This section includes brief advice about managing asthma in some of the specific populations, settings or contexts in which the usual treatment approach may need to be modified. See also How to make the diagnosis of asthma in other contexts (p.36).

Low- and middle-income countries

Clinical features

In 2019, 96% of asthma deaths and 84% of disease burden, measured in disability-adjusted life years (DALYs) were in low- and middle-income countries (LMICs).⁴ Symptoms of asthma are similar world-wide, but patient language may differ, and comorbidities may vary depending on environmental exposures such as smoking and biomass fuel exposure and incidence of chronic respiratory infections from tuberculosis and HIV/AIDS.

Management

The fundamental principles and aims of asthma treatment are the same in LMICs as in high-income countries, but common barriers to effective long-term asthma care include the lack of availability and affordability of inhaled medicines, and prioritization of acute care over chronic care by healthcare systems.^{4,7}

Recommendations by WHO and the International Union Against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease⁶¹⁴ form the basis of treatments offered in many LMICs.⁷ The WHO Model List of Essential Medicines includes ICS, combination ICS-formoterol, and bronchodilators,⁶¹⁵ and the WHO Model List of Essential Medicines for Children includes ICS.⁶¹⁶ Spacers are included in the WHO list of essential technology, but are rarely available due to obstacles to their manufacture or

purchase, practical issues of cleaning, and inconvenience for ambulatory use. Effective spacers can be made at no cost from plastic drink bottles.⁶¹⁷

Medicines selected as “essential” are not necessarily the most effective or convenient, particularly for patients with more severe disease, and a limited choice does not allow for consideration of patient preferences and likelihood of adherence. However, ICS-containing medications, when provided for large populations, have achieved impressive reductions in mortality and morbidity,⁶¹⁸ including in LMICs. In Brazil, government policy ensuring nationwide easy access to ICS, at no cost to patients, was associated with a 34% reduction in hospitalizations for asthma.²¹¹ Prescribing ICS-formoterol as the symptom reliever, with (GINA Steps 3–5) or without (Steps 1–2) maintenance ICS-formoterol, provides the safest and most effective asthma treatment for adolescents and adults,^{210,254} and avoids the behavioral consequences of starting treatment with SABA alone.

In low-resource settings, lack of spirometry or even peak flow meters increases the difficulty of distinguishing between asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), particularly during acute exacerbations. A pragmatic cluster-randomized study in Vietnam found that initiation of treatment with anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR) only or maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) during a presentation to urgent health care by patients with undifferentiated obstructive lung disease (predominantly COPD-like) reduced moderate-severe exacerbations by 21%, and hospitalizations by 26% compared with usual care.⁶¹⁹ This could be a potential population-level strategy for patients presenting with respiratory symptoms in low-resource settings; it would be important to first exclude HIV and tuberculosis.

Inclusion of essential asthma medicines in formularies and guidelines does not assure sustained and equitable supply to patients. The supply of medicines in many LMICs tends to be sporadic for a wide variety of reasons, sometimes determined by the ability of governments to pay for supplies, issues relating to procurement, poor administration and record keeping, and problems in the supply chain, particularly for remote dispensaries.^{5,7}

Availability of asthma medicines varies widely between LMICs, with some having only oral bronchodilators (salbutamol [albuterol] and theophylline tablets/solutions), supplemented from time to time with oral corticosteroids.³² Oral bronchodilators have a slow onset of action and more adverse effects than inhaled SABA, and even occasional courses of OCS are associated with a significant risk of short-term adverse effects such as pneumonia and sepsis,¹⁷⁸ and, in adults, with long-term adverse effects including osteoporosis and fragility fractures, cataract and diabetes.¹⁷⁹ The largest (52 countries) survey of the accessibility and affordability of inhaled asthma medicines, conducted in 2011, reported that salbutamol was available in only half of public hospitals; ICS was available in fewer than one in five public pharmacies and not at all in 14 countries.⁶²⁰

Obtaining asthma medicines often represents a catastrophic household expense. A recent systematic review of published data on the availability, cost and affordability of essential medicines for asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) in LMICs found these to be largely unavailable and unaffordable particularly for ICS and combination ICS-LABA.⁶²¹ This means that the essential cornerstone of treatment that achieves substantial reductions in morbidity and mortality is out of reach for the great majority of the world’s children, adolescents and adults living with asthma.

It is not acceptable in 2023 for clinicians to have to manage asthma with SABAs and oral corticosteroids instead of preventive ICS-containing treatments. The research community must develop and evaluate approaches designed to obviate barriers to care in resource-constrained settings. A World Health Assembly Resolution on equitable access to affordable care, including inhaled medicines, for children, adolescents and adults with asthma, wherever they live in the world, would be a valuable step forward – as was achieved in 2021 for the supply of insulin for diabetes.⁶²² GINA strongly supports this initiative.⁵

In the meantime, in general, Track 2 treatment, although less effective in reducing asthma exacerbations, may be considered preferable in settings where current availability or affordability constrains the ability to implement Track 1 treatment. The “other controller options” in Box 4-6 (p.83), though potentially less costly, may be considerably less effective (e.g., leukotriene receptor antagonists [LTRAs]) or more harmful (e.g., maintenance OCS), or not well supported by evidence, especially in the low-resource setting (e.g., use of a low-dose ICS inhaler whenever a SABA is taken for symptom relief). Of these three other controller options, the third would be closest to the preferred recommendations in Tracks 1 and 2, as it would ensure that an ICS was provided, at least during symptomatic periods.³²

Adolescents

Clinical features

Care of teenagers with asthma should take into account the rapid physical, emotional, cognitive and social changes that occur during adolescence. Asthma control may improve or worsen, although remission of asthma is seen more commonly in males than females.⁶²³ Exploratory and risk-taking behaviors such as smoking occur at a higher rate in adolescents with chronic diseases than in healthy adolescents.

In a large meta-analysis of adherence to ICS treatment among adolescents and young adults,²¹⁷ overall adherence was 28%, and slightly higher in those <18 years (36%). However, pharmacy refill data provided lower estimates of adherence than self-report measures. Predictors of adherence included personality, illness perceptions, and treatment beliefs.

Management

General principles for managing chronic disease in adolescents have been published by WHO.⁶²⁴ Adolescents and their parent/caregivers should be encouraged in the transition towards asthma self-management by the adolescent.⁶²⁵ This may involve the transition from a pediatric to an adult healthcare facility. Transitioning should not be based on chronological age but on developmental stage and readiness, using formal tools to assess readiness at around 11–13 years (ideal timing/age not based on evidence). Clinicians should aim to increase self-management, focusing consultations on areas in which the young person is not confident. Consider using technology to assist with adherence and guide young people to web-based apps and tools to improve knowledge of asthma. Awareness of asthma should be promoted to communities and peers.

During consultations, the adolescent should be seen separately from the parent/caregiver so that sensitive issues such as smoking, adherence and mental health can be discussed privately, and confidentiality agreed. Information and self-management strategies should be tailored to the patient's stage of psychosocial development and desire for autonomy; adolescents are often focused on short-term rather than long-term outcomes. An empathic approach should be used to identify beliefs and behaviors that may be barriers to optimal treatment; for example, adolescents may be concerned about the impact of treatment on their physical or sexual function.

Medication regimens should be tailored to the adolescent's needs and lifestyle, and reviews arranged regularly so that the medication regimen can be adjusted for changing needs. Information about local youth-friendly resources and support services should be provided, where available. In adolescents with mild asthma, use of as-needed low-dose ICS formoterol reduced risk of severe exacerbations, compared with SABA alone, and without the need for daily treatment. Change in height from baseline in younger adolescents was significantly greater with as-needed ICS-formoterol than with daily low-dose ICS plus as-needed SABA.³⁴¹

Exercise-induced bronchoconstriction (EIB)

Clinical features

Physical activity is an important stimulus for asthma symptoms for many patients, with symptoms and bronchoconstriction typically worsening after cessation of exercise. However, shortness of breath or wheezing during exercise may also relate to obesity or a lack of fitness, or to comorbid or alternative conditions such as inducible laryngeal obstruction.^{69,79}

Management

Regular treatment with ICS significantly reduces EIB (Evidence A).⁷⁹ Training and sufficient warm-up reduce the incidence and severity of EIB (Evidence A).⁷⁹ Taking SABAs, LABAs or chromones prior to exercise prevents EIB (Evidence A), but tolerance to the protective effects of SABAs and LABAs against EIB develops with regular (more than once-daily) use (Evidence A).⁷⁹ However, in a 6-week study in patients with mild asthma, low-dose budesonide-formoterol, taken as needed for relief of symptoms and before exercise, was non-inferior for reducing EIB to regular daily ICS with as-needed SABA.²⁶⁶ More studies are needed, but this suggests that patients with mild asthma who are prescribed as-needed low-dose ICS-formoterol to prevent exacerbations and control symptoms can use the same medication prior to exercise, if

needed, and do not need to be prescribed a SABA for pre-exercise use (Evidence B). Chromone pMDIs have been discontinued globally.

Breakthrough EIB often indicates poorly controlled asthma, and stepping up ICS-containing treatment (after checking inhaler technique and adherence) generally results in the reduction of exercise-related symptoms.

Athletes

Clinical features

Athletes, particularly those competing at a high level, have an increased prevalence of various respiratory conditions compared to non-athletes. They experience a higher prevalence of asthma, EIB, allergic or non-allergic rhinitis, chronic cough, inducible laryngeal obstruction, and recurrent respiratory infections. Airway hyperresponsiveness is common in elite athletes, often without reported symptoms. Asthma in elite athletes is commonly characterized by less correlation between symptoms and pulmonary function, higher lung volumes and expiratory flows, less eosinophilic airway inflammation, more difficulty in controlling symptoms, and some improvement in airway dysfunction after cessation of training.⁸⁰

Management

Preventive measures to avoid high exposure to air pollutants, allergens (if sensitized) and chlorine levels in pools, particularly during training periods, should be discussed with the athlete. They should avoid training in extreme cold or pollution (Evidence C), and the effects of any therapeutic trials of asthma medications should be documented. Adequate anti-inflammatory therapy, especially ICS, is advised; minimization of use of beta₂-agonists will help to avoid the development of tolerance.⁷⁹ Information on treatment of exercise-induced asthma in athletes can be found in a Joint Task Force Report prepared by the European Respiratory Society, the European Academy of Allergy and Clinical Immunology, and Global Allergy and Asthma European Network (GA(2)LEN)⁶²⁶ and on the World Anti-Doping Agency (WADA) website (www.wada-ama.org). The International Olympic Committee (IOC) and WADA allow use of ICS-formoterol by competitive athletes up to a formoterol dose of 54 mcg delivered dose (72 mcg metered dose) in a day.

Pregnancy

Clinical features

Asthma control often changes during pregnancy; in approximately one-third of women asthma symptoms worsen, in one-third they improve and in the remaining one-third they remain unchanged.⁶²⁷ Exacerbations are common in pregnancy, particularly in the second trimester.¹¹¹ Exacerbations and poor asthma control during pregnancy may be due to mechanical or hormonal changes, or to cessation or reduction of asthma medications due to concerns by the mother and/or the healthcare provider. Pregnant women appear to be particularly susceptible to the effects of viral respiratory infections,⁶²⁸ including influenza.

Exacerbations and poor symptom control are associated with worse outcomes for both the baby (pre-term delivery, low birth weight, increased perinatal mortality) and the mother (pre-eclampsia).¹¹¹ Risk factors for asthma exacerbations during pregnancy include severe asthma, multiparity, black ethnicity, depression and anxiety, current smoking, age >35 years and obesity. Addressing these risk factors may not only reduce the risk of exacerbations, but also the risk of adverse perinatal outcomes.⁶²⁹ If asthma is well controlled throughout pregnancy there is little or no increased risk of adverse maternal or fetal complications.⁸¹

Management

Although there is a general concern about any medication use in pregnancy, the advantages of actively treating asthma in pregnancy markedly outweigh any potential risks of usual asthma medications (Evidence A).⁸¹ For this reason, using medications to achieve good symptom control and prevent exacerbations is justified even when their safety in pregnancy has not been unequivocally proven. Use of ICS, beta₂-agonists, montelukast or theophylline is not associated with an increased incidence of fetal abnormalities.⁶³⁰

Women with asthma who are pregnant or planning pregnancy should be advised to not stop ICS-containing therapy. Importantly, ICS reduce the risk of exacerbations of asthma during pregnancy (Evidence A),^{81,631,632} and cessation of ICS during pregnancy is a significant risk factor for exacerbations,¹¹¹ (Evidence A). One study reported that a treatment algorithm in non-smoking pregnant women based on monthly measurement of fractional concentration of exhaled nitric oxide (FeNO) and symptoms using the Asthma Control Questionnaire (ACQ) was associated with significantly fewer exacerbations and better fetal outcomes than an algorithm based only on ACQ.⁶³³ However, the ACQ-only algorithm did not reflect current clinical recommendations, as LABA was introduced only after ICS had been increased to medium dose, and ICS could be stopped; 58% of women in the ACQ-only group were being treated without ICS by the end of pregnancy. In a subsequent large randomized controlled trial in pregnant women, there was no reduction in exacerbations with FeNO-guided treatment, compared with usual care.⁴⁸³

Use of ICS during pregnancy by women with asthma may also be protective for asthma in their children. A study using administrative data reported that uncontrolled maternal asthma increased the risk of early-onset asthma in the offspring.⁶³⁴ In an intervention study with follow-up for 4–6 years, the prevalence of asthma was over 50% lower in children of women with asthma who took ICS during pregnancy than in children of women who did not take ICS, with the largest reduction in asthma prevalence seen in children whose mothers took ICS in early pregnancy (before weeks 12–20).⁶³⁵

On balance, given the evidence in pregnancy and infancy for adverse outcomes from exacerbations during pregnancy (Evidence A),⁸¹ including due to lack of ICS or poor adherence,¹¹¹ and evidence for safety of usual doses of ICS and LABA (Evidence A),⁶³⁰ **a low priority should be placed on stepping down treatment (regardless of the method used to assess control) until after delivery** (Evidence D), and **ICS should not be stopped in preparation for pregnancy or during pregnancy** (Evidence C).

Despite lack of evidence for adverse effects of asthma treatment in pregnancy, many women and healthcare providers remain concerned about medication.⁶³⁶ Pregnant patients with asthma should be advised that poorly controlled asthma, and exacerbations, provide a much greater risk to their baby than do current asthma treatments. Educational resources about asthma management during pregnancy may provide additional reassurance.⁶³⁷ During pregnancy, monitoring of asthma every 4–6 weeks is recommended.⁶³⁷ It is feasible for this to be achieved by pharmacist-clinician collaboration, with monthly telephone monitoring of asthma symptom control.⁶³⁸ One observational study found that pregnant women whose asthma was well controlled without controller therapy and who had no history of previous exacerbations were at low risk for exacerbations during pregnancy.⁶³⁹ However, such women should still be closely monitored.

For women with severe asthma, evidence on use of **biologic therapies** during pregnancy is scarce.⁶⁴⁰ A registry study found no evidence of an increased risk of major congenital malformations when mothers received omalizumab during pregnancy. Women should be counselled that the potential risks associated with biologic exposure during pregnancy need to be balanced against the risks for themselves and their children caused by uncontrolled asthma.⁶⁴¹

During **acute asthma exacerbations**, pregnant women may be less likely to be treated appropriately than non-pregnant patients.¹¹¹ To avoid fetal hypoxia, it is important to manage acute asthma exacerbations during pregnancy aggressively with SABA, oxygen, and early administration of systemic corticosteroids. Respiratory infections should be monitored and managed appropriately during pregnancy.⁶²⁸

During labor and delivery, usual maintenance medications should be taken, with reliever if needed. Acute exacerbations during labor and delivery are uncommon, but bronchoconstriction may be induced by hyperventilation during labor, and should be managed with SABA. Neonatal hypoglycemia may be seen, especially in preterm babies, when high doses of beta-agonists have been given within the last 48 hours prior to delivery. If high doses of SABA have been given during labor and delivery, blood glucose levels should be monitored in the baby (especially if preterm) for the first 24 hours.⁶⁴²

A review of asthma guidelines for the management of asthma during pregnancy highlighted the need for greater clarity in current recommendations and the need for more RCTs among pregnant asthma patients.⁶⁴³

Women – perimenstrual asthma (catamenial asthma)

Clinical features

In approximately 20% of women, asthma is worse in the premenstrual phase. These women tend to be older, have more severe asthma, a higher BMI, a longer duration of asthma, and a greater likelihood of aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease (AERD). They more often have dysmenorrhea, premenstrual syndrome, shorter menstrual cycles, and longer menstrual bleeding. The role of hormone levels and systemic inflammation remains unclear.⁶⁴⁴

Management

In addition to the usual strategies for management of asthma, oral contraceptives and/or leukotriene receptor antagonists may be helpful (Evidence D).⁶⁴⁴ Further research is needed.

Occupational asthma

Clinical features

In people with allergen exposure in the workplace, rhinitis often precedes the development of asthma (see p.37 for information on making the diagnosis of occupational asthma). Once a patient has become sensitized to an occupational allergen, the level of exposure necessary to induce symptoms may be extremely low; resulting exacerbations become increasingly severe, and with continued exposure, persistent symptoms and non-responsive airflow limitation may result.⁷⁵

Management

Detailed information is available in evidence-based guidelines about management of occupational asthma.^{75,78} All patients with adult-onset asthma should be asked about their work history and other exposures (Evidence A). The early identification and elimination of occupational sensitizers and the removal of sensitized patients from any further exposure are important aspects of the management of occupational asthma (Evidence A). Attempts to reduce occupational exposure have been successful, especially in industrial settings.⁷⁵ Cost-effective minimization of latex sensitization can be achieved by using non-powdered low-allergen gloves instead of powdered latex gloves.⁷⁵ Patients with suspected or confirmed occupational asthma should be referred for expert assessment and advice, if this is available, because of the economic and legal implications of the diagnosis (Evidence A).

The elderly

Clinical features

Lung function generally decreases with longer duration of asthma and increasing age, due to stiffness of the chest wall, reduced respiratory muscle function, loss of elastic recoil and airway wall remodeling. Older patients may not report asthma symptoms, and may attribute breathlessness to normal aging or comorbidities such as cardiovascular disease and obesity.⁶⁴⁵⁻⁶⁴⁷ Among the elderly, there is no increased risk of cardiovascular disease among those with asthma, compared with those without asthma, except in current or former smokers.⁶⁴⁸ Comorbid arthritis may contribute to reduced exercise capacity and lack of fitness, and make inhaler device use difficult. Asthma costs may be higher amongst older patients, because of higher hospitalization rates and medication costs.⁶⁴⁶

Management

Decisions about management of asthma in older people with asthma need to take into account both the usual goals of symptom control and risk minimization and the impact of comorbidities, concurrent treatments and lack of self-management skills.^{645,646} Data on efficacy of asthma medications in the elderly are limited because these patients are often excluded from major clinical trials. Side-effects of beta₂-agonists, such as cardiotoxicity, and corticosteroid side-effects such as skin bruising, osteoporosis and fragility fractures,⁶⁴⁹ and cataracts, are more common in the elderly than in younger adults.⁶⁴⁵ Clearance of theophylline is also reduced.⁶⁴⁵ Elderly patients should be asked about all of the other medications they are taking, including eye-drops, and potential drug interactions should be considered. Factors such as arthritis, muscle weakness, impaired vision and inspiratory flow should be considered when choosing inhaler devices for older patients,^{646,650} and inhaler technique should be checked at each visit. Older patients may have difficulties with

complex medication regimens, and prescribing of multiple inhaler devices should be avoided if possible. Large-print versions may be needed for written information such as asthma action plans. Patients with cognitive impairment may require a caregiver to help them use their asthma medications. For diagnosis and initial management of patients with features of both asthma and COPD, see Section 7 (p.141).

Aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease (AERD)

Clinical features

The clinical picture and course of AERD (previously called aspirin-induced asthma) are well established.²⁶⁹ It starts with nasal congestion and anosmia, and progresses to chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps that re-grow rapidly after surgery. Asthma and hypersensitivity to aspirin and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) develop subsequently. Following ingestion of aspirin or NSAIDs, an acute asthma attack develops within minutes to 1–2 hours. It is usually accompanied by rhinorrhea, nasal obstruction, conjunctival irritation, and scarlet flush of the head and neck, and may sometimes progress to severe bronchospasm, shock, loss of consciousness, and respiratory arrest.^{651,652} AERD is more likely to be associated with low lung function and severe asthma,^{653,654} and with increased need for emergency care⁶⁵⁴. The prevalence of AERD is 7% in general adult asthma populations, and 15% in severe asthma.^{654,655}

Diagnosis

A history of exacerbation following ingestion of aspirin or other NSAIDs is highly suggestive of AERD. Aspirin challenge (oral, bronchial or nasal) is the gold standard for diagnosis^{656,657} as there are no reliable in vitro tests, but oral aspirin challenge tests must only be conducted in a specialized center with cardiopulmonary resuscitation capabilities because of the high risk of severe reactions.^{656,657} Bronchial (inhalational) and nasal challenges with lysine aspirin are safer than oral challenges and may be safely performed in allergy centers.^{656,658}

Management

Patients with AERD should avoid aspirin or NSAID-containing products and other medications that inhibit cyclooxygenase-1 (COX-1), but this does not prevent progression of the disease. Where an NSAID is indicated for other medical conditions, a COX-2 inhibitor (e.g., celecoxib or etoricoxib), or paracetamol (acetaminophen), may be considered,^{659,660} with appropriate healthcare provider supervision and observation for at least 2 hours after administration (Evidence B).⁶⁶¹ ICS treatment is the mainstay of asthma management in patients with AERD, but OCS treatment is sometimes required; LTRA may also be useful (Evidence B),^{651,661} but note the concern about potential neuropsychiatric adverse effects with montelukast.³³⁰ See section 8 (p.149) for treatment options for patients with severe asthma. An additional option is aspirin desensitization, which may be conducted under specialist care in a clinic or hospital.⁶⁶² Desensitization to aspirin followed by daily aspirin treatment can significantly improve upper respiratory symptoms and overall quality of life, decrease recurrence of nasal polyps, reduce the need for OCS and sinus surgery, and improve nasal and asthma scores, but few double-blind studies have examined asthma outcomes.^{656,663,664} Aspirin desensitization is associated with a significantly increased risk of adverse effects such as gastritis and gastrointestinal bleeding.⁶⁶⁴

Allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis (ABPA)

Clinical features

Allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis (ABPA) is a complex pulmonary disease due to a hypersensitivity response to *Aspergillus fumigatus*, a common indoor and outdoor mold. It is characterized by repeated episodes of wheezing, fleeting pulmonary opacities and development of bronchiectasis, sometimes with malaise, weight loss and hemoptysis. Some patients expectorate brownish sputum plugs. ABPA is most commonly diagnosed in people with asthma or cystic fibrosis.

Diagnosis

Diagnosis of ABPA is based on composite criteria including immediate hypersensitivity reaction to *A. fumigatus*, total serum IgE, specific IgG to *A. fumigatus*, radiological features and blood eosinophils.⁶⁶⁵ Sensitization to fungal allergens, without the full picture of ABPA, is often found in asthma, particularly in severe asthma, where it is sometimes called “severe asthma with fungal sensitization”.

Management

Current first-line therapy is with oral corticosteroids (e.g., a 4-month tapering course), with itraconazole reserved for those with exacerbations or requiring long-term OCS.⁶⁶⁶⁻⁶⁶⁸ Clinicians should be aware of the potential for drug interactions between itraconazole (a cytochrome P450 inhibitor) and asthma medications. These interactions may lead to increased risk of ICS adverse effects such as adrenal suppression and Cushing's syndrome, and may increase the risk of cardiovascular adverse effects of some LABAs (salmeterol and vilanterol).¹⁸⁴ Concomitant use is not recommended, so it may be appropriate to switch ICS-LABA treatment to an alternative product such as budesonide-formoterol or mometasone-formoterol for the duration of treatment with itraconazole.¹⁸⁴

A randomized double-blind placebo-controlled study in patients with severe asthma and ABPA found significantly fewer exacerbations with omalizumab (anti-IgE) than placebo.⁶⁶⁹ A systematic review and meta-analysis that included this trial and others, but with a total of only 450 patients in the analysis, provides evidence of moderate quality that patients with ABPA who do not respond to treatment with oral corticosteroids have a favorable response to omalizumab without substantial side effects.⁶⁷⁰ Small case series and case reports of treatment of ABPA with other biologic therapies have been published.⁶⁷¹ Information about use of biologic therapies in severe asthma is covered in Section 8 (p.149).

In patients with ABPA and bronchiectasis, regular physiotherapy and daily drainage are recommended. Patients with ABPA should be referred for specialist investigation and care if available.

Surgery and asthma

Clinical features

There is no evidence of increased peri-operative risk for the general asthma population.⁶⁷² However, there is an increased risk for patients with COPD,⁶⁷² and this may also apply to asthma patients with reduced FEV₁. The incidence of severe peri-operative bronchospasm in people with asthma is low, but it may be life threatening.⁶⁷³

Management

For elective surgery, meticulous attention should be paid pre-operatively to achieving good asthma control, especially for patients with more severe asthma, uncontrolled symptoms, exacerbation history, or persistent airflow limitation (Evidence B).⁶⁷³ For patients requiring emergency surgery, the risks of proceeding without first achieving good asthma control should be weighed against the need for immediate surgery. Patients taking long-term high-dose ICS or who have received OCS for more than 2 weeks during the previous 6 months should receive hydrocortisone peri-operatively as they are at risk of adrenal crisis in the context of surgery (Evidence B).⁶⁷⁴ More immediate intra-operative issues relating to asthma management are reviewed in detail elsewhere.⁶⁷³ For all patients, maintaining their prescribed ICS-containing therapy throughout the peri-operative period is important.

Air travel and asthma

Practical advice for air travel by people with respiratory disease was published by the British Thoracic Society (BTS) in 2022.⁶⁷⁵ The advice for people with asthma included pre-flight optimization of treatment, carrying all asthma medications and spacer (if used) in the cabin to allow immediate access during the flight (and in case checked luggage is mislaid), and carrying a copy of the patient's asthma action plan.

Extreme weather and asthma

Background

The increasing frequency and intensity of extreme weather events (including extreme heat, cold, rainfall, drought) poses a growing risk to vulnerable populations such as children, the elderly, and people with asthma.^{676,677} The health impacts of climate change are complex, but the impact on asthma is likely to fall into two broad categories. First, catastrophic weather events impact infrastructure and disrupt care for people living with chronic conditions such as asthma.⁶⁷⁸ Second, increased levels of air pollution (for example, from wildfires), enhanced survival of respiratory viruses, and increased concentration of allergens like mold and pollen, together with extreme temperatures, may worsen asthma morbidity and

contribute to healthcare costs.^{322,679} Thunderstorms can also trigger asthma exacerbations, including acute asthma epidemics (see p.171).

Asthma outcomes

Extreme weather events can increase hospitalizations, increased emergency department (ED) visits and asthma mortality. A systematic review and meta-analysis found that extreme weather increased the rate of asthma ED visits by 34%, that heat waves increased hospitalization rates by 39%, and that cold spells increased hospitalization rates by 35%. A 2023 meta-analysis suggested that heatwaves elevate the risk of asthma-related ED visits by approximately 7%, while cold spells may raise this risk by 20%.⁶⁸⁰ This analysis found that the effects of extreme heat on hospital visits showed a short-term lag effect, appeared to be relatively acute and lasted for a week, whereas extreme cold showed a long-term lag effect, lasting from 3 to 30 days.⁶⁸⁰ Extreme weather events are also associated with 2.3-fold increased risk of acute asthma exacerbations requiring outpatient visits.⁶⁸¹ There is emerging evidence that extreme weather can increase asthma mortality rates.^{681,682}

Mitigation strategies

There is limited evidence about mitigation strategies to prevent asthma exacerbations during extreme weather events. Practical interventions include the use of face masks to reduce PM2.5 exposure during wildfires,⁶⁸³ and sheltering in temperature-controlled environments such as shopping malls. Other interventions, such as the use of mobile phone alerts prompting behavioral change to mitigate against extreme events or high exposure levels, have been found to improve asthma outcomes.⁶⁸⁴ Automated health-related weather alerts can also help with health system readiness.

7. Diagnosis and initial treatment in adults with features of asthma, COPD or both

KEY POINTS

Asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) are heterogeneous and overlapping conditions

“Asthma” and “COPD” are umbrella labels for heterogeneous conditions characterized by chronic airway and/or lung disease. Asthma and COPD each include several different clinical phenotypes, and probably have several different underlying mechanisms, some of which may be common to both asthma and COPD.

Symptoms of asthma and COPD may be similar, and the diagnostic criteria overlap.

Why are the labels “asthma” and “COPD” still important?

There are extremely important differences in evidence-based treatment recommendations for asthma and COPD. For example, treatment with a long-acting beta₂-agonist (LABA) and long-acting muscarinic antagonist (LAMA) without inhaled corticosteroid (ICS) is recommended as initial treatment in COPD, but contraindicated in asthma due to the risk of severe exacerbations and death. ICSs are essential in asthma, but are used with caution in COPD (in combination with LABA and LAMA) to avoid increased risk of pneumonia.

These risks are also seen in patients who have diagnoses of both asthma and COPD, making it important to identify adult patients who, for safety, should not be treated with long-acting bronchodilators alone. ICS reduce mortality and hospitalizations in patients with asthma, including in those with concomitant COPD.

Many patients have features of both asthma and COPD

Distinguishing asthma from COPD can be difficult, particularly in smokers and older adults, and some patients may have features of both asthma and COPD.

The term “asthma+COPD” (previously also called “asthma-COPD overlap”) is a simple descriptor for patients who have features of both asthma and COPD. This term does *not* refer to a single disease entity. It includes patients with several clinical phenotypes that are likely caused by a range of different underlying mechanisms.

More research is needed to better define these phenotypes and mechanisms; meanwhile, safety of pharmacologic treatment is a high priority.

Diagnosis

Diagnosis in patients with chronic respiratory symptoms involves a stepwise approach: first, identifying chronic airways disease, then categorizing it by syndrome (typical asthma, typical COPD, features of both, and the presence/absence of other conditions such as bronchiectasis).

Spirometry is essential to confirm persistent airflow limitation. Variable airflow obstruction can be detected with serial peak flow measurements and/or measurements before and after bronchodilator.

Initial treatment for safety and clinical efficacy

For asthma: ICS treatment is essential, either alone or in combination with a LABA, to reduce the risk of severe exacerbations and death. **Do not treat patients with asthma with LABA and/or LAMA alone (i.e., without ICS).**

For patients with features or diagnoses of both asthma and COPD, treat as asthma with ICS-containing therapy, to reduce the risk of severe exacerbations and death. **For patients with asthma+COPD, do not give LABA and/or LAMA alone without ICS.**

For COPD: Treat according to current recommendations from the Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD):⁸⁶ initial treatment with LAMA and LABA, plus as-needed SABA, with addition of ICS based on history of exacerbations and/or blood eosinophil count. Avoid high-dose ICS because of risk of pneumonia. See GOLD global 2026 strategy report for subsequent treatment options if dyspnea and/or exacerbations continue.⁸⁶

All patients: provide structured education especially focusing on inhaler technique and adherence; assess for, and treat, other clinical problems, including by giving advice about smoking cessation, immunizations, physical activity, and management of multimorbidity.

Specialist referral for additional investigations in patients with asthma+COPD is encouraged, as they often have worse outcomes than patients with asthma or COPD alone.

OBJECTIVES

The objectives of this section of the GINA Strategy Report are:

- To assist primary care clinicians to identify typical asthma and typical COPD and to recognize when patients have features of both. This is particularly relevant in patients aged 40 years and older.
- To provide advice about safe and effective initial treatment
- To provide guidance on indications for referral for specialist assessment.

BACKGROUND TO DIAGNOSING ASTHMA AND/OR COPD IN ADULT PATIENTS

Why are the labels “asthma” and “COPD” still important?

Asthma and COPD are heterogeneous conditions characterized by airway obstruction. Each of these “umbrella” labels covers several different patterns of clinical features (phenotypes) that may overlap. Each may also include different inflammatory patterns and different underlying mechanisms, some of which may be common to both asthma and COPD.⁶⁸⁵

The most easily recognized phenotypes of asthma (such as allergic asthma in children/young adults) and of COPD (such as emphysema in older smokers) are clearly distinguishable. Regulatory studies of pharmacotherapy in asthma and COPD are largely restricted to patients with very clearly defined asthma or COPD. However, in the community, the features of asthma and COPD may overlap, especially in older adults.

There are extremely important differences in treatment recommendations for asthma and COPD. In particular, treatment with LABA and LAMA alone (i.e., without ICS) is recommended for initial treatment in COPD⁸⁶ but is contraindicated in asthma due to the risk of severe exacerbations and death.^{171,439,686,687} Several studies have also shown that patients with diagnoses of both asthma and COPD are at increased risk of hospitalization or death if they are treated with LABA or LABA-LAMA, compared with ICS-LABA (or ICS-LABA-LAMA).⁶⁸⁸⁻⁶⁹⁰

Challenges in clinical diagnosis of asthma and COPD

Although asthma is characterized by variable expiratory airflow, at least initially (Box 1-2, p.28), and COPD is characterized by persistent airflow limitation,⁸⁶ the definitions of asthma and COPD are not mutually exclusive (Box 7-1, p.143). This means that clinical features are also important in making a diagnosis and treating appropriately.

In children and young adults with chronic or recurrent respiratory symptoms, the differential diagnosis is different from that in older adults (see Box 1-3, p.30). After excluding infectious disease and non-pulmonary conditions (e.g., congenital heart disease, inducible laryngeal obstruction), the most likely chronic airway disease in children and young adults is asthma.

However, in adults with a history of longstanding asthma,^{691,692} persistent airflow limitation may be found.⁶⁹³⁻⁶⁹⁷ Distinguishing this from COPD is problematic, especially if they are smokers or have other risk factors for COPD.⁶⁹⁸⁻⁷⁰¹ On the other hand, patients with COPD may show evidence of bronchodilator response, a feature more strongly associated with asthma. In medical records, such patients often are assigned both diagnoses.^{88,702}

In keeping with common usage of the term “overlap” in other contexts, e.g., for the association between COPD with sleep disorders, and in overlap syndromes of collagen vascular disease, the descriptive term “asthma-COPD overlap” was often used. To avoid confusion, the term “asthma+COPD” is now preferred.

Box 7-1. Current definitions of asthma and COPD, and clinical description of asthma+COPD

Asthma (GINA)
Asthma is a heterogeneous disease, usually characterized by chronic airway inflammation. It is defined by the history of respiratory symptoms such as wheeze, shortness of breath, chest tightness and cough that vary over time and in intensity, together with variable expiratory airflow.
COPD (GOLD)
Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) is a heterogeneous lung condition characterized by chronic respiratory symptoms (dyspnea, cough, sputum production and/or exacerbations) due to abnormalities of the airways (bronchitis, bronchiolitis) and/or alveoli (emphysema) that cause persistent, often progressive, airflow obstruction. ⁸⁶
Asthma+COPD (descriptive term)
“Asthma +COPD” (previously often called “asthma-COPD overlap”) is a term used to collectively describe patients who have persistent airflow limitation together with clinical features that are consistent with both asthma and COPD. This is not a definition of a single disease entity, but a descriptive term for clinical use that includes several different clinical phenotypes reflecting different underlying mechanisms.

GOLD: Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease

Prevalence and morbidity of asthma+COPD

In epidemiological studies, reported prevalences of asthma+COPD among patients with either diagnosis have ranged between 9% and 55%, with variation by sex and age.^{696,703-705} This wide range reflects differences between criteria used by investigators. Concurrent doctor-diagnosed asthma and COPD has been reported in 15–32% of patients with one or other diagnosis.^{702,706,707}

There is broad agreement that patients with features of both asthma and COPD have a greater burden of symptoms,⁷⁰⁸ experience frequent exacerbations,^{88,694,708} have poor quality of life,^{88,703,708} a more rapid decline in lung function,⁷⁰⁸ higher mortality,^{694,702} and greater use of healthcare resources,^{88,709} compared with patients with asthma or COPD alone.

ASSESSMENT AND MANAGEMENT OF CHRONIC RESPIRATORY SYMPTOMS

1: History and clinical assessment

Establish:

- The nature and pattern of respiratory symptoms (variable and/or persistent)
- History of asthma diagnosis; childhood and/or current
- Exposure history: smoking and/or other exposures to risk factors for COPD.

The features that are most helpful in identifying and distinguishing asthma from COPD, and the features that should prompt a patient to be treated as asthma to reduce the risk of severe exacerbations and death, are shown in Box 7-2 (p.144).

Box 7-2. Syndromic approach to initial treatment in patients with asthma and/or COPD

CLINICAL PHENOTYPE - ADULTS WITH CHRONIC RESPIRATORY SYMPTOMS (dyspnea, cough, chest tightness, wheeze)		
HIGHLY LIKELY TO BE ASTHMA if several of the following features TREAT AS ASTHMA	FEATURES OF BOTH ASTHMA + COPD TREAT AS ASTHMA	LIKELY TO BE COPD if several of the following features TREAT AS COPD
HISTORY - Symptoms vary over time and in intensity - Triggers may include laughter, exercise, allergens, seasonal - Onset before age 40 years - Symptoms improve spontaneously or with bronchodilators (minutes) or ICS (days to weeks) - Current asthma diagnosis, or asthma diagnosis in childhood LUNG FUNCTION - Variable expiratory airflow limitation - Persistent airflow limitation may be present	HISTORY - Symptoms intermittent or episodic - May have started before or after age 40 - May have a history of smoking and/or other toxic exposures, or history of low birth weight or respiratory illness such as tuberculosis - Any of asthma features at left (e.g. common triggers; symptoms improve spontaneously or with bronchodilators or ICS; current asthma diagnosis or asthma diagnosis in childhood) LUNG FUNCTION - Persistent expiratory airflow limitation - With or without bronchodilator reversibility	HISTORY - Dyspnea persistent (most days) - Onset after age 40 years - Limitation of physical activity - May have been preceded by cough/sputum - Bronchodilator provides only limited relief - History of smoking and/or other toxic exposure, or history of low birth weight or respiratory illness such as tuberculosis - No past or current diagnosis of asthma LUNG FUNCTION - Persistent expiratory airflow limitation - With or without bronchodilator reversibility
INITIAL PHARMACOLOGICAL TREATMENT (as well as treating comorbidities and risk factors. See Box 3-12)		
ICS-CONTAINING TREATMENT IS ESSENTIAL to reduce risk of severe exacerbations and death. - GINA Track 1 with ICS-formoterol as reliever is the preferred regimen. See Box 4-6 and Box 4-8 DO NOT GIVE LABA and/or LAMA without ICS - Maintenance OCS only as last resort	ICS-CONTAINING TREATMENT IS ESSENTIAL to reduce risk of severe exacerbations and death. - Add-on LABA with/without LAMA usually needed - Additional COPD treatments as per GOLD DO NOT GIVE LABA and/or LAMA without ICS - Maintenance OCS only as last resort	TREAT AS COPD (see GOLD report) - Initially maintenance LABA-LAMA - For details of add-on therapy, see current GOLD report Avoid high dose ICS Avoid maintenance OCS
REVIEW PATIENT AFTER 2–3 MONTHS. REFER FOR EXPERT ADVICE IF DIAGNOSTIC UNCERTAINTY OR INADEQUATE RESPONSE		

COPD: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; GOLD: Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung disease; ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; LAMA: long-acting muscarinic antagonist; OCS: oral corticosteroid

Caution: Consider alternative diagnoses; other airways diseases, such as bronchiectasis and chronic bronchitis, and other forms of lung disease such as interstitial lung disease may present with some of the above features. The above approach to diagnosis does not replace the need for a full assessment in patients presenting with respiratory symptoms, to first exclude non-respiratory diagnoses such as heart failure. Physical examination may provide supportive information.

2: Lung function testing is essential

Use lung function testing to confirm persistent expiratory airflow limitation, and variable expiratory airflow.

Spirometry should be performed at the initial assessment, where possible. In cases of clinical urgency, it may be delayed to a subsequent visit, but confirmation of diagnosis may be more difficult after the patient has started ICS-containing therapy (see Box 1-4, p.33). Early confirmation (or exclusion) of the presence of persistent expiratory airflow limitation may avoid needless treatment trials or delays in initiating other investigations. Spirometry can confirm both persistent airflow limitation and bronchodilator responsiveness (Box 7-2, p.144 and Box 7-3, p.145).

Measurement of peak expiratory flow (PEF), performed repeatedly on the same meter over a period of 1–2 weeks, may help to confirm variable airflow limitation and the diagnosis of asthma by demonstrating excessive variability (Box 1-2, p.28). However, PEF is not as reliable as spirometry, and a normal PEF does not rule out either asthma or COPD.

Box 7-3. Spirometric measures in asthma and COPD

Spirometric variable	Asthma	COPD	Asthma+COPD
Normal FEV ₁ /FVC pre or post BD	Compatible with asthma. If patient is symptomatic at a time when lung function is normal, consider alternative diagnosis.	Not compatible with current Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease definition of COPD	Not compatible
Reduced post-BD FEV ₁ /FVC (< lower limit of normal, or <0.7) ⁸⁶	Indicates airflow limitation but may improve spontaneously or on treatment	Required for diagnosis of COPD	Required for diagnosis of asthma+COPD
Post-BD FEV ₁ ≥80% predicted	Compatible with diagnosis of asthma (good asthma control or interval between symptoms)	Compatible with mild persistent airflow limitation if post-BD FEV ₁ /FVC is reduced	Compatible with mild persistent airflow limitation if post-BD FEV ₁ /FVC is reduced
Post-BD FEV ₁ <80% predicted	Compatible with diagnosis of asthma. Risk factor for asthma exacerbations	An indicator of severity of airflow limitation and risk of future events (e.g., mortality and COPD exacerbations)	As for COPD and asthma
Post-BD increase in FEV ₁ ≥12% and ≥200 mL from baseline (indicates variable expiratory airflow)	Typical of untreated asthma, but may not be present when well controlled or on ICS-containing therapy	Common and more likely when FEV ₁ is low	Common and more likely when FEV ₁ is low
Post-BD increase in FEV ₁ >12% and 400 mL from baseline (marked response)	Indicates high probability of asthma	Unusual in COPD	Compatible with asthma+COPD

BD: bronchodilator; FEV₁: forced expiratory volume in 1 second; FVC: forced vital capacity

3: Select initial treatment according to diagnosis (see Box 7-2, p.144)

For asthma

Commence treatment as described in Section 4, preferably with Track 1 anti-inflammatory reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol reliever (Box 4-4, p.81 and Box 4-5, p.82). Pharmacotherapy is based on ICS to reduce the risk of severe exacerbations and death and to improve symptom control, with add-on treatment (e.g., LABA and/or LAMA) as required.

For COPD

Commence treatment as in the current GOLD global strategy report.⁸⁶ Pharmacotherapy starts with symptomatic treatment with long-acting bronchodilators (LABA and LAMA). Addition of ICS (i.e., ICS-LABA-LAMA) is strongly recommended for some COPD patients based on exacerbation history and/or blood eosinophil count, or if they have a history of asthma or concomitant asthma.⁸⁶ However, in patients with COPD, ICS should not be used alone without LABA and/or LAMA. Inhaled therapy should be optimized to reduce the need for OCS. In patients with features of COPD, high-dose ICS should be avoided because of the risk of pneumonia.^{710,711} Note that doses of triple therapy (ICS-LABA-LAMA) for COPD may differ from those approved for asthma. See the GOLD 2026 report⁸⁶ for recommendations about subsequent add-on treatment such as macrolides and biologic therapy, for which indications may differ between asthma and COPD.

For patients with features of both asthma and COPD

Start treatment as for asthma (Box 4-4, p.81 and Box 4-5, p.82) until further investigations have been performed.

ICS-containing treatment is essential in preventing morbidity and even death in patients with uncontrolled asthma symptoms, for whom even seemingly “mild” symptoms (compared to those of moderate or severe COPD) might indicate significant risk of a life-threatening attack.⁷¹² For patients with asthma+COPD, ICS should be used initially in a low or medium dose (see Box 4-2, p.77), depending on level of symptoms and risk of adverse effects, including pneumonia, and most patients will usually also require add-on treatment with LABA with/without LAMA to provide adequate symptom control.

Note that recommended doses of triple therapy (ICS-LABA-LAMA) and indications for later biologic therapy may differ between asthma and COPD.

Patients with any features of asthma should not be treated with LABA and/or LAMA alone, without ICS. A large case-control study in community patients with newly diagnosed COPD found that those who also had a diagnosis of asthma had a lower risk of COPD hospitalizations and death if treated with combination ICS-LABA than with LABA alone.⁶⁸⁸ In another large retrospective longitudinal population cohort study of patients aged ≥66 years, those recorded as having asthma with COPD had lower morbidity and hospitalizations if they received ICS-containing treatment; a similar benefit was seen in those with COPD plus concurrent asthma.⁶⁹⁰

All patients with chronic airflow limitation

Provide advice on the following (see Sections 3, 5, and 6, and the GOLD 2026 report):⁸⁶

- Treatment of modifiable risk factors, including advice about smoking cessation
- Treatment of comorbidities
- Non-pharmacological strategies including physical activity, and, for COPD or asthma+COPD, pulmonary rehabilitation and vaccinations
- Appropriate self-management strategies
- Regular follow-up.

4: Refer for further investigation, multidisciplinary management, and additional therapeutic options specialized investigations (if necessary)

For most patients, asthma and COPD can initially be managed satisfactorily in primary care. However, referral is recommended for further diagnostic procedures when indicated (Box 7-4, p.148).⁸⁶ Referral may be particularly important for patients with features of both asthma and COPD, given that this is associated with worse outcomes and greater healthcare utilization.

Referral for expert advice, further diagnostic evaluation (e.g., Box 7-4) and multidisciplinary management is advised for patients with:

- Persistent symptoms and/or exacerbations despite treatment
- An uncertain diagnosis, especially when investigations are needed for an alternative diagnosis (e.g., bronchiectasis, post-tuberculous scarring, bronchiolitis, pulmonary fibrosis, pulmonary hypertension, cardiovascular diseases and other causes of respiratory symptoms)
- Suspected asthma or COPD with atypical or additional symptoms or signs (e.g., hemoptysis, significant weight loss, night sweats, fever, signs of bronchiectasis or other structural lung disease) suggest an additional pulmonary diagnosis; these should prompt early referral, without waiting for a trial of treatment for asthma or COPD.
- Suspected chronic airways disease but few syndromic features of either asthma or COPD
- Multimorbidity, particularly cardiovascular disease, that may contribute to symptoms and exacerbations or interfere with the assessment and management of airways disease.

Referral for expert advice, multidisciplinary management, and consideration of add-on therapy may also be appropriate for patients with issues arising during ongoing management of asthma, COPD or asthma+COPD.

Box 7-4. Other investigations sometimes used in patients with features of asthma and COPD

	Asthma	COPD
Lung function tests		
DLCO	Normal (or slightly elevated)	Often reduced
Arterial blood gases	Normal between exacerbations	May be chronically abnormal between exacerbations in more severe forms of COPD
Tests of airway hyperresponsiveness	Not useful on its own in distinguishing asthma from COPD, but marked hyperresponsiveness favors asthma	
Imaging		
High resolution CT scan	Usually normal but air trapping, increased bronchial wall thickness and mucus plugging may be observed.	Low attenuation areas denoting either air trapping or emphysematous change can be quantitated; bronchial wall thickening, mucus plugging, and features of pulmonary hypertension may be seen
Biomarkers (more details in Appendix A, p.238)		
Role of T2 biomarkers	Phenotyping; prognosis; predicting response to treatment, particularly in severe asthma	Blood eosinophils: phenotyping; indications for add-on ICS; indications for some add-on biologic therapy. See GOLD 2026 report ⁸⁶ for details
Tests for atopy (specific IgE and/or skin prick test to aeroallergens)	Positive test increases probability of allergic asthma; not essential for diagnosis of asthma	Conforms to background prevalence of allergic sensitization; positive test does not rule out COPD
FeNO	A high level (>50 ppb) in non-smokers is moderately associated with eosinophilic airway inflammation	Usually normal Low in current smokers Role in COPD unclear
Blood eosinophil count	Eosinophilia supports diagnosis of eosinophilic airway inflammation	Eosinophilia may be present in COPD including during exacerbations
Sputum inflammatory cell count	Role in differential diagnosis is not established in large populations.	

COPD: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; CT: computed tomography; DLCO: diffusing capacity of the lungs for carbon monoxide; FeNO: fractional concentration of exhaled nitric oxide; GOLD: Global Initiative for Chronic Lung Disease; Ig: immunoglobulin

Unanswered clinical questions

There is an urgent need for more research on this topic to guide better recognition and safe and effective treatment. Patients who do not have classical features of asthma or of COPD, or who have features of both, have generally been excluded from randomized controlled trials of most therapeutic interventions for airways disease, and from many mechanistic studies.

Future research should include study of clinical and physiological characteristics, biomarkers, outcomes and underlying mechanisms, among broad populations of patients with respiratory symptoms or with chronic airflow limitation. Meanwhile, this section provides interim advice about diagnosis and *initial* treatment, from the perspective of clinicians, particularly those in primary care and non-pulmonary specialties. Further research is needed to inform evidence-based definitions and a more detailed classification of patients who present overlapping features of asthma and COPD, and to encourage the development of specific interventions for clinical use.

8. Difficult-to-treat and severe asthma in adults and adolescents

KEY POINTS

What are difficult-to-treat asthma and severe asthma?

Difficult-to-treat asthma is asthma that is uncontrolled despite prescribing of medium- or high-dose treatment with the combination of inhaled corticosteroid (ICS) and long-acting beta₂-agonist (LABA), or that requires high-dose ICS-LABA treatment to maintain good symptom control and reduce exacerbations. It does not mean a “difficult patient”.

Severe asthma is asthma that is uncontrolled despite adherence to optimized high-dose ICS-LABA therapy and treatment of contributory factors, or that worsens when high-dose treatment is decreased. Approximately 3–10% of people with asthma have severe asthma.

Severe asthma places a large physical, mental, emotional, social and economic burden on patients. It is often associated with multimorbidity.

How should these patients be assessed?

Assess all patients with difficult-to-treat asthma to confirm the diagnosis of asthma, and to identify and manage risk factors and multimorbidity that may be contributing to symptoms, poor quality of life, or exacerbations.

Refer for expert advice at any stage, or if asthma does not improve in response to optimizing treatment.

For patients with persistent symptoms and/or exacerbations despite high-dose ICS-containing therapy (with good adherence and correct inhaler technique), the clinical and inflammatory phenotype should be assessed, as this can guide the selection of add-on treatment.

Management of severe asthma

Although most patients can achieve the goal of long-term well-controlled asthma, some patients' asthma will not be well controlled despite optimized treatment.

Depending on the inflammatory phenotype and other clinical features, add-on treatments for severe asthma include long-acting muscarinic antagonists (LAMAs), leukotriene receptor antagonists (LTRAs), low-dose azithromycin (adults), and biologic agents for severe asthma.

Low-dose maintenance oral corticosteroids (OCS) should be considered only as a last resort if no other options are available, because of their serious cumulative long-term side-effects.

Assess the response to any add-on treatment, stop ineffective treatments, and consider other options.

Utilize specialist multidisciplinary team care for severe asthma, if available. Optimize management of co-morbidities, such as allergic rhinitis, chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps (CRSwNP), and obesity.

For patients with severe asthma, continue to optimize patient care in collaboration with the primary care clinician, and considering the patient's social and emotional needs.

Invite patients with severe asthma to enroll in a registry or clinical trial, if available and relevant, to help fill evidence gaps.

See Boxes 8-2 through 8-5 (starting on p.152) for the GINA severe asthma decision tree.

This section of the GINA report is published separately each year as a GINA short guide for healthcare providers. Other resources for severe asthma management include an online toolkit published by the Australian Centre of Excellence in Severe Asthma (www.toolkit.severeasthma.org.au).

DEFINITIONS: UNCONTROLLED, DIFFICULT-TO-TREAT, AND SEVERE ASTHMA

Understanding the definitions of difficult-to-treat and severe asthma starts with the concept of uncontrolled asthma.

Uncontrolled asthma includes one or both of the following:

- Poor symptom control (frequent symptoms or reliever use, activity limited by asthma, night waking due to asthma)
- Frequent exacerbations (≥ 2 /year) requiring OCS, or severe exacerbations (≥ 1 /year) requiring hospitalization.

Difficult-to-treat asthma is asthma that is uncontrolled despite prescribing of medium- or high-dose ICS with a second controller (usually a LABA) or with maintenance OCS, or that requires high-dose treatment to maintain good symptom control and reduce the risk of exacerbations.²⁰² It does not mean a “difficult patient”. In many cases, poor control may be due to modifiable factors such as incorrect inhaler technique, poor adherence, smoking or comorbidities, or an incorrect diagnosis.

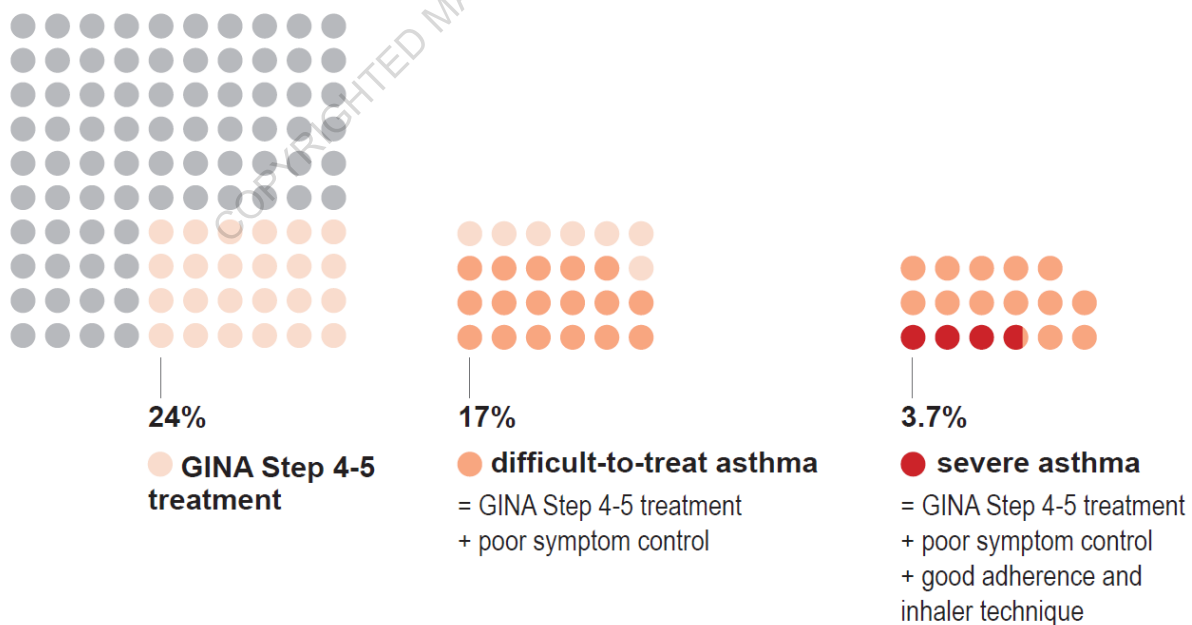
Severe asthma is a subset of difficult-to-treat asthma (Box 8-1). It means asthma that is uncontrolled despite good adherence to maximal optimized high-dose ICS-LABA treatment and management of contributory factors, or that worsens when high-dose treatment is decreased.²⁰² At present, therefore, “severe asthma” is a retrospective label. It is sometimes called “severe refractory asthma”,²⁰² because it is defined by being relatively refractory to high-dose inhaled therapy. However, with the advent of biologic therapies, the word “refractory” is no longer appropriate.

Asthma is not classified as severe if it markedly improves when contributory factors such as inhaler technique and adherence are addressed.²⁰²

PREVALENCE: HOW MANY PEOPLE HAVE SEVERE ASTHMA?

A study in the Netherlands estimated that around 3.7% of asthma patients have severe asthma, based on the number of patients prescribed high-dose ICS-LABA, or medium or high-dose ICS-LABA plus long-term OCS, who had poor symptom control (by Asthma Control Questionnaire) despite good adherence and inhaler technique (Box 8-1).⁷¹³

Box 8-1. What proportion of adults have difficult-to-treat or severe asthma?



Data from the Netherlands, reported by Hekking et al (2015)⁷¹³

IMPORTANCE: THE IMPACT OF SEVERE ASTHMA

The patient perspective

Patients with severe asthma experience a heavy burden of symptoms, exacerbations and medication side-effects. Frequent shortness of breath, wheeze, chest tightness and cough interfere with day-to-day living, sleeping, and physical activity, and patients often have frightening or unpredictable exacerbations (also called attacks or severe flare-ups).

Medication side-effects are particularly common and problematic with OCS,¹⁸¹ which in the past were a mainstay of treatment for severe asthma. Adverse effects of long-term or frequent OCS include obesity, diabetes, osteoporosis and fragility fractures,⁶⁴⁹ cataracts, hypertension and adrenal suppression; psychological side-effects such as depression and anxiety are particularly concerning for patients.⁷¹⁴ Even short-term use of OCS is associated with sleep disturbance, and increased risk of infection, fracture and thromboembolism.¹⁷⁸ Strategies to minimize need for OCS are therefore a high priority.

Severe asthma often interferes with family, social and working life, limits career choices and vacation options, and affects emotional and mental health. Patients with severe asthma often feel alone and misunderstood, as their experience is so different from that of most people with asthma.⁷¹⁴

Adolescents with severe asthma

The teenage years are a time of great psychological and physiological development, which can impact on asthma management. It is vital to ensure that the young person has a good understanding of their condition and treatment and appropriate knowledge to enable supported self-management. The process of transition from pediatric to adult care should help support the young person in gaining greater autonomy and responsibility for their own health and wellbeing. Severe asthma in adolescents may improve over 3 years in approximately 30% of males and females.⁷¹⁵ The only reported predictor of asthma becoming non-severe is higher baseline blood eosinophils.⁷¹⁵ Studies with longer follow-up time are needed.

Healthcare utilization and costs

Severe asthma has very high healthcare costs due to medications, physician visits, hospitalizations, and the costs of OCS side-effects. In a UK study, healthcare costs per patient were higher than for type 2 diabetes, stroke, or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD).⁷¹⁶ In a Canadian study, severe uncontrolled asthma was estimated to account for more than 60% of asthma costs.⁷¹⁷

Patients with severe asthma and their families also bear a significant financial burden, not only for medical care and medications, but also through lost earnings and career choices.

OVERVIEW OF DECISION TREE FOR ASSESSMENT AND MANAGEMENT OF DIFFICULT-TO-TREAT AND SEVERE ASTHMA

The clinical decision tree (from p.152), summarizes a stage-by-stage, evidence-based approach to investigating and managing difficult-to-treat asthma in adults and adolescents, assessing and treating severe asthma phenotypes, and monitoring/adjusting severe asthma treatment. The decision tree is divided into three broad stages:

Stages 1–4 (green) are for use in primary care and/or specialist care.

Stages 5–8 (blue) are mainly relevant to respiratory specialists.

Stages 9–10 (brown) are about maintaining ongoing collaborative care between the patient, primary care physician, specialist and other healthcare providers.

The Severe Asthma Guide and decision tree was designed in collaboration with experts in the translation of complex health information into visual formats.

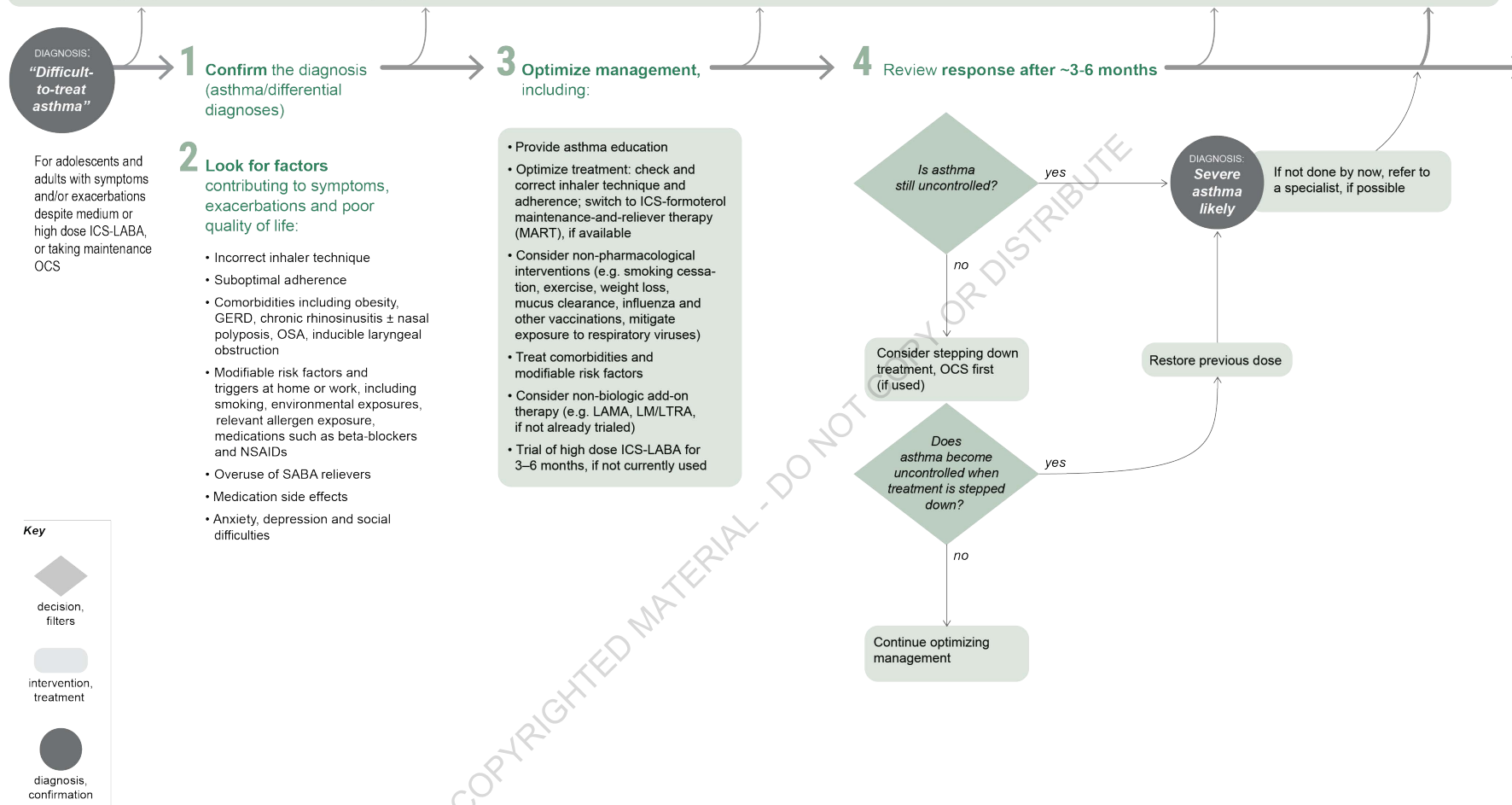
The decision tree is followed by more detailed information on each stage of assessment and management.

Box 8-2. Decision tree – investigate and manage difficult to treat asthma in adult and adolescent patients

GP OR SPECIALIST CARE

Investigate and manage difficult-to-treat asthma in adults and adolescents

Consider referring to specialist or severe asthma clinic at any stage



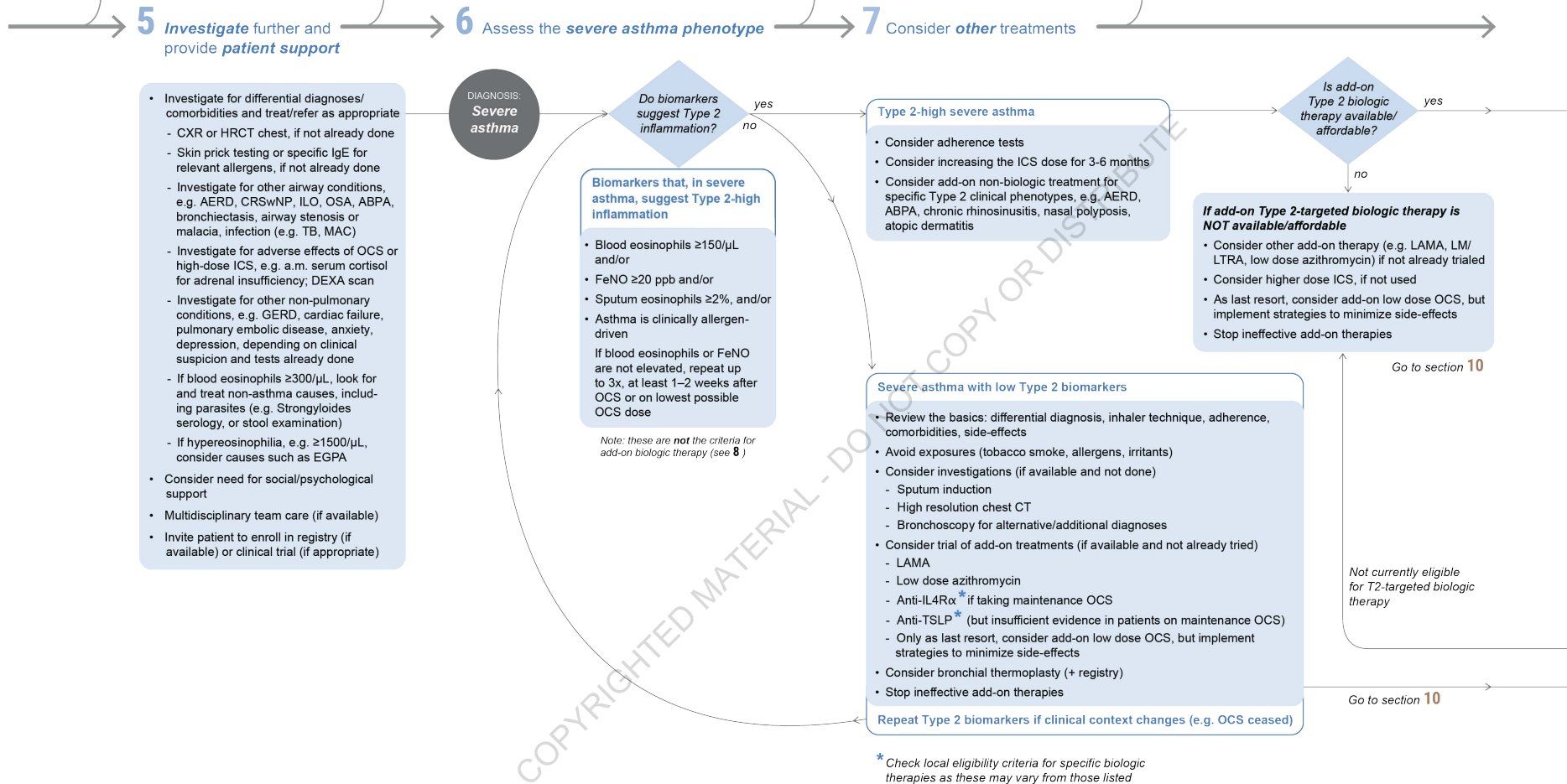
GERD: gastroesophageal reflux disease; ICS: inhaled corticosteroids; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; LAMA: long-acting muscarinic antagonists; LM: leukotriene modifiers; LTRA: leukotriene receptor antagonists; MART: maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol; NSAIDs: non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs; OCS: oral corticosteroids; OSA: obstructive sleep apnea; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist

Box 8-3. Decision tree – assess and treat severe asthma phenotypes

SPECIALIST CARE; SEVERE ASTHMA CLINIC IF AVAILABLE

Assess and treat severe asthma phenotypes

Continue to optimize management as in section 3 (including inhaler technique, adherence, comorbidities, non-pharmacologic strategies)



ABPA: allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis; AERD: aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease; CRSwNP: chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps; CXR: chest X-ray; DEXA: Dual-energy X-ray Absorptiometry; EGPA: eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis; FeNO: fractional exhaled nitric oxide; GERD: gastroesophageal reflux disease; HRCT: high resolution computed tomography; ICS: inhaled corticosteroids; Ig: immunoglobulin; IL: interleukin; ILO: inducible laryngeal obstruction; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; LAMA: long-acting muscarinic antagonists; MAC: Mycobacterium avium complex; NSAIDs: non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs; OCS: oral corticosteroids; OSA: obstructive sleep apnea; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist; TB: tuberculosis; TSLP: thymic stromal lymphopoietin.

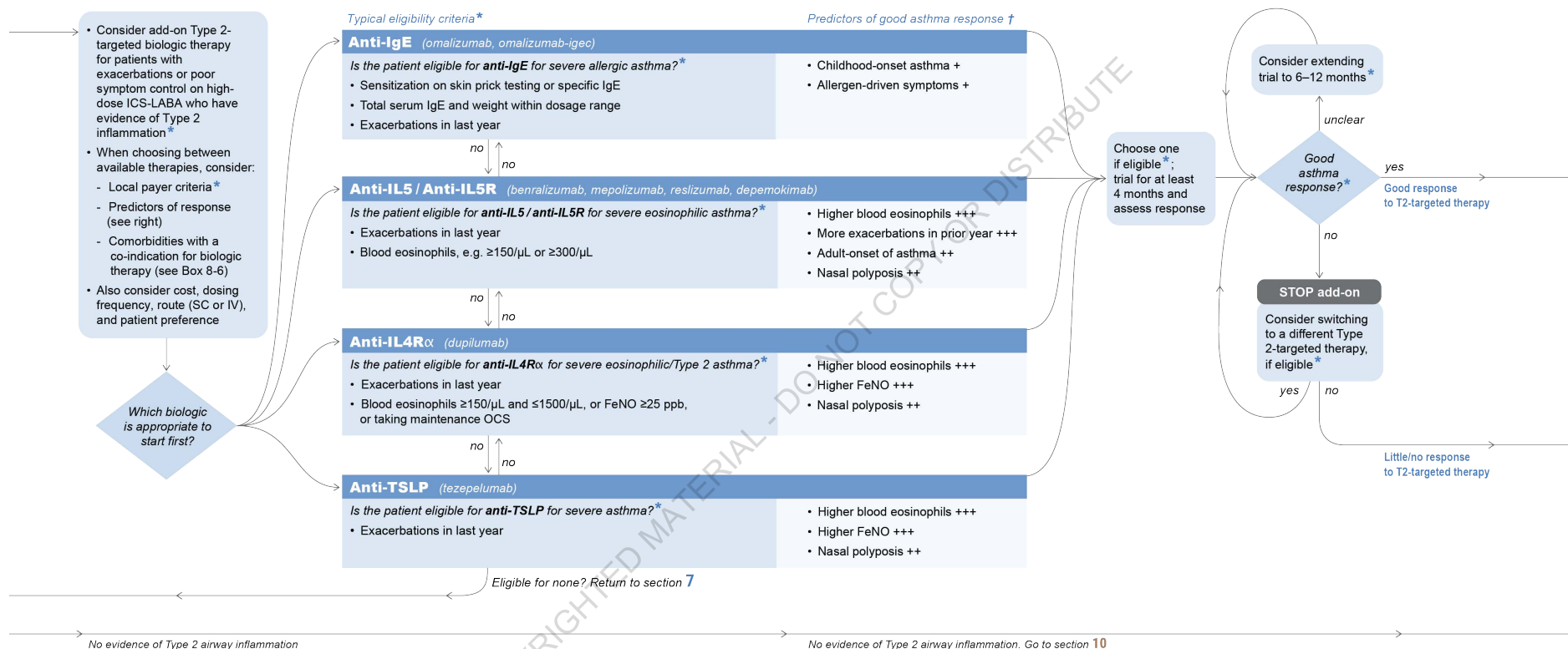
Box 8-4. Decision tree – consider add-on biologic Type 2-targeted treatments

SPECIALIST CARE; SEVERE ASTHMA CLINIC IF AVAILABLE

Assess and treat severe asthma phenotypes *cont'd*

Continue to optimize management as in section 3 (including inhaler technique, adherence, comorbidities, non-pharmacologic strategies)

8 Consider *add-on biologic Type 2-targeted* treatments



* Check local eligibility criteria for specific biologic therapies as these may vary from those listed

† Number of plus signs (+) indicates strength of association with good asthma response

FeNO: fractional concentration of exhaled nitric oxide; ICS: inhaled corticosteroids; Ig: immunoglobulin; IL: interleukin; IV: intravenous; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; OCS: oral corticosteroids; SC: subcutaneous; TSLP: thymic stromal lymphopoietin.

Box 8-5. Decision tree – monitor and manage severe asthma treatment

SPECIALISTS AND PRIMARY CARE IN COLLABORATION

Monitor / Manage severe asthma treatment

Continue to optimize management

9 Review response

- Asthma: symptom control, exacerbations, lung function
- Type 2 comorbidities e.g. nasal polyposis, atopic dermatitis
- Medications: treatment intensity, side-effects, affordability
- Patient satisfaction

If good response to Type 2-targeted therapy

- Re-evaluate the patient every 3-6 months*
- First, consider decreasing/stopping OCS (and check for adrenal insufficiency) then consider stopping other add-on asthma medications
- Order of reduction of treatments based on observed benefit, potential side-effects, cost and patient preference
- Then, if asthma well-controlled for 3-6 months, consider reducing maintenance ICS-LABA dose, but do not stop maintenance ICS-LABA. See text for details.
- For most patients, biologic therapy should be continued*

If no good response to Type 2-targeted therapy

- Stop the biologic therapy
- Review the basics: differential diagnosis, inhaler technique, adherence, comorbidities, side-effects, emotional support
- Consider high resolution chest CT (if not done)
- Reassess phenotype and treatment options
 - Induced sputum (if available)
 - Consider add-on low dose azithromycin
 - Consider bronchoscopy for alternative/additional diagnoses
 - As last resort, consider add-on low dose OCS, but implement strategies to minimize side-effects
 - Consider bronchial thermoplasty (+ registry)
- Stop ineffective add-on therapies
- Do not stop maintenance ICS

No evidence of Type 2 airway inflammation. Go to section 10

* Check local eligibility criteria for specific biologic therapies as these may vary from those listed

10 Continue to optimize management as in section 3, including:

- Inhaler technique
- Adherence with inhaled and biologic therapy
- Comorbidity management
- Non-pharmacologic strategies
- Patients' social/emotional needs
- Multidisciplinary care (if available)
- Two-way communication with GP for ongoing care

CT: computed tomography; GP: general practitioner/family physician; ICS: inhaled corticosteroids; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; OCS: oral corticosteroids.

INVESTIGATE AND MANAGE DIFFICULT-TO-TREAT ASTHMA IN ADULTS AND ADOLESCENTS

1. Confirm the diagnosis (asthma or differential diagnoses)

Stages 1–5 can be carried out in primary or specialist care. A patient is classified as having difficult-to-treat asthma if they have persistent asthma symptoms and/or exacerbations despite prescribing of medium- or high-dose ICS with another controller such as LABA, or maintenance OCS, or require high-dose ICS-LABA treatment to maintain good symptom control and prevent exacerbations. Difficult-to-treat asthma does not mean a “difficult patient”.

Consider referral to a specialist or severe asthma clinic at any stage, particularly if:

- There is difficulty confirming the diagnosis of asthma
- Patient has frequent urgent healthcare utilization
- Patient needs frequent or maintenance OCS
- Occupational asthma is suspected
- Patient has confirmed food allergy or a history of anaphylaxis, as this increases the risk of death (see p.128)
- Symptoms are suggestive of infective or cardiac cause
- Symptoms are suggestive of complications such as bronchiectasis
- Patient has multimorbidity.

Are the symptoms due to asthma?

Perform a careful history and physical examination to identify whether symptoms are typical of asthma, or are more likely due to an alternative diagnosis or comorbidity:

- **Dyspnea:** COPD, obesity, cardiac disease, deconditioning
- **Cough:** inducible laryngeal obstruction (also called vocal cord dysfunction [VCD]), upper airway cough syndrome (also called post-nasal drip), gastro-esophageal reflux disease (GERD), bronchiectasis, angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors
- **Wheeze:** obesity, COPD, tracheobronchomalacia, VCD.

Investigate according to clinical suspicion and age (see Box 1-3, p.30).

How can the diagnosis of asthma be confirmed?

Confirmation of the diagnosis is important, because in 12–50% of people assumed to have severe asthma, asthma is not found to be the correct diagnosis.⁷¹⁸ Perform spirometry, before and after bronchodilator, to assess baseline lung function and seek objective evidence of variable expiratory airflow. If initial bronchodilator responsiveness testing is negative (<200 mL or <12% increase in FEV₁), consider repeating after withholding bronchodilators or when symptomatic, or consider stepping controller treatment up or down before further investigations such as bronchial provocation testing (see Box 1-4, p.33). Check full flow-volume curve to assess for upper airway obstruction. If spirometry is not available, measure peak expiratory flow (PEF) before and after bronchodilator (highest of 3 PEF readings each time); an increase in PEF ≥20% supports the diagnosis of asthma. If spirometry is normal, provide the patient with a peak flow meter and diary for assessing variability; consider bronchial provocation testing if patient is able to withhold bronchodilators (short-acting beta₂-agonist [SABA] for at least 6 hours, LABA for up to 2 days depending on duration of action).⁴⁸ For more details, see Box 1-2. Strategies for confirming the diagnosis of asthma in patients already taking ICS-containing treatment are shown in Box 1-4 (p.33).

Airflow limitation may be persistent in patients with longstanding asthma, due to remodeling of the airway walls, or limited lung development in childhood. It is important to document lung function when the diagnosis of asthma is first made. Specialist advice should be obtained if the history is suggestive of asthma, but the diagnosis cannot be confirmed by spirometry.

2. Look for factors contributing to symptoms and exacerbations

Systematically consider factors that may be contributing to uncontrolled symptoms or exacerbations, or poor quality of life, and that can be treated.

The most important modifiable factors include:

- **Incorrect inhaler technique** (seen in up to 80% patients): Ask the patient to show you how they use their inhaler; compare with a checklist or video.
- **Suboptimal adherence** (up to 75% asthma patients): Ask empathically about frequency of use, e.g., “Many patients don’t use their inhaler as prescribed. In the last 4 weeks, how many days a week have you been taking it – not at all, 1 day a week, 2, 3 or more?” or “Do you find it easier to remember your inhaler in the morning or the evening?” (see Box 5-3, p.121). Ask about barriers to medication use, including cost, and concerns about necessity or side-effects. Check dates on inhalers and view dispensing data, if available. A FeNO suppression test, i.e., reduced FeNO during a week of high-dose ICS, added to usual maintenance ICS-LABA (p.120), can identify patients with poor adherence.^{256,531} Electronic inhaler monitoring, if available, can be helpful in screening for poor adherence, in some cases avoiding the need for biologic therapy.⁵⁴³
- **Comorbidities**: Review history and physical examination findings for comorbidities that can contribute to respiratory symptoms, exacerbations, or poor quality of life. These include anxiety and depression, obesity (p.126), deconditioning, chronic rhinosinusitis (p.129), inducible laryngeal obstruction, GERD (p.127), COPD (p.143), obstructive sleep apnea, bronchiectasis, cardiac disease, and kyphosis due to osteoporosis. Investigate according to clinical suspicion.
- **Modifiable risk factors and triggers**: Identify factors that increase the risk of exacerbations, e.g., smoking, vaping, environmental tobacco exposure, other environmental exposures at home or work including allergens (if sensitized), indoor and outdoor air pollution, molds and noxious chemicals, and medications such as beta-blockers or non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). For allergens, check for sensitization using skin prick testing or specific immunoglobulin (Ig)E.
- **Regular use and over-use of SABAs**: Regular SABA use causes beta-receptor down-regulation and reduction in response,⁷¹⁹ leading in turn to greater use. SABA over-use may also be habitual. Dispensing of ≥3 SABA canisters per year (corresponding to average use more than daily) is associated with increased risk of emergency department visit or hospitalization independent of severity,^{102,103} and dispensing of ≥12 canisters per year (one a month) is associated with substantially increased risk of death.^{103,105} Risks are higher with nebulized SABA.⁷²⁰
- **Anxiety, depression and social and economic problems**: These are very common in asthma, particularly in difficult asthma⁷¹⁴ and contribute to symptoms, impaired quality of life, and poor adherence.
- **Medication side-effects**: Systemic effects, particularly with frequent or continuous OCS, or long-term high-dose ICS may contribute to poor quality of life and increase the likelihood of poor adherence. Local side-effects of dysphonia or candidiasis may occur with high-dose or potent ICS, especially if inhaler technique is poor. Consider drug interactions including risk of adrenal suppression with use of cytochrome P450 inhibitors, such as itraconazole.

3. Review and optimize management

Review and optimize treatment for asthma, and for comorbidities and risk factors identified at Stage 2:

- **Provide asthma self-management education**, and confirm that patient has (and knows how to use) a personalized written or electronic asthma action plan. Refer to an asthma educator, if available.
- **Optimize asthma medications**: Confirm that the inhaler is suitable for the patient; check and correct inhaler technique with a physical demonstration and teach-back method, check inhaler technique again at each visit.⁷²¹ Address suboptimal adherence, both intentional and unintentional.⁵⁵⁰ Switch to ICS-formoterol maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) if available, to reduce the risk of exacerbations.²⁵⁴ Electronic inhaler monitoring with feedback can improve adherence.⁵⁴³
- **Consider non-pharmacological add-on therapy**, e.g., smoking cessation, physical exercise,²⁶³ healthy diet, weight loss, mucus clearance strategies, vaccinations including influenza and respiratory syncytial virus (RSV, p.116), pulmonary rehabilitation (p.66), breathing exercises (p.69), and allergen avoidance, if feasible, for patients who are

sensitized and exposed (p.67, p.70). For details see text following Box 3-6, p.63. However, **do not delay referral** for specialist assessment if the person has made unsuccessful attempts at smoking cessation and weight loss. Consider exposure mitigation for respiratory viruses (physical distancing from contacts with respiratory infections, mask wearing).

- **Treat comorbidities and modifiable risk factors** identified in Stage 2 of the decision tree, where there is evidence for benefit; however, there is no evidence to support routine treatment of asymptomatic GERD (see p.127). Avoid medications that make asthma worse (beta-blockers including eye-drops, aspirin and other NSAIDs in patients with aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease, p.138). Refer for management of mental health problems, if relevant. For more details on multimorbidity, see Section 6 (p.126), including information about treatment of chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps (CRSwNP) and without (CRSSNP) nasal polyps (p.129).
- **Consider trial of non-biologic medication** added to medium dose ICS, e.g., LABA, LAMA, LTRA if not already tried. Note concerns about neuropsychiatric adverse effects with montelukast.³³⁰
- **Consider short-term (3–6 months) trial of high-dose ICS-LABA** if not currently used.

4. Review response after approximately 3–6 months

Schedule a review visit to assess the response to the above interventions. Timing of the review visit depends on clinical urgency and what changes to treatment have been made.

When assessing the response to treatment, specifically review:

- Symptom control (symptom frequency, SABA reliever use, night waking due to asthma, activity limitation)
- Exacerbations since previous visit, and how they were managed
- Medication side-effects
- Inhaler technique and adherence
- Lung function
- Patient satisfaction and concerns.

Is asthma still uncontrolled, despite optimized therapy?

YES: If asthma is still uncontrolled, the diagnosis of severe asthma is likely. If not done by now, refer the patient to a specialist or severe asthma clinic if possible.

NO: If asthma is now well controlled, consider stepping down treatment. Start by decreasing/ceasing OCS first (if used), checking for adrenal insufficiency, then consider removing other add-on therapy, then decrease ICS dose, but do not stop ICS. See Box 4-13 (p.112) for how to gradually down-titrate treatment intensity.

Does asthma become uncontrolled when treatment is stepped down?

YES: If asthma symptoms become uncontrolled or an exacerbation occurs when high-dose treatment is stepped down, the diagnosis of severe asthma is likely. Restore the patient's previous dose to regain good asthma control, and refer to a specialist or severe asthma clinic, if possible, if not done already.

NO: If symptoms and exacerbations remain well controlled despite treatment being stepped down, the patient does not have severe asthma. Continue optimizing management.

INVESTIGATE THE SEVERE ASTHMA PHENOTYPE AND CONSIDER NON-BIOLOGIC THERAPIES

5. Investigate further and provide patient support

Further assessment and management should be done by a specialist, preferably in a multidisciplinary severe asthma clinic if available. The team may include a certified asthma educator and healthcare providers from fields such as speech pathology, otorhinolaryngology, social work and mental health.

What other tests may be considered at the specialist level?

Additional investigations may be appropriate for identifying less-common comorbidities and differential diagnoses contributing to symptoms and/or exacerbations.

Tests should be based on clinical suspicion, and may include:

- Chest X-ray or high-resolution CT chest, if not already done, including for identification of mucus plugging, bronchiectasis, and emphysema
- In patients with asthma who have early-onset persistent airflow limitation, or have emphysema on CT scan with little smoking history, consider testing for alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency
- Allergy testing for clinically relevant allergens: skin prick test or specific IgE, if not already done
- Investigate for other airway/lung conditions, e.g., aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease (AERD), CRSwNP, inducible laryngeal obstruction, obstructive sleep apnea, allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis (ABPA), bronchiectasis, tracheobronchomalacia, and infection (e.g., TB, mycobacterium avian complex (MAC), based on clinical suspicion and other findings
- Bone density scan, because of risk of osteoporosis with maintenance or frequent OCS or long-term high-dose ICS¹⁸³
- Investigate for other adverse effects of OCS or high-dose ICS, e.g., morning serum cortisol for adrenal insufficiency
- Investigate for other non-pulmonary conditions that may be contributing to respiratory symptoms, exacerbations or poor quality of life, e.g., GERD, cardiac failure, pulmonary embolic disease, anxiety, depression, depending on clinical suspicion and tests already done.

If blood eosinophils are $\geq 300/\mu\text{L}$, look for and treat non-asthma causes, including parasites (e.g., Strongyloides serology or stool examination), because parasitic infection may be the cause of the blood eosinophilia, and because OCS or biologic therapy in a patient with untreated parasitic infection could potentially lead to disseminated disease. Strongyloides infection is usually asymptomatic.⁷²²

If hypereosinophilia is found, e.g., blood eosinophils $\geq 1500/\mu\text{L}$, consider causes such as eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (EGPA).

If other causes of the patient's symptoms and exacerbations have been excluded, the diagnosis of severe asthma is confirmed.

Consider need for social/psychological support

Refer patients to support services, where available, to help them deal with the emotional, social and financial burden of asthma and its treatment, including during and after severe exacerbations.⁷¹⁴ Consider the need for psychological or psychiatric referral, including for patients with anxiety and/or depression.

Involve multidisciplinary team care (if available)

Multidisciplinary assessment and treatment of patients with severe asthma increases identification of comorbidities and improves outcomes.⁷²³

Invite patient to enroll in a registry (if available) or clinical trial (if appropriate)

Systematic collection of data will help in understanding the mechanisms and burden of severe asthma. There is a need for pragmatic clinical trials in severe asthma, including studies comparing two or more active treatments. Participants in randomized controlled trials designed for regulatory purposes may not necessarily be representative of

patients seen in clinical practice. For example, a registry study found that over 80% of patients with severe asthma would have been excluded from key studies evaluating biologic therapy.⁴⁰³

6. Assess the severe asthma phenotype

The next stage is to assess the patient's inflammatory phenotype – is there evidence of Type 2 inflammation?

What is Type 2 inflammation?

Evidence of Type 2 inflammation is found in most people with severe asthma. It is often characterized by the presence of cytokines such as interleukin (IL)-4, IL-5 and IL-13, which are produced by the adaptive immune system on recognition of allergens. The adaptive immune system may also be activated by viruses, bacteria and irritants that stimulate it via production of IL-33, IL-25 and thymic stromal lymphopoietin (TSLP) by epithelial cells. Type 2 inflammation is often characterized by elevated sputum and blood eosinophils or increased fractional exhaled nitric oxide (FeNO), and it may be accompanied by atopy and elevated IgE, whereas patients without evidence of Type 2 inflammation often have increased neutrophils.⁷²⁴

A single low blood eosinophil count does not rule out Type 2 asthma, and may reflect fluctuating levels. In one study, patients with fluctuating blood eosinophil counts had similar exacerbation rates as those with persistently high levels.⁷²⁵

In many patients with asthma, Type 2 inflammation rapidly improves when an ICS is taken regularly and correctly;^{256,543} these patients do not have severe asthma. In severe asthma, Type 2 inflammation may be relatively refractory to high-dose ICS. It may respond to OCS, but this should be avoided because of their serious adverse effects.^{179,181}

In adult patients with uncontrolled asthma despite medium- or high-dose ICS plus LABA or other controllers, a history of exacerbations in the previous year, higher blood eosinophil counts and higher FeNO levels are associated with a greater risk of severe exacerbations.^{100,726} However, there are multiple sources of variation in blood eosinophils^{61,727} and in FeNO,⁵⁸ which may impact on the ability to document a patient's eligibility for Type 2-directed biologic therapy. (See Appendix A, p.238).

Could the patient have refractory or underlying Type 2 inflammation?

The possibility of refractory Type 2 inflammation should be considered if any of the following are found while the patient is taking high-dose ICS, or daily OCS:

- Blood eosinophils $\geq 150/\mu\text{L}$
- FeNO ≥ 20 ppb
- Sputum eosinophils $\geq 2\%$
- Asthma is clinically allergen-driven.

Patients requiring maintenance OCS may also have underlying Type 2 inflammation. However, biomarkers of Type 2 inflammation (blood eosinophils, sputum eosinophils and FeNO) are often suppressed by OCS. If possible, therefore, these tests should be performed before starting OCS (a short course, or maintenance treatment), or at least 1–2 weeks after a course of OCS, or on the lowest possible OCS dose.

There are multiple causes of variation in blood eosinophil count and FeNO, summarized in Appendix A (p.238). These include time of day, with blood eosinophils higher in the early morning and FeNO higher in the afternoon than early morning (p.238). One study of patients with uncontrolled asthma taking medium- to high-dose ICS-LABA found that 65% had a shift in their blood eosinophil category over 48–56 weeks.⁷²⁸ Therefore, consider repeating blood eosinophils and FeNO up to 3 times (e.g., when asthma worsens, before giving OCS, or at least 1–2 weeks after a course of OCS, or on the lowest possible OCS dose), before assuming that the patient is not eligible for Type 2-targeted therapy. A pause of even 2 days in OCS dosing may allow the blood eosinophil count to reach the eligibility threshold.⁷²⁹

The above criteria are suggested for initial assessment; those for blood eosinophils and FeNO are based on the lowest levels associated with response to some biologics. They are not the criteria for eligibility for Type 2-targeted biologic therapy, which may differ – see stage 8 (p.162) and local regulatory and payer criteria.

Why is the inflammatory phenotype assessed on high-dose ICS?

- Most randomized controlled trial (RCT) evidence about Type 2 targeted biologics is in such patients.
- Modifiable ICS treatment problems such as poor adherence and incorrect inhaler technique are common causes of uncontrolled Type 2 inflammation.
- Currently, the high cost of biologic therapies generally precludes their widespread clinical use in patients whose symptoms or exacerbations and Type 2 biomarkers are found to respond to ICS when it is taken correctly.

7.1. Consider other treatments if there is no evidence of Type 2 inflammation

If the patient has no evidence of persistent Type 2 inflammation (stage 6):

- Review the basics for factors that may be contributing to symptoms or exacerbations: differential diagnosis, inhaler technique, adherence, comorbidities, medication side-effects (stage 2).
- Recommend avoidance of relevant exposures (tobacco smoke, pollution, allergens if sensitized and there is evidence of benefit from withdrawal, irritants, infections). Ask about exposures at home and at work.
- Consider additional diagnostic investigations (if available and not already done): sputum induction to confirm inflammatory phenotype, high resolution chest CT, bronchoscopy to exclude unusual comorbidities or alternative diagnoses such as tracheobronchomalacia or sub-glottic stenosis, functional laryngoscopy for inducible laryngeal obstruction.
- Consider a trial of add-on treatment if available and not already tried (but check local eligibility and payer criteria for specific therapies as they may vary from those listed):
 - LAMA^{406,411,413} (note that doses of triple therapy for asthma may differ from those approved for COPD)
 - Low-dose azithromycin (adults),^{430,431} but first check sputum for atypical mycobacteria, check ECG for long QTc (and re-check after a month on treatment), and consider potential for antibiotic resistance.
 - Anti-IL4Rα if taking maintenance OCS (see stage 8 for more details)
 - Anti-thymic stromal lymphopoietin (TSLP) (but insufficient evidence in patients taking maintenance OCS; see stage 8 for more details)
 - As a last resort, consider add-on low-dose OCS, but implement strategies with this such as alternate-day treatment to help reduce the dose further and minimize side-effects.
- Bronchial thermoplasty can be considered, with registry enrollment. However, the evidence for efficacy and long-term safety is limited^{170,500} (see p.116)
- Stop ineffective add-on therapies.
- Continue to optimize treatment, including inhaler technique, adherence, non-pharmacologic strategies and treating comorbidities (see stages 3 and 10).
- Repeat Type 2 biomarkers if the clinical context changes, e.g., cessation of OCS or reduction in OCS dose.

7.2. Consider non-biologic options if there is evidence of Type 2 inflammation

For patients with elevated Type 2 biomarkers despite high-dose ICS (see stage 5), consider non-biologic options first, given the current high cost of biologic therapy:

- *Assess adherence objectively* by monitoring of prescribing or dispensing records, blood prednisolone levels,⁵³⁰ or electronic inhaler monitoring.⁵²⁸ Suppression of high FeNO after 5 days of directly observed therapy is an indicator of past poor adherence,²⁵⁶ and was found in almost two-thirds of patients with difficult-to-treat asthma.⁵³¹ In one study, electronic monitoring of adherence and inhaler technique, with feedback to patients, improved adherence and reduced the proportion of patients who needed escalation to biologic therapy.⁵⁴³
- *Consider increasing the ICS dose for 3–6 months*, and review again.
- *Consider add-on non-biologic treatment for specific Type 2 clinical phenotypes* (see Section 6, p.126). For example, for AERD, consider add-on LTRA and possibly aspirin desensitization (p.138). For ABPA, consider add-on OCS ± anti-fungal agent (p.138). For chronic rhinosinusitis with or without nasal polyps, consider intensive intranasal corticosteroids; surgical advice may be needed (p.129). For patients with atopic dermatitis, topical steroidal or non-steroidal therapy may be helpful. Allergen immunotherapy may sometimes be used in severe

asthma, but only after asthma has been well controlled, to minimize the risk of severe adverse reactions. Allergen immunotherapy extracts for subcutaneous immunotherapy (SCIT) should only be prepared and administered by clinicians skilled in immunotherapy (see p.114).

7.3. Is Type 2-targeted biologic therapy available and affordable?

If NOT:

- Consider higher dose ICS-LABA, if not used.
- Consider other add-on therapy, e.g., LAMA, LTRA, low-dose azithromycin, if not already used.
- As last resort, consider add-on low-dose OCS, but implement strategies to minimize side-effects.
- Stop ineffective add-on therapies.
- Continue to optimize treatment, including inhaler technique, adherence, non-pharmacologic strategies and treating comorbidities (see stages 3 and 10).

CONSIDER TYPE 2-TARGETED BIOLOGIC THERAPIES

8. Consider add-on biologic Type 2-targeted treatments

If available and affordable, consider an add-on Type 2 targeted biologic for patients with exacerbations and/or poor symptom control despite taking at least high-dose ICS-LABA, and who have allergic or eosinophilic Type 2-high severe asthma or need maintenance OCS. Where relevant, test for parasitic infection, and treat if present, before commencing treatment (see stage 5).

Consider whether to start first with anti-IgE, anti-IL5/5Rα, anti-IL4Rα or anti-TSLP. When choosing between available therapies, consider the following:

- Does the patient satisfy local payer eligibility criteria?
- Type 2 comorbidities such as atopic dermatitis, nasal polyps that may have co-indications for biologic therapy (see below and Box 8-6, p.166).
- Clinical history suggesting allergen-triggered symptoms
- Predictors of asthma response (see below)
- Cost
- Dosing frequency
- Delivery route (IV or SC; potential for self-administration)
- Patient preference.

Always check local payer eligibility criteria for biologic therapy, as they may vary substantially. However, GINA recommends the use of biologic therapy only for patients with severe asthma, and only after treatment has been optimized. For any biologic therapy, ensure that the manufacturer's and/or regulator's instructions for storage, administration and the duration of monitoring post-administration are followed.

Provide the patient with advice about what to do if they experience any adverse effects, including hypersensitivity reactions. Omalizumab and biosimilar **omalizumab-igec** injections contain polysorbate, which may induce allergic reactions in some patients. GINA suggests that the **first** dose of asthma biologic therapy should not be given on the same day as a vaccine, so that adverse effects of either can be more easily distinguished.

Provide practical advice for patients, e.g., allow the refrigerated syringe or pen to come to room temperature before injecting the biologic, as this reduces pain. For travel, some biologic therapies can be carried without refrigeration for up to 14 days; check local product information and airline advice about travelling with sharps.

There is an urgent need for head-to-head comparisons of different biologics in patients eligible for more than one biologic.

Add-on anti-IgE for severe allergic asthma

Regulatory approvals for severe asthma may include: omalizumab and biosimilar omalizumab-igec for ages ≥ 6 years, given by SC injection every 2–4 weeks, with dose based on weight and serum IgE. Self-administration may be an option. Check local payer criteria, as they may differ from these.

Mechanism: binds to Fc part of free IgE, preventing binding of IgE to Fc ϵ R1 receptors, reducing free IgE and down-regulating receptor expression.

Eligibility criteria (in addition to criteria for severe asthma) may vary between payers or by age-group, but often include:

- Sensitization to inhaled allergen(s) on skin prick testing or specific IgE
- Total serum IgE and body weight within local dosing range
- More than a specified number of exacerbations within the last year.

Outcomes: Meta-analysis of RCTs in severe allergic asthma: anti-IgE led to 44% decrease in severe exacerbations, and improved quality of life; improvements in symptom control and lung function were statistically significant but less than clinically important differences.⁴¹⁴ No double-blind RCTs of OCS-sparing effect. In a meta-analysis of observational studies in patients with severe allergic asthma, there was a 59% reduction in exacerbation rate, a 41% reduction in the proportion of patients receiving maintenance OCS, and a significant improvement in symptom control.⁷³⁰ A registry study of omalizumab in pregnancy found no increased risk of congenital malformations.⁶⁴¹

Potential predictors of good asthma response to omalizumab or biosimilar omalizumab-igec:

- Childhood-onset asthma
- Clinical history suggesting allergen-driven symptoms.

Baseline IgE level does not predict likelihood of response to anti-IgE.⁷³¹ In two large observational studies, exacerbations were reduced with both low or high blood eosinophils⁷³²⁻⁷³⁴ or with both low or high FeNO.⁷³⁴

Additional indications for anti-IgE may include CRSwNP, chronic spontaneous (idiopathic) urticaria, and IgE-mediated food allergy. See Box 8-6, p.166 for doses and age-groups. Check local payer details, as they may differ.

In patients with nasal polyps, omalizumab improved subjective and objective nasal outcomes.⁶⁰³ Additional details about treatment of CRSwNP are found on p.129.

Adverse effects: injection site reactions, anaphylaxis (approximately 0.2% patients).⁷³⁵ In adults, long-term safety and efficacy of omalizumab have been reported for more than 5 years of treatment.⁷³⁶

Suggested initial trial for severe asthma: at least 4 months

Add-on anti-IL5 or anti-IL5R α for severe eosinophilic asthma

Regulatory approvals for severe asthma may include:

- For ages ≥ 12 years: mepolizumab (anti-IL5), 100 mg by SC injection every 4 weeks, or benralizumab (anti-IL5 receptor α), 30 mg by SC injection every 4 weeks for 3 doses then every 8 weeks, or depemokimab (anti-IL5), 100 mg by SC injection every 26 weeks
- For ages ≥ 18 years: reslizumab (anti-IL5), 3 mg/kg by IV infusion every 4 weeks
- For ages 6–11 years, mepolizumab (anti-IL5), 40 mg by SC injection every 4 weeks.

Self-administration may be an option. Check local payer criteria, as they may differ from these.

Mechanism: mepolizumab, depemokimab and reslizumab bind circulating IL-5; benralizumab binds to IL-5 receptor alpha subunit leading to apoptosis (cell death) of eosinophils.

Eligibility criteria (in addition to criteria for severe asthma) vary by product and between payers, but usually include:

- More than a specified number of severe exacerbations in the last year
- Blood eosinophils above locally specified level (e.g., ≥ 150 or $\geq 300/\mu\text{L}$). There is sometimes a different eosinophil cut-point for patients taking OCS.

Outcomes: Meta-analysis of RCTs in severe asthma patients with exacerbations in the last year, with varying eosinophil criteria: anti-IL5 and anti-IL5Rα led to 47–54% reduction in severe exacerbations. Improvements in lung function and symptom control were statistically significant,⁴²⁰ but less than clinically important differences. Similar results were seen in placebo-controlled studies of depemokimab (48–58% reduction in severe exacerbations, with less than clinically important differences in symptom control and lung function)⁴²¹. There was a clinically important improvement in quality of life with mepolizumab.⁴²⁰ All anti-IL5/5Rα biologics reduced blood eosinophils; almost completely with benralizumab.⁷³⁷ In post hoc analyses, clinical outcomes with mepolizumab or benralizumab were similar in patients with eosinophilic asthma with and without an allergic phenotype.^{738,739} However, in patients with non-severe younger-onset allergic asthma, mepolizumab and benralizumab did not attenuate either the allergen-induced early or late asthmatic response, or airway hyperresponsiveness to methacholine.⁷⁴⁰ In patients taking OCS, median OCS dose was able to be reduced by approximately 50% with mepolizumab⁷⁴¹ or benralizumab,⁴¹⁸ compared with placebo. In urban children aged 6 years and older with eosinophilic exacerbation-prone asthma, an RCT showed a reduction in the number of exacerbations with subcutaneous mepolizumab versus placebo.⁴¹⁹ No differences were seen in lung function, a composite asthma score (CASI), or physician–patient global assessment.⁴¹⁹ For adults with severe eosinophilic asthma, analysis of a depemokimab study suggested that switching to it may be considered for patients with a good response to mepolizumab, but not for patients with a good response to benralizumab.⁷⁴² More studies are needed.

Potential predictors of good asthma response to anti-IL5 or anti-IL5Rα:

- Higher blood eosinophils (strongly predictive)⁷⁴³
- Higher number of severe exacerbations in previous year (strongly predictive)⁷⁴³
- Adult-onset asthma^{744,745}
- Nasal polyps⁷³⁹
- Maintenance OCS at baseline^{739,745}
- Low lung function (FEV₁ <65% predicted) in one study.⁷⁴⁵

Additional indications for anti-IL5 or anti-IL5Rα may include mepolizumab for EGPA and hypereosinophilic syndrome, benralizumab for EGPA, mepolizumab and depemokimab for CRSwNP, and mepolizumab for COPD with an eosinophilic phenotype. See Box 8-6, p.166 for doses and age-groups. Check local payer details, as they may differ.

In patients with nasal polyps, mepolizumab^{604,605} and depemokimab⁶⁰⁸ improved subjective and objective outcomes and reduced the need for surgery, and in patients with nasal polyps and severe eosinophilic asthma, benralizumab improved subjective outcomes for both conditions and improved quality of life.⁷⁴⁶ See p.129 for more details about treatment of nasal polyps.

Adverse effects: In adults, injection site reactions, anaphylaxis (rare); adverse events generally similar between active and placebo groups. In children, more skin/subcutaneous tissue and nervous system disorders (e.g., headache, dizziness, syncope) reported with mepolizumab than placebo.⁴¹⁹ In adults, long-term safety and efficacy of mepolizumab and benralizumab have been reported for more than 5 years of treatment.^{747,748} No data are available yet for outcomes of pregnancy in women treated with depemokimab.

Suggested initial trial for severe asthma: at least 4 months (6 months for depemokimab).

Add-on anti-IL4Rα for severe eosinophilic/Type 2 asthma or patients requiring maintenance OCS

Regulatory approvals for severe asthma may include:

- For ages ≥12 years: dupilumab (anti-IL4 receptor α), 200 mg or 300 mg by SC injection every 2 weeks for severe eosinophilic/Type 2 asthma
- For ages ≥12 years: dupilumab 300 mg by SC injection every 2 weeks for OCS-dependent severe asthma or if there is concomitant moderate/severe atopic dermatitis or CRSwNP
- For children 6–11 years with severe eosinophilic/Type 2 asthma by SC injection, with dose and frequency depending on weight.

Self-administration may be an option. Check local payer criteria, as they may differ from these.

Mechanism: binds to interleukin-4 (IL-4) receptor alpha, blocking both IL-4 and IL-13 signaling

Eligibility criteria (in addition to criteria for severe asthma): these may vary between payers or by age-group, but often include:

- More than a specified number of severe exacerbations in the last year
- Type 2 biomarkers above a specified level (e.g., blood eosinophils $\geq 150/\mu\text{L}$ and $\leq 1500/\mu\text{L}$, or FeNO ≥ 25 ppb) OR requirement for maintenance OCS.

Outcomes: Meta-analysis of RCTs in patients with uncontrolled severe asthma (ACQ-5 ≥ 1.5) and at least one exacerbation in the last year: anti-IL4R α led to 56% reduction in severe exacerbations. Improvements in quality of life, symptom control and lung function were statistically significant,⁴²⁴ but less than the clinically important differences. In a post hoc analysis, clinical outcomes were similar in patients with allergic and non-allergic phenotype at baseline.⁷⁴⁹ In patients with OCS-dependent severe asthma, without minimum requirements for blood eosinophil count or FeNO, the median reduction in OCS dose was 50% greater with anti-IL4R α than with placebo.⁷⁵⁰ Changes were maintained through 2 years of follow-up.⁷⁵¹ In children 6–11 years with eosinophilic/Type 2 asthma (excluding children taking maintenance OCS), dupilumab reduced severe exacerbation rate and increased lung function.⁴²⁵ In an open-label extension study, the decrease in severe exacerbations among children who commenced dupilumab after 1 year of placebo was similar to that seen in those who received dupilumab from the start, but improvement in lung function was lower among those who were taking medium-dose ICS.⁷⁵²

Potential predictors of good asthma response to dupilumab:

- Higher blood eosinophils (strongly predictive)⁴²² including in children⁷⁵³
- Higher FeNO (strongly predictive).⁴²² including in children.⁷⁵³

Among adults with moderate-severe asthma and blood eosinophils ≥ 150 cells/ μL or FeNO ≥ 20 ppb, there was greater improvement in severe exacerbations and in pre-bronchodilator FEV₁ with dupilumab in those with asthma onset ≥ 18 years, but greater improvement in lung function in those with asthma duration < 20 years.⁷⁵⁴

Additional indications for dupilumab may include moderate-to-severe atopic dermatitis, chronic spontaneous urticaria, chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps, COPD with chronic bronchitis and an eosinophilic phenotype, and eosinophilic esophagitis (see Box 8-6, p.166 for doses and age-groups). Check local payer details, as they may differ.

In patients with chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps, dupilumab improved subjective and objective outcomes and reduced the need for OCS or for sinus surgery.^{606,755} See p.129 for more details about nasal polyps.

Adverse effects: injection-site reactions; transient blood eosinophilia (occurs in 4–13% of patients); rare cases of EGPA may be unmasked following reduction/cessation of OCS treatment on dupilumab. Anti-IL4R α is not suggested for patients with baseline or historic blood eosinophils $> 1,500$ cells/ μL because of limited evidence (such patients were excluded from Phase III trials). In adults, safety and efficacy of dupilumab have been reported for over 5 years of treatment^{752,756} and, in children aged 6–11 years, for up to 2 years of treatment.⁷⁵²

Suggested initial trial for severe asthma: at least 4 months

Add-on anti-TSLP for severe asthma

Regulatory approvals for severe asthma may include: For ages ≥ 12 years: tezepelumab (anti-TSLP), 210 mg by SC injection every 4 weeks. Self-administration may be an option. Check local payer criteria, as they may differ from these.

Mechanism: Tezepelumab binds circulating TSLP, a bronchial epithelial cell-derived alarmin implicated in multiple downstream processes involved in asthma pathophysiology.

Eligibility criteria (in addition to criteria for severe asthma): These vary between payers, but usually include severe exacerbations in the last year.

Anti-TSLP may be considered in patients with or without elevated Type 2 markers (for the latter, see Stage 7.1, p.161).

Outcomes: In two RCTs in severe asthma patients with severe exacerbations in the last year, anti-TSLP led to 30–70% reduction in severe exacerbations, and improved quality of life, lung function and symptom control, irrespective of allergic status.^{426,427} There was a clear correlation between higher baseline blood eosinophils or FeNO and better

clinical outcomes.⁴²⁷ In patients taking maintenance OCS, anti-TSLP did not lead to a reduced OCS dose, compared with placebo.⁴²⁸

*Potential predictors of good asthma response to anti-TSLP:*⁷⁵⁷

- Higher blood eosinophils (strongly predictive)
- Higher FeNO levels (strongly predictive)
- Nasal polyposis.

Additional indications for tezepelumab may include chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps. See Box 8-6, p.166 for doses and age-groups. Check local payer details, as they may differ.

Adverse effects: Injection site reactions; anaphylaxis is rare; adverse events were generally similar between active and placebo groups. In adults, safety and efficacy of tezepelumab have been reported over up to 2 years of treatment.⁷⁵⁸

Suggested initial trial for severe asthma: at least 4 months

Box 8-6. Examples of current non-asthma indications for biologic therapy

Biologic	Non-asthma indications include...	Dose and frequency	Ages
Anti-IgE			
Omalizumab and omalizumab-igec	IgE-mediated food allergy	Based on weight and serum IgE	≥1 year
	CRSwNP	Based on weight and serum IgE	≥18 years
	Chronic spontaneous urticaria	150 mg or 300 mg SC every 4 weeks	≥12 years
Anti-IL5/5R			
Mepolizumab	CRSwNP	100 mg SC every 4 weeks	≥18 years
	COPD with eosinophilic phenotype	100 mg SC every 4 weeks	≥18 years
	EGPA	300 mg SC every 4 weeks	≥18 years
	Hypereosinophilic syndrome	300 mg SC every 4 weeks	≥12 years
Depemokimab	CRSwNP	100 mg SC every 26 weeks	≥18 years
Reslizumab	–	–	–
Benralizumab	EGPA	30 mg SC every 4 weeks	≥18 years
Anti-IL4Rα			
Dupilumab*	Moderate-to-severe atopic dermatitis	Adults: 300 mg SC every 2 weeks Children: based on age and weight	≥6 months
	Chronic spontaneous urticaria	Based on age and weight	≥12 years
	CRSwNP	300 mg SC every 2 weeks	≥12 years
	COPD with chronic bronchitis and eosinophilic phenotype	300 mg SC every 2 weeks	≥18 years
	Eosinophilic esophagitis	Based on weight	≥1 year
Anti-TSLP			
Tezepelumab	Chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps	210 mg every 4 weeks	≥12 years

Check local payer details, as they may differ from these. See product information for other indications.

COPD: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; CRSwNP: chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps; EGPA: eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis; Ig: immunoglobulin; SC: subcutaneous. *Some indications for dupilumab include a loading dose

Review response to an initial trial of add-on Type 2-targeted therapy

- At present, there are no well-defined criteria for a good asthma response, but consider exacerbations, symptom control, lung function, treatment intensity (including OCS dose), and patient satisfaction.
- Also consider the patient's biomarkers (interval and during exacerbations, if available), and response of any comorbid Type 2 conditions (atopic dermatitis, nasal polyps, etc). Review response as above.
- If the response is unclear, consider extending the trial to a total of 6–12 months. If there is only a partial response, or a differential response between asthma and comorbid conditions, re-evaluate these diagnoses.
- Monitor for potential adverse events, including for infections
- If there is no response, stop the biologic therapy, and consider switching to a trial of a different Type 2-targeted therapy, if available and if the patient is eligible.

ASSESS, MANAGE AND MONITOR ONGOING SEVERE ASTHMA TREATMENT

9. Review response and implications for treatment

Review response to add-on biologic therapy after 3–4 months, and every 3–6 months for ongoing care, including:

- Asthma: symptom control, both recent e.g., with validated tools such as Asthma Control Test (4 weeks) and Asthma Control Questionnaire (ACQ-5, 1 week), and over the whole period since last review, frequency and severity of exacerbations (including whether OCS were needed); lung function
- Any change in relevant Type 2 comorbidities, e.g., nasal polyps, atopic dermatitis
- Medications: treatment intensity, including courses of OCS and dose of any maintenance OCS, side-effects, affordability
- Patient satisfaction.

The goals of management (Box 3-3, p.58) are to achieve the best possible outcomes for the individual, including long-term symptom control and long-term asthma risk minimization. For patients with a good response to treatment for severe asthma, this may include clinical remission on treatment (p.55).

If the patient has had a good response to Type 2 targeted therapy:

Re-evaluate the need for each asthma medication every 3–6 months, but emphasize to patients and their primary care physician that they should not completely stop ICS-containing therapy. Base the order of reduction or cessation of add-on treatments on potential adverse effects, the observed benefit when the medication was started, patient risk factors, cost, and patient satisfaction. Minimizing the use of OCS is a very high priority.

After reducing/ceasing any medication, confirm asthma stability before making any further treatment changes.

For oral treatments, gradually decrease or stop OCS first, because of their significant adverse effects. Tapering of OCS in severe asthma may be supported by internet-based monitoring of symptom control and FeNO.⁷⁵⁹ Monitor patients for risk of adrenal insufficiency by measuring morning serum cortisol, and provide patient and primary care physician with advice about the need for extra corticosteroid doses during injury, illness or surgery for up to 6 months after cessation of long-term OCS. Continue to assess for presence of osteoporosis, and review need for preventative strategies including bisphosphonates.¹⁸³

If asthma remains well controlled, consider reducing or ceasing other therapies, based on the above considerations.

For inhaled treatments, consider ceasing add-on inhaled therapy such as LAMA before reducing ICS-LABA dose. Reduction in dose of ICS-containing therapy may be considered after asthma has been well controlled on biologic therapy for at least 3–6 months and stability has been confirmed after any other medication changes. However, do not completely stop ICS-containing therapy. Previous advice based on consensus was to continue at least medium-dose ICS-LABA. In an open-label study in patients with good symptom control on anti-IL5R α , most of those randomized to MART with ICS-formoterol were able to have their maintenance ICS-formoterol dose gradually reduced (and in some cases stopped, continuing as-needed-only ICS-formoterol) without exacerbations.⁴⁰⁵ However, patients who ceased maintenance ICS-formoterol treatment demonstrated evidence of under-dosing with ICS, with reduction in lung function and increase in FeNO, suggesting that in patients with severe asthma, maintenance ICS-containing therapy should not be stopped completely.⁴⁰⁵ Any reduction in ICS dose should be considered as a treatment trial and the

previous dose reinstated if deterioration occurs (Box 4-13, p.112). Remind patients it is important to continue their maintenance ICS-containing treatment.

For biologic treatments, current consensus advice is that, generally, for a patient with a good response, a trial of withdrawal of the biologic should not be considered until after at least 12 months of treatment, and only if asthma remains well controlled on medium-dose ICS-containing therapy, and (for allergic asthma) there is no further exposure to a previous well-documented allergic trigger. There are few studies of cessation of biologic therapy,⁷⁶⁰⁻⁷⁶² in these studies, symptom control worsened and/or exacerbations recurred for many (but not all) patients after cessation of the biologic. For example, in a double-blind RCT, significantly more patients who stopped mepolizumab experienced a severe exacerbation within 12 months than those who continued treatment. In this study, there was a small increase in ACQ-5 but no significant difference in symptom control between groups.⁷⁶³

If the patient has NOT had a good response to any Type 2-targeted therapy:

Stop the biologic therapy.

Review the basics for factors contributing to symptoms, exacerbations and poor quality of life (see Section 2): diagnosis/differential diagnosis, inhaler technique, adherence, modifiable risk factors and triggers including smoking and other environmental exposures at home or work, comorbidities including obesity, medication side-effects or drug interactions, socio-economic and mental health issues.

Consider additional investigations (if not already done): high resolution chest CT, induced sputum to confirm inflammatory phenotype, consider bronchoscopy for alternative or additional diagnoses, consider referral if available, including for diagnosis of alternative conditions.

Reassess treatment options (if not already done), such as:

- Add-on low-dose azithromycin^{430,431} (adults only; first check sputum for atypical mycobacteria and check ECG for long QTc (and re-check after a month on treatment); consider potential for antibiotic resistance)
- As last resort, consider add-on low-dose maintenance OCS, but implement strategies such as alternate-day therapy; add bisphosphonate to minimize side-effects on bones,¹⁸³ and alert patient to the need for additional corticosteroid therapy during illness or surgery.
- Bronchial thermoplasty can be considered (with registry), but see p.116.

Stop ineffective add-on therapies, but do not completely stop ICS.

10. Continue collaborative optimization of patient care

Ongoing management of a patient with severe asthma involves a collaboration between the patient, the primary care physician, specialist(s), and other healthcare providers, to optimize clinical outcomes and patient satisfaction. Continue pharmacological and non-pharmacological (p.65) management to achieve the goal of obtaining the best outcomes for the individual patient (p.55).

Continue to review the patient every 3–6 months including:

- Clinical asthma measures (symptom control, exacerbations, lung function)
- Comorbidities
- The patient's risk factors for exacerbations
- Treatments (check inhaler technique and adherence, review need for add-on treatments, assess side-effects including of OCS, and optimize comorbidity management and non-pharmacologic strategies)
- The patient's social and emotional needs.

The optimal frequency and location of review (primary care physician or specialist) will depend on the patient's asthma control, risk factors and comorbidities, and their confidence in self-management, and may depend on local payer requirements and availability of specialist physicians.

Communicate regularly with the family physician and other members of the health care team about:

- Outcome of review visits (as above)
- Patient concerns
- Action plan for worsening asthma or other risks
- Changes to medications (asthma and non-asthma), potential side-effects
- Indications and contact details for expedited review.

COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL - DO NOT COPY OR DISTRIBUTE

9. Management of worsening asthma and exacerbations in adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years

KEY POINTS

Terminology

Exacerbations represent an acute or sub-acute worsening in symptoms and lung function from the patient's usual status, or in some cases, a patient may present for the first time during an exacerbation.

The terms “episodes”, “attacks” and “severe acute asthma” are also often used, but they have variable meanings. The terms “flare-up” and “severe flare-up” are suitable for use in discussions with most patients.

Patients who are at increased risk of asthma-related death should be identified, and flagged in the medical record for more frequent review.

Written asthma action plans

All patients should be provided with a written (i.e., printed, digital or pictorial) asthma action plan appropriate for their age, their current treatment regimen and their reliever inhaler (combination inhaled corticosteroid [ICS]-formoterol, short-acting beta₂-agonist [SABA], or combination ICS-SABA), their level of asthma control, and their health literacy, so they know how to recognize and respond to worsening asthma.

On the action plan, state when and how to change reliever and/or maintenance medications and access medical care if symptoms fail to respond to treatment, and when to use oral corticosteroids (OCS) if appropriate.

Advise patients who have a history of rapid deterioration to go to an acute care facility or see their doctor immediately if their asthma starts to worsen.

Base the action plan on changes in symptoms; in adults, peak expiratory flow (PEF) can also be included.

Management of exacerbations in a primary care or acute care facility

Assess exacerbation severity from the degree of dyspnea, respiratory rate, oxygen saturation and lung function (usually PEF), while starting SABA and oxygen therapy if needed. Objective measurement of the severity of airflow limitation is strongly recommended.

If the patient presents with features of anaphylaxis as well as asthma, give epinephrine (adrenaline) first.

Arrange immediate transfer to an acute care facility if there are signs of severe exacerbation, or to intensive care if the patient is drowsy, confused, or has a silent chest. During transfer, give inhaled SABA and ipratropium bromide, controlled oxygen and systemic corticosteroids.

Start treatment with administration of SABA (in most patients, by pressurized metered-dose inhaler [pMDI] and spacer), and, for moderate or severe presentations, early introduction of oral corticosteroids, addition of ipratropium bromide if available, and controlled flow oxygen if available and required. Oxygen saturation targets should be adjusted for altitude, where appropriate. Review response of symptoms, oxygen saturation and lung function after initial bronchodilator treatment and at 1 hour or earlier. Consider intravenous magnesium sulfate for patients with severe exacerbations not responding to initial treatment.

Do not routinely request a chest X-ray, and do not routinely prescribe antibiotics for asthma exacerbations.

Decide whether the patient requires hospitalization based on clinical status, lung function, response to treatment, recent and past history of exacerbations, and their ability to manage at home.

Discharge management

Arrange ongoing treatment before the patient goes home. For all patients, start or continue ICS-containing treatment, and reduce reliever medication to as-needed use. Train the patient in how to use their inhaler(s), and provide a supply if possible.

For patients using SABA as reliever before the exacerbation, consider switching their treatment regimen to maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with ICS-formoterol (MART, Track 1, p.83), to reduce the risk of future exacerbations. If MART is not available, start ICS-long-acting beta₂-agonist (LABA) at medium dose or increase the current ICS-LABA dose to medium for up to 2–4 weeks.

Patients using an anti-inflammatory reliever (e.g., ICS-formoterol) before the exacerbation should resume or continue this instead of SABA reliever before or on discharge. If the patient was previously using MART with ICS-formoterol, they should resume MART. If the patient was previously using as-needed anti-inflammatory reliever (AIR) with ICS-formoterol (AIR-only), they should be stepped up to MART, i.e., add maintenance ICS-formoterol. There is no need to prescribe or provide SABA for patients prescribed ICS-formoterol reliever.

OCS stewardship encourages optimization of inhaled therapy and use of add-on biologic therapy (where indicated) to prevent the need for OCS, use of an appropriate dose and duration of OCS when needed for moderate or severe exacerbations, avoidance of maintenance treatment with OCS except as last resort, and monitoring of use of OCS.

Arrange early follow-up after any exacerbation, regardless of where it was managed.

At follow-up after an exacerbation:

- Review the patient's symptom control and risk factors for further exacerbations.
- Reinforce the importance of ongoing ICS-containing therapy (preferably GINA Track 1 with ICS-formoterol) to reduce the risk of further exacerbations. If already taking ICS-containing therapy, continue increased doses for 2–4 weeks, but do not stop ICS-containing therapy.
- Provide a written asthma action plan and, where relevant, advice about avoiding exacerbation triggers, including e.g., relevant vaccinations.
- Check inhaler technique and adherence.
- Arrange the next follow-up appointment.

For management of asthma exacerbations in children 5 years and younger, see Section 12 (p.214).

OVERVIEW

Definition of asthma exacerbations

Exacerbations of asthma are episodes characterized by a progressive increase in symptoms of shortness of breath, cough, wheezing or chest tightness and progressive decrease in lung function, i.e., they represent a change from the patient's usual status that is sufficient to require a change in treatment.⁴² Exacerbations may occur in patients with a pre-existing diagnosis of asthma or, occasionally, as the first presentation of asthma.

What triggers asthma exacerbations?

Exacerbations usually occur in response to exposure to an external agent (e.g., viral upper respiratory tract infection, pollen¹¹⁴ or pollution) and/or poor adherence to ICS-containing medication, but onset can be more acute and without known exposure to risk factors in some patients.^{764,765} Severe exacerbations can occur in patients with mild or well-controlled asthma symptoms.^{34,343} Box 2-2B (p.41) lists factors that increase a patient's risk of exacerbations, independent of their level of symptom control.

Common exacerbation triggers include:

- Viral respiratory infections,⁷⁶⁶ e.g., rhinovirus, influenza, adenovirus, pertussis, respiratory syncytial virus (RSV)
- Allergen exposure e.g., grass pollen and other pollens,^{114,322} soybean dust,³²³ fungal spores
- Food allergy¹¹⁰
- Outdoor air pollution^{117,118,767}
- Seasonal changes and/or returning to school in fall (autumn)⁷⁶⁸
- Poor adherence to ICS⁷⁶⁹
- Epidemics of severe asthma exacerbations may occur suddenly, putting high pressure on local health system responses. Such epidemics have been reported in association with springtime thunderstorms and extremely high

levels of an allergen such as rye grass pollen, mugwort pollen or fungal spores.³²¹ Epidemics of asthma exacerbations have also been seen with environmental exposure to soybean dust.³²³

Identifying patients at risk of asthma-related death

In addition to factors known to increase the risk of asthma exacerbations (Box 2-2, p.41), some features are specifically associated with an increase in the risk of asthma-related death (Box 9-1, p.172). The presence of one or more of these risk factors should be quickly identifiable in the clinical notes, and these patients should be encouraged to seek urgent medical care early in the course of an exacerbation.

Box 9-1. Red flags for increased risk of fatal or near-fatal asthma in adults and adolescents

In population studies, the following factors are associated with an increased risk of fatal or near-fatal asthma over a period of time. See Box 9-4 (p.180) and Box 9-6 (p.186) for features of acutely life-threatening presentations.

- A history of near-fatal asthma requiring intubation and mechanical ventilation⁷⁷⁰
- Hospitalization^{770,771} or multiple emergency care visit for asthma in the past year. However, asthma deaths also occur in people without a previous history of urgent health care.⁷⁷²
- Currently using, or having recently stopped, using oral corticosteroids (a marker of event severity)^{105,770}
- Not using inhaled corticosteroids^{106,770}
- Poor adherence to ICS-containing medications and/or poor adherence to (or lack of) a written asthma action plan¹¹⁹
- Over-use of short-acting beta₂-agonists (SABA), with extremely high risk if using an average of more than one canister of salbutamol (albuterol, or equivalent) per month,^{103,127,773} or using nebulized SABA⁷⁷⁴
- A history of psychiatric disease or psychosocial problems¹¹⁹
- Food allergy or history of anaphylaxis in a patient with asthma^{589,775}
- Poor perception of airflow limitation or of bronchoconstriction^{172,191,197-200}
- Severe airway hyperresponsiveness⁷⁷⁶
- Certain comorbidities, including pneumonia, diabetes and arrhythmias (independently associated with an increased risk of death after hospitalization for an asthma exacerbation)⁷⁷¹

ED: emergency department; ICS: inhaled corticosteroids; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist

Terminology about exacerbations

The academic term “exacerbation” is commonly used in scientific and clinical literature, although hospital-based studies more often refer to “acute severe asthma” or “severe acute asthma”. However, the term “exacerbation” is not suitable for use in clinical practice, as it is difficult for many patients to pronounce and remember.^{777,778} The term “flare-up” is simpler, and conveys the sense that asthma is present even when symptoms are absent. The term “attack” is used by many patients and healthcare providers but with widely varying meanings, and it may not be perceived as including gradual worsening.^{777,778} In pediatric literature, the term “episode” is commonly used, but understanding of this term by parent/caregivers is not known.

DIAGNOSIS OF EXACERBATIONS

Exacerbations represent a change in symptoms and lung function from the patient's usual status.⁴² The decrease in expiratory airflow can be quantified by lung function measurements such as PEF or forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV₁),⁷⁷⁹ compared with the patient's previous lung function or predicted values. In the acute setting, these measurements are more reliable indicators of the severity of the exacerbation than symptoms. The frequency of symptoms may, however, be a more sensitive measure of the onset of an exacerbation than PEF.⁷⁸⁰ Consider the possibility of pertussis in a patient with an atypical exacerbation presentation in which cough is the predominant symptom.

A minority of patients perceive airflow limitation poorly and can experience a significant decline in lung function without a change in symptoms.^{172,191,199} This especially affects patients with a history of near-fatal asthma and also appears to be more common in males. Regular PEF monitoring may be considered for such patients.

Severe exacerbations are potentially life-threatening, and their treatment requires careful assessment and close monitoring. Patients with severe exacerbations should be advised to see their healthcare provider promptly or, depending on the organization of local health services, to proceed to the nearest facility that provides emergency access for patients with acute asthma.

SELF-MANAGEMENT OF EXACERBATIONS WITH A WRITTEN ASTHMA ACTION PLAN

All patients with asthma, and parents/caregivers of children with asthma, should be provided with guided self-management education as described in Section 5 (p.117). The definition of guided self-management education includes monitoring of symptoms and/or lung function, a written asthma action plan, and regular review by a healthcare provider.⁵⁶⁰ (For children 5 years and younger, see Section 11, p.202).

A written (i.e., documented) asthma action plan may be printed, digital, or pictorial, to suit the patient's needs and literacy.

A written asthma action plan helps patients to recognize and respond appropriately to worsening asthma. It should include specific instructions for the patient about changes to reliever and/or maintenance medications, when and how to use OCS if needed (Box 9-2, p.174) and when and how to access medical care.

Use an action plan template appropriate for the patient's reliever: ICS-formoterol, ICS-SABA, or SABA.

- **For patients prescribed an anti-inflammatory reliever** (as-needed combination ICS-formoterol or ICS-SABA), the patient should take extra doses of their reliever when needed for symptom relief, and continue their usual dose of maintenance ICS-containing treatment. The anti-inflammatory reliever provides extra ICS without delay as well as extra rapid-acting bronchodilator whenever the reliever is used. This significantly reduces the risk of progressing to a severe exacerbation and the need for OCS compared with using a SABA reliever (p.84). In the case of as-needed ICS-formoterol, both the ICS and the formoterol contribute to the reduction in severe exacerbations, compared with using a SABA reliever.³⁴⁰ See Box 4-8 (p.90) for more details about as-needed ICS-formoterol, including medications and dosages.
- **For patients prescribed ICS-containing treatment** with a SABA reliever, the criteria for initiating an increase in maintenance medication will vary from patient to patient. In studies that evaluated an increase in maintenance ICS-containing treatment (Box 9-2, p.174), this was usually initiated when there had been a clinically important change from the patient's usual level of asthma control, for example, if asthma symptoms were interfering with normal activities, or PEF had fallen by >20% for more than 2 days.⁵⁶⁵

A specific action plan template is available for patients prescribed maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol.³⁵⁰ This template can also be adapted for patients prescribed as-needed-only ICS-formoterol.

Box 9-2. Medication options for written asthma action plans for adults and adolescents

Track & step	Usual asthma treatment	Short-term action plan change (1–4 weeks) for worsening asthma (see text for more details)	Evidence level
GINA Track 1 with ICS-formoterol reliever*			
Steps 1–2	As-needed-only ICS-formoterol (AIR-only)	For symptom relief, use 1 inhalation of ICS-formoterol (e.g., budesonide-formoterol 200/6 [160/4.5] mcg or BDP-formoterol 100/6 mcg) whenever needed. Seek medical care if >12 inhalations needed in a 24 hour period.	A
Steps 3–5	Maintenance and reliever therapy (MART) with ICS-formoterol	Continue usual maintenance dose of ICS-formoterol. For symptom relief, use 1 inhalation of ICS-formoterol whenever needed. Seek medical care if total >12 inhalations needed in 24 hours (as-needed + maintenance doses).	A
GINA Track 2 with combination ICS-SABA reliever#			
Step 1	As-needed-only combination ICS-SABA	For symptom relief, take 2 inhalations of ICS-SABA as needed. Seek medical care if >6 doses (>12 inhalations) of ICS-SABA needed in a 24 hour period.	B
Step 2	Maintenance ICS	Continue usual maintenance ICS dose. For symptom relief, take 2 inhalations of ICS-SABA as needed. Seek medical care if >6 doses (>12 inhalations) of ICS-SABA needed in a 24 hour period.	A
Steps 3–4	Maintenance ICS-LABA	Continue usual maintenance ICS-LABA dose. For symptom relief, take 2 inhalations of ICS-SABA as needed. Seek medical care if >6 doses (>12 inhalations) of ICS-SABA needed in a 24 hour period.	B
GINA Track 2 with SABA reliever			
Step 1	As-needed SABA plus ICS (separate inhalers)	For symptom relief, use SABA as below, and take ICS whenever SABA is taken (e.g., 1 inhalation of BDP 40 mcg per inhalation of SABA).	B
Step 2	Maintenance ICS	Consider quadrupling maintenance dose of ICS for 1–2 weeks. For symptom relief with SABA, see below.	B
Steps 3–4	Maintenance ICS-formoterol	Consider quadrupling maintenance dose of ICS-formoterol for 1–2 weeks. For symptom relief with SABA, see below.	B
	Maintenance ICS-LABA (non-formoterol)	Consider stepping up to higher dose formulation of ICS-LABA, if available. In adults, consider adding a separate ICS inhaler to quadruple ICS dose. For symptom relief with SABA, see below.	D
Reliever	As-needed SABA	For symptom relief, take 2 inhalations of SABA every 4–6 hours if needed. Seek medical care if >12 inhalations of SABA needed in a 24 hour period.	-
Severe exacerbations – all regimens			
All steps	• Prompt patient to contact clinician if not responding to above treatment over 2–3 days. Consider adding short-course of OCS, e.g., if PEF or FEV ₁ <60% personal best or predicted. After first dose, morning dosing is preferable to minimize insomnia. Advise patients about potential adverse effects.		A
	• Usual OCS doses: prednisone/prednisolone: adults/adolescents, 40–50 mg/day for 5–7 days; children: 1–2 mg/kg/day, maximum 40 mg/day, for 3–5 days. Tapering not needed if OCS taken for less than 2 weeks. Oral dexamethasone (children) 0.3–0.6 mg/kg (max 12 mg) for total 1–2 days.		B
			B
	• After any exacerbation, review triggers and risk factors including adherence and inhaler technique, and review the patient's action plan. Switch to GINA Track 1 if possible to reduce the risk of further exacerbations. See Box 9-5 (p.183) for more details about post-exacerbation review.		B

AIR: anti-inflammatory reliever; BDP: beclometasone dipropionate; FEV₁: forced expiratory volume in 1 second; ICS: inhaled corticosteroids; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; MART: maintenance-and-reliever therapy with combination ICS-formoterol; OCS: oral corticosteroids; PEF: peak expiratory flow; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist

*See Box 4-8 (p.90) for details of other medications for GINA Track 1 with ICS-formoterol.

Combination budesonide-salbutamol (budesonide-albuterol) 2 puffs of delivered dose 80/90 mcg (metered dose 100/100 mcg).

See text that follows for more details about action plan options in adults, adolescents and children.

Treatment options for written asthma action plans – relievers

Inhaled combination ICS-formoterol reliever

In adults and adolescents, use of as-needed combination low-dose ICS-formoterol for symptom relief (without maintenance treatment) reduces the risk of severe exacerbations requiring OCS or requiring emergency department visit or hospitalization by 65%, compared with SABA-only treatment.²¹⁰ It also reduces the risk of needing an emergency department visit or hospitalization by 37%, compared with daily ICS plus as-needed SABA.²¹⁰ In children aged 5–15 years, low-dose budesonide-formoterol taken as needed for symptom relief reduced the risk of moderate-severe exacerbations, compared with as-needed SABA.²⁰ In a large 12-month randomized controlled trial (RCT) in adults and adolescents, after a day of even small increased doses of as-needed ICS-formoterol, the risk of severe exacerbation in the following 3 weeks was reduced, compared with using the same doses of SABA alone.¹⁴⁴ Details of the evidence are found on p.85 and p.88.

In adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years, maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with low-dose ICS-formoterol reduces the risk of severe exacerbations, compared with the same or higher dose of ICS or ICS-LABA, with similar symptom control.^{254,255,455} Details about the evidence are found on p.107 and p.108.

Information about medications and doses for use of as-needed ICS-formoterol is summarized in Box 4-8 (p.90). For adults and adolescents, most of the evidence is with use of budesonide-formoterol 160/4.5 mcg delivered dose (200/6 mcg metered dose) by dry-powder inhaler and, for children aged 6–11 prescribed MART, one study with budesonide-formoterol 80/4.5 mcg delivered dose (100/6 mcg metered dose) by dry-powder inhaler.

Patients prescribed ICS-formoterol as their reliever (with or without maintenance ICS-formoterol) should take 1 inhalation of their ICS-formoterol reliever whenever needed for symptom relief; for formulations with formoterol delivered dose 2.25 mcg (metered dose 3 mcg) per inhalation, 2 inhalations should be taken whenever needed for symptom relief. If necessary, an extra dose can be taken a few minutes later.

Additional doses are taken when symptoms recur, even if this is within 4 hours. Adults and adolescents should seek medical care if they have needed more than a total (as-needed plus maintenance doses, if used) of 12 inhalations of budesonide-formoterol (total formoterol 54 mcg delivered dose [72 mcg metered dose]). Based on extensive evidence for efficacy and safety of budesonide-formoterol up to this dose in any day, GINA suggests that the same advice should also apply to beclometasone-formoterol. For children, the frequency of use at which medical care should be sought is more than a total (as-needed and maintenance doses, if used) of 8 inhalations in any day. See Box 4-8 (p.90) for specific details.

If the patient is rapidly worsening, or has failed to respond to an increase in as-needed doses of ICS-formoterol over 2–3 days, they should contact their healthcare provider or seek medical assistance.

Inhaled combination ICS-SABA reliever

For adults or adolescents prescribed as-needed combination ICS-SABA reliever with maintenance ICS-containing therapy, the recommended dose is 2 inhalations of budesonide-salbutamol (budesonide-albuterol) 80/90 mcg delivered dose (100/100 mcg metered dose) as needed, a maximum of 6 times in a day. Overall, in patients on Step 3–5 therapy, this reduced the risk of severe exacerbations by 26%, compared with using a SABA reliever, with the greatest benefit seen in patients taking maintenance low-dose ICS-LABA or medium-dose ICS.³⁷⁴ In patients with uncontrolled asthma who were taking SABA alone or with daily ICS or a leukotriene receptor antagonist (LTRA), as-needed combination ICS-SABA reduced the risk of severe exacerbations by 47% compared with as-needed SABA, both added to the patient's usual maintenance treatment, if any.²¹

If the patient's symptoms/signs are rapidly worsening, or they need repeated doses of as-needed ICS-SABA reliever over 1–2 days, they should contact their healthcare provider or seek medical assistance.

Inhaled SABA reliever

For patients prescribed a SABA bronchodilator reliever, repeated dosing provides temporary relief until the cause of the worsening symptoms passes or increased ICS-containing treatment has had time to take effect. However, use of SABA reliever is less effective in preventing progression to severe exacerbation requiring OCS than use of low-dose ICS formoterol reliever, either with²⁵⁴ or without^{336,337} daily maintenance ICS-containing treatment, or than combination ICS-SABA reliever (see Section 4, p.73).

The need for repeated doses of SABA over more than 1–2 days, or need for SABA more often than every 4–6 hours signals the need to review, and possibly increase, ICS containing treatment if this has not already been done. This is particularly important if there has been a lack of response.

Treatment options for written asthma action plans – maintenance medications

Maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with combination low-dose ICS-formoterol

In adults and adolescents, the combination of a rapid-onset LABA (formoterol) and low-dose ICS (budesonide or beclometasone) in a single inhaler as both the maintenance and the reliever medication is effective in improving asthma symptom control,³⁵⁵ and it reduces exacerbations requiring OCS, and hospitalizations,^{254,781-784} compared with the same or higher dose of ICS or ICS-LABA with as-needed SABA reliever (Evidence A). This regimen is also effective in reducing exacerbations in children aged 4–11 years (Evidence B).⁴⁵⁵

Adults and adolescents prescribed MART should seek medical care if they have needed to use more than a total of 12 inhalations of budesonide-formoterol in a 24 hour period. This corresponds to a delivered dose of 54 mcg formoterol (metered dose 72 mcg). There is extensive evidence from large studies of the safety and efficacy of budesonide-formoterol up to this frequency in a single day (as above). Based on this evidence, GINA suggests that the same advice should apply to beclometasone-formoterol (See Box 4-8, p.90). This approach should not be attempted with other combination ICS-LABA medications with a slower-onset LABA (e.g., ICS-salmeterol), or that lack the dose response and safety profile that is required for a maintenance-and-reliever regimen.

The benefit of the MART regimen in reducing the risk of severe exacerbations requiring OCS appears to be due to the increase in doses of both the ICS and the formoterol at a very early stage of worsening asthma.¹⁴²⁻¹⁴⁴

In an action plan for patients prescribed maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol, the maintenance dose does not normally need to be increased. Instead, the patient increases their as-needed doses of ICS-formoterol. More details of medications and doses for different age-groups are available in Box 4-8, p.90. Examples of action plans customized for MART are available online.^{350,351}

Other ICS and ICS-LABA maintenance treatment regimens plus as-needed SABA

In a systematic review, self-management studies in which the ICS dose was at least doubled were associated with improved asthma outcomes and reduced healthcare utilization (Evidence A).⁵⁶⁵ In placebo-controlled trials, temporarily doubling the dose of ICS was not effective (Evidence A);⁷⁸⁵ however, the delay before increasing the ICS dose (mean 5–7 days)^{782,783} may have contributed. Some studies in adults⁷⁸⁴ and young children⁷⁸⁶ have reported that higher ICS doses might help prevent worsening asthma progressing to a severe exacerbation. In a RCT in primary care with patients aged ≥16 years, those who quadrupled their ICS dose (to average of 2000 mcg/day beclometasone dipropionate-equivalent) after their PEF fell were significantly less likely to require OCS.⁷⁸⁷ In an open-label primary care RCT of adult and adolescent patients using ICS with or without LABA, early quadrupling of ICS dose (to average 3200 mcg/day beclometasone-equivalent) was associated with a modest reduction in prescribing of OCS.⁷⁸⁸ However, a double-blind placebo-controlled study in children 5–11 years with high adherence to low-dose ICS found no difference in the rate of severe exacerbations requiring OCS if maintenance ICS was quintupled (to 1600 mcg beclometasone-equivalent) versus continuing maintenance low-dose therapy.⁷⁸⁹ Given the shape of the ICS dose-response curve, increasing the maintenance ICS dose is unlikely to provide benefit in patients with good adherence.

In addition, in several of the studies evaluating ICS increases,^{782,783,789} a pre-specified level of deterioration in symptoms (± lung function) had to be reached before the extra ICS could be started. This delay in receiving additional ICS may help to explain the greater reduction in severe exacerbations seen in patients receiving MART therapy with ICS-formoterol, where there is no delay before the doses of both ICS and formoterol are increased.

In adult with an acute deterioration, high-dose ICS for 7–14 days (500–1600 mcg beclometasone hydrofluoroalkane standard-particle equivalent) had an equivalent benefit to a short course of OCS (Evidence A).⁷⁸⁴ For adults taking combination ICS-LABA with as-needed SABA, the ICS dose may be increased by adding a separate ICS inhaler (Evidence D).^{784,788}

Leukotriene receptor antagonists

If patients are using a LTRA as their only controller, there are no specific studies about how to manage worsening asthma. Clinicians' judgment should be used (Evidence D). For ongoing treatment, the patient should be switched to an ICS-containing controller to reduce the risk of further exacerbations.³⁸⁵

Oral corticosteroids

For most patients, the written asthma action plan should provide instructions for when to contact their doctor. Instructions may also be provided on when and how to commence OCS.

Typically, a short course of OCS is used for patients with:

- Symptoms that fail to respond to an increase in inhaled therapy for 2–3 days
- Rapid clinical deterioration or PEF or FEV₁ to <60% of their personal best or predicted value
- Worsening asthma in a patient with a history of sudden severe exacerbations.

For adults, the usual prednisone/prednisolone dose is 40–50 mg/day for 5–7 days (Evidence B).⁷⁸⁴ For children 6–11 years, the recommended dose of prednisone/prednisolone is 1–2 mg/kg/day to a maximum of 40 mg/day (Evidence B), usually for 3–5 days; the dose of oral dexamethasone is 0.3–0.6 mg/kg (max 12 mg) for total 1–2 days. Patients should be advised about common side-effects, including sleep disturbance, increased appetite, reflux, and mood changes.⁷⁹⁰ If OCS is needed, the patient should contact their doctor, preferably before starting (Evidence D).

Although OCS reduce the need for hospitalization during severe asthma exacerbations, even occasional short courses of OCS are associated with significant short-term and cumulative long-term adverse effects,^{178,179} with a pronounced dose response. **For all patients, therefore, asthma management should be optimized to reduce the risk of further exacerbations requiring OCS.** This includes optimizing ICS-containing therapy (with a switch for adults and adolescents to Track 1 with ICS-formoterol if available), treating modifiable risk factors and comorbidities, using relevant non-pharmacologic strategies, and providing education and skills training including a written asthma action plan (see Box 9-2, p.174 and Section 5, p.117 for details).

Box 9-3. OCS stewardship: optimizing asthma treatment to minimize need for OCS

Optimize asthma treatment to minimize cumulative adverse effects of OCS use

- OCS can be life-saving during severe asthma exacerbations, but there is increasing awareness of the risks of single and repeated courses.
- In adults, short-term adverse effects of OCS include sleep disturbance, increased appetite, reflux, mood changes,⁷⁹⁰ sepsis, pneumonia, and thromboembolism.¹⁷⁸
- In adults, even 4–5 lifetime courses of OCS are associated with a significantly increased dose-dependent risk of diabetes, cataract, heart failure, osteoporosis and several other conditions.¹⁷⁹
- The occurrence of any severe exacerbation should prompt review of asthma management to prevent another exacerbation occurring.
- The need for OCS can be reduced by optimizing asthma therapy, including ICS-containing medications (particularly AIR/MART with ICS-formoterol), treating modifiable risk factors, using relevant non-pharmacological strategies, and providing education and skills training, including inhaler technique and adherence. Refer patients for expert advice if needed (Box 3-8, p.72).
- Make sure that all patients are receiving ICS-containing therapy. For adults and adolescents, use of ICS-formoterol or ICS-SABA as an anti-inflammatory reliever reduces the risk of severe exacerbations requiring OCS, compared with using a SABA reliever (see Box 4-6, p.83).
- All patients should have a written asthma action plan, showing them how to increase their inhaled medications and when to contact medical care.
- Use OCS only when clearly indicated, at the lowest dose indicated, and only for the duration needed.

AIR: anti-inflammatory reliever; ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; MART: maintenance-and-reliever therapy; OCS: oral corticosteroids; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist.

Reviewing response

Patients should see their doctor immediately or go to an acute care unit if their asthma continues to deteriorate despite following their written asthma action plan, or if their asthma suddenly worsens.

Follow up after a self-managed exacerbation

After a self-managed exacerbation, patients should see their primary care healthcare provider for a semi-urgent review (e.g., within 1–2 weeks, but preferably before ceasing oral corticosteroids if prescribed) for assessment of symptom control and additional risk factors for exacerbations (Box 2-2, p.41), and to identify the potential cause of the exacerbation. The written asthma action plan should be reviewed to see if it met the patient's needs. This visit provides an opportunity for providing or arranging additional asthma education by a trained asthma educator or trained lay healthcare worker.

Make sure that patients are using their reliever inhaler as-needed, rather than regularly. For patients prescribed a GINA Track 2 regimen with as-needed SABA, maintenance asthma treatment can generally be reduced to previous levels 2–4 weeks after the exacerbation (Evidence D), unless the history suggests that the exacerbation occurred on a background of long-term poorly controlled asthma. In this situation, after checking inhaler technique and adherence, a step-up in treatment may be indicated (Box 4-6, p.83).

Patients with more than 1–2 exacerbations per year despite Step 4–5 therapy (or Step 4 therapy in children 6–11 years), or with several emergency department visits, should be referred to a specialist center, if available, for assessment and strategies to reduce their risk of future exacerbations and their risk of exposure to OCS. See decision tree for difficult-to-treat and severe asthma in Section 8 (p.149).

PRIMARY CARE MANAGEMENT OF ASTHMA EXACERBATIONS (ADULTS, ADOLESCENTS, CHILDREN 6–11 YEARS)

Assessing exacerbation severity

A brief focused history and relevant physical examination should be conducted concurrently with the prompt initiation of therapy, and findings documented in the notes. See Box 9-4, p.180, for criteria for mild, moderate, severe and life-threatening presentations.

If the patient shows signs of a severe or life-threatening exacerbation, treatment with bronchodilators, controlled oxygen and systemic corticosteroids should be initiated while arranging for the patient's urgent transfer to an acute care facility where monitoring and expertise are more readily available. Milder exacerbations can usually be treated in a primary care setting, depending on resources and expertise. If the patient has features of anaphylaxis as well as asthma, give epinephrine (adrenaline) first, then immediately start inhaled bronchodilator treatment.

History

The history should include:

- Timing of onset and cause (if known) of the present exacerbation
- Severity of asthma symptoms, including any limiting exercise or disturbing sleep
- Any symptoms or history of anaphylaxis
- Any risk factors for asthma-related death (Box 9-1, p.172)
- All current reliever and maintenance medications, including doses and devices prescribed, adherence pattern, any recent dose changes, and frequency of reliever use
- Treatment already taken for this episode, and the response.

Physical examination

The physical examination should assess:

- Vital signs, e.g., level of consciousness, pulse rate, cyanosis, temperature, blood pressure, respiratory rate, oxygen saturation
- Symptoms and signs of exacerbation severity (Box 9-4, p.180) including respiratory rate, ability to complete sentences, air entry, use of accessory muscles, wheeze, oxygen saturation, and lung function (PEF or FEV₁). For children aged <18 years, a clinical score such as the Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure (PRAM) or Pediatric Asthma Score (PAS) should be used (Box 12-1, p.217).⁷⁹¹⁻⁷⁹⁶
- Complicating factors (e.g., anaphylaxis, pneumonia, pneumothorax)
- Signs of alternative conditions that could explain acute breathlessness (e.g., cardiac failure, inducible laryngeal obstruction, inhaled foreign body or pulmonary embolism).

Objective measurements

Pulse oximetry: Oxygen saturation <92% suggests a severe presentation, and saturation levels <90% in children or adults signal the need for aggressive therapy. Under conditions of hypoxemia, oxygen saturation may be overestimated by pulse oximetry in people with dark skin color.⁷⁹⁷ Oxygen saturation targets should be adjusted for altitude, where appropriate.⁷⁹⁸

PEF in patients older than 5 years (Box 9-4, p.180)

Treating exacerbations in primary care

Urgent initial management (Box 9-4, p.180) includes repeated administration of rapid-acting inhaled bronchodilators, early introduction of systemic corticosteroids for moderate or severe exacerbations, and controlled flow oxygen supplementation for severe or life-threatening exacerbations, or if oxygen saturation on room air is <92%.⁷⁷⁹ The aim is to rapidly relieve airflow obstruction and hypoxemia, address the underlying inflammatory pathophysiology, and prevent relapse. Infection control procedures should be followed if the patient has symptoms of respiratory viral infection.

If the patient has features of anaphylaxis as well as asthma, give epinephrine (adrenaline) first, then immediately start inhaled bronchodilator treatment. Epinephrine can be given by IM injection or (with weight and age criteria for children) intranasally.

Inhaled short-acting beta₂-agonists

Currently, inhaled salbutamol (albuterol) is the usual bronchodilator for acute asthma management. For mild-to-moderate exacerbations, administration of inhaled SABA, e.g., 4 puffs (one at a time) for a mild presentation, repeated **if needed** during the first hour, is an effective and efficient way to achieve rapid reversal of airflow limitation (Evidence A).⁷⁹⁹ After the first hour, no additional SABA is needed if there is a good response to initial treatment (e.g., PEF >60–80% of predicted or personal best for 3–4 hours). If symptoms persist or return, the dose and frequency of SABA required should be titrated to the patient's clinical response, **including lung function** (FEV₁ or PEF) if available.

Delivery of SABA via a pMDI and spacer or a dry-powder inhaler (DPI) leads to a similar improvement in lung function as delivery via nebulizer (Evidence A); ^{799,800} however, patients with life-threatening asthma were not included in these studies. In children, there were fewer adverse effects and a shorter time in the emergency room with pMDI and spacer than with nebulizer.⁷⁹⁹ Delivery of SABA by pMDI and spacer, provided the patient can use this device, is more cost-effective than by nebulizer.⁸⁰¹ This also avoids the potential for transmission of infection from use of a nebulizer. Because of static charge, some spacers require pre-washing with detergent (or priming with 2–4 puffs of the inhaler) before use. The manufacturer's advice should be followed.

SABA toxicity: Administration of high doses of SABA is associated with increased pulse rate, palpitations and anxiety, and may be associated with hypokalemia, arrhythmias, lactic acidosis and hyperventilation.⁸⁰² The potential for SABA toxicity must be considered, because these clinical features could otherwise be assumed to represent worsening asthma, resulting in even higher doses being given. Some asthma deaths are associated with extremely high blood salbutamol levels.⁸⁰³

Ipratropium

For adults and children with moderate-severe exacerbations, treatment in the emergency department with both SABA and ipratropium, a short-acting anticholinergic, was associated with fewer hospitalizations (Evidence A for adults;⁸⁰⁴ Evidence B for adolescents/children⁸⁰⁵) and greater improvement in PEF and FEV₁, compared with SABA alone; the risk of nausea and tremor was reduced (Evidence A, adults/adolescents).⁸⁰⁴⁻⁸⁰⁶ For children hospitalized for acute asthma, no benefits were seen from adding ipratropium to SABA, including no reduction in length of hospital stay or other markers of response.⁸⁰⁵

Controlled oxygen therapy (if available and required)

Oxygen therapy should be titrated against pulse oximetry (if available) to maintain oxygen saturation at 92–95%. Note the potential for overestimation of oxygen saturation in people with dark skin color.⁷⁹⁷ Oxygen saturation targets should be adjusted for altitude, where appropriate.⁷⁹⁸ In hospitalized asthma patients, controlled or titrated oxygen therapy is associated with lower mortality and better outcomes than high concentration (100%) oxygen therapy (Evidence A).⁸⁰⁷⁻⁸¹⁰ Oxygen should not be withheld if oximetry is not available, but the patient should be monitored for deterioration, somnolence or fatigue because of the risk of hypercapnia and respiratory failure.⁸⁰⁷⁻⁸¹⁰ If supplemental oxygen is administered, oxygen saturation should be maintained no higher than 96% in adults.⁸¹¹

Combination ICS-formoterol in management of acute asthma exacerbations

Combination ICS-formoterol (budesonide-formoterol or beclometasone-formoterol) is now widely used as an anti-inflammatory reliever as part of routine asthma management in adults and adolescents, because it reduces the risk of severe exacerbations and exposure to OCS, compared with use of a SABA reliever (GINA Track 1, p.84). The safety and efficacy of anti-inflammatory reliever therapy have been demonstrated in large studies up to a total of 12 inhalations of budesonide-formoterol 160/4.5 mcg delivered dose (200/6 mcg metered dose) in a 24-hour period if needed (total of as-needed and maintenance doses, if used).^{254,255} Given this extensive evidence, GINA suggests that beclometasone-formoterol 100/6 mcg (metered dose) could be used up to the same number of inhalations, if needed (see Box 4-8, p.90 for details of medications and doses).

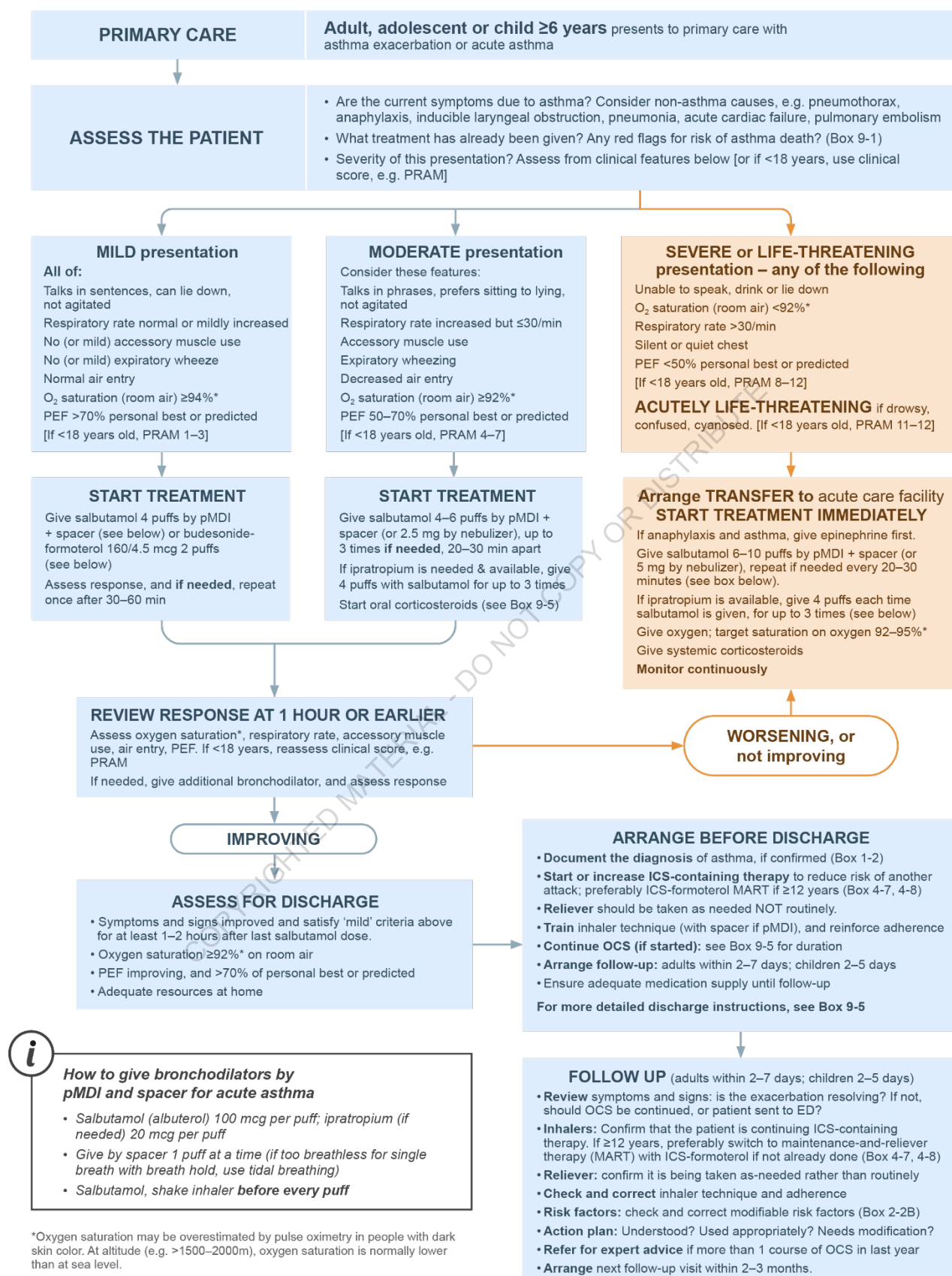
An RCT in adults and adolescents attending an ED with average FEV₁ 42–45% predicted compared the effect of 2 inhalations of budesonide-formoterol delivered dose 320/9 mcg (metered dose 400/12 mcg) versus 8 inhalations of salbutamol (albuterol) 90 mcg delivered dose (100 mcg metered dose), with these doses repeated again after 5 minutes; all patients received OCS. Lung function was similar over 3 hours, but pulse rate was higher in the SABA group.⁸¹² A meta-analysis of earlier RCTs found that the efficacy and safety of formoterol itself was similar to that of salbutamol in management of acute asthma in adults, adolescents and children.⁸¹³ Formoterol itself is no longer used for this purpose, but there is no evidence that budesonide-formoterol would be less effective in management of asthma exacerbations.⁸¹³ More studies are needed. There are no published data on use of combination ICS-SABA in an emergency department setting.

Systemic corticosteroids

OCS should be given promptly for moderate or severe exacerbations, especially if the patient's condition is deteriorating, and should be considered if symptoms have not responded to increased reliever and/or maintenance ICS-containing medications before presentation (Evidence B). The recommended dose of prednisone/prednisolone for adults is 1 mg/kg/day or equivalent up to a maximum of 50 mg/day, and 1–2 mg/kg/day for children 6–11 years up to a maximum of 40 mg/day. OCS should usually be continued for 5–7 days in adults^{814,815} and 3–5 days in children (Evidence B).⁸¹⁶ Patients should be advised about common short-term side-effects, including sleep disturbance, increased appetite, reflux and mood changes.⁷⁹⁰ In adults, the risk of sepsis and thromboembolism is also increased after a short course of OCS.¹⁷⁸

While OCS is life-saving in severe acute asthma, use of 4–5 lifetime courses in adults is associated with a dose-dependent increased risk of long-term adverse effects such as osteoporosis, fractures, diabetes, heart failure and cataract.¹⁷⁹ This emphasizes the importance of optimizing asthma management after any severe exacerbation to reduce the risk of further exacerbations (see Box 9-3, p.177 and Section 4, p.73).

Box 9-4. Management of asthma exacerbations in primary care (adults, adolescents, children 6–11 years)



ED: emergency department; ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; MART: maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol (see Box 4-8, p.90); OCS: oral corticosteroid; PEF: peak expiratory flow; pMDI: pressurized metered-dose inhaler; PRAM: Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist (doses are for salbutamol [albuterol] 100 mcg/actuation)

Maintenance ICS-containing medication

Patients taking maintenance ICS-containing medication with as-needed SABA (GINA Track 2) should be advised to increase the maintenance dose of ICS or ICS-LABA for the next 2–4 weeks, as summarized in Box 9-2 (p.174). For patients not currently taking controller medication, ICS-containing therapy should be commenced to reduce the risk of further exacerbations; SABA-only treatment of asthma is no longer recommended. Initiation of ICS-containing therapy during/after an exacerbation should usually be at Step 4, and preferably with MART (Box 4-5, p.82). An exacerbation requiring medical care indicates that the patient is at increased risk of future exacerbations (Box 2-2, p.41).

Antibiotics (not recommended)

Evidence does not support routine use of antibiotics in the treatment of acute asthma exacerbations unless there is strong evidence of lung infection (e.g., fever and purulent sputum or radiographic evidence of pneumonia).⁸¹⁷

Reviewing response

During treatment, patients should be closely monitored, and treatment titrated according to their response. Patients who present with signs of a severe or life-threatening exacerbation (Box 9-4, p.180), who fail to respond to treatment, or who continue to deteriorate should be transferred immediately to an acute care facility. Patients with little or slow response to SABA treatment should be closely monitored.

For many patients, lung function can be monitored after SABA therapy is initiated. Additional treatment should continue until PEF or FEV₁ reaches a plateau or (ideally) returns to the patient's previous best. A decision can then be made whether to send the patient home or transfer them to an acute care facility.

Follow-up

Discharge medications should include regular maintenance ICS-containing treatment (see Box 4-8, p.90 and Box 9-5, p.183), as-needed reliever medication (low-dose ICS-formoterol, ICS-SABA or SABA) and a short course of OCS. SABA-only treatment is not recommended. Inhaler technique and adherence should be reviewed before discharge. Patients should be advised to use their reliever inhaler only as-needed, rather than routinely. A follow-up appointment should be arranged for about 2–7 days later (2–5 days for children), depending on the clinical and social context.

At the review visit the healthcare provider should assess whether the flare-up has resolved, and whether OCS can be ceased. They should assess the patient's level of symptom control and risk factors; explore the potential cause of the exacerbation; and review the written asthma action plan (or provide one if the patient does not already have one). For patients prescribed MART, remind them to use their ICS-formoterol for symptom relief, to reduce the risk of another exacerbation; SABA is not needed. Maintenance ICS-containing treatment can generally be stepped back to pre-exacerbation levels 2–4 weeks after the exacerbation. However, if the exacerbation was preceded by symptoms suggestive of chronically poorly controlled asthma, and inhaler technique and adherence are good, a step-up in treatment (Box 4-6, p.83) may be indicated. Arrange another follow-up visit within 2–3 months.

Box 9-5. Discharge management after primary care visit for an asthma exacerbation

Medications

Inhaled corticosteroids (ICS): Initiate ICS-containing therapy before discharge, if not already prescribed. The preferred regimen for adults/adolescents is maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol (MART), starting at Step 4, as this will reduce risk of future exacerbations compared with using a SABA reliever. If prescribing ICS/ICS-LABA with SABA reliever, increase the ICS dose for 2–4 weeks. Emphasize adherence and correct inhaler technique.

Oral corticosteroids (OCS): Prescribe prednisone/prednisolone 40–50 mg/day for 5–7 days for adults. For children, prescribe prednisone/prednisolone 1–2 mg/kg/day to a maximum of 40 mg/day for 3–5 days, or oral dexamethasone 0.3–0.6 mg/kg (max 12 mg) for total 1–2 days, switching to prednisone/prednisolone if relapse occurs. Review progress before stopping prednisone/prednisolone.

Reliever medication: Switch patients to as-needed rather than regular reliever use, as regular SABA use for even 1–2 weeks can worsen asthma or mask deterioration and can encourage over-use. There is no benefit from ipratropium bromide after the first 1–2 hours of treatment. Patients using ICS-formoterol as their reliever should continue this.

Risk factors and triggers that contributed to the exacerbation

Identify factors that may have contributed to the exacerbation, and implement strategies to reduce modifiable risk factors. For example:

- Irritant or allergen exposure
- Viral respiratory infections
- Inadequate long-term ICS treatment, including problems with adherence
- Lack of a written asthma action plan.

Hygiene strategies like handwashing, masks and distancing can help prevent viral infections.

Self-management skills and written asthma action plan

- Review and correct inhaler technique.
- Provide or review a written asthma action plan.
- Evaluate how the exacerbation developed, and if patient response was adequate.
- Review the patient's use of medications before and during the exacerbation.

Follow up communication and appointment

- Inform the patient's healthcare provider about their ED presentation or admission and discharge instructions.
- Schedule a follow-up appointment (in person, if feasible) within 2–7 days of discharge (2–5 days for children) to assess progress and adherence.
- Refer for expert advice if the patient has already had one or more exacerbations requiring OCS, unscheduled primary care visit, ED visit or hospitalization in the last 12 months.

ED: emergency department; ICS: inhaled corticosteroids; ICU: intensive care unit; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; OCS: oral corticosteroids; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist

EMERGENCY DEPARTMENT MANAGEMENT OF EXACERBATIONS (ADULTS, ADOLESCENTS, CHILDREN 6–11 YEARS)

Severe exacerbations of asthma are life-threatening medical emergencies, which are most safely managed in an acute care setting e.g., emergency department (Box 9-6, p.186). Management of asthma in the intensive care unit is beyond the scope of this report.

Assessment

Assess whether the current symptoms and signs are due to asthma, or whether there are any features that suggest an alternative or additional cause for the respiratory symptoms, e.g., pneumothorax, inducible laryngeal obstruction, pneumonia, cardiac failure, pulmonary embolism, diabetic ketoacidosis.

See Box 9-6 (p.186), for criteria for mild, moderate, severe and life-threatening acute asthma presentations.

History

A brief history and physical examination should be conducted concurrently with the prompt initiation of therapy. Include:

- Time of onset and cause (if known) of the present exacerbation
- Severity of asthma symptoms, including any limiting exercise or disturbing sleep
- Any symptoms of anaphylaxis
- Risk factors for asthma-related death (Box 9-1, p.172)
- All current reliever and maintenance medications, including doses and devices prescribed, adherence pattern, any recent dose changes, and frequency (and type) of reliever use
- What treatment has already been taken for this episode, and the response.

Physical examination

The physical examination should assess:

- Vital signs (e.g., level of consciousness, temperature, pulse rate, blood pressure, oxygen saturation, respiratory rate, oxygen saturation)
- Signs of exacerbation severity (Box 9-6, p.186), including respiratory rate, ability to complete sentences, use of accessory muscles)
- Complicating factors (e.g., anaphylaxis, pneumonia, atelectasis, pneumothorax or pneumomediastinum)
- Signs of alternative conditions that could explain acute breathlessness (e.g., cardiac failure, inducible laryngeal obstruction, inhaled foreign body or pulmonary embolism)
- In children <18 years, consider using a validated clinical assessment tool (e.g., Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure [PRAM]; Box 9-6, p.218).^{791.792} A copy of the PRAM scoring system is found in Box 12-2, p.218.

Objective assessments

Objective assessments are also needed as the physical examination alone may not indicate the severity of the exacerbation.^{818.819} However, patients, and not their laboratory values, should be the focus of treatment.

Measurement of lung function: this is strongly recommended. If possible, and without unduly delaying treatment, PEF or FEV₁ should be recorded before treatment is initiated, although spirometry may not be possible in children with acute asthma. Lung function should be monitored at one hour and at intervals until a clear response to treatment has occurred or a plateau is reached.

Oxygen saturation: this should be closely monitored, preferably by pulse oximetry. In children, oxygen saturation is normally ≥95% when breathing room air at sea level, and saturation <92% is a predictor of the need for hospitalization (Evidence C).⁸²⁰ Saturation levels <90% in children or adults signal the need for aggressive therapy. Subject to clinical urgency, saturation should be assessed before oxygen is commenced, or 5 minutes after oxygen is removed or when saturation stabilizes. Of concern, under conditions of hypoxemia, oxygen saturation may be overestimated by pulse oximeters in people with dark skin color.⁷⁹⁷ Oxygen saturation targets should be adjusted for altitude, where appropriate.⁷⁹⁸

Arterial blood gas measurements are not routinely required:⁸²¹ They should be considered for patients with PEF or FEV₁ <50% predicted,⁸²² or for those who do not respond to initial treatment or are deteriorating. Supplemental controlled oxygen should be continued while blood gases are obtained. During an asthma exacerbation PaCO₂ is often below normal (<40 mmHg). Fatigue and somnolence suggest that pCO₂ may be increasing and airway intervention may be needed. PaO₂<60 mmHg (8 kPa) and normal or increased PaCO₂ (especially >45 mmHg, 6 kPa) indicate respiratory failure.

Chest X-ray is not routinely recommended: In adults, chest X-ray should be considered if a complicating or alternative cardiopulmonary process is suspected (especially in older patients), or for patients who are not responding to treatment where a pneumothorax may be difficult to diagnose clinically.⁸²³ Similarly, in children, routine chest X-ray is not recommended unless there are physical signs suggestive of pneumothorax, parenchymal disease or an inhaled foreign body. Features associated with positive chest X-ray findings in children include fever, no family history of asthma, and localized lung examination findings.⁸²⁴

Treatment in acute care settings such as the emergency department

The following treatments are usually administered concurrently to achieve rapid improvement.⁸²⁵

If the patient has features of anaphylaxis as well as asthma, give epinephrine (adrenaline) by IM or intranasal route first. For more details about nasal epinephrine, see p.128.

Oxygen

Supplemental oxygen is suggested if oxygen saturation is <92% (in children, when awake). Oxygen can be administered by nasal cannulas or mask, with a target saturation on oxygen of 92–95%. Note the potential for overestimation of saturation in people with dark skin color.⁷⁹⁷ In adults with severe exacerbations, controlled low flow oxygen therapy using pulse oximetry to maintain saturation at 93–95% is associated with better physiological outcomes than with high concentration (100%) oxygen therapy (Evidence B).⁸⁰⁷⁻⁸⁰⁹ However, oxygen therapy should not be withheld if pulse oximetry is not available (Evidence D). Once the patient has stabilized, consider weaning them off oxygen using oximetry to guide the need for ongoing oxygen therapy. Oxygen saturation targets should be adjusted for altitude, where appropriate.⁷⁹⁸

Inhaled short-acting beta₂-agonists

Currently, inhaled salbutamol (albuterol) is the usual bronchodilator in acute asthma management. Delivery of SABA via a pMDI and spacer or a DPI leads to a similar improvement in lung function as delivery via nebulizer (Evidence A);^{799,800} however, patients with life-threatening asthma were not included in these studies. Delivery by pMDI with a spacer is more cost-effective than by nebulizer (Evidence A).^{799,801} Evidence for pMDI and spacer is less robust in severe and near-fatal asthma. Because of static charge, some spacers require pre-washing with detergent before use. Systematic reviews of intermittent versus continuous SABA in acute asthma, which mostly used nebulized SABA, provide conflicting results. Use of nebulizers can disseminate aerosols and potentially contribute to spread of respiratory viral infections.⁶¹³

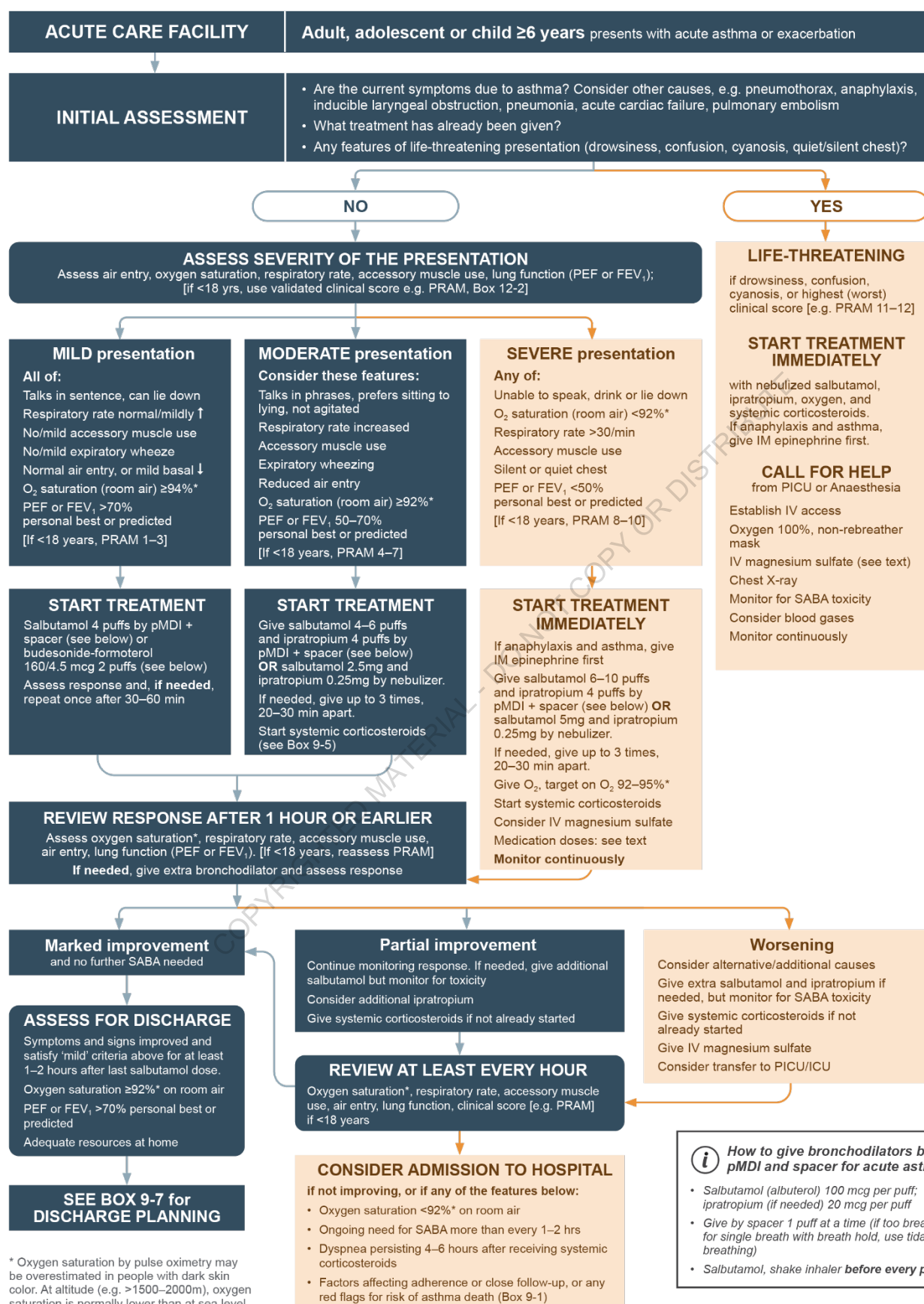
Current evidence does not support the routine use of intravenous beta₂-agonist in most patients with severe asthma exacerbations (Evidence A).⁸²⁶

SABA toxicity: Administration of high doses of SABA is associated with increased pulse rate, palpitations and anxiety, and may be associated with hypokalemia, arrhythmias, lactic acidosis and hyperventilation.⁸⁰² The potential for SABA toxicity must be considered, because these clinical features could otherwise be assumed to represent worsening asthma, resulting in even higher doses being given. Some asthma deaths are associated with extremely high blood salbutamol levels.⁸⁰³

Ipratropium

For adults and children with moderate-severe exacerbations, treatment in the emergency department with both SABA and ipratropium, a short-acting anticholinergic, was associated with fewer hospitalizations (Evidence A for adults;⁸⁰⁴ Evidence B for adolescents/children⁸⁰⁵) and greater improvement in PEF and FEV₁, compared with SABA alone (Evidence A, adults/adolescents); nausea and tremor were reduced.⁸⁰⁴⁻⁸⁰⁶ For children hospitalized for acute asthma, no benefits were seen from adding ipratropium to SABA, including no reduction in length of hospital stay and other markers of response.⁸⁰⁵

Box 9-6. Management of asthma exacerbations in acute care facility (e.g., emergency department)



FEV₁: Forced expiratory volume in 1 second; IM: intramuscular; IV: intravenous; PEF: peak expiratory flow; PICU: pediatric intensive care unit; pMDI: pressurized metered-dose inhaler; PRAM: Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist

Combination ICS-formoterol as an alternative to high dose SABA

Compared with SABA, similar efficacy and safety have been reported from emergency department studies with formoterol,⁸¹³ and in one study with budesonide-formoterol,⁸¹² in adults, adolescents and children presenting with severe acute asthma. The latter study showed that high-dose budesonide-formoterol had a similar efficacy and safety profile as high dose SABA.⁸¹² In this study, patients received 2 doses of budesonide-formoterol delivered dose 320/9 mcg (metered dose 400/12 mcg) or 8 doses of salbutamol (albuterol) 90 mcg delivered dose (100 mcg metered dose), repeated once after 5 minutes; all patients received OCS.⁸¹² While more studies are needed, meta-analysis of data from earlier studies comparing high-dose formoterol with high-dose salbutamol for treatment of acute asthma in the ED setting suggest that budesonide-formoterol would also be effective.⁸¹³ Formoterol alone is no longer used for this purpose.

Epinephrine (for anaphylaxis)

If the patient presents with anaphylaxis as well as asthma, give intramuscular or intranasal epinephrine (adrenaline) first, then immediately start bronchodilator therapy. Epinephrine is not routinely indicated for asthma exacerbations that are not accompanied by anaphylaxis. Approvals for intranasal epinephrine in children depend on the child's weight, and may vary between regulators. For more details about nasal epinephrine, see p.128.

Systemic corticosteroids

Systemic corticosteroids speed resolution of exacerbations and prevent relapse, and in acute care settings should be utilized in all but the mildest exacerbations in adults, adolescents and children 6–11 years.^{827,828} (Evidence A). Where possible, systemic corticosteroids should be administered to the patient within 1 hour of presentation;⁸²⁷ some studies showed similar benefit with high-dose ICS.⁸²⁹

Use of systemic corticosteroids is particularly important in the emergency department if:

- Initial SABA treatment fails to achieve lasting improvement in symptoms
- The exacerbation developed while the patient was taking OCS
- The patient has a history of previous exacerbations requiring OCS.

Route of delivery: oral administration is as effective as intravenous. The oral route is preferred because it is quicker, less invasive and less expensive.^{830,831} For children, a liquid formulation is preferred to tablets. OCS require at least 4 hours to produce a clinical improvement. Intravenous corticosteroids can be administered when patients are too dyspneic to swallow; if the patient is vomiting; or when patients require non-invasive ventilation or intubation. RCT evidence does not demonstrate a benefit of intramuscular corticosteroids over oral corticosteroids.⁸²⁸

Dosage: daily doses of OCS equivalent to 50 mg prednisone/prednisolone as a single morning dose, or 200 mg hydrocortisone in divided doses, are typically used for adults. For children, a prednisolone dose of 1–2 mg/kg up to a maximum of 40 mg/day is suggested.⁸³²

Duration: 5- and 7-day courses of prednisone or prednisolone in adults have been found to be as effective as 10- and 14-day courses respectively (Evidence B),^{814,815} and in most children, a 3–5-day course is usually considered sufficient. Evidence from studies in which all patients were taking maintenance ICS after discharge suggests that there is no benefit in tapering the dose of OCS, either in the short term⁸³³ or over several weeks⁸³⁴ (Evidence B). Several studies in children examined oral dexamethasone 12–16 mg given once daily for 1–2 days; the relapse rate was similar to that with prednisolone for 3–5 days, and adverse events rates were similar.⁸³⁵⁻⁸³⁷ In children, a systematic review found no difference in relapse rate with oral dexamethasone 0.3 mg/kg or 0.6 mg/kg once daily for 1–2 days versus oral prednisone/prednisolone for 3–5 days; adherence was better, and there was a substantially lower risk of vomiting with dexamethasone.⁸³⁸ Oral dexamethasone should not be continued beyond 2 days because of concerns about metabolic side-effects. If there is a failure of resolution, or relapse of symptoms, consideration should be given to switching to prednisone/prednisolone.

Inhaled corticosteroids

Within the emergency department: high-dose ICS given within the first hour after presentation reduces the need for hospitalization in patients not receiving systemic corticosteroids (Evidence A).⁸²⁹ When added to systemic corticosteroids, evidence is conflicting in adults.⁸³⁹ In children, administration of ICS with or without concomitant systemic corticosteroids within the first hours of attendance to the emergency department might reduce the risk of hospital admission and need for systemic corticosteroids (Evidence B).⁸⁴⁰ Overall, add-on ICS is well tolerated. However, cost may be a significant factor, and the agent, dose and duration of treatment with ICS in the management of asthma in the emergency department remain unclear. Patients admitted to hospital for an asthma exacerbation should continue, or be prescribed, ICS-containing therapy.

On discharge home: patients should be prescribed ongoing ICS-containing treatment, preferably with ICS-formoterol maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART), since the occurrence of a severe exacerbation is a risk factor for future exacerbations (Evidence B) (Box 2-2, p.41), and ICS-containing medications significantly reduce the risk of asthma-related death or hospitalization (Evidence A).³⁶⁶ SABA-only treatment of asthma is no longer recommended. For short-term outcomes such as relapse requiring admission, symptoms, and quality of life, a systematic review found no significant differences when ICS were added to systemic corticosteroids after discharge.^{841 841804} However, studies with anti-inflammatory reliever therapy were excluded from this review.

After an ED presentation or hospitalization, the preferred ongoing treatment is maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with ICS-formoterol. In patients with a history of ≥ 1 severe exacerbations, MART reduces the risk of another severe exacerbation in the next 12 months by 32%, compared with same dose ICS or ICS-LABA plus as-needed SABA, and by 23% when compared with higher dose ICS-LABA plus as-needed SABA.²⁵⁴ MART also reduces the risk of severe exacerbations in broader populations compared with conventional best practice with a SABA reliever.²⁵⁵ See Box 4-8 (p.90) for medications and doses.

Other treatments

Magnesium

Intravenous magnesium sulfate is not recommended for routine use in asthma exacerbations. However, in adults and children who fail to respond to initial treatment and have persistent hypoxemia, and in children whose FEV₁ fails to reach 60% predicted after 1 hour of care, intravenous magnesium (as a single 2 g infusion over 20 minutes) reduces hospital admissions, including in adults with FEV₁ <25–30% predicted at presentation (Evidence A).⁸⁴² There is no significant benefit with nebulized magnesium sulfate in adults and adolescents⁸⁴³⁻⁸⁴⁵ or children^{844,846,847} (Evidence B).

Helium oxygen therapy

A systematic review of studies comparing helium–oxygen with air–oxygen suggests there is no role for this intervention in routine care (Evidence B),⁸⁴⁸ but it may be considered for patients with severe exacerbations who do not respond to standard therapy. However, availability, cost and technical issues should be considered.

Non-invasive ventilation (NIV)

The evidence regarding the role of NIV in asthma is weak. A systematic review in 2012 identified five studies in adults involving 206 patients with severe acute asthma treated with NIV or placebo.⁸⁴⁹ Two studies found no difference in need for endotracheal intubation but one study identified fewer admissions in the NIV group. No deaths were reported in either study. Subsequent systematic reviews have highlighted the low quality of evidence in both adults⁸⁵⁰ and children.⁸⁵¹ Given the small size of the studies, no recommendation is offered. If NIV is tried, the patient should be monitored closely (Evidence D). It should not be attempted in agitated patients, and patients should not be sedated to receive NIV (Evidence D).

Leukotriene receptor antagonists (LTRAs)

There is limited evidence to support the use of oral or intravenous LTRAs in acute asthma. Small studies have demonstrated improvement in lung function,^{852,853} but the clinical role and safety of these agents requires more study.

Antibiotics (not recommended)

RCT evidence does not support the routine use of antibiotics in the treatment of acute asthma exacerbations unless there is strong evidence of lung infection (e.g., fever or purulent sputum or radiographic evidence of pneumonia).⁸¹⁷

Aminophylline and theophylline (not recommended)

Intravenous aminophylline and theophylline should not be used in the management of asthma exacerbations, in view of their poor efficacy and safety profile, and the greater effectiveness and relative safety of SABA.⁸⁵⁴ Nausea and/or vomiting are more common with aminophylline.^{805,854} The use of intravenous aminophylline is associated with severe and potentially fatal side-effects, particularly in patients already treated with sustained-release theophylline. In adults with severe asthma exacerbations, add-on treatment with aminophylline does not improve outcomes, compared with SABA alone.⁸⁵⁴

Sedatives (MUST BE AVOIDED)

Sedation should be strictly avoided during exacerbations of asthma because of the respiratory depressant effect of anxiolytic and hypnotic drugs. An association between the use of these drugs and avoidable asthma deaths has been reported.^{855,856}

Reviewing response

Clinical status and oxygen saturation should be re-assessed frequently, with further treatment titrated according to the patient's response (Box 9-6, p.186). Lung function should be measured, and patients who deteriorate despite intensive bronchodilator and corticosteroid treatment should be re-evaluated for transfer to the intensive care unit.

Prediction of need for hospitalization versus discharge from the emergency department

In retrospective analyses, clinical status (including the ability to lie flat) and lung function 1 hour after commencement of treatment were more reliable predictors of the need for hospitalization than the patient's status on arrival.^{857,858} Other factors associated with increased likelihood of need for admission include:⁸⁵⁹⁻⁸⁶¹

- Female sex, older age, and socio-economic disadvantage
- Use of more than 8 beta₂-agonist actuations in the previous 24 hours
- Severity of the exacerbation (e.g., need for resuscitation or rapid medical intervention on arrival, respiratory rate >22 breaths/minute, oxygen saturation <95%, final PEF <50% predicted)
- Past history of severe exacerbations (e.g., intubations, asthma admissions)
- Previous unscheduled office and emergency department visits requiring use of OCS
- Lack of response to initial bronchodilator therapy.

Overall, these risk factors should be considered by clinicians when making decisions on admission/discharge for patients with asthma managed in the acute care setting. The patient's social circumstances should also be considered.

DISCHARGE PLANNING AND FOLLOW-UP

Before discharge from the emergency department or hospital to home, arrangements should be made for a follow-up appointment within 2–7 days (2–5 days for children), and strategies to improve asthma management including medications, inhaler skills and written asthma action plan, should be addressed (Box 9-7, p.191).⁴⁶³

All patients should be prescribed ongoing ICS-containing treatment to reduce the risk of further exacerbations. For adults and adolescents, the preferred regimen after discharge is maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with the anti-inflammatory reliever ICS-formoterol, because this will reduce the risk of future severe exacerbations and reduce the need for OCS, compared with a regimen with a SABA reliever. In the context of a recent ED visit or hospitalization, it would be appropriate to commence treatment with ICS-formoterol in adults and adolescents at Step 4 (Box 4-5, p.82). For medications and doses, see Box 4-8 (p.90). The maintenance dose can be stepped down later, once the patient has fully recovered and asthma has remained stable for 2–3 months (see Box 4-13, p.112).

Follow up after emergency department presentation or hospitalization for asthma

Following discharge, the patient should be reviewed by their healthcare provider regularly over subsequent weeks until good symptom control is achieved, and personal best lung function is reached or surpassed. Incentives such as free transport and telephone reminders improve primary care follow up but have shown no effect on long-term outcomes.⁴⁶³

At follow-up, again ensure that the patient's treatment has been optimized to reduce the risk of future exacerbations. Consider switching to GINA Track 1 with the anti-inflammatory reliever ICS-formoterol, if not already prescribed. See Box 4-8 (p.90) for medications and doses. Check and correct inhaler technique and adherence.

Patients discharged following an emergency department presentation or hospitalization for asthma should be especially targeted for an asthma education program, if one is available. Patients who were hospitalized may be particularly receptive to information and advice about their illness.

Healthcare providers should take the opportunity to review:

- The patient's understanding of the cause of their asthma exacerbation
- Modifiable risk factors for exacerbations (including, where relevant, smoking) (Box 3-5, p.61)
- The patient's understanding of the purposes and correct uses of medications, including ICS-containing maintenance treatment and anti-inflammatory reliever, if prescribed
- The actions the patient needs to take to respond to worsening symptoms or PEF.

After an emergency department presentation, comprehensive intervention programs that include optimization of asthma treatment, inhaler technique, and elements of self-management education (self-monitoring, written action plan and regular review)²²⁰ are cost effective and have shown significant improvement in asthma outcomes (Evidence B).⁴⁶³

Referral for expert advice should be considered for patients who have been hospitalized for asthma, or who have had several presentations to an acute care setting despite having a primary care provider. Follow-up by a specialist is associated with fewer subsequent emergency department visits or hospitalizations and better asthma control.⁴⁶³

Optimize asthma treatment to minimize cumulative adverse effects of OCS

- OCS can be life-saving during severe asthma exacerbations, but there is increasing awareness of the risks of single and repeated courses.
- In adults, short-term adverse effects of OCS include sleep disturbance, increased appetite, reflux, mood changes,⁷⁹⁰ sepsis, pneumonia, and thromboembolism.¹⁷⁸
- In adults, even 4–5 lifetime courses of OCS are associated with a significantly increased dose-dependent risk of diabetes, cataract, heart failure, osteoporosis and several other conditions.¹⁷⁹
- The occurrence of any severe exacerbation should prompt review of asthma management to prevent another exacerbation occurring.
- The need for OCS can be reduced by optimizing inhaled therapy, including ICS-containing medications (particularly AIR/MART with ICS-formoterol), treating modifiable risk factors, using relevant non-pharmacological strategies, and providing education and skills training, including inhaler technique and adherence. Refer patients for expert advice if needed (Box 3-8, p.72).
- Make sure that all patients are receiving ICS-containing therapy. For adults and adolescents, use of ICS-formoterol or ICS-SABA as an anti-inflammatory reliever reduces the risk of severe exacerbations requiring OCS, compared with using a SABA reliever (see Box 4-6, p.83).
- All patients should have a written asthma action plan, showing them how to increase their inhaled medications and when to contact medical care.
- Use OCS only when clearly indicated, at the lowest dose indicated, and only for the duration needed.

ICS: inhaled corticosteroids; OCS: oral corticosteroids; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist.

Box 9-7. Discharge management after acute care or ED management for an asthma exacerbation

Medications

Inhaled corticosteroids (ICS): Initiate ICS-containing therapy before discharge, if not already prescribed. The preferred regimen is maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol (MART) for adults/adolescents, starting at Step 4, as this will reduce risk of future exacerbations compared with using a SABA reliever. If prescribing ICS or ICS-LABA with SABA reliever, increase the ICS dose for 2–4 weeks. Emphasize adherence and correct inhaler technique.

Oral corticosteroids (OCS): Prescribe prednisone/prednisolone 40–50 mg/day for 5–7 days for adults. In children, the dose of prednisone/prednisolone is 1–2 mg/kg/day to a maximum of 40 mg/day for 3–5 days. An alternative for children is oral dexamethasone, 0.3–0.6 mg/kg (max 12 mg) for total 1–2 days; switch to prednisone/prednisolone if relapse occurs. Review progress before stopping prednisone/prednisolone.

Reliever medication: Switch patients to as-needed rather than regular reliever use, as regular SABA use for even 1–2 weeks can worsen asthma or mask deterioration and can encourage over-use. There is no benefit from ipratropium bromide after the first 1–2 hours of treatment. Patients using ICS-formoterol as their reliever should return to this on or before discharge if SABA was substituted in ED or hospital.

Risk factors and triggers that contributed to the exacerbation

Identify factors that may have contributed to the exacerbation, and implement strategies to reduce modifiable risk factors. For example:

- Irritant or allergen exposure
- Viral respiratory infections
- Inadequate long-term ICS treatment, including problems with adherence
- Lack of a written asthma action plan.

Hygiene strategies like handwashing, masks and distancing can help prevent viral infections in adults.

Self-management skills and written asthma action plan

- Review and correct inhaler technique.
- Provide or review a written asthma action plan.
- Evaluate how the exacerbation developed, and if patient response was adequate.
- Review the patient's use of medications before and during the exacerbation.

Follow up communication and appointment

- Inform the patient's healthcare provider about their ED presentation or admission and discharge instructions.
- Schedule a follow-up appointment (in person, if feasible) within 2–7 days of discharge (2–5 days for children) to assess progress and adherence.
- Refer for expert advice if the patient already had one or more exacerbations requiring OCS or urgent health care in the last 12 months
- Refer for expert advice if ICU was required.

ED: emergency department; ICS: inhaled corticosteroids; ICU: intensive care unit; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; OCS: oral corticosteroids; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist

10. Diagnosis of asthma in children 5 years and younger

KEY POINTS

The diagnosis of asthma can be made in children aged 5 years or younger, though it may be challenging.

Diagnostic assessment in this age-group involves a thorough medical history and physical examination to identify signs and symptoms consistent with asthma and to exclude other respiratory conditions (e.g., viral bronchiolitis, tuberculosis, protracted bacterial bronchitis (also known as persistent bacterial bronchitis), and congenital lung anomalies).

The diagnosis of asthma is primarily clinical. All three of the following criteria should be met:

1. Recurrent acute wheezing episode(s):

A history of at least two reported acute wheezing episodes in the past 12 months

OR

At least one acute wheezing episode **AND** asthma-like symptoms between episodes: e.g., dry cough, coughing spells, symptoms worse during sleep, or after laughing, crying or activity.

Acute wheezing episodes are defined as asthma-like symptoms such as wheezing on expiration, accessory muscle use, breathlessness, or difficult, fast or heavy breathing, each episode lasting for more than 24 hours. For at least one episode, the presence of wheezing (as distinct from other respiratory noises) must be confirmed by a trained healthcare provider (preferred) or convincingly reported by a parent/caregiver (alternative).

2. No likely alternative cause for the respiratory symptoms (except for a concurrent viral respiratory infection).

3. A timely clinical response to asthma treatment: clinical improvement after administration of short-acting beta₂-agonist (SABA) with or without oral corticosteroids during an acute episode, or after administration of SABA at home, or clinical improvement during a trial of inhaled corticosteroids for 2–3 months, documented by a trained healthcare provider (preferred) or convincingly reported by parent/caregiver (alternative).

Additional factors that may strengthen the diagnosis of asthma include a history of allergic disease (e.g., allergic rhinitis, atopic dermatitis, allergic sensitization) in the child, or a family history of asthma or allergic disease in a parent, sibling, or other first-degree relative. These features are not required for the diagnosis of asthma, and are not specific for asthma.

Suspected asthma: A definitive diagnosis may not always be possible in young children. If one or more of the above criteria has not yet been fulfilled, a provisional diagnosis of “suspected asthma” should be given and treatment considered, with periodic reassessment to document the response to asthma medication and/or change in symptoms over time.

Asthma is less likely in any of these scenarios:

- The child is younger than 12 months and is experiencing their first episode of wheezing; this is usually due to bronchiolitis, not asthma. The younger the child, the higher the likelihood of an alternative diagnosis.
- The only symptom on detailed history is a productive cough
- Lack of response to a SABA and/or inhaled corticosteroid (ICS) has been documented
- Respiratory signs and symptoms are atypical.

When feasible and accessible, oscillometry can be used to document responsiveness of airflow limitation or airway hyperreactivity, but there is a lack of standardized reference values.

ASTHMA AND WHEEZING IN YOUNG CHILDREN

Asthma is the most common chronic disease of childhood and the leading cause of childhood morbidity from chronic disease as measured by school absences, emergency department visits and hospitalizations.⁸⁶² Asthma often begins in early childhood; in up to half of people with asthma, symptoms commence during childhood.⁸⁶³ Onset of asthma is earlier in males than females.^{237,864-866}

No intervention has yet been shown to prevent the development of asthma or modify its long-term course. Atopy is present in most children with asthma who are over 3 years old, and allergen-specific sensitization (and particularly multiple early-life sensitizations) is one of the most important risk factors for the development of asthma.⁸⁶⁷

Recurrent wheezing occurs in a large proportion of children aged 5 years or younger. In the past, various wheezing phenotypes have been described. However, these have limited clinical value as they may include a variety of conditions other than asthma, they have poor predictive value,⁸⁶⁸ and/or some can only be applied retrospectively (e.g., time trend classifications), as below.

Viral-induced wheezing

This classification originally emerged because recurrent wheezing is typically associated with upper respiratory tract infections (URTI), which occur in this age group around 6–8 times per year.⁸⁶⁹ Some viral infections, including respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) and rhinovirus, are associated with recurrent wheeze and asthma throughout childhood.⁸⁷⁰ Wheezing in this age group is nonspecific and is not always due to asthma, particularly in very young children. In infants younger than 12 months, bronchiolitis may present with wheeze, but is usually accompanied by other signs that do not suggest asthma, such as crackles on chest auscultation. As viral triggers are not unique to asthma, careful observation is needed to judge whether wheezing with a respiratory infection represents a recurrent clinical presentation of childhood asthma or not.

Wheezing phenotypes

In the past, two main classifications of wheezing (called “wheezing phenotypes”) were proposed:

- **Symptom-based classification:**⁸⁷¹ This was based on whether the child had only episodic wheeze (wheezing during discrete time periods, often in association with URTI, with symptoms absent between episodes) or multiple-trigger wheeze (episodic wheezing with symptoms also occurring between these episodes, e.g., during sleep or with triggers such as activity, laughing, or crying).
- **Time trend-based classification:** This system was initially based on retrospective analysis of data from a cohort study²³⁷. It included transient wheeze (symptoms began and ended before the age of 3 years); persistent wheeze (symptoms began before the age of 3 years and continued beyond the age of 6 years), and late-onset wheeze (symptoms began after the age of 3 years). These general patterns have been confirmed in subsequent studies using unsupervised statistical approaches.^{872,873}

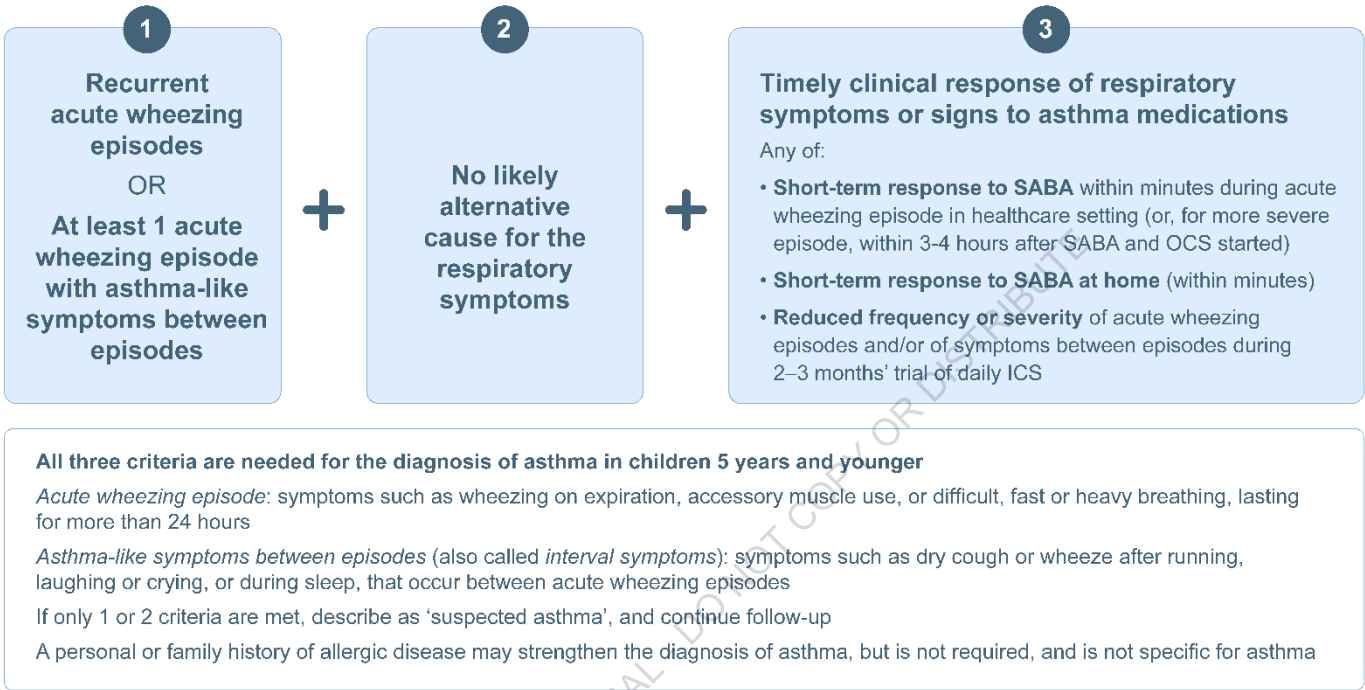
In clinical practice it has been difficult to apply these classifications to an individual patient. Research is still underway to assess the clinical utility of these classification systems, previous wheezing phenotype classifications, and systems for predicting asthma diagnosis at a later age.

The immediate clinical objective is to make a diagnosis in an individual child with respiratory signs/symptoms. The diagnostic approach below is aligned with the concepts of variable respiratory symptoms and variable expiratory airflow on which the diagnosis of asthma in older children and adults is based (Section1, p.25).

CLINICAL DIAGNOSIS OF ASTHMA

The diagnosis of asthma in young children is made by confirming a pattern of recurrent asthma-like symptoms, with careful consideration of the differential diagnosis, and confirming treatment response. A structured, criterion-based approach is recommended. All three criteria must be met to confirm the diagnosis of asthma. If only 1 or 2 criteria are met, consider describing the child’s condition as “suspected asthma”. Box 10-1 shows the overall approach, with more details in Boxes 10-2 (p.195) and 10-3 (p.198) and following text.

Box 10-1. Diagnostic criteria for asthma in children aged 5 years or younger



ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist; OCS: oral; corticosteroid

Box 10-2. Diagnostic criteria for asthma in children aged 5 years or younger

Criteria for diagnosis of asthma in a child aged 5 years or younger

All three criteria listed below must be fulfilled for diagnosis of asthma in this age-group.

If only 1 or 2 criteria are fulfilled, record as suspected asthma.

In these criteria, “confirmed” means that wheezing, or a response to treatment, has been documented by a trained healthcare provider (*preferred*), or convincingly described or imitated by a parent/caregiver (*alternative*), to distinguish it from other respiratory noises.

1. Recurrent acute wheezing episodes* with/without asthma-like symptoms between episodes

At least two acute episodes of asthma-like signs/symptoms (e.g., wheezing on expiration, accessory muscle use, difficult and/or heavy breathing)

OR

At least one acute wheezing episode AND with asthma-like symptoms between wheezing episodes (“interval symptoms”)

Note: There are many causes of noisy breathing, so **wheezing must be confirmed** at least once, preferably by a healthcare worker directly observing the child or verifying a video/audio recording, or convincingly reported by parents who have demonstrated the ability to distinguish wheezing from other sources of noisy breathing.

Note: Past episodes of wheezing or difficulty breathing reported by the parent or caregiver, if confirmed as wheezing, are considered to have been “acute wheezing episodes” if they lasted for more than 24 hours.

2. No likely alternative cause for the respiratory symptoms

Based on a thorough medical history and examination, no other condition (except for a concurrent viral respiratory infection) is likely to explain the asthma-like signs/symptoms.

Note: For differential diagnosis, see Box 10-4, p.199. Imaging or laboratory tests are not usually required.

3. Timely clinical response to acute or longer-term asthma treatment

During an acute wheezing episode in a healthcare setting, there is confirmed improvement of respiratory symptoms and signs within 20–60 mins after administration of SABA or, for more severe episodes, within 3–4 hours after SABA and OCS are commenced.

OR

At home, the parent/caregiver reports that the child’s wheezing or difficulty breathing improves within 20–60 mins after being given SABA.

OR

During a 2- to 3-month trial of daily ICS (e.g., 100–250 mcg/day fluticasone-propionate equivalent by pMDI via spacer) plus as-needed SABA, the parent/caregiver reports a decrease in the severity and/or frequency of the child’s acute wheezing episodes or asthma-like symptoms between acute wheezing episodes.

ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; OCS: oral corticosteroid; pMDI: pressurized metered-dose inhaler; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist

*Audible wheezing, heard without a stethoscope, means a high-pitched sound associated with turbulent expiratory airflow, including due to bronchoconstriction. However, parents/caregivers may use the word “wheeze” to describe any noisy or difficult breathing, including noises that may originate from the upper airway (e.g., congested nose, throat clearing, stridor) or lower airway (e.g., bronchial secretions) rather than from bronchoconstriction. The occurrence of expiratory wheezing consistent with asthma (compared with other conditions) should be confirmed by observation by a trained healthcare provider, or from a recording, or by asking the parent/caregiver to describe or imitate the child’s respiratory sounds.

Box 10-3. Clinical features suggestive of asthma

A. Questions for the parent/caregiver

1. Ask how a typical episode of respiratory symptoms starts and evolves

During times of difficult breathing, does your child have any of these?:

- Wheezing* (a high-pitched noise/squeaking sound when breathing out)? (To distinguish wheeze from other breathing sounds, play a video/audio recording or ask parent/caregiver to record or imitate the sound.)
- Dry cough, coughing spells, difficult or heavy breathing, or rapid breathing?

When are your child's breathing problems or coughing worse?

- After laughing, crying or when they are active (playing, running, excited)
- Are they worse during sleep? Does your child wake up because of breathing problems or coughing?

Do you see any of these when your child has breathing problems?:

- With each breath, does the skin in their neck or throat, or between the ribs, suck in, or the belly push out?
- Fast breathing or heavy/loud breathing, or gasping for air?
- A blue or gray color around the lips?

What triggers your child's episodes of difficult breathing?

- Having a cold?
- In cold air?
- When they are with animals, or things they are allergic to?
- When running fast or playing?

How long do the episodes of difficult breathing last?

- Do they last for only a few minutes, or for as long as 24 hours?

2. Ask about symptoms between episodes

When your child does not have a cold, do they:

- Have a dry cough or wheeze after running, laughing or crying, or during sleep (daytime nap or at night)?
- Wake up because of coughing, wheezing or difficult or heavy breathing, or shortness of breath?
- Stop running, because of coughing, wheezing or difficult or heavy breathing, or shortness of breath?
- Stop physical activity earlier than other children their age because of cough or shortness of breath?

3. Has your child had any of these treatments for the symptoms? (see Box 10-2)

A reliever inhaler or nebulizer? (check name, dose and whether spacer was used) Did it help to relieve symptoms? How long did it take for the symptoms to improve? (within 20–60 minutes is typical of asthma)

Corticosteroid by syrup or crushed pill? (check name, dose) Did it help to relieve symptoms? How long did it take for the symptoms to improve?

Daily inhaled or nebulized corticosteroid? (check name, dose, duration and frequency of use). Did it help to prevent symptoms? How long did it take for the symptoms to improve?

Ask about other features that support the diagnosis of Type 2 asthma (allergic and/or eosinophilic):

Has your child ever had eczema, or been diagnosed with food allergy, hay fever, or other allergies?

Does the child have a close relative (sibling, biological parent) with asthma, hay fever, food allergy or eczema?

B. Clinical findings, including from the medical record

1. During an acute respiratory episode, has a trained healthcare provider observed any of the following?:

- Signs consistent with lower airway obstruction: wheezing (rhonchi), accessory muscle use, decreased air entry, prolonged expiration, decreased air exchange (low oxygen saturation, cyanosis, increased CO₂)
- Timely clinical improvement in response to asthma medications (See Box 10-2).

2. Does the child's medical record include a diagnosis of asthma or terms suggesting variable lower airway obstruction? (e.g., bronchospasm, reactive airway disease, airway hyperreactivity)

CRITERION 1: RECURRENT ACUTE WHEEZING EPISODES WITH/WITHOUT ASTHMA-LIKE SYMPTOMS BETWEEN EPISODES

Summary of criterion

At least 2 acute wheezing episodes in the last 12 months **OR** at least one acute wheezing episode plus interval symptoms/signs at another time.

Acute wheezing episodes are asthma-like symptoms (wheezing on expiration, accessory muscle use, breathlessness, difficult and/or heavy breathing), that the parent/caregiver reports had typically lasted for more than 24 hours. Episodes may occur with or without URIs and/or in response to other triggers, such as exposure to allergens or irritants.

Confirmation of wheezing at least once is necessary, preferably by observation by a healthcare provider or from video/audio recording or convincingly reported by parents who have demonstrated the ability to distinguish wheezing from other sources of noisy breathing.

Interval symptoms/signs are asthma-like symptoms/signs that occur between acute episodes (e.g., dry cough and/or coughing spells with/without wheezing, difficult or heavy breathing, or breathlessness worsening during sleep or after laughing, crying or activity) lasting few minutes or hours. Interval symptoms typically occur during sleep (nocturnal symptoms or awakenings), after laughing or crying, with physical activity (e.g., limiting the child's activity), and/or exposure to various irritants or allergens (Box 10-3, p.198).

Description of signs and symptoms

Wheeze

Wheeze that is audible without a stethoscope is the most common and specific sign associated with asthma in children 5 years and younger. A wheeze that occurs recurrently, during sleep, or with triggers such as activity, laughing, or crying, is consistent with asthma.⁸⁷⁴

Wheezing is defined as a high-pitched sound associated with turbulent expiratory airflow due to bronchoconstriction. However, parents/caregivers may use the word "wheeze" to describe any noisy or difficult breathing, including noises that may originate from the upper airway (e.g., congested nose, throat clearing, stridor) or lower airway (e.g., bronchial secretions) rather than from bronchoconstriction.⁸⁷⁵ Some cultures do not have a word for wheeze.

The clinical interpretation and significance of reported wheeze depends on:

- Who observed it (e.g., parent/caregiver versus a healthcare provider)
- The environmental context (e.g., high-income countries where prevalence of asthma is high versus geographical regions with a high prevalence of parasites that involve the lung)
- The cultural context (The relative importance of certain symptoms can differ between cultures, as can the diagnosis and treatment of respiratory tract diseases in general).

Therefore, wheezing consistent with asthma should be confirmed by direct observation by a trained healthcare provider, or from a recording, or by verifying that the parent/caregiver's description of the child's respiratory sounds is a convincing report of wheeze. Clinicians can guide parents/caregivers to distinguish wheezing from other types of noisy breathing, either by discussion or using video or audio recordings.⁸⁷⁶

Cough

Cough due to asthma is generally dry (non-productive), recurrent and/or persistent, and is usually (but not always) accompanied by wheezing episodes and breathing difficulties. Cough due to asthma may become productive during viral respiratory infections. Allergic rhinitis may be associated with cough in the absence of asthma. A nocturnal cough (when the child is asleep) or a cough that occurs after exercise, laughing or crying, in the absence of an apparent URI, supports a diagnosis of asthma. The common cold and other respiratory illnesses, including pertussis infection, are also associated with coughing.

Breathlessness

Parents/caregivers may also use terms such as “difficult breathing”, “heavy breathing”, or “shortness of breath”. Recurrent breathlessness during exercise is consistent with asthma. In infants and toddlers, crying and laughing represent physical exertion equivalent to exercise in older children.

Activity and social behavior

Physical activity is an important trigger of asthma symptoms in young children. Young children with poorly controlled asthma often abstain from strenuous play or exercise to avoid symptoms, but parents/caregivers may be unaware of this behavior change. Engaging in play is important for a child’s normal social and physical development. For this reason, careful review of the child’s daily activities, including their willingness to walk and play, is important when assessing a potential asthma diagnosis in a young child.

CRITERION 2: EXCLUSION OF OTHER DIAGNOSES

Summary of criterion

Clinical assessment that the signs and symptoms are unlikely to be explained by an alternative diagnosis.

It is particularly important in this age group to consider and exclude alternative causes that can lead to symptoms of wheeze, cough, and breathlessness before confirming an asthma diagnosis (Box 10-4).⁸⁷⁷ The exclusion of alternative diagnoses should be based on a thorough medical history and examination. Imaging or laboratory tests are not required for the diagnosis of asthma.

Considerations

Infants under 12 months: The younger the child, the greater the likelihood of an alternative diagnosis (see Box 10-4). A first episode of wheezing before age 12 months is usually due to bronchiolitis, not asthma.

Allergies: A personal or family history of allergic disease (e.g., atopic dermatitis, allergic rhinitis), may strengthen the support for confirming the diagnosis of asthma, but it is not necessary or sufficient for the diagnosis to be made.

Respiratory viral infections: The presence of URTI symptoms during episodes of wheezing, cough and breathlessness does not rule out a diagnosis of asthma; respiratory viral infections are a common trigger for asthma exacerbations.

Referral: Consider referral to a pediatrician or pediatric respiratory specialist for infants younger than 12 months with recurrent (≥ 2) episodes of wheezing. Expert assessment is strongly recommended if there is any suspicion of an alternative diagnosis, or if symptoms fail to respond to asthma therapy or the child’s condition deteriorates during an appropriately conducted treatment trial of 2–3 months’ duration.

Box 10-4. Common differential diagnoses of asthma in children 5 years and younger

Symptoms or signs	Condition to consider
Mainly cough and runny congested nose for <10 days, <i>without</i> wheezing or difficulty breathing	Viral upper respiratory tract infection
Cough when feeding, recurrent chest infections	Gastroesophageal reflux ± pharyngeal dysphagia
Sudden onset of symptoms, unilateral wheeze	Inhaled foreign body Other conditions including tuberculosis
Protracted paroxysms of coughing, often with stridor and vomiting	Pertussis
Persistent wet cough	Protracted bacterial bronchitis Tuberculosis
Noisy breathing when crying or eating; harsh cough	Tracheomalacia; laryngomalacia
Cardiac murmurs, failure to thrive	Congenital heart disease
Pre-term delivery, symptoms since birth	Bronchopulmonary dysplasia
Excessive cough and mucus production, gastrointestinal symptoms, failure to thrive	Cystic fibrosis
Cough and recurrent chest infections, neonatal respiratory distress, chronic ear infections and persistent nasal discharge from birth	Primary ciliary dyskinesia
Noisy breathing, feeding difficulties	Vascular ring
Recurrent fever and infections (including non-respiratory)	Primary immunodeficiency

Box 10-5. Key indications for referral of a child 5 years or younger for expert advice about diagnosis

Any of the following features in a child 5 years or younger suggest an alternative diagnosis and indicate the need for further investigations:

- Failure to thrive
- Neonatal or very early onset of symptoms (especially if associated with failure to thrive)
- Vomiting associated with respiratory symptoms
- Continuous wheezing, recurrent stridor or seal-like barking cough (airway malacia)
- Failure to respond to asthma medications (inhaled ICS, oral steroids or SABA)
- No association of symptoms with typical triggers, such as viral URTI
- Focal lung or cardiovascular signs, or finger clubbing
- Hypoxemia (<95%) when awake (outside the context of an exacerbation).

Indications for urgent referral for preschool children experiencing an exacerbation are found in Box 12-3, p.219.

CRITERION 3: ASSESSING RESPONSE TO ASTHMA TREATMENT

Summary of criterion

Timely treatment response to asthma medication: response to treatment given during an acute wheezing episode, or to SABA given at home, or with maintenance ICS plus SABA as needed.

Response to treatment during an acute respiratory episode

During an acute care visit with asthma-like symptoms, if wheezing is confirmed by a healthcare provider and other diagnoses are unlikely, the diagnosis of asthma can be confirmed by a timely clinical response to treatment, documented by a trained healthcare provider.

A timely response to SABA means that symptoms/signs improve within 20–60 minutes after SABA is given. For a child with a moderate or severe exacerbation requiring SABA and oral corticosteroids (OCS), a timely response to treatment means that symptoms/signs improve within 3–4 hours after treatment is commenced. See Section 12 (p.214) for management of acute exacerbations.

Response to as-needed SABA for mild acute wheezing episodes or infrequent interval symptoms

For a child with no or infrequent mild acute wheezing episodes that do not require unscheduled medical care, with or without mild intermittent (e.g., twice/week or less) asthma-like symptoms, consider a diagnostic trial of as-needed SABA for up to 2–3 months. SABA should be given by pressurized metered-dose inhaler (pMDI) and spacer (with facemask if needed), given by parents or caregivers when asthma-like symptoms occur (Box 10-2).

Ask the parent/caregiver to monitor whether the child's symptoms improve after administration of SABA, and how quickly. A clinical response to as-needed SABA means an improvement in symptoms/signs within 20–60 minutes. Arrange a follow-up visit within 2–3 months, depending on the frequency of symptoms, to provide sufficient time for symptoms or a wheezing episode to occur.

If the clinical response to SABA during respiratory symptoms is absent or incomplete, review inhalation technique and consider alternative diagnoses. If acute episodes and interval symptoms occur during adequately conducted treatment, or if an acute episode requires urgent medical treatment, consider switching to a trial of daily low-dose ICS plus as-needed SABA.

Treatment trial with inhaled corticosteroid

A 2- to 3-month trial of maintenance ICS, plus SABA as needed, should be considered for:

- Children with a history of one or more acute asthma-like episodes requiring an acute care visit, oral corticosteroids or hospital admission in the past year
- Children with asthma-like symptoms occurring more than twice a week.

For example, give fluticasone propionate 100–250 mcg/day or equivalent (see note below) by pMDI via spacer, with mouthpiece or facemask as appropriate).

Due to the variable nature of asthma, a treatment trial is most informative if conducted during seasons in which the child is most symptomatic. Response to treatment should be reviewed before deciding whether to continue or adjust therapy.

The purpose is to gain evidence of response to ICS treatment, corresponding to the effect on symptoms and airflow limitation on which the diagnosis of asthma is based in older children and in adults. Clinical response to ICS should be evaluated by the frequency and severity of interval (daytime and night-time) symptoms, and asthma-like episodes.

Marked clinical improvement during ICS treatment supports the diagnosis of asthma. If the clinical response is convincing, and the first two criteria for diagnosis have been met, the diagnosis of asthma can be made. Immediately after trial is completed, reduce the ICS dose to the minimum effective dose.

If the clinical response is absent or suboptimal, review adherence to medication and check inhalation technique. If both are adequate reconsider alternative diagnoses, as lack of response to ICS may indicate another condition, or severe asthma for which specialist referral should be considered. If acute episodes recur or interval symptoms recur or worsen after stopping the treatment trial, this further supports a diagnosis of asthma.

ICS doses used in clinical trials

Systematic reviews of randomized controlled trials testing the efficacy of daily ICS vs placebo in children younger than 6 years with repeated wheezing or asthma showed a significant reduction by 40% in the risk of exacerbations⁸⁷⁸ and by 30% in the risk of exacerbations requiring rescue oral corticosteroids⁸⁷⁹ (Evidence A). The median ICS dose used in the included studies was 200 mcg/day fluticasone propionate or equivalent (interquartile range 150, 250 mcg), with the doses used in these studies often determined by regulatory approvals. These ICS doses are higher than the low doses recommended for ongoing treatment of asthma in children aged 5 years and younger in clinical practice (Box 11-3). A dose–response analysis is needed to ascertain whether lower doses are effective in diagnostic treatment trials in children aged 5 years and younger. Until this evidence is available, it is suggested that clinicians should use the doses recommended above, but reduce the dose as soon as a clinical response indicates that the diagnosis of asthma has been confirmed.

TESTS TO ASSIST IN DIAGNOSIS

While no test can specifically and definitively diagnose asthma with certainty in children aged 5 years or younger, the following are useful adjuncts.

Tests for allergic sensitization

Sensitization to allergens can be assessed using either skin prick testing or allergen-specific immunoglobulin E. Allergic sensitization is present in the majority of children with asthma aged 3 years or older.⁸⁸⁰ However, absence of sensitization to common aeroallergens does not rule out a diagnosis of asthma.

Chest X-ray

Radiographs are rarely indicated. However, if there is doubt about the diagnosis of asthma in a wheezing or coughing child, a plain chest X-ray may help to exclude structural abnormalities (e.g., congenital lobar emphysema, vascular ring), chronic infections such as tuberculosis, an inhaled foreign body, or other diagnoses. Other imaging investigations may be appropriate, depending on the condition being considered.

Lung function testing

Due to the inability of most children 5 years and younger to perform reproducible expiratory maneuvers, lung function testing, bronchial provocation testing, and other physiological tests do not have a major role in the diagnosis of asthma at this age. However, by age 5 or 6 years many children can perform reproducible spirometry if coached by an experienced technician and with visual incentives.

Alternative measures for lung function testing, including oscillometry and bronchial provocation (challenge) testing, are available for children as young as 3 years old. Oscillometry is a non-invasive effort-independent lung function test obtained during quiet tidal breathing, which can be performed in children as young as 3 years, and can be used to assess bronchodilator responsiveness.⁸⁸¹ Oscillometry measurements differ between devices, so device-specific reference values should be used. Challenge testing should only be performed by trained personnel, using standardized protocols, in a setting where severe bronchoconstriction can be managed if it occurs.

Exhaled nitric oxide

Measurement of fractional concentration of exhaled nitric oxide (FeNO) is not widely available for most children in this age group and currently remains primarily a research tool. FeNO can be measured offline in young children with tidal breathing, and normal reference values have been published for children aged 1–5 years, from morning measurements.⁸⁸² In preschool children with recurrent coughing and wheezing, an elevated FeNO (recorded outside any URTI, and more than 4 weeks after any OCS) predicted physician-diagnosed asthma at school age,⁸⁸³ and was associated with increased odds for wheezing, asthma and ICS use by school age, independent of clinical history and presence of specific IgE.⁸⁸⁴

11. Assessment and management of asthma in children 5 years and younger

KEY POINTS

The following principles apply to children aged 5 years and younger with a diagnosis of asthma (see Section 10).

The goals of asthma management in young children are similar to those in older patients:

- To achieve best possible control of symptoms and maintain normal activity levels
- To minimize the risk of asthma flare-ups, impaired lung development and medication side-effects.

Day-to-day asthma symptoms should be treated with inhaled short-acting beta₂-agonist (SABA) as reliever.

Daily controller therapy should be initiated in children with asthma symptoms more than twice a week, or with one or more severe exacerbations requiring unscheduled medical care in the previous year. The preferred controller option is daily treatment with inhaled corticosteroids (ICS).

Response to treatment should be reviewed before deciding whether to continue it or change it. If a clinical response is absent or incomplete, reconsider inhaler technique, adherence, modifiable risk factors, alternative diagnoses and comorbidities that may be contributing to exacerbations or respiratory symptoms.

If there is a good response to ICS for 2–3 months, a dose reduction should be considered.

The choice of inhaler device should be based on the child's age and capability. The preferred device is a pressurized metered-dose inhaler (pMDI) via spacer, with face mask for children <3 years and mouthpiece for most children aged 3–5 years, and tidal breathing technique (5–6 breaths per puff). Children should be switched from a face mask to mouthpiece as soon as they can demonstrate good technique. Inhaler technique should be repeatedly assessed and corrected when necessary.

Education and an individualized written action plan should be provided to parents/caregivers.

The need for asthma treatment should be reassessed periodically, since symptoms may fluctuate and asthma-like symptoms remit in many young children. If remission occurs, advise parents/caregivers that asthma symptoms will often return later in life.

GOAL OF ASTHMA MANAGEMENT

As with other age groups, the goal of asthma management in young children is to achieve the best possible long-term asthma outcomes for the child:

- To achieve and maintain good long-term control of symptoms and maintain normal activity levels
- To minimize future risk; that is to reduce the risk of exacerbations (flare-ups), maintain lung function and lung development as close to normal as possible, and minimize medication side-effects.

Maintaining normal activity levels is particularly important for young children, because engaging in play is important for their normal social and physical development. Avoiding flare-ups is important not only because of the health concerns, but also because of the disruption they cause to social and educational progress. It is important to also elicit the goals of the parent/caregiver, as these may differ from conventional medical goals.

The long-term goals of asthma management are achieved through a partnership between the parent/caregiver and the healthcare provider team, as a continual cycle:

- **Assess** (diagnosis, symptom control, risk factors, inhaler technique, adherence, parent preference)
- **Adjust** treatment (medications, non-pharmacological strategies, and treatment of modifiable risk factors)
- **Review response** including medication effectiveness, side-effects, and parent satisfaction.

This cycle is conducted in combination with education of parent/caregiver, and child (depending on the child's age):

- Skills training for effective use of inhaler devices and encouragement of good adherence
- Monitoring of symptoms by parent/caregiver
- A written personalized asthma action plan.

ASSESSMENT OF ASTHMA

What does “asthma control” mean?

Asthma control means the extent to which the manifestations of asthma are controlled, with or without treatment.^{42,97} Asthma control has two components (Box 11-1, p.204): symptom control, and future risk of exacerbations, poor lung function or treatment side-effects. The rationale for this is described on p.45. In young children, as in older patients, both symptom control and future risk should be monitored (Evidence D).

Assessing asthma symptom control

Assessment of whether asthma symptom control is satisfactory in children 5 years and younger depends on information about frequency and severity obtained from family members and caregivers, but they may be unaware either of how often the child has experienced asthma symptoms, or that their respiratory symptoms represent uncontrolled asthma. Parents/caregivers may report irritability, tiredness and mood changes in their child as the main problems when asthma is not well controlled.

Few objective measures to assess symptom control have been validated for children <4 years. The Childhood Asthma Control Test can be used for children aged 4–11 years.¹⁶¹ The Test for Respiratory and Asthma Control in Kids (TRACK) is a validated questionnaire for parent/caregiver completion for preschool-aged children with symptoms consistent with asthma; it includes symptom control in the previous 4 weeks, reliever use in the previous 3 months, and courses of systemic corticosteroids in the previous year.¹⁶⁵ However, children with asthma who have no symptoms between acute wheezing episodes (interval symptoms) are still at risk of exacerbations, particularly with respiratory viral infections.

Box 11-1 shows a working schema for assessing asthma control in children ≤5 years, based on current expert opinion. It incorporates assessment of symptoms; the child's level of activity and their need for reliever/rescue treatment; and assessment of risk factors for adverse outcomes (Evidence D). There are no validated tools for assessing symptom control over longer periods than 1–4 weeks, but ask the parent/caregiver whether the child's recent symptoms and activity level are usual for the individual.

Assessing future risk of adverse outcomes

The relationship between symptom control and future risk of adverse outcomes, such as exacerbations (Box 11-1, p.204), has not been sufficiently studied in young children. Although exacerbations may occur in children after months of good symptom control (e.g., triggered by viral respiratory infections), the risk of exacerbations is greater if current symptom control is poor. In a randomized controlled trial in children aged 2–3 years assessed to be at high risk of asthma (based on modified Asthma Predictive Index), those who were treated with daily low-dose ICS for 2 years experienced fewer days with asthma symptoms and a reduced risk of exacerbations than those receiving placebo.⁸⁸⁵

The risk of future harm due to excessive doses of inhaled or systemic corticosteroids must also be avoided. This can be minimized by ensuring that the prescribed treatment is appropriate and reduced to the lowest dose that maintains satisfactory symptom control and minimizes exacerbations. When considering the child's exposure to corticosteroids, also include nasal corticosteroids. The child's height should be measured and recorded at least yearly, as growth velocity may be lower in the first 1–2 years of ICS treatment,¹⁵⁸ and poorly controlled asthma can affect growth.¹⁵⁷ The minimum effective dose of ICS to maintain good asthma control should be used. If decreased growth velocity is seen, other factors should be considered, including poorly controlled asthma, frequent use of oral corticosteroids (OCS), and poor nutrition, and referral should be considered.

If ICS is delivered through a face mask or nebulizer, the skin on the nose and around the mouth should be cleaned shortly after inhalation to avoid local side-effects such as steroid rash (reddening and atrophy).

Box 11-1. GINA assessment of asthma control in children 5 years and younger

A. Recent symptom control (also ask about whole period since last visit)		Level of asthma symptom control		
In the past 4 weeks, has the child had:		Well controlled	Partly controlled	Uncontrolled
Daytime asthma symptoms more than twice a week?	Yes ☐ No ☐	None of these	1–2 of these	3–4 of these
Any night waking or night coughing due to asthma?	Yes ☐ No ☐			
SABA reliever medication needed* more than twice a week?	Yes ☐ No ☐			
Any activity limitation due to asthma? (Runs/plays less than other children, tires easily during walks/playing?)	Yes ☐ No ☐			
B. Future risk for poor asthma outcomes				
Risk factors for asthma exacerbations within the next few months				
- One or more severe acute episodes (ED attendance, hospitalization, or course of OCS) in previous year - Uncontrolled asthma symptoms (as above) - The start of the child's usual "flare-up" season (especially if autumn/fall) - Indoor exposures: tobacco smoke; indoor air pollution; indoor allergens (e.g., house dust mite, cockroach, pets, mold), especially in combination with viral infection⁸⁸⁶ - Major psychological or socio-economic problems for child or family - Poor adherence to ICS medication, or incorrect inhaler technique - Outdoor air pollution (including NO₂ and particles)¹¹⁷				
Risk factors for persistent airflow limitation				
- Severe asthma with several hospitalizations - History of bronchiolitis				
Risk factors for medication side-effects				
- Systemic: Frequent courses of OCS, high-dose and/or potent ICS (for low ICS doses, see Box 11-3, p.208). - Local: moderate- to high-dose or potent ICS; incorrect inhaler technique; failure to protect skin or eyes when using ICS by nebulizer or spacer with face mask				

ED: emergency department; ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; OCS: oral corticosteroid

* Excludes reliever taken before exercise. Before considering a change in treatment, ensure that the child's symptoms are due to asthma, and that the child has good inhaler technique and good adherence to existing treatment.

REMISSION OF ASTHMA

Remission of asthma has been investigated extensively in the past, most commonly spontaneous remission of childhood asthma (long-term absence of symptoms/signs without treatment). Definitions and criteria vary, but they commonly refer to either *clinical remission* (e.g., no asthma symptoms or exacerbations for a specific period, usually at least 1 year) or *complete (or pathophysiological) remission* (e.g., also including normal lung function, airway responsiveness and/or inflammatory markers). There has been interest in *remission off treatment*, and *remission on treatment*, for example with biologic therapy for severe asthma.²³⁴⁻²³⁶

The concept of clinical remission on treatment is consistent with the *long-term goal of asthma management* promoted by GINA (p.55), to achieve the best possible asthma outcomes for each patient. This includes control of symptoms (long-term, not just in recent days/weeks), unimpaired physical activity, improved or stable optimized lung function, prevention of exacerbations (particularly those requiring OCS), avoidance of maintenance OCS, prevention of asthma deaths, and avoidance of adverse effects of asthma medications.

Reported rates of *spontaneous remission (off treatment)* from studies in children with wheezing or asthma vary depending on the populations, definitions, and length of follow-up. For example, in one study, 59% of wheezing preschool children had no wheezing at 6 years,²³⁷ whereas in another study, only 15% of children with persistent wheezing at/after 9 years had no wheezing at 26 years.²³⁸ Clinical remission is more frequent than pathophysiological remission at all ages.^{239,240}

The most important predictors of asthma remission during school years in children with childhood wheezing are fewer, milder or decreasing frequency of symptomatic episodes,²⁴¹⁻²⁴⁴ good or improving lung function, and less airway hyperresponsiveness.²⁴⁰ Risk factors for persistence of childhood asthma include atopy, parental asthma/allergy, later onset of symptoms, wheezing without colds, and maternal smoking or tobacco smoke exposure.

Remission is not cure: Asthma often recurs later in life, and children whose asthma has remitted have an increased risk of accelerated lung decline in adulthood, independent from, but synergistic with, tobacco smoking; and they may develop persistent airflow limitation, although this is less likely than for those whose asthma symptoms have persisted.²⁴⁵ This suggests the importance of monitoring lung function in people with remission of asthma symptoms.

To date, there is no evidence that interventions in childhood increase the likelihood of remission of asthma or reduce the risk of recurrence.¹⁷⁷ However, treatment of asthma in childhood with ICS substantially reduces the burden of asthma on the child and family, reduces absence from school and social events, reduces the risk of exacerbations and hospitalizations, and allows the child to participate in normal physical activity.

Advice for parents/caregivers

Parents/caregivers often ask if their child will grow out of their asthma, and will not need treatment in the future. Current consensus advice for discussions like these includes the following:

- If the child has no reported symptoms, check for evidence of ongoing disease activity, e.g., wheezing; child avoiding physical activity; lung function if available for at least 1 year.
- Use a description like “*asthma has gone quiet for now*” to help avoid misunderstandings. If you use the term “remission” with parents/caregivers, explain the medical meaning, because it is often interpreted as meaning a permanent cure, or that it is like cancer.
- Advise parents/caregivers that even if the child’s symptoms resolve completely, their asthma may recur later.
- Emphasize the benefits of taking controller treatment for the child’s current health, their risk of asthma attacks, and their ability to participate in school and sporting activities, avoiding claims about effect of therapy on future asthma outcomes.

Research needs: clinical questions about remission *off* treatment in children focus on risk factors for asthma persistence and recurrence (including clinical, pathological, and genetic factors), the effect of risk reduction strategies on the likelihood of remission, whether monitoring after remission to allow early identification of asthma recurrence improves outcomes, and whether progression to persistent airflow limitation can be prevented. Clinical questions about remission *on* treatment (e.g., in children with severe asthma treated with biologic therapy) include whether inhaled anti-inflammatory therapy can be down-titrated.

Risk profiles for prediction of persistent asthma

Several risk profile tools have been developed with the aim of identifying which wheezing children aged 5 years and younger are at high risk of having asthma symptoms that persist after the preschool years. However, these tools have shown limited utility when evaluated in clinical practice. Each tool demonstrates different performance characteristics with varying criteria used to identify risk.⁸⁸⁷

Only three prediction tools have been externally validated (Asthma Predictive Index⁸⁸⁸ from Tucson, USA, Prevention and Incidence of Asthma and Mite Allergy (PIAMA) index⁸⁸⁹ from the Netherlands, and Leicester tool⁸⁹⁰ from the UK). A systematic review has shown that these tools have poor predictive accuracy, with variation in sensitivity and positive predictive value.⁸⁹¹ Larger predictive studies using more advanced statistical methods, and with objective measurements for asthma diagnosis, are probably needed to propose a practical tool in clinical care to predict persistent asthma in recurrent wheezers in infancy and preschool age.

MEDICATIONS FOR SYMPTOM CONTROL AND RISK REDUCTION

Choosing medications for children 5 years and younger

Good control of asthma can be achieved in almost all young children with medication.⁸⁹² The treatment plan should be developed in a partnership between the family/caregiver and the healthcare provider. As with older children and adults, medications comprise only one component of asthma management in young children; other key components include education (p.122), skills training for inhaler devices (p.117) and adherence (p.120), non-pharmacological strategies (p.63) including environmental control, where appropriate, regular monitoring, and clinical review (p.125).

When recommending treatment for a young child, both general and individual questions apply (Box 3-4, p.58):

- *What is the “preferred” medication option* at each treatment step to control asthma symptoms and minimize future risk? These decisions are based on data for efficacy, effectiveness and safety from clinical trials, and on high quality observational data.
- *How does this individual child differ from other children with asthma?* Consider:
 - Response to previous treatment
 - Patient characteristics that contribute to symptoms or risk of flare-ups: e.g., clinical phenotype, risk factors for flare-ups, comorbidities including allergic rhinitis, environmental exposures
 - Preferences of the parent/caregiver (goals, beliefs and concerns about medications)
 - Practical issues (cost, inhaler technique and adherence).

Studies in preschool children suggest that consideration of factors such as allergic sensitization and/or peripheral blood count may help to better identify which children are more likely to have a short-term response to ICS.⁸⁹³ In an analysis of several studies involving preschool children with recurrent wheezing, daily ICS treatment reduced the annualized exacerbation rate in the subset of children who had clinical features of allergy.⁸⁹⁴ However, further studies are needed to assess the applicability of these findings in a wider range of settings, particularly in areas where blood eosinophilia may reflect helminth infection rather than asthma or atopy.

The following treatment recommendations for children aged 5 years or younger are based on the available evidence and on expert opinion. Evidence is expanding but is still rather limited, as clinical trials in this age group have differed in the populations included, definition of asthma, baseline characteristics recorded, and outcome measures including definitions of exacerbations.

A stepwise treatment approach is recommended (Box 11-2, p.207), based on symptom control, risk of exacerbations and side-effects, and response to initial treatment. Generally, treatment includes long-term daily use of low-dose ICS treatment to keep asthma well controlled (see Box 11-3 for doses), with reliever medications for as-needed symptom relief. The choice of inhaler device is also an important consideration (Box 11-4, p.209).

Rapid-acting bronchodilator (reliever) treatment

The recommended asthma reliever for preschoolers is SABA given as needed when symptoms occur, by pMDI with mouthpiece or facemask as appropriate.

If a child needs more than 4 puffs of salbutamol (albuterol) in less than 4 hours, urgent medical care should be sought. The treatment of acute asthma exacerbations in children 5 years and younger is described in Section 12 (see Acute asthma exacerbations in children 5 years and younger, p.214).

Box 11-2. Personalized management of asthma in children 5 years and younger

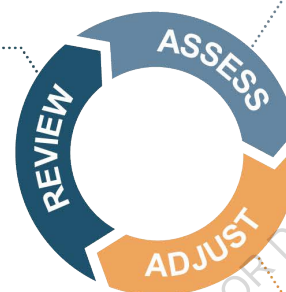
GINA 2026

Children 5 years and younger

Personalized asthma management:

Assess, Adjust, Review response

Symptoms
Exacerbations
Side-effects
Comorbidities
Lung function
Child and parent/caregiver satisfaction



Exclude alternative diagnoses
Symptom control & modifiable risk factors
Comorbidities
Inhaler technique & adherence
Child and parent/caregiver preferences and goals

Treatment of modifiable risk factors and comorbidities
Non-pharmacological strategies
Asthma medications
Education & skills training

Asthma medication options:

Adjust treatment up and down for individual child's needs

PREFERRED CONTROLLER CHOICE

STEP 1

(Insufficient evidence for daily controller)

STEP 2

Daily low dose inhaled corticosteroid (ICS)
(see Box 11-3 for ICS dose ranges for preschool children)

STEP 3

Double 'low dose' ICS
(See Box 11-3)

STEP 4

Continue controller & refer for expert assessment

Other controller options
(limited indications, or less evidence for efficacy or safety)

Consider intermittent short course ICS at onset of viral illness

Daily leukotriene receptor antagonist (LTRA[†]),
or intermittent short course of ICS at onset of respiratory illness

Consider referral for expert assessment

RELIEVER

As-needed short-acting beta₂-agonist

CONSIDER THIS STEP FOR CHILDREN WITH:

Infrequent acute (e.g. viral-induced) wheezing episodes and no or minimal interval asthma symptoms

Asthma symptoms not well-controlled (Box 11-1), or one or more severe exacerbations in the past year

Asthma not well controlled on low dose ICS

Asthma not well controlled on Step 3 ICS

Before stepping up, check for alternative diagnosis and inhaler skills, review adherence and exposures

ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; LTRA: leukotriene receptor antagonist. For ICS doses in children, see Box 11-3 (p.208) [†]If prescribing LTRA, advise parent/caregiver about risk of neuropsychiatric adverse effects.

Box 11-3. Low daily doses of inhaled corticosteroids for children 5 years and younger

This is not a table of equivalence, but instead, suggestions for “low” total daily doses for the ICS treatment recommendations for children aged 5 years and younger in Box 11-2 (p.207), based on available studies and product information. Data on comparative potency are not readily available, particularly for children.

This table does NOT imply potency equivalence. For example, if you switch a child’s treatment from a “low” dose of one ICS to a “low” dose of another ICS, this may represent a decrease (or increase) in potency. The child’s asthma may become unstable (or they may be at increased risk of adverse effects).

Children should be monitored to ensure stability after any change of treatment. Doses and potency may also differ by country, depending on local products, inhaler devices, regulatory labelling and clinical guidelines. The doses listed here are the lowest approved doses for which safety and effectiveness have been adequately studied in this age group.

Low-dose ICS provides most of the clinical benefit for most children with asthma. Higher doses are associated with an increased risk of local and systemic side-effects, which must be balanced against potential benefits.

Inhaled corticosteroid	Low total daily dose in mcg (metered dose) (age-group with adequate safety and effectiveness data)
BDP (pMDI, standard particle, HFA)	100 (ages 5 years and older)
BDP (pMDI, extrafine particle, HFA)	50 (ages 5 years and older)
Budesonide nebulized	500 (ages 1 year and older)
Budesonide, pMDI or DPI	Awaiting systematic review
Fluticasone propionate (pMDI, standard particle, HFA)	50 (ages 4 years and older)
Fluticasone furoate (DPI)	Not sufficiently studied in children 5 years and younger
Mometasone furoate (pMDI, standard particle, HFA)	100 (ages 5 years and older)
Ciclesonide (pMDI, extrafine particle, HFA)	Not sufficiently studied in children 5 years and younger

In children, pMDI should always be used with a spacer

BDP : beclometasone dipropionate; DPI: dry powder inhaler; HFA: hydrofluoroalkane propellant; pMDI: pressurized metered-dose inhaler. For new preparations, including generic ICS, the manufacturer’s information should be reviewed carefully, as products containing the same molecule may not be clinically equivalent.

Note about ICS doses: Meta-analyses of placebo-controlled trials of daily ICS in children with recurrent wheezing and/or asthma, who at enrolment had frequent between-episode symptoms, demonstrated a significant reduction in symptoms and exacerbations.^{879,895} Many of these studies used higher daily doses of ICS than those shown in this table (e.g., fluticasone propionate mean 200 mcg (interquartile range 150, 250 mcg) or equivalent, often determined by regulatory approvals. However, dose-response analyses have not been published to know whether lower doses are also effective in confirming the diagnosis of asthma in this age-group.

Once the diagnosis of asthma is confirmed, the general principle should be the same as for older children and adults: for each patient, establish the minimal effective dose that controls their interval symptoms and, in combination with an action plan, reduces the risk of acute episodes and need for courses of oral corticosteroids.

Further evidence is needed to support the doses in this table.

Which children with asthma should be prescribed regular ICS treatment?

Daily low-dose ICS (Step 2, Box 11-2, p.207) is indicated for a child with either of the following:

- Respiratory symptoms that are not well controlled, (e.g., reliever needed more than twice a week on average; Box 11-1, p.204) (Evidence A)
- One or more exacerbations or episodes of wheezing in the past 12 months that required an acute care visit, a short course of rescue OCS, or a hospital admission (Evidence A).

Daily ICS treatment may also be indicated in a child with recurrent viral-induced asthma (Evidence D).

It is important to discuss the decision to prescribe controller treatment and the choice of treatment with the child's parents or caregivers. They should be aware of both the relative benefits and risks of the treatments, and the importance of maintaining normal activity levels for their child's normal physical and social development.

Although effects of ICS on growth velocity are seen in pre-pubertal children in the first 1–2 years of treatment, this is not progressive or cumulative,¹⁵⁹ and the one study that examined long-term outcomes showed a difference of only 0.7% in adult height.^{158,896} Poorly controlled asthma itself adversely affects adult height.¹⁵⁷ Effects of ICS on growth velocity are dose dependent, so the minimal effective ICS dose should be identified for each child.

ASTHMA TREATMENT STEPS FOR CHILDREN AGED 5 YEARS AND YOUNGER

Asthma treatment in young children follows a stepwise approach (Box 11-2), with medication adjusted up or down, in conjunction with an asthma action plan, to achieve good symptom control and minimize future risk of exacerbations and medication side-effects. The need for controller treatment should be re-assessed regularly.

Step 1. Preferred option: as-needed inhaled short-acting beta₂-agonist (SABA)

All children with asthma or suspected asthma should be provided with inhaled SABA for relief of symptoms (Evidence D). See Box 11-4 (p.209) for choice of inhaler device.

SABA as needed for the relief of symptoms may be the only asthma treatment indicated for some children with symptoms no more than twice a week on average. Symptoms more than twice a week over a 1-month period indicates the need for a trial of low-dose ICS treatment (see Step 2).⁸⁹⁷

Other options

For children with intermittent viral-induced asthma and no interval symptoms, particularly those with underlying atopy (positive for modified Asthma Predictive Index) in whom inhaled SABA medication is not sufficient, intermittent high-dose ICS may be considered^{786,898,899} (see Management of worsening asthma and exacerbations, p.170). Due to the risk of side-effects, this should only be considered if the physician is confident that the treatment will be used appropriately.

In children with asthma aged 5–15 years, an open-label randomized controlled trial found that as-needed low-dose budesonide-formoterol (100/6 mcg) led to a reduction in moderate-severe exacerbations compared with as-needed SABA, with no difference in growth.²⁰ For more details, see p.85. A similar study is underway in children aged 2–5 years.

Not recommended

Oral bronchodilator therapy (including in liquids/syrups) is not recommended due to its slower onset of action and higher rate of side-effects, compared with inhaled SABA (Evidence D).

Step 2. Preferred option: daily low-dose ICS plus as-needed SABA

Regular daily low-dose ICS (Box 11-3, p.208) is recommended as the preferred initial treatment to control asthma in children 5 years and younger whose asthma symptoms are not well controlled, or who have had one or more severe exacerbations in the previous year (Evidence A).^{879,900,901} This treatment should be given initially for at least 2–3 months to establish its effectiveness in achieving good asthma control.

Other options

In young children with persistent asthma, regular treatment with a leukotriene receptor antagonist (LTRA) modestly reduces symptoms and need for oral corticosteroids, compared with placebo.⁹⁰² However, for young children with recurrent viral-induced wheezing/asthma, a review concluded that neither regular nor intermittent LTRA reduces the rate of exacerbations requiring systemic corticosteroid treatment (Evidence A).⁹⁰³ A further systematic review found that in preschool children with asthma or recurrent wheezing, daily ICS was more effective in improving symptom control and reducing exacerbations than regular LTRA monotherapy.⁸⁹⁵ Prescribers should counsel parents/caregivers about the potential adverse effects of montelukast on sleep and behavior, and healthcare providers should consider the benefits and risks of side effects before prescribing.³³⁰

For preschool children with asthma characterized by frequent viral-induced wheezing and interval asthma symptoms, as-needed (prn)⁹⁰⁴ or episodic high-dose ICS^{786,898,899,905} may be considered, but a trial of regular daily low-dose ICS should be undertaken first. The effect on exacerbation risk seems similar for regular daily low-dose and episodic high-dose ICS.⁸⁷⁹ See also Initial home management of asthma exacerbations (p.215).

Several clinical trials of anti-inflammatory reliever therapy with as-needed-only low-dose ICS-formoterol in children are underway.

If good asthma control is not achieved with the first treatment selected, trials of the alternative Step 2 therapies are recommended before moving to Step 3.⁸⁹³

Step 3. Double the “low” daily ICS dose plus as-needed SABA. Consider specialist referral

If asthma symptoms are not well controlled after 2–3 months of initial treatment with a low dose of ICS, or if exacerbations continue to occur, check the following before considering any step up in treatment:

- Confirm that the symptoms are due to asthma rather than a concomitant or alternative condition (Box 10-4, p.199).
- Check and correct inhaler technique. Consider alternative delivery systems if indicated.
- Confirm good adherence to the prescribed dose.
- Ask parents/caregivers about risk factors, such as exposure to allergens or tobacco smoke (Box 11-1, p.204).

Preferred option: young children's medium-dose ICS (double the “low” daily dose)

Consider doubling the initial low dose of ICS (Evidence C). Assess response after 2–3 months. The child should be referred for expert assessment if symptom control remains poor and/or flare-ups persist, or if side-effects of treatment are observed or suspected.

Consider specialist referral.

Step 4. Continue controller treatment and refer for expert assessment

If asthma symptoms are still not well controlled, or acute episodes persist after doubling the initial low dose of ICS, carefully reassess inhaler technique and adherence to medication, as these are common problems in this age group. Also reassess and address control of environmental factors, where relevant, and reconsider the asthma diagnosis. Refer for expert or specialist advice.

Other options

The best treatment for this population has not been established. If the diagnosis of asthma has been confirmed, the specialist may consider any of the following options:

- Add-on long-acting muscarinic agents (LAMA): There is insufficient evidence on the efficacy and safety of ICS in combination with a LAMA in this age group. A small 12-week trial in children aged 1–5 years with persistent asthma symptoms tested various daily doses of tiotropium (2.5 mcg vs 5 mcg vs placebo). No group difference in symptoms were observed and no safety concerns emerged.⁹⁰⁶

- Addition of LTRA to maintenance ICS: This option may be considered, based on data from older children (Evidence D). The relative cost of different treatment options in some countries may be relevant to controller choices for children. Parents should be advised about the concern about potential neuropsychiatric adverse effects with montelukast.³³⁰
- ICS in combination with a long-acting beta₂-agonist (LABA): There are insufficient data from studies evaluating the efficacy and safety of ICS-LABA in children younger than 4 years.
- There are no published studies of maintenance-and-reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol (MART) in children younger than 5 years.

The need for additional controller treatment should be re-evaluated at each visit and maintained for as short a period as possible, with consideration of potential risks and benefits. Treatment goals and their feasibility should be reconsidered and discussed with the child's family/caregiver.

REVIEWING RESPONSE AND ADJUSTING TREATMENT

Assessment at every visit should include asthma symptom control and risk factors (Box 11-1, p.204), and side-effects. The child's height should be measured every year, or more often. Asthma-like symptoms remit in a substantial proportion of children of 5 years or younger (p.204),⁹⁰⁷⁻⁹⁰⁹ so the need for continued controller treatment should be regularly assessed (e.g., every 3–6 months) (Evidence D). If therapy is stepped-down or discontinued, schedule a follow-up visit 3–6 weeks later to check whether symptoms have recurred, as therapy may need to be stepped-up or reinstituted (Evidence D).

Marked seasonal variations may be seen in symptoms and exacerbations in this age-group. For children with seasonal symptoms whose daily long-term controller treatment is to be discontinued (e.g., 4 weeks after their season ends), the parent/caregiver should be provided with a written asthma action plan detailing specific signs of worsening asthma, the medications that should be initiated to treat it, and when and how to contact medical care.

Before considering a step-up of controller treatment

If symptom control is poor and/or exacerbations persist despite 2–3 months of adequate controller therapy, check the following before considering any step up in treatment:

- Confirm that the symptoms are due to asthma rather than a concomitant or alternative condition (Box 10-4, p.199). Refer for expert assessment if the diagnosis is in doubt.
- Check and correct inhaler technique.
- Confirm good adherence to the prescribed dose.
- Consider trial of one of the other treatment options for that step, as many children may respond to one of the options.
- Ask parents/caregivers about risk factors such as allergen or tobacco smoke exposure (Box 11-1, p.204).

CHOICE OF INHALER DEVICE

Asthma treatment in children aged 5 years and younger should be based on inhaled medicines. General information about inhaler devices, and the issues that should be considered, are found in Section 5 (p.117) and in Box 5-1 (p.118). These include first choosing the right medication(s) for the child to control symptoms, allow normal activity, and reduce the risk of severe exacerbations, then considering which delivery device is available, whether they can use it correctly after training and, if more than one type of inhaler device is available, their relative environmental impact.

Delivery of medications by pressurized metered-dose inhaler (pMDI) and spacer

For children aged 5 years and younger, the preferred delivery system is a pMDI with a valved spacer (Box 11-4, p.209), with a mouthpiece or face mask, depending on the child's age (Evidence A).⁹¹⁰ The spacer device should have documented efficacy in young children. The dose delivered may vary considerably between spacers, so consider this if changing from one spacer to another.

The only possible inhalation technique in young children is tidal breathing (i.e., taking multiple breaths in and out through the spacer mouthpiece or face mask after each actuation is released into the spacer). The optimal number of breaths required to empty the spacer depends on the child's tidal volume, and the dead space and volume of the spacer. Generally, 5–6 breaths will be sufficient per actuation. For suspensions, e.g., salbutamol (albuterol), it is essential to shake the inhaler immediately before each actuation.

The spacer, and the way it is used can markedly affect the amount of drug delivered:

- Spacer size may affect the amount of drug available for inhalation, in a complex way, depending on the drug prescribed and the pMDI used. Young children can use spacers of all sizes but, theoretically, a lower volume spacer (<350 mL) is preferable in very young children.
- Only 1 actuation of the pMDI should be delivered at a time, and the inhaler should be shaken **immediately before each actuation**. Multiple actuations into the spacer before inhalation may markedly reduce the amount of drug inhaled.
- Delay between actuating the pMDI into the spacer and inhalation (>30 seconds) may reduce or increase the amount of drug available. This varies between medications and spacers, but to maximize drug delivery, inhalation should start as soon as possible after actuation.⁵²⁵ If a healthcare provider or a caregiver is giving the medication to the child, they should shake and actuate the pMDI only when the child is ready, and the spacer is in the child's mouth.
- If a face mask is used, it must be fitted tightly around the child's mouth and nose, to avoid loss of drug and exposure of eyes. The skin on the nose and around the mouth should be cleaned immediately after the inhalations are finished. Switch to a mouthpiece as soon as the child is able to use this.
- Ensure that the valve is moving while the child is breathing through the spacer.
- Static charge may accumulate on some plastic spacers, attracting drug particles and reducing lung delivery. This charge can be reduced by washing the spacer with detergent (without rinsing) and allowing it to air dry, but it may re-accumulate over time. Spacers made of anti-static materials or metals are less subject to this problem. If a patient or healthcare provider carries a new plastic spacer for emergency use, it should be regularly washed with detergent (e.g., monthly) to reduce static charge.

Nebulizers, the only viable alternative delivery systems in children, are reserved for the minority of children who cannot be taught effective use of a spacer device. If a nebulizer is used for delivery of ICS, it should be used with a mouthpiece to avoid the medication reaching the eyes; again, if a mask is used, clean the skin around mouth and nose afterwards. If a nebulizer is used, follow local infection control procedures.

Box 11-4. Choosing an inhaler device for children 5 years and younger

Age	Preferred device	Alternate device
0–3 years	Pressurized metered-dose inhaler plus dedicated spacer with face mask	Nebulizer with face mask
4–5 years	Pressurized metered-dose inhaler plus dedicated spacer with mouthpiece	Pressurized metered-dose inhaler plus dedicated spacer with face mask or (if not available) nebulizer with mouthpiece or face mask
Technique with pressurized metered dose inhaler and spacer for children 5 years and younger		
Give the inhaled medication, one puff at a time. For salbutamol (albuterol), shake the inhaler immediately before each puff. Encourage the child to take 5–6 breaths from the spacer after each puff.		

If nebulizer is used, follow infection control procedures, as respiratory viruses can be dispersed by up to 1 meter. See p.118 and Box 5-1 (p.118) for other factors to consider in choice of an inhaler device.

ASTHMA SELF-MANAGEMENT EDUCATION FOR CAREGIVERS OF YOUNG CHILDREN

Asthma self-management education should be provided to family members and caregivers of children with asthma or suspected asthma. An educational program should contain:

- Basic information about asthma and the factors that influence it
- Training to achieve correct inhalation technique
- Information on the importance of the child's adherence to the prescribed medication regimen
- A written asthma action plan.

Crucial factors for a successful asthma education program include a partnership between patient/caregiver and healthcare providers, with a high level of agreement regarding the goals of treatment for the child, and intensive follow-up (Evidence D).⁴³

Written asthma action plans

Asthma action plans should be provided for the family/caregivers of all children with asthma, including those aged 5 years and younger (Evidence D). Action plans, developed through collaboration between an asthma educator, the healthcare provider and the family, have been shown to be of value in older children,⁹¹¹ although they have not been extensively studied in children of 5 years and younger.

A written asthma action plan includes:

- A description of how the parent or caregiver can recognize when symptom control is deteriorating
- The medications to administer
- When and how to obtain medical care, including telephone numbers of services available for emergencies (e.g., doctors' offices, emergency departments and hospitals, ambulance services and emergency pharmacies).

Details of treatments that can be initiated at home are provided in Section 12.

12. Management of worsening asthma and exacerbations in children 5 years and younger

KEY POINTS

Symptoms of asthma exacerbation in young children

Exacerbations in young children may be indicated by worsening of respiratory symptoms (wheezing, coughing spells with/without wheezing, difficult or heavy breathing), especially during sleep, or after laughing, crying or activity, reduced exercise tolerance, impaired daily activities including feeding, and/or a poor response to reliever medication. Signs of a moderate exacerbation include accessory muscle use and/or audible wheezing.

Home management in a written asthma action plan

Give a written asthma action plan to parents/caregivers of young children with asthma so they can recognize when asthma is worsening, start reliever treatment, and identify when urgent hospital treatment is required.

Initial treatment at home is with inhaled short-acting beta₂-agonist (SABA), with monitoring of response.

Seek urgent medical care if the child is acutely distressed (e.g., severe breathlessness, subcostal/intercostal retraction, cyanosis), is drowsy/lethargic, or is worsening despite administration of SABA.

Obtain medical care on the same day if SABA is needed in less than 4 hours or on >3 occasions within 12 hours.

Parent/caregiver-initiated oral corticosteroid treatment is not recommended.

Management of exacerbations in primary care or acute care facility

Assess severity of the presentation while initiating treatment with bronchodilator and oxygen if needed. Assess respiratory rate, accessory muscle use, air entry and oxygen saturation, preferably using a validated clinical score (e.g., Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure [PRAM]) to grade severity. Oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry may be overestimated in children with dark skin color.

Arrange immediate transfer to hospital if severe or life-threatening features, e.g., drowsy, confused or cyanosed, respiratory rate >40/minute, oxygen saturation <92% on room air, or clinical score in the severe category.

Initial treatment:

- If there are features of anaphylaxis as well as asthma, give IM epinephrine (adrenaline) first.
- Give SABA by pressurized metered-dose inhaler (pMDI) with spacer, or by nebulizer. Assess response.
- Give supplemental oxygen (if needed) to maintain saturation $\geq 92\%$.
- Add inhaled ipratropium bromide for moderate or severe presentations.

Start systemic corticosteroids for children with a moderate or severe presentation, or who require hospital admission.

Arrange before discharge

Document features that confirm the diagnosis of asthma (Box 10-2), e.g., observed wheezing with accessory muscle use, no other obvious cause for the symptoms, and clinical response to bronchodilators.

Prescribe SABA by pMDI and spacer as needed (not regularly); train in correct inhaler technique.

Start, continue or increase inhaled corticosteroid if moderate or severe exacerbation, or interval symptoms.

Continue oral corticosteroids if started (prednisone/prednisolone total 3–5 days, dexamethasone total 1–2 days).

Confirm adequate resources at home.

Children who have experienced an asthma exacerbation are at risk of further exacerbations. Assess for additional risk factors, and optimize management to reduce this risk (Box 11-1, p.204).

Arrange early follow-up after an exacerbation

Instruct parent/caregiver to seek medical care if no improvement, or a deterioration over the next 24–48 hours. If feasible, arrange follow-up within 1–3 days of an exacerbation and again 2–3 months later.

DIAGNOSIS OF EXACERBATIONS

A flare-up (exacerbation) of asthma in children 5 years and younger is defined as an acute or sub-acute deterioration in symptom control that is sufficient to cause distress or risk to health. An exacerbation may necessitate a visit to a healthcare provider or require treatment with systemic corticosteroids. In clinical literature, the term “episode” is commonly used for exacerbations.

Early symptoms of an exacerbation may include any of the following:

- Onset of symptoms of respiratory tract infection
- An acute or sub-acute increase in wheeze and shortness of breath
- An increase in coughing, especially while the child is asleep
- Lethargy or reduced exercise tolerance
- Impairment of daily activities, including feeding
- A poor response to reliever medication.

In a study of children aged 2–5 years, the combination of increased daytime cough, daytime wheeze, and night-time beta₂-agonist use was a strong predictor at a group level of an imminent exacerbation (1 day later). This combination predicted around 70% of exacerbations, with a low false positive rate of 14%. In contrast, no individual symptom was predictive of an imminent asthma exacerbation.⁹¹²

Upper respiratory symptoms frequently precede the onset of an asthma exacerbation, indicating the important role of viral upper respiratory tract infections (URTI) in precipitating exacerbations in many, although not all, children with asthma.

INITIAL HOME MANAGEMENT OF ASTHMA EXACERBATIONS

Initial management includes an action plan to enable the child's family members and caregivers to recognize worsening asthma and initiate treatment, recognize when it is severe, identify when urgent hospital treatment is necessary, and provide recommendations for follow up (Evidence D). The action plan should include specific information about medications and dosages and when and how to access medical care.

Need for urgent medical attention

Parents/caregivers should be advised to seek medical attention immediately if:

- The child is acutely distressed (e.g., severe breathlessness, subcostal/intercostal retraction, cyanosis), is drowsy or lethargic or if their condition is deteriorating
- The child's symptoms are not rapidly relieved by inhaled bronchodilator
- The period of relief after doses of SABA is less than 4 hours, or becomes progressively shorter
- A child younger than 12 months requires repeated inhaled SABA over several hours.

Initial treatment at home

Inhaled SABA via a mask or spacer, and review of response

The parent/caregiver should initiate treatment with inhaled SABA, with 2 puffs of inhaled salbutamol (albuterol) 100 mcg per actuation (or equivalent), given one puff at a time by pMDI via a spacer device with mouthpiece or facemask (Evidence D). This may be repeated up to two more times at 20-minute intervals, if needed. The child should be observed by the family/caregiver and, if improving, maintained in a restful and reassuring atmosphere for an hour or more. Medical

attention should be obtained urgently if any of the features listed above apply, or on the same day if ≥ 4 puffs of inhaled SABA are required for symptom relief within 4 hours, or if SABA is needed on >3 occasions within the first 12 hours.

For children 5 years and younger, tidal breathing is preferred for delivery of bronchodilators by pMDI and spacer (Box 11-4, p.209).

Family/caregiver-initiated corticosteroids

Preemptive episodic high-dose nebulized ICS may reduce exacerbations in children with intermittent viral triggered wheezing.⁸⁷⁹ However, because of the potential for side-effects (especially if the treatment is continued inappropriately or is given frequently), family-administered high-dose ICS should be considered only where the healthcare provider is confident that the medications will be used appropriately, and the child is closely monitored for side-effects.

Evidence to support the initiation of oral corticosteroid (OCS) treatment by family/caregivers in the home management of asthma exacerbations in children is weak,⁹¹³⁻⁹¹⁷ and there is concern about potential cumulative adverse effects of OCS.

Leukotriene receptor antagonists – mixed evidence

In children aged 2–5 years with intermittent viral wheezing, one study found that an oral leukotriene receptor antagonist (LTRA) given for 7–20 days, commenced at the start of an URTI or the first sign of asthma symptoms, reduced symptoms, healthcare utilization and time off work for the caregiver.⁹¹⁸ In contrast another study found no significant effect with LTRA, compared with placebo, on episode-free days (primary outcome), OCS use, healthcare utilization, quality of life or hospitalization in children with or without a positive Asthma Predictive Index (API). However, activity limitation and a symptom trouble score were significantly improved, particularly in children with a positive API.⁹¹⁹ Parents/caregivers should be counseled about the risk with montelukast of adverse effects on sleep, behavior and mental health.³³⁰

PRIMARY CARE MANAGEMENT OF ACUTE ASTHMA EXACERBATIONS IN CHILDREN 5 YEARS OR YOUNGER

Assessment of exacerbation severity in primary care

Conduct a **brief history and examination** (Box 12-1, p.217) concurrently with the initiation of therapy. The presence of any of the features of a severe exacerbation listed in Box 12-1 (p.217) are an indication of the need for urgent treatment and immediate transfer to hospital (Evidence D). Oxygen saturation from pulse oximetry of $<92\%$ at presentation (before oxygen or bronchodilator treatment) is associated with high morbidity and likely need for hospitalization, particularly if saturation is less than 88% .⁹²⁰ Note that oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry may be overestimated in people with dark skin color.⁷⁹⁷ Oxygen saturation targets should be adjusted for altitude, where appropriate.⁷⁹⁸

Agitation, drowsiness and confusion are features of cerebral hypoxemia. A quiet chest on auscultation indicates minimal ventilation, insufficient to produce a wheeze.

Several **clinical scoring systems** have been developed for assessing the severity of acute asthma exacerbations in children, but their use varies between countries.⁷⁹⁶ Several scoring systems have been independently validated in children aged 1 (or 2) to 17 years, including the 5-item Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure (PRAM,^{791,792} Box 12-2, p.218; validated against hospital admission and oscillometry), the 3-item Pediatric Asthma Score (PAS), validated against hospital admission and PEF,⁷⁹³⁻⁷⁹⁵ and the 3-item Pediatric Asthma Severity Score (PASS), validated against admission.⁹²¹ The PRAM score, which includes oxygen saturation, suprasternal retractions, scalene muscle contraction by palpation, air entry, and wheezing,^{791,792} consistently receives high ratings for validity, reliability, utility, discrimination, responsiveness and prediction of admissions in systematic reviews, and is supported by a comparative validation study in pediatric acute asthma.^{796,922-925} It is available as a free MDCalc application.

Use of any clinical score is only a guide, and it does not replace individual clinical assessment of the child. Responsibility for decisions regarding patient care rests solely with the healthcare professionals treating the patient.

Box 12-1. Initial assessment of acute asthma exacerbations in children 5 years and younger

Clinical features	Mild (all these features)	Moderate (consider all these)	Severe (any of these)	Life-threatening (any of these)
Altered consciousness	No	No	No	Drowsy, confused, cyanosed, or most severe clinical score category
Central cyanosis	Absent	No	May be present	
Oximetry on room air (SpO ₂)*	≥94%	≥92%	<92%	
Speech†	Sentences	Phrases	Words	
Respiratory rate	≤40/minute	Increased but ≤40/minute	>40/minute	
Accessory muscle use (suprasternal, supraclavicular or intercostal retractions)	Absent	Some	Present; scalene retractions may be found	
Air entry	Normal, or mild basal decrease	Decreased (basal or widespread)	Silent chest or only inspiratory wheezing	
Wheezing	None or mild expiratory	Expiratory ± inspiratory	Chest may be quiet/silent	
Clinical score	Mild e.g., PRAM 1–3; PAS 5–7	Moderate e.g., PRAM 4–7; PAS 8–11	Severe e.g., PRAM 8–10; PAS 12–15	e.g., PRAM 11–12

O₂: oxygen; PAS: Pediatric Asthma Score;⁷⁹³ PRAM: Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure.^{791,792,922} *Oximetry before treatment with oxygen. Note potential for overestimation of oxygen saturation with pulse oximetry in people with dark skin color.⁷⁹⁷ Oxygen saturation targets should be adjusted for altitude, where appropriate.⁷⁹⁸ † The child's developmental stage and usual capability must be considered.

Box 12-2. Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure (PRAM) for children aged 2 to 17 years

O ₂ saturation	≥95%	0	
	92–94%	1	
	<92%	2	
Suprasternal retraction	Absent	0	
	Present	2	
Scalene muscle contraction	Absent	0	
	Present	2	
Air entry*	Normal	0	
	↓ at the base	1	
	↓ at the apex and the base	2	
	Minimal or absent	3	
Wheezing [§]	Absent	0	
	Expiratory only	1	
	Inspiratory (± expiratory)	2	
	Audible without stethoscope or silent chest (minimal or no air entry)	3	
PRAM score: (max.12)			
Score	0–3	4–7	8–12
Severity	Mild	Moderate	Severe
© 2011 Francine Ducharme			

* In case of asymmetry, the most severely affected (apex-base) lung field (right or left, anterior or posterior) will determine the rating of the criterion.

§In case of asymmetry, the two most severely affected auscultation zones, irrespectively of their location (RUL, RML, RLL, LUL, LLL), will determine the rating of the criterion.

The PRAM score^{791,792} is reproduced and adapted with the permission of Dr Francine Ducharme. Online training module <https://enseignement.chusj.org/PRAM-En> and <https://enseignement.chusj.org/PRAM-Fr>.

Note: oxygen saturation from pulse oximetry may be overestimated in people with dark skin color.⁷⁹⁷ Oxygen saturation targets should be adjusted for altitude, where appropriate.⁷⁹⁸

Indications for immediate transfer to hospital

Children with features of a severe exacerbation that fail to resolve within 1–2 hours despite repeated dosing with inhaled SABA must be referred to hospital for observation and further treatment (Evidence D; Box 12-3, p.219). Other indications are respiratory arrest or impending arrest, lack of supervision in the home or doctor's office, and recurrence of signs of a severe exacerbation within 48 hours (particularly if treatment with OCS has already been given). In addition, early medical attention should be sought for children with a history of severe life-threatening exacerbations, and those younger than 2 years, as the risk of dehydration and respiratory fatigue is increased (Box 12-3, p.219).

Box 12-3. Indications for immediate transfer to hospital for children 5 years and younger

Immediate transfer to hospital is indicated if a child ≤ 5 years with asthma has ANY of the following:

At initial or subsequent assessment – any of:

- Cyanosis
- Child is unable to speak or drink
- Respiratory rate >40 per minute
- Oxygen saturation $<92\%$ when breathing room air (note potential for overestimation of oxygen saturation with pulse oximetry in people with dark skin color)
- Quiet chest on auscultation when child is dyspneic

Lack of response to initial bronchodilator treatment – any of:

- Lack of response to 4–6 puffs of inhaled salbutamol (albuterol), administered as separate puffs every 20 minutes for up to 3 times, over 1 hour
- Persisting tachypnea* despite three administrations of inhaled salbutamol, even if the child shows other clinical signs of improvement

Social environment that limits delivery of acute treatment, or parent/caregiver unable to manage asthma at home.

During transfer to hospital, continue to give inhaled salbutamol, oxygen (if available and required to maintain saturation $\geq 92\%$), and commence systemic corticosteroids (see Box 12-1, p.217, Box 12-4, p.220).

*Normal respiratory rate: <50 breaths/minute in children 2–12 months; <40 breaths/minute in children 1–5 years.

Box 12-5 (p.221) is a flowchart summarizing assessment and management of acute asthma or wheezing in primary care for children aged 5 years and younger.

Box 12-4. Medications for initial management of asthma exacerbations in children 5 years and younger

Therapy	Dose and administration
Supplemental oxygen	Delivered by face nasal prongs or mask, as indicated to maintain oxygen saturation at $\geq 92\%$
Short-acting beta ₂ -agonist (SABA)	4 or more puffs of salbutamol (albuterol) 100 mcg/puff by spacer (one puff at a time), or 2.5 mg by nebulizer; pMDI and spacer is preferred if available. For moderate or severe exacerbation, consider giving SABA every 20 minutes up to 3 times, then reassess response. If symptoms persist or deteriorate, give additional 4 or more puffs, one puff at a time. For pMDI, use a spacer (with face-mask attachment if needed for young children). Deliver the bronchodilator 1 puff at a time, with 5–6 breaths after each puff. For suspensions, including salbutamol, shake the inhaler immediately before each puff.
Systemic corticosteroids	For moderate or severe exacerbation, give initial dose of oral prednisone/prednisolone (1–2 mg/kg up to a maximum 20 mg for children <2 years old; 30 mg for children 2–5 years) OR oral dexamethasone 0.3–0.6 mg/kg (max 12 mg) OR intravenous methylprednisolone 1 mg/kg 6-hourly on day 1.
Additional options for moderately severe or severe exacerbations	
Ipratropium bromide	Give 4 puffs of 20 mcg ipratropium bromide by pMDI and spacer (or 0.25 mg by nebulization) with SABA up to 3 times.
Magnesium sulfate	In ED, consider intravenous isotonic magnesium sulfate (40–50 mg/kg, maximum 2 g over 10–20 minutes for children aged ≥ 2 years with severe exacerbation (Box 12-1, p.217)

pMDI: pressurized metered dose inhaler; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist. If a nebulizer is used, follow infection control procedures to reduce transmission of respiratory viruses. Oxygen saturation targets should be adjusted for altitude, where appropriate.⁷⁹⁸ See below for additional and ongoing treatment, including maintenance inhaled corticosteroids.

Treatment of asthma exacerbations in primary care*Mild presentation*

Start treatment with inhaled salbutamol (albuterol) 100 mcg per actuation, 4 separate puffs by pressurized metered dose inhaler (pMDI) and spacer (if available), with a facemask attachment if needed for young children. Deliver the salbutamol one puff at a time, with 5–6 breaths after each puff. The salbutamol inhaler must be shaken before each puff. Assess the child's response after the first set of 4 puffs, and if needed, repeat once after 30–60 minutes.

Moderate presentation

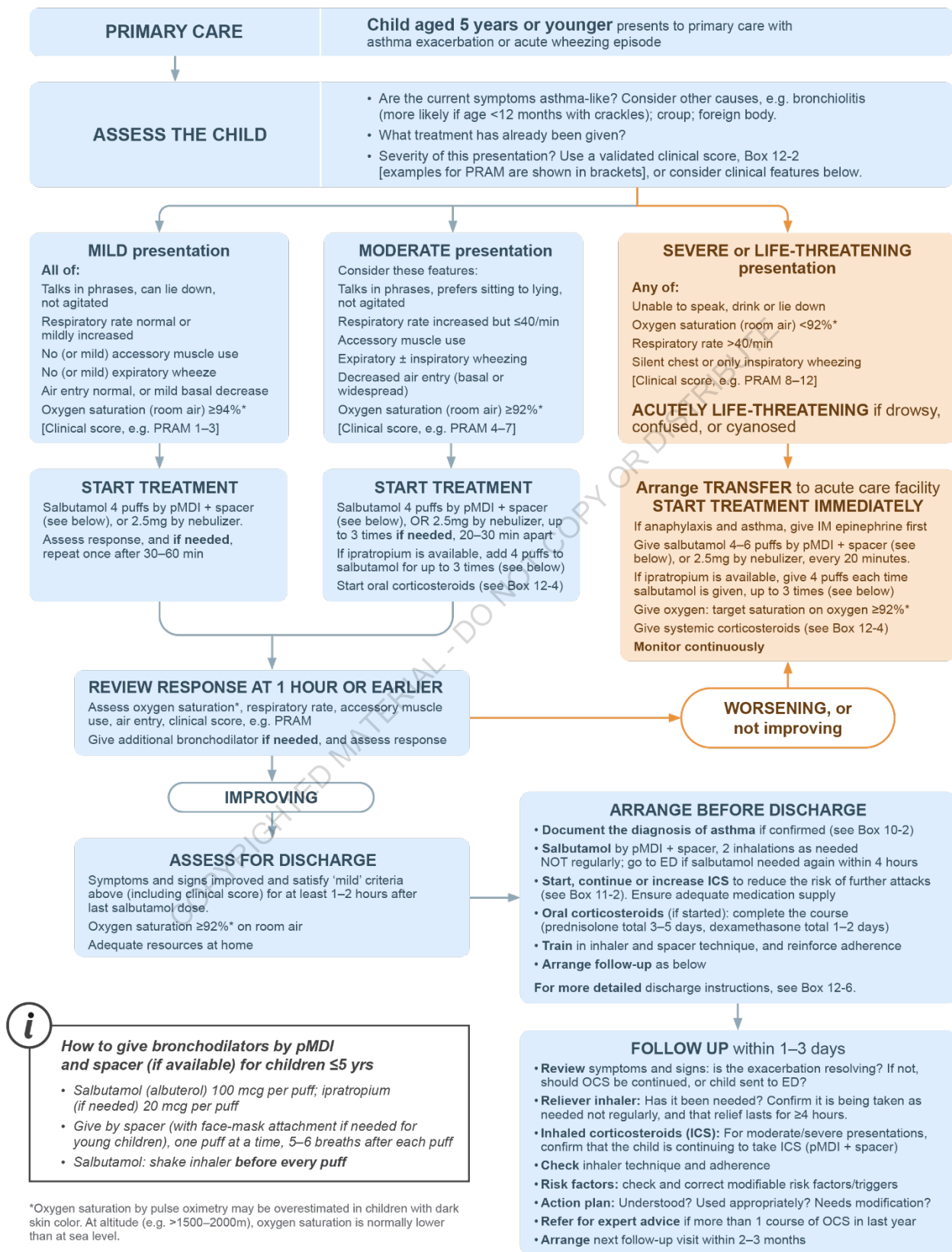
Start treatment with inhaled salbutamol, as above, 4 separate puffs by pMDI and spacer, or 2.5 mg by nebulizer if pMDI not available, up to 3 times if needed, 20–30 minutes apart. If ipratropium bromide is available, add 4 puffs of 20 mcg by pMDI with each set of 4 puffs of salbutamol, up to 3 times if needed. Start OCS: oral prednisolone (1–2 mg/kg up to a maximum 20 mg for children <2 years old; 30 mg for children 2–5 years) OR oral dexamethasone 0.3–0.6 mg/kg (max 12 mg) OR intravenous methylprednisolone 1 mg/kg 6-hourly on day 1 (Box 12-4, p.220).

Severe presentation

Arrange transfer to acute care facility, and start treatment immediately. If the child has features of anaphylaxis as well as asthma, give IM epinephrine (adrenaline) first. Give salbutamol 4–6 puffs by pMDI plus spacer (one puff at a time), or 2.5 mg by nebulizer, every 20 minutes. If ipratropium is available, give 4 puffs (20 mcg/puff) each time salbutamol is given, up to 3 times if needed.

Give oxygen if saturation is <92% when child is awake, with target saturation on oxygen $\geq 92\%$; lower saturation targets have also been suggested.¹⁷

Box 12-5. Primary care management of acute asthma or wheezing in a child 5 years or younger



ED: emergency department; ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; pMDI: pressurized metered-dose inhaler; OCS: oral corticosteroid; PRAM: Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure. For OCS doses, see Box 12-4, p.220.

Monitoring response to treatment in primary care

The response to initial treatment should be assessed after the initial salbutamol (albuterol) inhalations. Assess the same clinical features as at initial presentation (oxygen saturation, air entry, respiratory rate, accessory muscle use, and clinical score (e.g., PRAM, PAS).^{791-795,922} Assess again at 1 hour or earlier.

Arrange transfer to hospital if the child's clinical features are worsening, or fail to improve.

If the child is improving, consider discharge home if they have all of the features of a "mild" presentation (Box 12-1, p.217).

Arrange before discharge

Document the diagnosis of asthma in the child's medical record if all of the following are confirmed (Box 11-1, p.194):

- Presence of wheezing (as distinct from other respiratory sounds)
- No other obvious cause for the child's symptoms
- A clinical response to SABA has been observed.

Prescribe salbutamol by pMDI and spacer, 2 inhalations as needed for symptom relief, not regularly. Advise the parent/caregiver to take the child to an acute care facility if salbutamol is needed within 4 hours of previous dose.

If the child had a moderate or severe exacerbation, ICS should be started, continued or increased to reduce their risk of another exacerbation (Box 11-2, p.207). Choose an appropriate inhaler device (Box 11-4, p.209) and teach correct inhaler technique.

If oral corticosteroids were commenced, ensure sufficient supply to complete the course: oral prednisolone (1–2 mg/kg up to a maximum 20 mg for children <2 years old; 30 mg for children 2–5 years), for 3–5 days OR oral dexamethasone 0.3–0.6 mg/kg (max 12 mg) for 1–2 days.

See Box 12-6, p.223, for more details about discharge management from primary care.

Box 12-6. Discharge management after primary care exacerbation treatment, child 5 years or younger**Medications**

Short-acting beta₂-agonist (SABA) reliever: Advise the parent/caregiver to administer SABA as needed for symptom relief, not regularly, using pMDI and spacer. Regular SABA use may mask worsening asthma, and in studies in adults, regular SABA for even 1–2 weeks worsens airway hyperresponsiveness and reduces bronchodilator effect. Ipratropium bromide should be discontinued, as there is no evidence of benefit after the first 1–2 hours of administration.

Inhaled corticosteroids (ICS): If the child had a moderate or severe presentation (Box 12-1, p.217), or had a history of interval asthma symptoms (e.g., 2 days/week or more), initiate ICS before discharge (see Box 10-3, p.208).

Oral corticosteroids: For moderate or severe exacerbations, continue prednisolone for 3–5 days (1–2 mg/kg up to a maximum 20 mg for children <2 years old; 30 mg for children 2–5 years) OR oral dexamethasone 0.3–0.6 mg/kg (max 12 mg) for total 1–2 days. Dexamethasone is less likely to cause vomiting. Review progress before stopping.

Risk factors and triggers that contributed to the exacerbation

Children who have required hospitalization for asthma are at increased risk of further exacerbations. Identify factors that may have contributed to the exacerbation, and implement strategies to address them. For example:

- Viral respiratory infections
- Exposures: tobacco smoke; indoor or outdoor air pollution; indoor allergens (e.g., house dust mite, cockroach, pets, mold), especially in combination with viral infection
- Inadequate long-term ICS treatment, including due to problems with adherence
- Incorrect inhaler technique
- Major psychological or socio-economic problems for child or family
- Outdoor pollution (including NO₂ and particles).

Self-management skills and written asthma action plan

Review and correct inhaler technique.

Provide or review a written asthma action plan.

Ask how the exacerbation developed, and how the parent/caregiver responded.

Review the child's use of medications before and during the exacerbation.

Follow up communication and appointment

Schedule a follow-up appointment within 1–3 days to assess progress and adherence.

Refer for expert advice if the child already had one or more exacerbations in the last 12 months.

Arrange a follow-up visit within 1–3 days

At the follow-up visit, review the child's symptoms and signs and frequency of use of SABA, to assess whether the exacerbation is resolving. If worsening, or not improving, refer to an acute care facility. Confirm that the child is continuing to take ICS, and check inhaler technique and adherence.

Assess risk factors for further exacerbations, and optimize management to reduce the risk (Box 11-1, p.204). Provide the parent/caregiver with education about asthma and asthma medications.

Review the child's action plan, and update it if needed. Was it understood, and used appropriately?

Refer for expert advice if the child has required more than one course of OCS in the past year.

Arrange another follow-up visit within 2–3 months, because the occurrence of one exacerbation is associated with increased risk of another in the next 12 months.

MANAGEMENT OF ACUTE ASTHMA EXACERBATIONS IN CHILDREN 5 YEARS OR YOUNGER IN AN ACUTE CARE FACILITY

Assessment

Assess whether the current symptoms and signs are due to asthma, or whether there are any features that suggest an alternative or additional cause for the respiratory symptoms, e.g., croup, bronchiolitis, foreign body, diabetic ketoacidosis.

See Box 12-7, p.226 for a flowchart summarizing management of asthma exacerbations in acute care facilities.

Assessment of exacerbation severity

See Box 12-1 (p.217) for assessment of severity of acute exacerbations in this age-group. Assess: oxygen saturation, respiratory rate, accessory muscle use, air entry, and a validated clinical score (e.g., PRAM (Box 12-2, p.218), PAS).^{791-793,796}

If the child has any feature of life-threatening asthma (drowsy, confused or cyanosed, or with the highest (worst) clinical score (e.g., PRAM 11–12), start treatment immediately with salbutamol (albuterol), ipratropium, oxygen and systemic corticosteroids (Box 12-4, p.220; Box 12-7, p.226), and request help from pediatric intensive care unit or anesthetic department.

If the child has features of anaphylaxis as well as asthma, give IM epinephrine (adrenaline) first, then immediately commence inhaled therapy.

Emergency treatment and initial pharmacotherapy

Oxygen

If oxygen saturation is <92%, give oxygen by face mask to achieve and maintain percutaneous oxygen saturation $\geq 92\%$ (Evidence A). Note the potential for overestimation of oxygen saturation in people with dark skin color. Oxygen saturation targets should be adjusted for altitude, where appropriate.⁷⁹⁸

To avoid hypoxemia during changes in treatment, children who are acutely distressed should be treated immediately with oxygen and SABA (2.5 mg of salbutamol or equivalent diluted in 3 mL of sterile normal saline) delivered by an oxygen-driven nebulizer (if available and required). This treatment should not be delayed, and may be given before the full assessment is completed. Transient hypoxemia due to ventilation/perfusion mismatch may occur during treatment.

Inhaled bronchodilator therapy

The initial dose of inhaled SABA may be given by a pMDI with spacer, or by an air-driven nebulizer; or, if oxygen saturation is low, by an oxygen-driven nebulizer (as described above). For most children, pMDI plus spacer is favored as it is more efficient than a nebulizer for bronchodilator delivery (Evidence A),⁹²⁶ is more comfortable for the child, and is associated with fewer adverse effects;⁷⁹⁹ in addition, nebulizers can spread infectious particles. With a spacer, use a facemask only if the child cannot use the spacer mouthpiece.

For mild presentations, the initial dose of SABA is 4 separate puffs of salbutamol (albuterol), 100 mcg per puff, or equivalent. Assess the response, and if needed, this can be repeated once after 30–60 minutes. For moderate or severe presentations, 4–6 puffs of salbutamol (given one at a time) can be given up to 3 times if needed, 20–30 minutes apart. If a nebulizer is used, a dose of 2.5 mg salbutamol solution is recommended, and infection control procedures should be followed. The subsequent frequency of dosing depends on the response observed over 1–2 hours (see below).

SABA toxicity: Administration of high doses of SABA is associated with increased pulse rate, palpitations and anxiety, and may be associated with hypokalemia, arrhythmias, lactic acidosis and hyperventilation.⁸⁰² The potential for SABA toxicity must be considered, because these clinical features could otherwise be assumed to represent worsening asthma, resulting in even higher doses being given.

For children with moderate or severe exacerbations or those with a poor response to SABA in the initial hour, inhaled ipratropium bromide 4 puffs of 20 mcg/actuation (or 250 mcg by nebulizer) should be given along with SABA for up to 3 times, 20–30 minutes apart (Box 12-4, p.220).⁹²⁶

Magnesium sulfate

Intravenous MgSO₄ in a single dose of 40–50 mg/kg (maximum 2 g) by slow infusion (20–60 minutes) may be considered in addition to standard treatment with salbutamol, ipratropium, and oral corticosteroids, after the first hour of treatment for children ≥2 years old with severe acute asthma (e.g., oxygen saturation <92%, Box 12-6, p.223).⁸⁴² A 2024 systematic review and meta-analysis in children aged 2–17 years found a reduced risk of hospitalization in children treated with intravenous MgSO₄ as second-line therapy, compared with placebo or standard of care. By contrast, nebulized MgSO₄ was not associated with clinically significant improvement in respiratory rate.⁸⁴⁷

Assessment of response and additional bronchodilator treatment

Children with a severe asthma exacerbation must be observed for at least 1 hour after initiation of treatment, at which time further treatment can be planned:

- *If symptoms persist after initial bronchodilator(s)*: a further 4–6 puffs of salbutamol (albuterol), depending on severity, may be given 20 minutes after the first dose, 1 puff at a time, and repeated at intervals of 20–30 minutes for a total 3 times. If not already administered, add 4 puffs of 20 mcg of inhaled (or 0.25 mg nebulized) ipratropium bromide with salbutamol for up to 3 times, and commence oral corticosteroids. Failure to respond at 1 hour, or earlier deterioration, oxygen saturation <92%, or ongoing need for SABA more often than every 1–2 hours should prompt consideration for admission to hospital and/or administration of intravenous magnesium sulfate (Evidence D).
- *If symptoms have improved by 1 hour but persist*: the child may be given further doses of bronchodilator (4 separate puffs of salbutamol), as needed, but monitor for SABA toxicity. Oral corticosteroids should be given, if not yet administered. The child should remain in the emergency department until sufficient improvement is reached to be discharged home. Children with persisting dyspnea 4–6 hours after OCS have been given should be admitted to hospital (Evidence D).
- *If symptoms resolve and do not recur for at least 1–2 hours*: no further acute care treatment may be required. When discharged home, the child should be observed by the family/caregiver and have ready access to emergency care. Further SABA may be given as needed (up to a total of 12 puffs/24 hours). The parent/caregiver should be advised to return to the emergency department if SABA is needed within 4 hours.
- Continue short course of oral corticosteroids and consider adding inhaled corticosteroids as indicated (Evidence D), as outlined below.

Additional acute treatment

When treatment in addition to SABA is required for an exacerbation, options available for treatment of the acute exacerbation in children aged 5 years or younger are shown below.

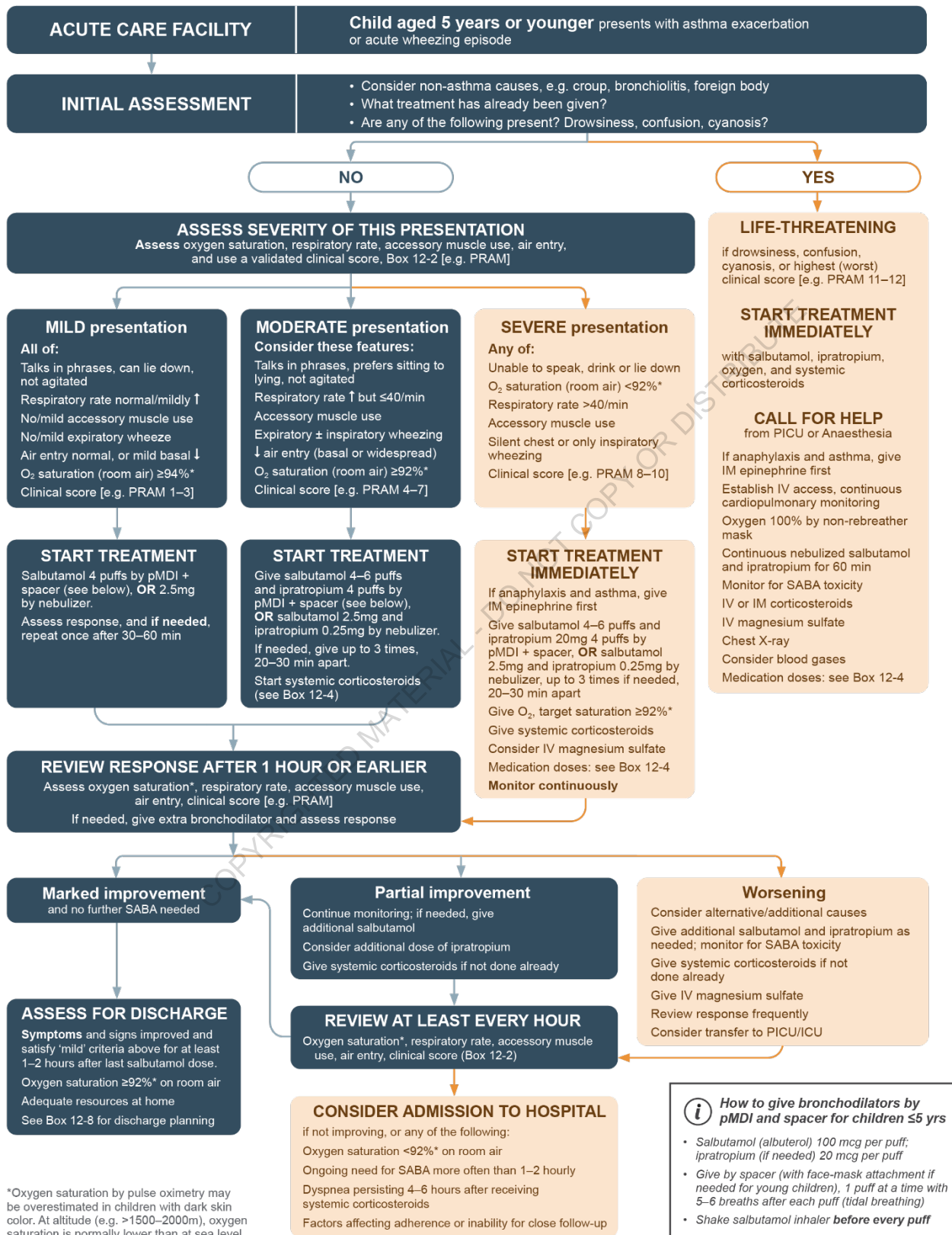
Maintain current controller treatment (if prescribed)

Children who have been prescribed maintenance therapy with ICS should continue to take it during and after an exacerbation (Evidence D), but the dose may need to be increased depending on assessment of the context of the exacerbation. If the child was previously prescribed daily LTRA, consider switching to daily ICS; parents/caregivers should be informed about the potential neuropsychiatric adverse effects associated with LTRA.³³⁰

Inhaled corticosteroids

In children, addition of high-dose nebulized ICS to standard emergency department care (including OCS) did not reduce risk of hospitalization, but it reduced length of stay and acute asthma scores.⁹²⁷

Box 12-7. Management in an acute care facility of acute asthma or wheezing in a child 5 years or younger



CXR: chest X-ray; IM: intramuscular; IV: intravenous; O₂: oxygen; PICU: pediatric intensive care unit; pMDI: pressurized metered-dose inhaler; PRAM: Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist

Systemic corticosteroids

For children with moderately severe or severe exacerbations, a dose of systemic corticosteroids equivalent to prednisolone 1–2 mg/kg/day, with a maximum of 20 mg/day for children younger than 2 years and 30 mg/day for children aged 2–5 years, is currently recommended (Evidence A).^{928,929} A course of 3–5 days is sufficient in most children of this age, and can be stopped without tapering (Evidence D). Alternatively, dexamethasone 0.3 to 0.6 mg/kg (maximum 12 mg) in 1 dose with/without a second dose the next day can be considered. (Evidence A).⁸³⁸ A meta-analysis demonstrated a reduced risk of hospitalization when oral corticosteroids were administered in the emergency department but no clear benefit in risk of hospitalization when given in the outpatient setting.⁹²⁹

Several studies have failed to show any benefits when oral corticosteroids were given by parents or caregivers during periods of worsening wheeze managed in an outpatient setting (Evidence D).^{913-916,930,931}

In children discharged from the emergency department, there is insufficient evidence to recommend intramuscular corticosteroids over a course of oral corticosteroids.⁸²⁸

Regardless of treatment administered in ED, the frequency and severity of symptoms must be carefully monitored after discharge (Box 12-8, p.228) to confirm that the child is recovering, and to reduce the risk of further exacerbations.

DISCHARGE AND FOLLOW-UP AFTER AN EXACERBATION

Before discharge, the condition of the child should be stable (e.g., out of bed and able to eat and drink without problems).

Children who have recently had an asthma exacerbation are at risk of further exacerbations and require follow-up. The purpose is to ensure complete recovery, to establish the cause of the exacerbation, to identify risk factors for future exacerbations, and, when relevant, to establish appropriate maintenance treatment and adherence (Evidence D).

Before discharge from the emergency department or hospital, family/caregivers should receive the following advice and information (Box 12-8, p.228; all are Evidence D):

- Instruction on recognition of signs of recurrence and worsening of asthma. The factors that precipitated the exacerbation should be identified, and strategies for future avoidance of these factors implemented.
- A written, individualized action plan, including details of accessible emergency services
- Careful review of inhaler technique
- SABAs should be used on an as-needed basis, rather than regularly, to avoid masking worsening asthma, but the daily requirement should be recorded to ensure it is being decreased over time to pre-exacerbation levels.
- Confirm that ICS has been initiated where appropriate (at twice the low initial dose in Box 11-3 (p.208) for the first month after discharge, then adjusted as needed) or continued, for those previously prescribed controller medication.
- Ensure the child has a supply of SABA and, where applicable, the remainder of the course of oral corticosteroid, together with a supply of ICS or LTRA, if prescribed.
- Arrange a follow-up appointment within 1–3 days and another within 2–3 months, depending on the clinical, social and practical context of the exacerbation.

Box 12-8. Discharge management after ED visit or hospitalization by a child 5 years or younger

Medications

Short-acting beta₂-agonist (SABA) reliever: Advise the parent/caregiver to administer SABA as needed for symptom relief, not regularly, using pMDI and spacer. Regular SABA use may mask worsening asthma, and in studies in adults, regular SABA for even 1–2 weeks worsens airway hyperresponsiveness and reduces bronchodilator effect. Ipratropium bromide should be discontinued, as there is no benefit after the first 1–2 hours of administration.

Inhaled corticosteroids (ICS): If the child had a moderate or severe presentation (Box 12-1, p.217), or had a history of interval asthma symptoms (e.g., 2 days/week or more), initiate ICS before discharge (see Box 10-3, p.208).

Oral corticosteroids: For moderate or severe exacerbations, continue prednisolone (1–2 mg/kg up to a maximum 20 mg for children <2 years old; 30 mg for children 2–5 years) OR oral dexamethasone 0.3–0.6 mg/kg (max 12 mg) for total 1–2 days. Dexamethasone is less likely to cause vomiting. Review progress before stopping.

Risk factors and triggers that contributed to the exacerbation

Children who have required hospitalization for asthma are at increased risk of further exacerbations. Identify factors that may have contributed to the exacerbation, and implement strategies to reduce modifiable risk factors. For example:

- Viral respiratory infections
- Exposures: tobacco smoke; indoor or outdoor air pollution; indoor allergens (e.g., house dust mite, cockroach, pets, mold), especially in combination with viral infection
- Inadequate long-term ICS treatment, including problems with adherence
- Major psychological or socio-economic problems for child or family
- Poor adherence to ICS medication, or incorrect inhaler technique
- Outdoor pollution (including NO₂ and particles)

Self-management skills and written asthma action plan

Review and correct inhaler technique

Provide or review a written asthma action plan.

Ask how the exacerbation developed, and how the parent/caregiver responded.

Review the child's use of medications before and during the exacerbation.

Follow up communication and appointment

Inform the patient's healthcare provider about their emergency department presentation or admission and discharge instructions.

Schedule a follow-up appointment within 1–3 days to assess progress and adherence.

Refer for expert advice if the child already had one or more exacerbations in the last 12 months.

13. Primary prevention of asthma

KEY POINTS

Children

The development and persistence of asthma are driven by gene–environment interactions. There is assumed to be a “window of opportunity” *in utero* and in early life to prevent asthma in children, but intervention studies are limited.

Factors associated with increased or decreased risk of asthma in children can inform advice about asthma prevention.

Evidence for allergen avoidance strategies aimed at preventing asthma in children suggests:

- Strategies directed at a single allergen have not been effective in reducing the incidence of asthma
- Multifaceted strategies may be effective, but the essential components have not been identified.

Current recommendations for preventing asthma in children, based on high-quality evidence or consensus are:

- To avoid exposure to environmental tobacco smoke during pregnancy and the first year of life
- To encourage vaginal delivery where possible
- To avoid use of broad-spectrum antibiotics during the first year of life, where possible.

Breastfeeding is advised, not for prevention of allergy and asthma, but for its other positive health benefits.

Adults and adolescents

Occupational or domestic exposures to allergens, sensitizers or irritants may explain 5–20% of new cases of adult-onset asthma. Always ask about potential exposures.

In adults and adolescents, the early identification and elimination of occupational sensitizers and the removal of sensitized patients from any further exposure are important aspects of the prevention and management of occupational asthma.

Other factors associated with development of asthma in adults include smoking or vaping, exposure to indoor pollutants and second-hand smoke, exposure to domestic cleaning products, traffic-related air pollution, and obesity. These offer opportunities for prevention of asthma in adults by interventions at a population or individual level.

FACTORS ASSOCIATED WITH INCREASED OR DECREASED RISK OF ASTHMA IN CHILDREN

Asthma is a heterogeneous disease whose inception and persistence are driven by gene–environment interactions that are not yet fully understood. The most important of these interactions may occur in early life and even *in utero*. There is consensus that a “window of opportunity” exists during pregnancy and early in life when environmental factors may influence asthma development. Multiple environmental factors, both biological and sociological, may be important in the development of asthma. Data from studies investigating the role of environmental risk factors for the development of asthma support further research on prevention strategies focusing on nutrition, allergens (both inhaled and ingested), pollutants (particularly environmental tobacco smoke), microbes, and psychosocial factors.

“Primary prevention” refers to preventing the onset of disease.

DIETARY FACTORS BY MOTHER AND/OR CHILD AND RISK OF ASTHMA IN CHILDREN

Nutrition of mother and/or child

Maternal diet

A large body of research investigating the development of allergy and asthma in children has focused on the mother's diet during pregnancy. Current evidence does not clearly demonstrate that ingestion of any specific foods during pregnancy increases the risk for asthma. However, a study of a pre-birth cohort observed that maternal intake of foods commonly considered allergenic (peanut and milk) was associated with a decrease in allergy and asthma in the offspring.⁹³² Similar data have been shown in a very large Danish National birth cohort, with an association between ingestion of peanuts, tree nuts and/or fish during pregnancy and a decreased risk of asthma in the offspring.^{933,934} Epidemiological studies and randomized controlled trials on maternal dietary intake of fish or long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids during pregnancy showed no consistent effects on the risk of wheeze, asthma or atopy in the child.⁹³⁵⁻⁹³⁸ Dietary changes during pregnancy are therefore not recommended for prevention of allergies or asthma.

Breastfeeding

Despite the existence of many studies reporting a beneficial effect of breastfeeding on asthma prevention, results are conflicting,⁹³⁹ and caution should be taken in advising families that breastfeeding will prevent asthma. Breastfeeding decreases wheezing episodes in early life; however, it may not prevent development of persistent asthma (Evidence D). Regardless of any effect on development of asthma, breastfeeding should be encouraged for its other positive benefits (Evidence A).

Timing of introduction of solids

Beginning in the 1990s, many national pediatric agencies and societies recommended delayed introduction of solid food, especially for children at a high risk for developing allergy. However, meta-analyses have found no evidence that this practice reduces the risk of allergic disease (including asthma).⁹⁴⁰ Early introduction of peanuts may prevent peanut allergy in high-risk infants.⁹⁴⁰

Dietary supplements for mother and/or child

Vitamin D

Intake of vitamin D may be through diet, dietary supplementation or sunlight. A systematic review of cohort, case control and cross-sectional studies concluded that maternal dietary intake of vitamin D, and of vitamin E was associated with lower risk of wheezing illnesses in children.⁹⁴¹ This was not confirmed in two randomized controlled trials (RCTs) of vitamin D supplementation in pregnancy, which compared standard-dose with high-dose vitamin D; however, a significant effect was not disproven.^{942,943} When the results from these two trials were combined, there was a 25% reduction of risk of asthma/recurrent wheeze at ages 0–3 years.⁹⁴⁴ The effect was greatest among women who maintained 25(OH)vitamin D levels of at least 30 ng/mL from the time of study entry through delivery, suggesting that sufficient levels of Vitamin D during early pregnancy may be important in decreasing risk for early life wheezing episodes,⁹⁴⁴ although in both trials, no effects of vitamin D supplementation on the development of asthma and recurrent wheeze were evident at the age of 6 years.⁹⁴⁵ Secondary analysis of the VDAART study⁹⁴³ suggested that earlier supplementation may be more effective in reducing the risk of asthma.⁹⁴⁶

Fish oil and long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids

Systematic reviews of cohort studies about maternal dietary intake of fish or seafood during pregnancy^{935,947} and of RCTs on maternal dietary intake of fish or long-chained polyunsaturated fatty acids during pregnancy⁹³⁵ showed no consistent effects on the risk of wheeze, asthma or atopy in the child. One study demonstrated decreased wheeze/asthma in preschool children at high risk for asthma when mothers were given a high-dose fish oil supplement in the third trimester;⁹⁴⁸ however, "fish oil" is not well defined, and the optimal dosing regimen has not been established.

Probiotics

A 2013 meta-analysis provided insufficient evidence to recommend probiotics for the prevention of allergic disease (asthma, rhinitis, eczema or food allergy).⁹⁴⁹ Further studies are underway.

ENVIRONMENTAL FACTORS AND RISK OF ASTHMA IN CHILDREN

Inhalant allergens

Allergic sensitization is the best predictor for development of persistent asthma.⁹⁵⁰ Sensitization to indoor inhaled aeroallergens is generally more important than sensitization to outdoor allergens for the presence of, and/or development of, asthma. While there appears to be a linear relationship between exposure and sensitization to house dust mite,^{951,952} the relationship for animal allergen appears to be more complex.⁹³⁹ Some studies have found that exposure to pet allergens is associated with increased risk of sensitization to these allergens,^{953,954} and of asthma and wheezing.^{955,956} By contrast, other studies have demonstrated a decreased risk of developing allergy with exposure to pets.^{957,958} Analyses of data from large populations of school-age children from birth cohorts in Europe have found no association between pets in the homes early in life and higher or lower prevalence of asthma in children.^{959,960} For children at risk of asthma, dampness, visible mold and mold odor in the home environment are associated with increased risk of developing asthma.⁹⁶¹ Overall, there are insufficient data to recommend efforts to either reduce or increase prenatal or early-life exposure to common sensitizing allergens, including pets, for the prevention of allergies and asthma.

Birth cohort studies provide some evidence for consideration. A meta-analysis found that studies of interventions focused on reducing exposure to a single allergen did not significantly affect asthma development, but that multifaceted interventions such as in the Isle of Wight study,⁹⁶² the Canadian Asthma Primary Prevention Study,⁹⁶³ and the Prevention of Asthma in Children study⁹⁶⁴ were associated with lower risk of asthma diagnosis in children younger than 5 years.⁹⁶⁵ Two multifaceted studies that followed children beyond age 5 years demonstrated a significant protective effect both before and after the age of 5 years.^{962,966} The Isle of Wight study has shown a continuing positive benefit for early-life intervention through to age 18 years;⁹⁶⁷ however, it remains unclear which components of the intervention contributed to the effects reported, and the precise mechanism of these effects.

Treatment with grass pollen sublingual immunotherapy (SLIT) for 3 years did not reduce the incidence of asthma diagnosis (primary outcome) in a large randomized double-blind placebo-controlled trial in children aged 5–12 years with grass-allergic rhinoconjunctivitis, but asthma symptoms and asthma medication use were reduced.⁹⁶⁸ At present, there is insufficient evidence to make a recommendation for SLIT in children with grass allergic rhinoconjunctivitis for the purpose of asthma prevention. More studies are needed.

Pollutants – smoking and air pollution

Maternal smoking during pregnancy is the most direct route of prenatal environmental tobacco smoke exposure.⁹⁶⁹ A meta-analysis concluded that prenatal smoking had its strongest effect on young children, whereas postnatal maternal smoking appeared only to affect asthma development in older children.⁹⁷⁰ Exposure to outdoor pollutants, such as living near a main road, is associated with increased risk of asthma.^{971,972} A 2019 study suggested that up to 4 million new pediatric asthma cases (13% of the global incidence) may be attributable to exposure to traffic-related air pollution.⁹⁷³ Prenatal NO₂, SO₂, and PM₁₀ exposures are associated with an increased risk of asthma in childhood,⁹⁷⁴ but it is difficult to separate effects of prenatal and postnatal exposure.

Microflora

The “hygiene hypothesis”, and the more recently coined “microflora hypothesis” and “biodiversity hypothesis”,⁹⁷⁵ suggest that human interaction with microbiota may be beneficial in preventing asthma. For example, there is a lower risk of asthma among children raised on farms with exposure to stables and consumption of raw farm milk than among children of non-farmers.⁹⁷⁶ The risk of asthma is also reduced in children whose bedrooms have high levels of bacterial-derived lipopolysaccharide endotoxin.^{977,978} Similarly, children in homes with ≥2 dogs or cats are less likely to be allergic than those in homes without dogs or cats.⁹⁵⁸ Exposure of an infant to the mother’s vaginal microflora through vaginal delivery

may also be beneficial; the prevalence of asthma is higher in children born by cesarean section than those born vaginally.^{979,980} This may relate to differences in the infant gut microbiota according to their mode of delivery.⁹⁸¹

Respiratory syncytial virus infection

Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) infection in infancy is associated with recurrent wheeze at age 5 years.⁸⁷⁰ Hospitalization due to RSV in the first 6 months of life is associated with a threefold increase in diagnosis of asthma (up to the age of 25 years), with the highest risk of asthma diagnosis among those who also had a parent with asthma or a mother with allergic rhinitis.^{982,983} Studies of RSV vaccination of pregnant women⁹⁸² and treatment of healthy infants with nirsevimab, a single-dose anti-RSV antibody,⁹⁸⁴ have shown a reduction in RSV infection requiring medical attention in the first year of life. Treatment of premature infants with monthly injections of palivizumab, a monoclonal antibody prescribed for prophylaxis of severe RSV infection, was associated with a reduction in recurrent wheezing in the first year of life.⁹⁸⁵ However, although the risk of parent-reported asthma with infrequent wheeze was reduced at 6 years, there was no impact on doctor-diagnosed asthma or lung function.⁹⁸⁶ The long-term effect of RSV-specific monoclonal antibodies in the prevention of asthma remains uncertain.⁹⁸⁷ However, with the World Health Organization now recommending that countries should introduce either maternal vaccination with RSV prefusion vaccine or administration of nirsevimab in infancy,⁹⁸⁸ follow-up studies will be of substantial interest to see whether these interventions will lead to a reduced risk of further wheezing episodes beyond infancy, or will prevent development of asthma.

Medications and other factors

Antibiotic use during pregnancy and in infants and toddlers has been associated with the development of asthma later in life,⁹⁸⁹ although not all studies have shown this association.⁹⁹⁰ Intake of the analgesic, paracetamol (acetaminophen), may be associated with an increased risk of asthma in both children and adults,⁹⁹¹ although exposure during infancy may be confounded by use of paracetamol for respiratory tract infections.⁹⁹¹ Frequent use of paracetamol by pregnant women has been associated with increased risk of asthma in their children.⁹⁹²

Maternal folic acid supplementation during pregnancy at higher than recommended doses may be associated with a small increase in the risk of childhood asthma in offspring.⁹⁹³ However, this small risk is far outweighed by the well-established role of folate supplementation in reducing the risk of clinically important neural tube defects. Women should therefore be advised and encouraged to follow recommendations by local health authorities on folic acid supplementation during pregnancy.

There is no evidence that vaccinations increase a child's risk of developing asthma.

PSYCHOSOCIAL AND PHYSICAL FACTORS AND RISK OF ASTHMA IN CHILDREN

Maternal distress

The social environment to which children are exposed may also contribute to the development and severity of asthma. Maternal distress during pregnancy⁹⁹⁴ or during the child's early years⁹⁹⁵ has been associated with an increased risk of the child developing asthma.

Obesity

Maternal obesity and weight gain during pregnancy

Data from observational studies suggest that maternal obesity and weight gain during pregnancy pose an increased risk for asthma in children. A meta-analysis⁹⁹⁶ showed that maternal obesity in pregnancy was associated with higher odds of ever asthma or wheeze or current asthma or wheeze; each 1 kg/m² increase in maternal body-mass index (BMI) was associated with a 2% to 3% increase in the odd of childhood asthma. High gestational weight gain was associated with higher odds of ever asthma or wheeze. However, no recommendations can be made at present, as unguided weight loss in pregnancy should not be encouraged.

Obesity in children

A meta-analysis of 18 studies found that being either overweight or obese was a risk factor for childhood asthma and wheeze, particularly in girls.⁵⁷² In adults, there is evidence suggesting that obesity affects the risk of asthma, but that asthma does not affect the risk of obesity.^{997,998}

Pre-term birth and low birth weight

Pre-term birth (<37 weeks) and low birthweight (<2.5 kg) are associated with increased risk of wheezing disorders in infancy and early childhood, and increased risk of asthma in childhood.⁹⁹⁹

ADVICE ABOUT PRIMARY PREVENTION OF ASTHMA IN CHILDREN

Based on the results of cohort and observational studies,¹⁰⁰⁰ and a Grading of Recommendations Assessment, Development and Evaluation (GRADE)-based analysis conducted for the Allergic Rhinitis and its Impact on Asthma (ARIA) guidelines,⁹³⁹ parents/caregivers enquiring about how to reduce the risk of their children developing asthma can be provided with the advice summarized in Box 13-1.

Possibly the most important factor is the need to provide a positive, supportive environment for discussion that decreases stress, and which encourages families to make choices with which they feel comfortable.

Box 13-1. Advice for parents/caregivers about primary prevention of asthma in children 5 years or younger

Parents/caregivers enquiring about how to reduce the risk of their child developing asthma can be given the following advice:

- Children should not be exposed to environmental tobacco smoke during pregnancy or after birth.
- Identification and correction of Vitamin D insufficiency in women with asthma who are pregnant, or planning pregnancy, may reduce the risk of early life wheezing episodes.
- Where possible, vaginal delivery should be encouraged.
- Where possible, the use of broad-spectrum antibiotics during the first year of life should be discouraged.
- Breastfeeding is advised, not for prevention of allergy or asthma, but for its other positive health benefits.

FACTORS ASSOCIATED WITH DEVELOPMENT OF ASTHMA IN ADULTS

Occupational exposures

An estimated 5–20% of new cases of adult-onset asthma can be attributed to occupational exposure.⁷⁵ Asthma may be induced or (more commonly) aggravated by exposure to allergens or other sensitizing agents at work, or sometimes from a single, massive exposure. Occupational rhinitis may precede asthma by up to a year. Early diagnosis is essential, as persistent exposure is associated with worse outcomes.^{75,76}

Asthma acquired in the workplace is frequently missed. The occurrence of adult-onset asthma requires a systematic inquiry about work history and exposures, including hobbies. An essential screening question is to ask patients whether their symptoms improve when they are away from work (weekends or vacation).⁷⁷ It is important to confirm the diagnosis of occupational asthma objectively as it may lead to the patient changing their occupation, which may have legal and socioeconomic implications. Specialist referral is usually necessary, and frequent peak expiratory flow (PEF) monitoring at and away from work is often used to help confirm the diagnosis.

The early identification and elimination of occupational sensitizers and the removal of sensitized patients from any further exposure are important aspects of the management of occupational asthma (Evidence A). Attempts to reduce occupational exposure have been successful, especially in industrial settings.⁷⁵ For example, cost-effective minimization of latex sensitization can be achieved by using non-powdered low-allergen gloves instead of powdered latex gloves.⁷⁵

Patients with suspected or confirmed occupational asthma should be referred for expert assessment and advice, if this is available, because of the economic and legal implications of the diagnosis (Evidence A).

There is more information about occupational asthma in specific guidelines. [75.78](#)

Other risk factors for development of asthma in adults

In addition to occupational exposures and genetic factors, other factors that have been associated with development of asthma in adults include: [1001](#)

- Smoking or vaping
- Poor indoor air quality: indoor pollutants and second-hand smoke
- Exposure to domestic cleaning products
- Traffic-related air pollution
- Overweight or obesity.

These risk factors offer substantial opportunities for primary prevention of asthma, particularly by interventions at a population or societal level or, for some risk factors, by actions of individuals themselves.

COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL - DO NOT COPY OR DISTRIBUTE

14. Implementing asthma management strategies into health systems

KEY POINTS

To improve asthma care and patient outcomes, evidence-based recommendations must not only be developed, but also disseminated and implemented at a national and local level, and integrated into clinical practice.

Recommendations for implementing asthma care strategies are based on many successful programs worldwide.

Implementation requires an evidence-based strategy involving professional groups and stakeholders, and should consider local cultural and socioeconomic conditions.

Cost-effectiveness of implementation programs should be assessed so a decision can be made to pursue or modify them.

Local adaptation and implementation of asthma care strategies can be aided by tools developed for this purpose.

INTRODUCTION

Due to the exponential increase in medical research publications, practical syntheses are needed to guide policy makers and healthcare providers in delivering evidence-based care. When asthma care is consistent with evidence-based recommendations, outcomes improve.^{249,1002,1003} This Strategy Report is a resource document for healthcare providers, intended to set out the main goals of asthma treatment and the actions required to ensure their fulfilment, as well as to facilitate the achievement of standards for quality asthma care. These objectives can only be realized through local implementation in each country, region and healthcare organization.

The use of rigorous methodologies such as Grading of Recommendations Assessment, Development and Evaluation (GRADE)¹³ for the development of clinical practice recommendations, and of ADAPTE¹⁰⁰⁴ and similar approaches for assisting the adaptation of recommendations for local country and regional conditions, has assisted in reducing biased opinion as the basis for asthma programs worldwide. Adaptation of clinical practice recommendations to local conditions using the GRADE method is costly, and often requires expertise that is not available locally; in addition, regular revision is required to remain abreast of developments, including drug availability and new evidence, and this is not easily achieved.¹⁰⁰⁵ Further, there is generally very limited high quality evidence addressing the many decision nodes in comprehensive clinical practice guidelines, particularly in developing countries.

The GINA annual report is not a formal guideline but an evidence-based strategy, updated yearly from a review of the evidence published in the last 18 months. Each year's report is an update on the entire strategy, so it does not use individual PICOT (Population, Intervention, Comparison, Outcomes, Time)(Population, Intervention, Comparison, Outcomes, Time) questions and GRADE, but the review process includes systematic reviews using these methodologies. (See section on methodology at www.ginasthma.org). As with other evidence-based clinical recommendations, the GINA strategy must be adapted to the local context for implementation in clinical practice.

ADAPTING AND IMPLEMENTING ASTHMA CLINICAL PRACTICE GUIDELINES

Implementation of asthma management strategies may be carried out at a national, regional or local level.¹⁰⁰⁶ Ideally, implementation should be a multidisciplinary effort involving many stakeholders, and using cost-effective methods of knowledge translation.¹⁰⁰⁶⁻¹⁰⁰⁸ Each implementation initiative needs to consider the nature of the local health system and its resources, including human resources, infrastructure, and available treatments (Box 14-1). Moreover, goals and implementation strategies will need to vary from country to country and within countries, based on economics, culture and the physical and social environment. Priority should be given to high-impact interventions.

Specific steps need to be followed before clinical practice recommendations can be embedded into local clinical practice and become the standard of care, particularly in low resource settings. The individual steps are summarized in Box 14-2.

Box 14-1. Approach to implementation of the Global Strategy for Asthma Management and Prevention



Box 14-2. Essential elements required to implement a health-related strategy

Steps in implementing an asthma strategy into a health system

1. Develop a multidisciplinary working group (e.g., primary care health providers, specialists, nurses, pharmacists, patients, community members).
2. Assess the current status of asthma care delivery, outcomes e.g., exacerbations, admissions, deaths, care gaps and current needs.
3. Select the material to be implemented, agree on main goals, identify key recommendations for diagnosis and treatment, and adapt them to the local context or environment.
In treatment recommendations, consider environmental issues (planetary health) in addition to patient health.
4. Identify barriers to implementation and facilitators of implementation.
5. Select an implementation framework and its component strategies.
6. Develop a step-by-step implementation plan:
 - Select target populations and evaluable outcomes, and specify data coding requirements (if relevant).
 - Identify local resources to support implementation.
 - Set timelines.
 - Distribute tasks to members.
 - Evaluate outcomes.
7. Continually review progress and results to determine if the strategy requires modification.

Barriers and facilitators

Many barriers to, and facilitators of, implementation procedures have been described.¹⁰⁰⁸⁻¹⁰¹¹ Some of the barriers to implementation of evidence-based asthma management relate to the delivery of care, while others occur at individual or community level (see Box 14-3). Cultural and economic barriers can particularly affect the application of recommendations.

Box 14-3. Examples of barriers to the implementation of evidence-based recommendations

Healthcare providers	Patients
• Insufficient knowledge of recommendations • Lack of agreement with recommendations or expectation that they will be effective • Resistance to change • External barriers (organizational, health policies, financial constraints) • Lack of time and resources • Medico-legal issues • Lack of accurate coding (diagnosis, exacerbations, emergency department and hospital admissions, and deaths)	• Low health literacy • Insufficient understanding of asthma and its management • Lack of agreement with recommendations • Cultural and economic barriers • Peer influence • Attitudes, beliefs, preferences, fears and misconceptions

High-impact implementation interventions

Ideally, interventions should be applied at the level of both the patient and the healthcare provider and, where relevant, the health system. Studies of the most effective means of medical education show that it may be difficult to change clinical practice. Examples of highly effective implementation interventions are shown in Box 14-4.

Box 14-4. Examples of high-impact implementation interventions in asthma management

• Free inhaled corticosteroids (ICS) for patients with a recent hospital admission and/or severe asthma¹⁰¹² • Early treatment with ICS, guided self-management, reduction in exposure to tobacco smoke, improved access to asthma education²⁴⁹ • Checklist memory aid for primary care, prompting assessment of asthma control and treatment strategies¹⁰¹³ • Use of individualized written asthma action plans as part of self-management education⁵⁶⁵ • An evidence-based care process model for acute and chronic pediatric asthma management, implemented at multiple hospitals¹⁰¹⁴
--

Evaluation of the implementation process

An important part of the implementation process is to establish a means of evaluating the effectiveness of the program and any improvements in quality of care. Evaluation involves surveillance of traditional epidemiological parameters, such as morbidity and mortality, as well as specific audits of both process and outcome within different sectors of the healthcare system. Each country should determine its own minimum sets of data to audit health outcomes.

How can GINA help with implementation?

The GINA Strategy Report provides an annually updated summary of evidence relevant to asthma diagnosis, management and prevention that may be used in the formulation and adaptation of local guidelines; where evidence is lacking, the report provides approaches for consideration. The GINA Dissemination Committee assists in the dissemination of the recommendations in the Strategy Report. GINA can be contacted via the website (www.ginasthma.org/contact-us).

Appendix A. Overview of Type 2 biomarkers in diagnosis and management of asthma in adolescents and adults

Numerous biomarkers have been investigated in the blood, urine, induced sputum, exhaled air and bronchoalveolar lavage fluid of people with asthma. Biomarkers must be measured and interpreted in the appropriate clinical context. In the clinical management of asthma, the most useful and widely used biomarkers are those reflecting Type 2 airway inflammation and allergy: blood eosinophil count, fractional exhaled nitric oxide (FeNO), serum total immunoglobulin E (IgE), and allergen-specific IgE. These biomarkers have roles in diagnosis, phenotyping, monitoring, prognosis and prediction of treatment response in asthma. Sputum eosinophil count is useful in directing corticosteroid therapy in patients with moderate–severe asthma, but it is not generally available in clinical practice.

This Appendix brings together and expands on information about Type 2 biomarkers that has been included in previous GINA reports, with additional information about sources of variability in blood eosinophils and FeNO.

COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL - DO NOT COPY OR DISTRIBUTE

Table A1. High blood eosinophils and FeNO, and factors affecting their levels, in adults and adolescents

Biomarker	Typical criteria for 'high' in adults/adolescents	Factors affecting measurement
Blood eosinophil count (BEC)	For diagnosis of asthma: BEC $\geq$ upper limit of normal for the population from regional or national laboratory reference values. In severe asthma patients taking high-dose ICS: • BEC $\geq 150/\mu\text{L}$ suggests presence of Type 2 inflammation • BEC $\geq 300/\mu\text{L}$ is a common threshold for eligibility for Type 2-targeted biologics.	BEC is influenced by multiple factors, including age, sex, time of day, smoking, and allergen exposure in sensitized individuals.61,727 Within a population, BEC is higher: • in males than females • in the early morning than the afternoon • in current smokers • with parasitic infections (e.g., helminths) • in allergic diseases (e.g., atopic dermatitis, allergic rhinitis, drug hypersensitivity) • with allergen exposure in sensitized individuals • in other non-asthma conditions (e.g., eosinophilic bronchitis, EGPA). Within a population, BEC is lower: • in some asthma phenotypes • in patients taking corticosteroids (particularly oral corticosteroids, but also inhaled and intranasal).
Fractional exhaled nitric oxide (FeNO)	Population reference values are not possible at present.58 In the interim, the following levels are suggested as indicating high FeNO: • ICS-naïve: >50 ppb • Medium-dose ICS: ≥ 25 ppb • High-dose ICS: ≥ 20 ppb	FeNO levels are influenced by multiple factors, including age, sex, time of day, and by allergen exposure in sensitized individuals, as well as by measuring device and site.58,334 Within a population, FeNO is higher: • in males than females • in the afternoon than the early morning • in allergic diseases, e.g., atopic dermatitis, allergic rhinitis • approximately 24 hours after allergen exposure in sensitized individuals. Within a population, FeNO is lower: • in current smokers • during bronchoconstriction and with lower lung function • during the early allergic response • with inhaled corticosteroids (dose-dependent) but also with oral or nasal corticosteroids.

EGPA: eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis

Implications for use of Type 2 biomarkers in clinical practice

Given the many sources of variation listed above, blood eosinophil counts and FeNO levels should be interpreted with caution in clinical practice, especially by comparison with specific threshold values. This is particularly important outside the context of clinical trials, in which study visits (and hence biomarker measurements) are often standardized with regard to time of day.

For patients with severe asthma who are being assessed for eligibility for Type 2-directed biologic therapy, if blood eosinophils and/or FeNO are not initially above the target threshold, they should be measured at least 3 times; additional details are on p.160 and p.162.

Table A2. Clinical utility of Type 2 biomarkers

Biomarker	Clinical context or population	Clinical utility of biomarker
1. INITIAL DIAGNOSIS OF ASTHMA		
Blood eosinophil count (BEC)	Adults with typical symptoms of asthma, but normal or obstructive spirometry without a positive bronchodilator responsiveness test	In a patient with typical asthma symptoms, high BEC may support a diagnosis of Type 2 asthma, but consider non-asthma causes of elevated BEC (as above). Low BEC does not rule out asthma. 55,727,1015-1018 Diagnosis of asthma is further supported if there is a clinical response to asthma treatment (see Box 1-1, p.27 and Box 1-2, p.28).
FeNO	Adults with typical symptoms of asthma, but normal or obstructive spirometry without a positive bronchodilator responsiveness test	In a patient with typical asthma symptoms, a high FeNO may support a diagnosis of Type 2 asthma, but there are non-asthma causes of elevated FeNO (as above), and a low FeNO does not rule out asthma. 45,55,334,1017,1019-1028 Diagnosis of asthma is further supported if there is a clinical response to asthma treatment (see Box 1-1, p.27 and Box 1-2, p.28).
2. PHENOTYPING OF ASTHMA		
2.1 Mild-to-moderate asthma		
BEC	Identification of asthma phenotypes in adults and adolescents	High BEC in a patient with an established diagnosis of asthma is consistent with eosinophilic asthma. 26,56,1029
FeNO	Identification of asthma phenotypes in adults and adolescents	High FeNO in a patient with an established diagnosis of asthma is consistent with Type 2 asthma. 26,56,1029
Serum total IgE Allergen-specific IgE	Identification of asthma phenotypes in adults, adolescents and children	One or more positive tests for a clinically-relevant allergen-specific IgE (or skin prick tests) in a patient with an established diagnosis of asthma is consistent with allergic asthma, 26,56,1029 when consistent with a medical history of symptoms triggered by exposure to specific aeroallergen(s).
2.2 Severe asthma		
See Section 8: Difficult-to-treat and severe asthma (p.149).		
To identify Type 2-high severe asthma in patients taking high-dose ICS-containing therapy, BEC and FeNO may need to be repeated up to 3 times. For patients taking OCS, the biomarkers should be measured, if possible, at least 1–2 weeks after cessation of a burst of OCS, or on the lowest possible maintenance dose; a pause of 2 days in maintenance OCS dose can allow BEC to increase (p.160). 729		

Biomarker	Clinical context or population	Clinical utility of biomarker
3. PROGNOSIS OF ASTHMA		
BEC	Patients with a history of ≥ 1 asthma exacerbation in the previous year	A high BEC is associated with a higher risk of (future) asthma exacerbations, particularly in patients taking a medium/high dose of ICS or OCS. 100,1030,1031
FeNO	Patients with a history of ≥ 1 asthma exacerbation in the previous year	In ICS-treated patients, a high FeNO is associated with a higher risk of (future) asthma exacerbations. 100,1030,1031
BEC and FeNO	Patients with a history of ≥ 1 asthma exacerbation in the previous year	BEC and FeNO provide complementary prognostic information in patients with asthma; risk of future asthma exacerbations is highest when both BEC and FeNO are high. 100
4. SELECTING ASTHMA TREATMENT, OR PREDICTING RESPONSE		
4.1 Mild asthma		
BEC	Adults with mild asthma taking low-dose ICS or no ICS	The reduction in severe exacerbations seen with as-needed-only ICS-formoterol (AIR-only) compared with as-needed SABA or daily ICS plus as-needed SABA is independent of baseline BEC, i.e., patients with either low or high BEC have a significant reduction in severe exacerbations with AIR-only compared with these other regimens. 214,215
FeNO	Adults with mild asthma taking low-dose ICS or no ICS	The reduction in severe exacerbations seen with as-needed-only ICS-formoterol vs SABA-only or daily ICS plus as-needed SABA is independent of baseline FeNO, i.e., patients with either low or high FeNO have a significant reduction in severe exacerbations with AIR-only compared with these other regimens.
4.2 Moderate asthma		
BEC	Adults with uncontrolled asthma despite prescription of GINA step 3 or 4 treatment	The reduction in severe exacerbations with maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with ICS-formoterol is independent of baseline BEC, (i.e., patients with low BEC have a significant reduction in severe exacerbations with MART compared with SABA-based regimens), but the benefit increases with higher BEC.1032 If BEC is high, first check adherence and inhaler technique first; consider switching to anti-inflammatory reliever therapy (GINA Track 1) or (if reliever is SABA) increasing ICS dose.408
FeNO	Adults with uncontrolled asthma despite prescription of GINA step 3 or 4 treatment	In patients with difficult-to-treat asthma and persistently high FeNO despite prescribing of medium-high dose ICS-LABA, directly observed or monitored corticosteroid therapy suppresses FeNO in approximately two-thirds of patients, and is associated with previous poor adherence.256,531 If FeNO is high, check adherence and inhaler technique first;256,531 if asthma remains uncontrolled, consider switching to anti-inflammatory reliever therapy (GINA Track 1) or, if reliever is SABA, increasing ICS dose.408

Biomarker	Clinical context or population	Clinical utility of biomarker
BEC and FeNO	Adults with uncontrolled asthma despite prescription of GINA step 3 or 4 treatment	If both BEC and FeNO are low, either in stable state or during exacerbations, consider other treatment options (pharmacological and non-pharmacological) before increasing ICS dose. 408
4.3 Severe asthma		
BEC	Adults with severe asthma who experience exacerbations despite treatment with high dose ICS-LABA	A high BEC predicts a better asthma response to add-on treatment with all biologics licensed for treatment of asthma than a lower BEC. 422,427,1033
FeNO	Adults with severe asthma who experience exacerbations despite treatment with high-dose ICS-LABA	For patients with high FeNO, first check adherence, because FeNO suppression with directly observed administration of corticosteroid identifies poor adherence in two-thirds of patients with persistently high FeNO despite prescription of high-dose ICS-LABA.256,531 A high FeNO predicts a better asthma response to add-on treatment with dupilumab, omalizumab and tezepelumab than a lower FeNO.422,427,1033 The efficacy of anti-IL5 (mepolizumab, reslizumab) and anti-IL5R (benralizumab) is independent of FeNO levels.1033
BEC and FeNO	Adults with severe asthma who experience exacerbations despite treatment with high-dose ICS-LABA	BEC and FeNO provide complementary theragnostic information in severe asthma; patients with severe asthma treated with dupilumab or tezepelumab have the best clinical response if both BEC and FeNO (pre-biologic) are high. 422,427,1033

AIR: anti-inflammatory reliever (ICS-formoterol); BDR: bronchodilator responsiveness; BEC: blood eosinophil count; EGPA: eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis; FeNO: fractional exhaled nitric oxide; GINA: Global Initiative for Asthma; ICS: inhaled corticosteroid; LABA: long-acting beta₂-agonist; OCS: oral corticosteroids; SABA: short-acting beta₂-agonist.

Appendix B. Overview of asthma medication classes

For more details about medications, see Product Information from manufacturers. Always check local eligibility criteria.

ANTI-INFLAMMATORY RELIEVER MEDICATIONS	
Low-dose combination ICS-formoterol	
Medications	Beclometasone-formoterol or budesonide-formoterol
Delivery	pMDI or DPI
Indications	This is the low-dose anti-inflammatory reliever inhaler for adults and adolescents in GINA Track 1, for patients prescribed maintenance-and-reliever therapy (MART) with maintenance ICS-formoterol in Steps 3-5, or for patients prescribed as-needed-only ICS-formoterol in Steps 1-2. In both settings, it reduces the risk of severe exacerbations, compared with using SABA as reliever, with similar symptom control. In adults and adolescents with mild asthma, as-needed-only ICS-formoterol reduces emergency visits/hospitalizations by 65%, compared with SABA alone, and by 37% when compared with daily ICS plus as-needed SABA. In children 5–15 years, as-needed-only low-dose budesonide-formoterol reliever reduced exacerbations compared with as-needed SABA. MART with budesonide-formoterol is also recommended for children aged 6–11 in Step 3 or Step 4. See Box 4-8, p.90 for details of medications and doses for AIR-only and MART. Low-dose ICS-formoterol can be taken before exercise to reduce exercise-induced bronchoconstriction, and before or during allergen exposure to reduce allergic responses.
Recommended doses	Most combination ICS-formoterol formulations contain a metered dose of 6 mcg per actuation (delivered dose 4.5 mcg for budesonide-formoterol and 5 mcg for beclometasone-formoterol), together with a low dose of ICS. For adults or adolescents prescribed AIR-only or MART with these formulations, the usual dose is 1 inhalation taken whenever needed for symptom relief. If needed, another inhalation can be taken after a few minutes. Adults and adolescents should be advised to seek medical care if they need more than a total of 12 inhalations of ICS-formoterol in a 24-hour period (maintenance plus reliever doses, delivering a total of 72 mcg [metered dose] of the formoterol component). Since the safety and efficacy of budesonide-formoterol up to this total has been established from large studies (>50,000 patients), GINA suggests that the same advice should also apply for beclometasone-formoterol. For children 6–11 years prescribed AIR-only or MART with budesonide-formoterol, medical care should be sought if they need more than a total of 8 inhalations in a 24-hour period (i.e. delivering a total of 36 mcg (48 mcg metered dose) of the formoterol component). For ICS-formoterol formulations that deliver 2.25 mcg formoterol (metered dose 3 mcg) per actuation, the above numbers of actuations should be doubled. See Box 4-8, p.90 for details of medications and doses for different age-groups.
Adverse effects	As for ICS-formoterol below
Low-dose combination ICS-SABA	
Medications	Budesonide-salbutamol (also described as albuterol-budesonide); beclometasone-salbutamol
Delivery	pMDI or DPI
Indications	This is the anti-inflammatory reliever option (instead of SABA) for GINA Track 2. In adults with uncontrolled asthma while using as-needed SABA alone or with low-dose ICS or LTRA, budesonide-

	salbutamol delivered dose 80/90 mcg (metered dose 100/100 mcg), 2 inhalations taken as needed for symptom relief, reduced the risk of severe exacerbations compared with using a salbutamol reliever, and reduced the need for OCS. In adults with moderate-severe asthma taking maintenance ICS or ICS-LABA, budesonide-salbutamol delivered dose 80/90 mcg (metered dose 100/100 mcg), 2 actuations as needed) also reduced the risk of severe exacerbations, compared with SABA reliever; most of the benefit was seen in Step 3. A small number of adolescents was included in both studies. ICS-SABA cannot be used for maintenance-and-reliever therapy. There is no published evidence for as-needed-only use of combination budesonide-salbutamol in Track 2 Step 2 compared with daily ICS plus as-needed SABA (or plus as-needed ICS-SABA).
Recommended doses:	For combination ICS-SABA formulations delivering 90 mcg salbutamol (100 mcg metered dose), the usual dose is 2 separate inhalations. Patients should be advised to seek medical care if they need more than 6 doses, each of 2 inhalations, in any 24-hour period.
.Adverse effects	As for ICS and SABA

MEDICATIONS for MAINTENANCE TREATMENT

Inhaled corticosteroids (ICS)

Medications	Beclometasone, budesonide, ciclesonide, fluticasone propionate, fluticasone furoate, mometasone, triamcinolone
Delivery	pMDI or DPI
Indications	ICS-containing medications are the most effective anti-inflammatory medications for asthma. ICS reduce symptoms, increase lung function, reduce airway hyperresponsiveness, improve quality of life, and reduce the risk of exacerbations, asthma-related hospitalizations and death. ICS differ in their potency and bioavailability, but most of the benefit is seen at low doses (see Box 4-2, p.77) for low, medium and high doses of different ICS). Adherence with ICS alone is usually very poor because the patient does not perceive any immediate benefit. Preferred delivery of ICS is by dry powder inhaler or, for pMDI, by spacer with mouthpiece, to avoid exposure of the skin and eyes that may occur with spacer and facemask or with nebulized delivery.
Adverse effects	Most patients do not experience side-effects. Local side-effects include oropharyngeal candidiasis and dysphonia; these can be reduced by use of a spacer with pMDIs, and rinsing with water and spitting out after inhalation. Long-term high doses increase the risk of systemic side-effects such as osteoporosis, cataract and glaucoma. Concomitant treatment with cytochrome P450 inhibitors such as ketoconazole, ritonavir, itraconazole, erythromycin and clarithromycin may increase the risk of ICS adverse effects such as adrenal suppression.

ICS in combination with a long-acting beta₂-agonist bronchodilator (ICS-LABA)

Medications	Beclometasone-formoterol, budesonide-formoterol, fluticasone furoate-vilanterol, fluticasone propionate formoterol, fluticasone propionate-salmeterol, mometasone-formoterol and mometasone-indacaterol
Delivery	pMDI or DPI
Indications	When a low-dose of ICS alone fails to achieve good control of asthma, the addition of LABA to maintenance ICS improves symptoms, lung function and reduces exacerbations in more patients, more rapidly, than doubling the dose of ICS. Two regimens are available for adults and adolescents: low-dose combination beclometasone or budesonide with low-dose formoterol for both maintenance-

	and-reliever treatment (MART, GINA Track 1), and maintenance ICS-LABA with SABA or ICS-SABA as reliever (Track 2). MART with low-dose ICS-formoterol reliever is preferred as it reduces exacerbations, compared with conventional maintenance therapy with SABA as reliever, and is a simpler regimen. For as-needed-only use of ICS-formoterol in mild asthma, see section on anti-inflammatory relievers below; and for ICS-LABA-LAMA, see section on add-on medications. See Box 4-2, p.77 for low, medium and high doses of ICS in combination with LABA. See Box 4-8, p.90 for medications and doses for anti-inflammatory reliever therapy with ICS-formoterol. Preferred delivery of ICS is by dry powder inhaler or, for pMDI, by spacer with mouthpiece if possible, to avoid exposure of the skin and eyes that may occur with spacer and facemask or with nebulized delivery.
Adverse effects	The LABA component may be associated with tachycardia, headache or cramps. LABA is safe for asthma when used in combination with ICS, but LABA and/or LAMA should not be used without ICS in asthma (or in patients with asthma+COPD) due to increased risk of serious adverse outcomes. Concomitant treatment with cytochrome P450 inhibitors such as ketoconazole, ritonavir, itraconazole, erythromycin and clarithromycin may increase the risk of ICS adverse effects such as adrenal suppression.
Leukotriene receptor antagonists (LTRA) and leukotriene modifiers	
Medications	Montelukast, pranlukast, zafirlukast, zileuton
Delivery	Tablets
Indications	Target one part of the inflammatory pathway in asthma. Sometimes used as an option for maintenance therapy, mainly only in children. When used alone: less effective than low-dose ICS. When added to ICS: less effective than ICS-LABA.
Adverse effects	Few in placebo-controlled studies except elevated liver function tests with zileuton and zafirlukast. There are concerns in adults and children about risk of serious behavioral and mood changes, including suicidal ideation, associated with montelukast; this should be discussed with patients/parents/caregivers.
ADD-ON MAINTENANCE MEDICATIONS	
Long-acting muscarinic antagonists (LAMA) (check your local eligibility criteria)	
Medications	Tiotropium, ≥6 years, by mist inhaler, added to separate ICS or ICS-LABA Combination ICS-LABA-LAMA inhalers: For patients aged ≥18 years, beclometasone-formoterol-glycopyrronium; fluticasone furoate-vilanterol-umeclidinium and mometasone-indacaterol-glycopyrronium. For patients aged ≥12 years, budesonide-formoterol-glycopyrronium.
Delivery	pMDI or DPI or mist inhaler
Indications	An add-on option using combination or separate inhalers for patients with uncontrolled asthma despite medium- or high-dose ICS-LABA. Modestly improves lung function but not symptoms or quality of life; small reduction in exacerbations. For patients with exacerbations, ensure that ICS is increased to at least medium dose before considering need for add-on LAMA. Note that doses of triple therapy (ICS-LABA-LAMA) for asthma may differ from those approved for COPD.
Adverse effects	Uncommon, but include dry mouth, urinary retention.

Anti-IgE (check your local eligibility criteria)

Medications	Omalizumab or biosimilar (omalizumab-igec), ≥6 years
Delivery	Syringe or pen for subcutaneous injection
Indications	An add-on option for patients with severe allergic asthma uncontrolled on high-dose ICS-LABA. May also be indicated for chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps, confirmed IgE-mediated food allergy, and chronic spontaneous (idiopathic) urticaria. See Box 8-6, p.166 for age-groups and doses for these additional indications. Self-administration may be an option.
Adverse effects	Reactions at the site of injection are common but minor. Anaphylaxis is rare.

Anti-IL5 and anti-IL5Rα (check your local eligibility criteria)

Medications	Anti-IL5: mepolizumab (≥6 years, SC injection), depemokimab (≥12 years, SC injection) or reslizumab (≥18 years, intravenous infusion); Anti-IL5 receptor benralizumab (≥12 years, SC injection)
Delivery	Depends on the specific medication, as above
Indications	Add-on options for patients with severe eosinophilic asthma uncontrolled on high-dose ICS-LABA. Maintenance OCS dose can be significantly reduced with benralizumab and mepolizumab. Mepolizumab and benralizumab may also be indicated for eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (EGPA), mepolizumab and depemokimab for chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps, and mepolizumab also for hypereosinophilic syndrome and COPD with eosinophilic phenotype; see Box 8-6, p.166 for age-groups and doses for these additional indications. For mepolizumab, benralizumab and depemokimab, self-administration may be an option.
Adverse effects	Headache, and reactions at injection site are common but minor.

Anti-IL4Rα (check your local eligibility criteria)

Medications	Dupilumab (≥6 years)
Delivery	Syringe or pen for subcutaneous injection
Indications	An add-on option for patients with severe eosinophilic or Type 2 asthma uncontrolled on high-dose ICS-LABA, or patients requiring maintenance OCS. Not advised for patients with current or historical blood eosinophils ≥1500/μL. May also be indicated for treatment of other conditions including COPD with chronic bronchitis and elevated blood eosinophils, skin conditions including moderate–severe atopic dermatitis and chronic spontaneous urticaria, chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps, and eosinophilic esophagitis; see Box 8-6, p.166 for age-groups and doses for these additional indications. Self-administration may be an option.
Adverse effects	Reactions at injection site are common but minor. Transient blood eosinophilia occurs in 4–13% of patients. Rarely, cases of eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (EGPA) may be unmasked following reduction/cessation of OCS treatment on dupilumab.

Anti-TSLP (check your local eligibility criteria)	
Medications	Tezepelumab, SC injection (≥12 years)
Delivery	Syringe or pen for subcutaneous injection
Indications	An add-on option for patients with severe asthma uncontrolled on high-dose ICS-LABA. In patients taking maintenance OCS, no significant reduction in OCS dose, compared with placebo. May also be indicated for chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps. See Box 8-6, p.166 for age-groups and doses for additional indications.
Adverse effects	Injection-site reactions; anaphylaxis is rare; adverse events generally similar between active and placebo groups.
Systemic corticosteroids	
Medications	e.g., prednisone, prednisolone, methylprednisolone, hydrocortisone tablets, dexamethasone
Delivery	Given by tablets or suspension or by IM or IV injection
Indications	Short-term treatment (usually 5–7 days in adults) is important in the treatment of severe acute exacerbations, with main effects seen after 4–6 hours. For severe acute exacerbations, oral corticosteroid (OCS) therapy is preferred to IM or IV therapy and is effective in preventing short-term relapse. Tapering is required if OCS is given for more than 2 weeks. Patients should be reviewed after any exacerbation, to optimize their inhaled treatment to reduce the risk of future exacerbations requiring OCS. As a last resort, long-term treatment with OCS may be required for some patients with severe asthma if biologic therapy is not available, but serious side-effects are problematic. Patients for whom this is considered should be referred for specialist review if available, to have treatment optimized and phenotype assessed.
Adverse effects	Short courses: adverse effects include sepsis, thromboembolism, sleep disturbance, reflux, appetite increase, hyperglycemia, mood changes. Even 4–5 lifetime courses increase cumulative risk of long-term adverse effects e.g., diabetes, osteoporosis, cataract, glaucoma, heart failure. Maintenance use: consider only as last resort, because of significant adverse effects e.g., cataract, glaucoma, hypertension, diabetes, adrenal suppression osteoporosis. Assess for these risks and treat appropriately.
SHORT-ACTING BRONCHODILATOR RELIEVER MEDICATIONS	
Short-acting inhaled beta₂-agonist bronchodilators (SABA)	
Medications	e.g., salbutamol (albuterol), terbutaline
Delivery	Administered by pMDI, DPI or, rarely, as solution for nebulization or injection
Indications	Inhaled SABAs provide quick relief of asthma symptoms and bronchoconstriction, and for pre-treatment before exercise. SABAs should be used only as-needed (not regularly) and at the lowest dose and frequency required. SABA-only treatment is not recommended because of the risk of severe exacerbations and asthma-related death, compared with use of any ICS. Currently, inhaled SABAs are the most commonly used bronchodilator for acute exacerbations requiring urgent primary care visit or ED presentation.

	Patients should be advised to seek medical care if they need SABA more than 4–6 times in a 24-hour period, or if symptom relief does not last for 4–6 hours. Fenoterol is not recommended because of its association with increased cardiovascular adverse effects and increased risk of asthma mortality. Inhaled epinephrine (adrenaline) is not recommended for treatment of asthma because of the increased risk of systemic adverse effects.
Adverse effects	Tremor and tachycardia are commonly reported with initial use of SABA. Tolerance develops rapidly with even 1–2 weeks of regular use, with increased airway hyperresponsiveness, reduced bronchodilator effect, and increased airway inflammation. Excess use, or poor response indicate poor asthma control and risk of exacerbations. Dispensing of 3 or more 200-dose canisters per year is associated with increased risk of exacerbations, and dispensing of 12 or more canisters per year is associated with markedly increased risk of death.
Short-acting antimuscarinics (anticholinergics)	
Medications	e.g., ipratropium bromide, oxitropium bromide. May be in combination with SABA
Delivery	pMDI or DPI
Indications	As-needed use: ipratropium is a less effective reliever medication than SABA, with slower onset of action. Short-term use in severe acute asthma, where adding ipratropium to SABA in the first 1–2 hours of treatment reduces the risk of hospital admission. Where possible, ipratropium should be delivered by pMDI and spacer with a mouthpiece, to avoid exposure of the eyes which may occur if a spacer with facemask or nebulizer is used.
Adverse effects	Dryness of the mouth or a bitter taste

References

1. Global Asthma Network. The Global asthma report 2022. *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 2022; 26: S1-S102.
2. Song P, Adeloye D, Salim H, et al. Global, regional, and national prevalence of asthma in 2019: a systematic analysis and modelling study. *J Glob Health* 2022; 12: 04052.
3. Asher I, Bissell K, Chiang CY, et al. Calling time on asthma deaths in tropical regions-how much longer must people wait for essential medicines? *Lancet Respir Med* 2019; 7: 13-15.
4. Meghji J, Mortimer K, Agusti A, et al. Improving lung health in low-income and middle-income countries: from challenges to solutions. *Lancet* 2021; 397: 928-940.
5. Stolbrink M, Chinouya MJ, Jayasooriya S, et al. Improving access to affordable quality-assured inhaled medicines in low- and middle-income countries. *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 2022; 26: 1023-1032.
6. Chiang CY, Ait-Khaled N, Bissell K, et al. Management of asthma in resource-limited settings: role of low-cost corticosteroid/beta-agonist combination inhaler. *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 2015; 19: 129-136.
7. Mortimer K, Reddel HK, Pitrez PM, et al. Asthma management in low- and middle-income countries: case for change. *Eur Respir J* 2022; 60: 2103179.
8. World Health Organization. The selection and use of essential medicines, 2025: WHO Model List of Essential Medicines, 24th list. 5 September 2025. WHO; 2025. Available from: <https://www.who.int/publications/i/item/B09474>.
9. Reddel HK, FitzGerald JM, Bateman ED, et al. GINA 2019: a fundamental change in asthma management: Treatment of asthma with short-acting bronchodilators alone is no longer recommended for adults and adolescents. *Eur Respir J* 2019; 53: 1901046.
10. Hatter L, Holliday M, Eathorne A, et al. The carbon footprint of as-needed budesonide/formoterol in mild asthma: a post hoc analysis. *Eur Respir J* 2024; 64: 2301705.
11. Pernigotti D, Stonham C, Panigone S, et al. Reducing carbon footprint of inhalers: analysis of climate and clinical implications of different scenarios in five European countries. *BMJ Open Respir Res* 2021; 8.
12. Levy ML, Bateman ED, Allan K, et al. Global access and patient safety in the transition to environmentally friendly respiratory inhalers: the Global Initiative for Asthma perspective. *Lancet* 2023; 402: 1012-1016.
13. Schünemann HJ, Jaeschke R, Cook DJ, et al. An official ATS statement: grading the quality of evidence and strength of recommendations in ATS guidelines and recommendations. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2006; 174: 605-614.
14. Rice JL, Diette GB, Suarez-Cuervo C, et al. Allergen-specific immunotherapy in the treatment of pediatric asthma: A systematic review. *Pediatrics* 2018; 141: e20173833.
15. Lin SY, Azar A, Suarez-Cuervo C, et al. The role of immunotherapy in the treatment of asthma. AHRQ Comparative Effectiveness Reviews. Rockville (MD): Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (US); 2018.
16. Critical Appraisal Skills Programme. CASP Checklist: 10 questions to help you make sense of a systematic review: CASP; 2018. Available from: https://casp-uk.net/images/checklist/documents/CASP-Systematic-Review-Checklist/CASP-Systematic-Review-Checklist_2018.pdf.
17. Louman S, van Stralen KJ, Pijnenburg MWH, et al. Oxygen saturation targets for children with respiratory distress: a systematic review. *ERJ Open Res* 2023; 9: 00256-02023.
18. Pellegrino R, Viegi G, Brusasco V, et al. Interpretative strategies for lung function tests. *Eur Respir J* 2005; 26: 948-968.
19. Stanojevic S, Kaminsky DA, Miller MR, et al. ERS/ATS technical standard on interpretive strategies for routine lung function tests. *Eur Respir J* 2022; 60: 2101499.
20. Hatter L, Holliday M, Oldfield K, et al. Budesonide-formoterol versus salbutamol as reliever therapy in children with mild asthma (CARE): a 52-week, open-label, multicentre, superiority, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2025; 406: 1473-1483.
21. LaForce C, Albers F, Danilewicz A, et al. As-needed albuterol-budesonide in mild asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2025; 393: 113-124.

22. Mortimer K, Lesosky M, García-Marcos L, et al. The burden of asthma, hay fever and eczema in adults in 17 countries: GAN Phase I study. *Eur Respir J* 2022; 60: 2102865.
23. Asher MI, Rutter CE, Bissell K, et al. Worldwide trends in the burden of asthma symptoms in school-aged children: Global Asthma Network Phase I cross-sectional study. *Lancet* 2021; 398: 1569-1580.
24. Bel EH. Clinical phenotypes of asthma. *Curr Opin Pulm Med* 2004; 10: 44-50.
25. Moore WC, Meyers DA, Wenzel SE, et al. Identification of asthma phenotypes using cluster analysis in the Severe Asthma Research Program. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2010; 181: 315-323.
26. Wenzel SE. Asthma phenotypes: the evolution from clinical to molecular approaches. *Nat Med* 2012; 18: 716-725.
27. Zhou J, Yi F, Wu F, et al. Characteristics of different asthma phenotypes associated with cough: a prospective, multicenter survey in China. *Respir Res* 2022; 23: 243.
28. Lai K, Zhan W, Wu F, et al. Clinical and inflammatory characteristics of the Chinese APAC Cough Variant Asthma Cohort. *Front Med (Lausanne)* 2021; 8: 807385.
29. Scott HA, Ng SH, McLoughlin RF, et al. Effect of obesity on airway and systemic inflammation in adults with asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Thorax* 2023; 78: 957-965.
30. Westerhof GA, Coumou H, de Nijs SB, et al. Clinical predictors of remission and persistence of adult-onset asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2018; 141: 104-109.e103.
31. Levy ML, Fletcher M, Price DB, et al. International Primary Care Respiratory Group (IPCRG) Guidelines: diagnosis of respiratory diseases in primary care. *Prim Care Respir J* 2006; 15: 20-34.
32. Mortimer K, Masekela R, Ozoh O, et al. The reality of managing asthma in sub-Saharan Africa – priorities and strategies for improving care. *J Pan Afr Thorac Soc* 2022; 3: 105-120.
33. Asthma+Lung UK. Peak flow variability calculator [Web page] Last reviewed: 10 June 2024 [cited 2025 May]. Available from: <https://www.asthmaandlung.org.uk/healthcare-professionals/adult-asthma/diagnosis-testing/perf-calc>.
34. Reddel H, Ware S, Marks G, et al. Differences between asthma exacerbations and poor asthma control [erratum in *Lancet* 1999;353:758]. *Lancet* 1999; 353: 364-369.
35. Aaron SD, Vandemheen KL, FitzGerald JM, et al. Reevaluation of diagnosis in adults with physician-diagnosed asthma. *JAMA* 2017; 317: 269-279.
36. Gerstein E, Bierbrier J, Whitmore GA, et al. Impact of undiagnosed chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and asthma on symptoms, quality of life, healthcare use, and work productivity. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2023; 208: 1271-1282.
37. Tardif A, Whitmore GA, Vandemheen KL, et al. Patient factors and clinical efficacy of early identification and treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2025; 211: 2053-2059.
38. Graham BL, Steenbruggen I, Miller MR, et al. Standardization of spirometry 2019 update. An official American Thoracic Society and European Respiratory Society technical statement. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2019; 200: e70-e88.
39. Virant FS, Randolph C, Nanda A, et al. Pulmonary procedures during the COVID-19 pandemic: a Workgroup Report of the American Academy of Allergy, Asthma, and Immunology (AAAAI) Asthma Diagnosis and Treatment (ADT) Interest Section. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2022; 10: 1474-1484.
40. Miller MR, Hankinson J, Brusasco V, et al. Standardisation of spirometry. *Eur Respir J* 2005; 26: 319-338.
41. Quanjer PH, Stanojevic S, Cole TJ, et al. Multi-ethnic reference values for spirometry for the 3-95-yr age range: the global lung function 2012 equations. *Eur Respir J* 2012; 40: 1324-1343.
42. Reddel HK, Taylor DR, Bateman ED, et al. An official American Thoracic Society/European Respiratory Society statement: asthma control and exacerbations: standardizing endpoints for clinical asthma trials and clinical practice. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2009; 180: 59-99.
43. Brouwer AF, Brand PL. Asthma education and monitoring: what has been shown to work. *Paediatr Respir Rev* 2008; 9: 193-199.
44. Tan WC, Vollmer WM, Lamprecht B, et al. Worldwide patterns of bronchodilator responsiveness: results from the Burden of Obstructive Lung Disease study. *Thorax* 2012; 67: 718-726.

45. Louis R, Satia I, Ojanguren I, et al. European Respiratory Society guidelines for the diagnosis of asthma in adults. *Eur Respir J* 2022; 60: 2101585.
46. Hatic E, Färdig M, Amaral AFS, et al. Evaluation of recently proposed thresholds to define spirometry bronchodilator response. *ERJ Open Res* 2025; 11: 01162-02024.
47. Coates AL, Wanger J, Cockcroft DW, et al. ERS technical standard on bronchial challenge testing: general considerations and performance of methacholine challenge tests. *Eur Respir J* 2017; 49: 1601526.
48. Hallstrand TS, Leuppi JD, Joos G, et al. ERS technical standard on bronchial challenge testing: pathophysiology and methodology of indirect airway challenge testing. *Eur Respir J* 2018; 52: 1801033.
49. Ramsdale EH, Morris MM, Roberts RS, et al. Asymptomatic bronchial hyperresponsiveness in rhinitis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 1985; 75: 573-577.
50. van Haren EH, Lammers JW, Festen J, et al. The effects of the inhaled corticosteroid budesonide on lung function and bronchial hyperresponsiveness in adult patients with cystic fibrosis. *Respir Med* 1995; 89: 209-214.
51. Joshi S, Powell T, Watkins WJ, et al. Exercise-induced bronchoconstriction in school-aged children who had chronic lung disease in infancy. [Erratum in *J Pediatr*. 2013 Jun;162(6):1298]. *J Pediatr* 2013; 162: 813-818.e811.
52. Ramsdale EH, Morris MM, Roberts RS, et al. Bronchial responsiveness to methacholine in chronic bronchitis: relationship to airflow obstruction and cold air responsiveness. *Thorax* 1984; 39: 912-918.
53. Ahlstedt S, Murray CS. In vitro diagnosis of allergy: how to interpret IgE antibody results in clinical practice. *Prim Care Respir J* 2006; 15: 228-236.
54. Dunican EM, Elicker BM, Gierada DS, et al. Mucus plugs in patients with asthma linked to eosinophilia and airflow obstruction. *J Clin Invest* 2018; 128: 997-1009.
55. Korevaar DA, Westerhof GA, Wang J, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of minimally invasive markers for detection of airway eosinophilia in asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Lancet Respir Med* 2015; 3: 290-300.
56. Fahy JV. Type 2 inflammation in asthma – present in most, absent in many. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2015; 15: 57-65.
57. Lugogo N, Green CL, Agada N, et al. Obesity's effect on asthma extends to diagnostic criteria. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2018; 141: 1096-1104.
58. Högman M, Bowerman C, Chavez L, et al. ERS technical standard: Global Lung Function Initiative reference values for exhaled nitric oxide fraction (FENO50). *Eur Respir J* 2024; 63: 2300370.
59. American Thoracic Society, European Respiratory Society. ATS/ERS recommendations for standardized procedures for the online and offline measurement of exhaled lower respiratory nitric oxide and nasal nitric oxide, 2005. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2005; 171: 912-930.
60. Haccuria A, Michils A, Michiels S, et al. Exhaled nitric oxide: a biomarker integrating both lung function and airway inflammation changes. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2014; 134: 554-559.
61. Hartl S, Breyer MK, Burghuber OC, et al. Blood eosinophil count in the general population: typical values and potential confounders. *Eur Respir J* 2020; 55: 1901874.
62. Winkel P, Statland BE, Saunders AM, et al. Within-day physiologic variation of leukocyte types in healthy subjects as assayed by two automated leukocyte differential analyzers. *Am J Clin Pathol* 1981; 75: 693-700.
63. Aaron SD, Vandemheen KL, Boulet LP, et al. Overdiagnosis of asthma in obese and nonobese adults. *CMAJ* 2008; 179: 1121-1131.
64. Lucas AE, Smeenk FW, Smeele IJ, et al. Overtreatment with inhaled corticosteroids and diagnostic problems in primary care patients, an exploratory study. *Family practice* 2008; 25: 86-91.
65. Marklund B, Tunsater A, Bengtsson C. How often is the diagnosis bronchial asthma correct? *Fam Pract* 1999; 16: 112-116.
66. Montnemery P, Hansson L, Lanke J, et al. Accuracy of a first diagnosis of asthma in primary health care. *Fam Pract* 2002; 19: 365-368.
67. Braman SS. Postinfectious cough: ACCP evidence-based clinical practice guidelines. *Chest* 2006; 129: 138s-146s.

68. Gibson PG, Chang AB, Glasgow NJ, et al. CICADA: Cough in Children and Adults: Diagnosis and Assessment. Australian cough guidelines summary statement. *Med J Aust* 2010; 192: 265-271.
69. Halvorsen T, Walsted ES, Bucca C, et al. Inducible laryngeal obstruction: an official joint European Respiratory Society and European Laryngological Society statement. *Eur Respir J* 2017; 50: 1602221.
70. Zhan W, Wu F, Zhang Y, et al. Identification of cough-variant asthma phenotypes based on clinical and pathophysiologic data. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2023; 152: 622-632.
71. Niimi A. Cough and asthma. *Curr Respir Med Rev* 2011; 7: 47-54.
72. Desai D, Brightling C. Cough due to asthma, cough-variant asthma and non-asthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis. *Otolaryngol Clin North Am* 2010; 43: 123-130.
73. Morice AH, Millqvist E, Bieksiene K, et al. ERS guidelines on the diagnosis and treatment of chronic cough in adults and children. *Eur Respir J* 2020; 55: 1901136.
74. Parker SM, Smith JA, Birring SS, et al. British Thoracic Society Clinical Statement on chronic cough in adults. *Thorax* 2023; 78: s3-s19.
75. Baur X, Sigsgaard T, Aasen TB, et al. Guidelines for the management of work-related asthma.[Erratum appears in *Eur Respir J*. 2012 Jun;39(6):1553]. *Eur Respir J* 2012; 39: 529-545.
76. Henneberger PK, Patel JR, de Groene GJ, et al. Workplace interventions for treatment of occupational asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2019; 10: CD006308.
77. Levy ML, Nicholson PJ. Occupational asthma case finding: a role for primary care. *Br J Gen Pract* 2004; 54: 731-733.
78. Barber CM, Cullinan P, Feary J, et al. British Thoracic Society Clinical Statement on occupational asthma. *Thorax* 2022; 77: 433-442.
79. Parsons JP, Hallstrand TS, Mastronarde JG, et al. An official American Thoracic Society clinical practice guideline: exercise-induced bronchoconstriction. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2013; 187: 1016-1027.
80. Carlsen KH, Anderson SD, Bjermer L, et al. Exercise-induced asthma, respiratory and allergic disorders in elite athletes: epidemiology, mechanisms and diagnosis: part I of the report from the Joint Task Force of the European Respiratory Society (ERS) and the European Academy of Allergy and Clinical Immunology (EAACI) in cooperation with GA2LEN. *Allergy* 2008; 63: 387-403.
81. Murphy VE, Gibson PG. Asthma in pregnancy. *Clinics in chest medicine* 2011; 32: 93-110, ix.
82. Adams RJ, Wilson DH, Appleton S, et al. Underdiagnosed asthma in South Australia. *Thorax* 2003; 58: 846-850.
83. Hsu J, Chen J, Mirabelli MC. Asthma morbidity, comorbidities, and modifiable factors among older adults. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2018; 6: 236-243.e237.
84. Parshall MB, Schwartzstein RM, Adams L, et al. An Official American Thoracic Society Statement: Update on the mechanisms, assessment, and management of dyspnea. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2012; 185: 435-452.
85. Januzzi JL, Jr., Camargo CA, Anwaruddin S, et al. The N-terminal Pro-BNP investigation of dyspnea in the emergency department (PRIDE) study. *Am J Cardiol* 2005; 95: 948-954.
86. Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease. Global strategy for diagnosis, management and prevention of chronic obstructive lung disease (2026 Report): GOLD; 2025. Available from: <https://goldcopd.org>.
87. Hanania NA, Celli BR, Donohue JF, et al. Bronchodilator reversibility in COPD. *Chest* 2011; 140: 1055-1063.
88. Alshabanat A, Zafari Z, Albanyan O, et al. Asthma and COPD overlap syndrome (ACOS): a systematic review and meta analysis. *PLoS One* 2015; 10: e0136065.
89. Boulet LP. Asthma and obesity. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2013; 43: 8-21.
90. van Huisstede A, Castro Cabezas M, van de Geijn GJ, et al. Underdiagnosis and overdiagnosis of asthma in the morbidly obese. *Respir Med* 2013; 107: 1356-1364.
91. Masekela R, Zurba L, Gray D. Dealing with access to spirometry in Africa: a commentary on challenges and solutions. *Int J Environ Res Public Health* 2018; 16: 62.

92. Cornick R, Picken S, Wattrus C, et al. The Practical Approach to Care Kit (PACK) guide: developing a clinical decision support tool to simplify, standardise and strengthen primary healthcare delivery. *BMJ Glob Health* 2018; 3: e000962.
93. Fairall L, Bateman E, Cornick R, et al. Innovating to improve primary care in less developed countries: towards a global model. *BMJ Innov* 2015; 1: 196-203.
94. Huang WC, Fox GJ, Pham NY, et al. A syndromic approach to assess diagnosis and management of patients presenting with respiratory symptoms to healthcare facilities in Vietnam. *ERJ Open Res* 2021; 7: 00572-02020.
95. Aaron S, Boulet L, Reddel H, et al. Underdiagnosis and overdiagnosis of asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2018; 198: 1012-1020.
96. World Health Organization. WHO package of essential noncommunicable (PEN) disease interventions for primary health care. Geneva: WHO; 2020. Available from: [https://www.who.int/publications/i/item/who-package-of-essential-noncommunicable-\(pen\)-disease-interventions-for-primary-health-care](https://www.who.int/publications/i/item/who-package-of-essential-noncommunicable-(pen)-disease-interventions-for-primary-health-care).
97. Taylor DR, Bateman ED, Boulet LP, et al. A new perspective on concepts of asthma severity and control. *Eur Respir J* 2008; 32: 545-554.
98. Haselkorn T, Fish JE, Zeiger RS, et al. Consistently very poorly controlled asthma, as defined by the impairment domain of the Expert Panel Report 3 guidelines, increases risk for future severe asthma exacerbations in The Epidemiology and Natural History of Asthma: Outcomes and Treatment Regimens (TENOR) study. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2009; 124: 895-902.e891-894.
99. Loymans RJ, Honkoop PJ, Termeer EH, et al. Identifying patients at risk for severe exacerbations of asthma: development and external validation of a multivariable prediction model. *Thorax* 2016; 71: 838-846.
100. Meulmeester FL, Mailhot-Larouche S, Celis-Preciado C, et al. Inflammatory and clinical risk factors for asthma attacks (ORACLE2): a patient-level meta-analysis of control groups of 22 randomised trials. *Lancet Respir Med* 2025; Online ahead of print: DOI 10.1016/s2213-2600(1025)00037-00032.
101. Oosterholt S, Pavord ID, Brusselle G, et al. Modelling ASThma TrEatment Responses (MASTER): Effect of individual patient characteristics on the risk of exacerbation in moderate or severe asthma: A time-to-event analysis of randomized clinical trials. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 2023; 89: 3273-3290.
102. Stanford RH, Shah MB, D'Souza AO, et al. Short-acting β -agonist use and its ability to predict future asthma-related outcomes. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2012; 109: 403-407.
103. Nwaru BI, Ekstrom M, Hasvold P, et al. Overuse of short-acting beta2-agonists in asthma is associated with increased risk of exacerbation and mortality: a nationwide cohort study of the global SABINA programme. *Eur Respir J* 2020; 55: 1901872.
104. Patel M, Pilcher J, Reddel HK, et al. Metrics of salbutamol use as predictors of future adverse outcomes in asthma. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2013; 43: 1144-1151.
105. Suissa S, Ernst P, Boivin JF, et al. A cohort analysis of excess mortality in asthma and the use of inhaled beta-agonists. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1994; 149: 604-610.
106. Ernst P, Spitzer WO, Suissa S, et al. Risk of fatal and near-fatal asthma in relation to inhaled corticosteroid use. *JAMA* 1992; 268: 3462-3464.
107. Melani AS, Bonavia M, Cilenti V, et al. Inhaler mishandling remains common in real life and is associated with reduced disease control. *Respir Med* 2011; 105: 930-938.
108. Fitzpatrick S, Joks R, Silverberg JI. Obesity is associated with increased asthma severity and exacerbations, and increased serum immunoglobulin E in inner-city adults. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2012; 42: 747-759.
109. Denlinger LC, Phillips BR, Ramratnam S, et al. Inflammatory and comorbid features of patients with severe asthma and frequent exacerbations. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2017; 195: 302-313.
110. Burks AW, Tang M, Sicherer S, et al. ICON: food allergy. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2012; 129: 906-920.
111. Murphy VE, Clifton VL, Gibson PG. Asthma exacerbations during pregnancy: incidence and association with adverse pregnancy outcomes. *Thorax* 2006; 61: 169-176.

112. Osborne ML, Pedula KL, O'Hollaren M, et al. Assessing future need for acute care in adult asthmatics: the Profile of Asthma Risk Study: a prospective health maintenance organization-based study. *Chest* 2007; 132: 1151-1161.
113. Cho JH, Paik SY. Association between electronic cigarette use and asthma among high school students in South Korea. *PLoS One* 2016; 11: e0151022.
114. Annesi-Maesano I, Cecchi L, Biagioni B, et al. Is exposure to pollen a risk factor for moderate and severe asthma exacerbations? *Allergy* 2023; 78: 2121-2147.
115. Lim H, Kwon HJ, Lim JA, et al. Short-term effect of fine particulate matter on children's hospital admissions and emergency department visits for asthma: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Prev Med Public Health* 2016; 49: 205-219.
116. Zheng XY, Ding H, Jiang LN, et al. Association between air pollutants and asthma emergency room visits and hospital admissions in time series studies: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2015; 10: e0138146.
117. Mazenq J, Dubus JC, Gaudart J, et al. City housing atmospheric pollutant impact on emergency visit for asthma: A classification and regression tree approach. *Respir Med* 2017; 132: 1-8.
118. Su JG, Barrett MA, Combs V, et al. Identifying impacts of air pollution on subacute asthma symptoms using digital medication sensors. *Int J Epidemiol* 2022; 51: 213-224.
119. Sturdy PM, Victor CR, Anderson HR, et al. Psychological, social and health behaviour risk factors for deaths certified as asthma: a national case-control study. *Thorax* 2002; 57: 1034-1039.
120. Redmond C, Akinoso-Imran AQ, Heaney LG, et al. Socioeconomic disparities in asthma health care utilization, exacerbations, and mortality: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2022; 149: 1617-1627.
121. Fuhlbrigge AL, Kitch BT, Paltiel AD, et al. FEV1 is associated with risk of asthma attacks in a pediatric population. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2001; 107: 61-67.
122. Ulrik CS. Peripheral eosinophil counts as a marker of disease activity in intrinsic and extrinsic asthma. *Clin Exp Allergy* 1995; 25: 820-827.
123. Pongracic JA, Krouse RZ, Babineau DC, et al. Distinguishing characteristics of difficult-to-control asthma in inner-city children and adolescents. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2016; 138: 1030-1041.
124. Belda J, Giner J, Casan P, et al. Mild exacerbations and eosinophilic inflammation in patients with stable, well-controlled asthma after 1 year of follow-up. *Chest* 2001; 119: 1011-1017.
125. Ulrik CS, Frederiksen J. Mortality and markers of risk of asthma death among 1,075 outpatients with asthma. *Chest* 1995; 108: 10-15.
126. Zeiger RS, Schatz M, Zhang F, et al. Elevated exhaled nitric oxide is a clinical indicator of future uncontrolled asthma in asthmatic patients on inhaled corticosteroids. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011; 128: 412-414.
127. Turner MO, Noertjojo K, Vedal S, et al. Risk factors for near-fatal asthma. A case-control study in hospitalized patients with asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1998; 157: 1804-1809.
128. Miller MK, Lee JH, Miller DP, et al. Recent asthma exacerbations: a key predictor of future exacerbations. *Respir Med* 2007; 101: 481-489.
129. Buelo A, McLean S, Julious S, et al. At-risk children with asthma (ARC): a systematic review. *Thorax* 2018; 73: 813-824.
130. den Dekker HT, Sonnenschein-van der Voort AMM, de Jongste JC, et al. Early growth characteristics and the risk of reduced lung function and asthma: A meta-analysis of 25,000 children. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2016; 137: 1026-1035.
131. Lange P, Parner J, Vestbo J, et al. A 15-year follow-up study of ventilatory function in adults with asthma. *N Engl J Med* 1998; 339: 1194-1200.
132. Ulrik CS. Outcome of asthma: longitudinal changes in lung function. *Eur Respir J* 1999; 13: 904-918.
133. O'Byrne PM, Pedersen S, Lamm CJ, et al. Severe exacerbations and decline in lung function in asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2009; 179: 19-24.
134. Raissy HH, Kelly HW, Harkins M, et al. Inhaled corticosteroids in lung diseases. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2013; 187: 798-803.

135. Foster JM, Aucott L, van der Werf RH, et al. Higher patient perceived side effects related to higher daily doses of inhaled corticosteroids in the community: a cross-sectional analysis. *Respir Med* 2006; 100: 1318-1336.
136. Roland NJ, Bhalla RK, Earis J. The local side effects of inhaled corticosteroids: current understanding and review of the literature. *Chest* 2004; 126: 213-219.
137. Aroni R, Goeman D, Stewart K, et al. Enhancing validity: what counts as an asthma attack? *J Asthma* 2004; 41: 729-737.
138. McCoy K, Shade DM, Irvin CG, et al. Predicting episodes of poor asthma control in treated patients with asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2006; 118: 1226-1233.
139. Meltzer EO, Busse WW, Wenzel SE, et al. Use of the Asthma Control Questionnaire to predict future risk of asthma exacerbation. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011; 127: 167-172.
140. Schatz M, Zeiger RS, Yang SJ, et al. The relationship of asthma impairment determined by psychometric tools to future asthma exacerbations. *Chest* 2012; 141: 66-72.
141. Tattersfield AE, Postma DS, Barnes PJ, et al. Exacerbations of asthma: a descriptive study of 425 severe exacerbations. The FACET International Study Group. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1999; 160: 594-599.
142. Bousquet J, Boulet LP, Peters MJ, et al. Budesonide/formoterol for maintenance and relief in uncontrolled asthma vs. high-dose salmeterol/fluticasone. *Respir Med* 2007; 101: 2437-2446.
143. Buhl R, Kuna P, Peters MJ, et al. The effect of budesonide/formoterol maintenance and reliever therapy on the risk of severe asthma exacerbations following episodes of high reliever use: an exploratory analysis of two randomised, controlled studies with comparisons to standard therapy. *Respir Res* 2012; 13: 59.
144. O'Byrne PM, FitzGerald JM, Bateman ED, et al. Effect of a single day of increased as-needed budesonide-formoterol use on short-term risk of severe exacerbations in patients with mild asthma: a post-hoc analysis of the SYGMA 1 study. *Lancet Respir Med* 2021; 9: 149-158.
145. O'Byrne PM, Reddel HK, Eriksson G, et al. Measuring asthma control: a comparison of three classification systems. *Eur Respir J* 2010; 36: 269-276.
146. Thomas M, Kay S, Pike J, et al. The Asthma Control Test (ACT) as a predictor of GINA guideline-defined asthma control: analysis of a multinational cross-sectional survey. *Prim Care Respir J* 2009; 18: 41-49.
147. LeMay KS, Armour CL, Reddel HK. Performance of a brief asthma control screening tool in community pharmacy: a cross-sectional and prospective longitudinal analysis. *Prim Care Respir J* 2014; 23: 79-84.
148. Ahmed S, Ernst P, Tamblyn R, et al. Validation of The 30 Second Asthma Test as a measure of asthma control. *Can Respir J* 2007; 14: 105-109.
149. Pinnock H, Burton C, Campbell S, et al. Clinical implications of the Royal College of Physicians three questions in routine asthma care: a real-life validation study. *Prim Care Respir J* 2012; 21: 288-294.
150. Yawn BP, Wollan PC, Rank MA, et al. Use of Asthma APGAR Tools in primary care practices: a cluster-randomized controlled trial. *Ann Fam Med* 2018; 16: 100-110.
151. Juniper EF, O'Byrne PM, Guyatt GH, et al. Development and validation of a questionnaire to measure asthma control. *Eur Respir J* 1999; 14: 902-907.
152. Juniper EF, Svensson K, Mork AC, et al. Measurement properties and interpretation of three shortened versions of the asthma control questionnaire. *Respir Med* 2005; 99: 553-558.
153. Juniper EF, Bousquet J, Abetz L, et al. Identifying 'well-controlled' and 'not well-controlled' asthma using the Asthma Control Questionnaire. *Respir Med* 2006; 100: 616-621.
154. Nathan RA, Sorkness CA, Kosinski M, et al. Development of the asthma control test: a survey for assessing asthma control. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2004; 113: 59-65.
155. Schatz M, Kosinski M, Yaras AS, et al. The minimally important difference of the Asthma Control Test. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2009; 124: 719-723 e711.
156. Jones PW, Tomaszewski EL, Belton L, et al. Validity of the Chronic Airways Assessment Test (CAAT) in asthma, asthma+COPD and COPD in NOVELTY. *ERJ Open Res* 2025; 11: 01359-02024.

157. Pedersen S. Do inhaled corticosteroids inhibit growth in children? *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2001; 164: 521-535.
158. Loke YK, Blanco P, Thavarajah M, et al. Impact of inhaled corticosteroids on growth in children with asthma: systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2015; 10: e0133428.
159. Zhang L, Prietsch SO, Ducharme FM. Inhaled corticosteroids in children with persistent asthma: effects on growth. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; 7: CD009471.
160. Bousema S, Bohnen AM, Bindels PJE, et al. A systematic review of questionnaires measuring asthma control in children in a primary care population. *NPJ Prim Care Respir Med* 2023; 33: 25.
161. Liu AH, Zeiger R, Sorkness C, et al. Development and cross-sectional validation of the Childhood Asthma Control Test. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2007; 119: 817-825.
162. Juniper EF, Gruffydd-Jones K, Ward S, et al. Asthma Control Questionnaire in children: validation, measurement properties, interpretation. *Eur Respir J* 2010; 36: 1410-1416.
163. Nguyen JM, Holbrook JT, Wei CY, et al. Validation and psychometric properties of the Asthma Control Questionnaire among children. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2014; 133: 91-97.e91-96.
164. Chipps B, Zeiger RS, Murphy K, et al. Longitudinal validation of the Test for Respiratory and Asthma Control in Kids in pediatric practices. *Pediatrics* 2011; 127: e737-747.
165. Murphy KR, Zeiger RS, Kosinski M, et al. Test for respiratory and asthma control in kids (TRACK): a caregiver-completed questionnaire for preschool-aged children. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2009; 123: 833-839 e839.
166. Zeiger RS, Mellon M, Chipps B, et al. Test for Respiratory and Asthma Control in Kids (TRACK): clinically meaningful changes in score. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011; 128: 983-988.
167. Wildfire JJ, Gergen PJ, Sorkness CA, et al. Development and validation of the Composite Asthma Severity Index--an outcome measure for use in children and adolescents. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2012; 129: 694-701.
168. Murphy KR, Chipps B, Lanz MJ, et al. Pediatric Asthma Impairment and Risk Questionnaire: a control assessment for children aged 5 to 11 years. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2025; 13: 2659-2671.
169. Wechsler ME, Kelley JM, Boyd IO, et al. Active albuterol or placebo, sham acupuncture, or no intervention in asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2011; 365: 119-126.
170. Castro M, Rubin AS, Laviolette M, et al. Effectiveness and safety of bronchial thermoplasty in the treatment of severe asthma: a multicenter, randomized, double-blind, sham-controlled clinical trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2010; 181: 116-124.
171. Lazarus SC, Boushey HA, Fahy JV, et al. Long-acting beta2-agonist monotherapy vs continued therapy with inhaled corticosteroids in patients with persistent asthma: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2001; 285: 2583-2593.
172. Barnes PJ, Szeffler SJ, Reddel HK, et al. Symptoms and perception of airway obstruction in asthmatic patients: Clinical implications for use of reliever medications. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2019; 144: 1180-1186.
173. Agusti A, Bel E, Thomas M, et al. Treatable traits: toward precision medicine of chronic airway diseases. *Eur Respir J* 2016; 47: 410-419.
174. Shah SA, Quint JK, Sheikh A. Impact of COVID-19 pandemic on asthma exacerbations: Retrospective cohort study of over 500,000 patients in a national English primary care database. *Lancet Reg Health Eur* 2022; 19: 100428.
175. Kouis P, Lemonaris M, Xenophontos E, et al. The impact of COVID-19 lockdown measures on symptoms control in children with asthma: A systematic review and meta-analysis of observational cohort studies. *Pediatr Pulmonol* 2023; 58: 3213-3226.
176. Kohansal R, Martinez-Camblor P, Agusti A, et al. The natural history of chronic airflow obstruction revisited: an analysis of the Framingham offspring cohort. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2009; 180: 3-10.
177. McGeachie MJ, Yates KP, Zhou X, et al. Patterns of growth and decline in lung function in persistent childhood asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2016; 374: 1842-1852.
178. Waljee AK, Rogers MA, Lin P, et al. Short term use of oral corticosteroids and related harms among adults in the United States: population based cohort study. *BMJ* 2017; 357: j1415.

179. Price DB, Trudo F, Voorham J, et al. Adverse outcomes from initiation of systemic corticosteroids for asthma: long-term observational study. *J Asthma Allergy* 2018; 11: 193-204.
180. Walsh LJ, Wong CA, Osborne J, et al. Adverse effects of oral corticosteroids in relation to dose in patients with lung disease. *Thorax* 2001; 56: 279-284.
181. Lefebvre P, Duh MS, Lafeuille M-H, et al. Acute and chronic systemic corticosteroid-related complications in patients with severe asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2015; 136: 1488-1495.
182. Bleecker ER, Menzies-Gow AN, Price DB, et al. Systematic literature review of systemic corticosteroid use for asthma management. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2020; 201: 276-293.
183. Buckley L, Guyatt G, Fink HA, et al. 2017 American College of Rheumatology guideline for the prevention and treatment of glucocorticoid-induced osteoporosis. *Arthritis Care Res (Hoboken)* 2017; 69: 1095-1110.
184. Carr TF, Fajt ML, Kraft M, et al. Treating asthma in the time of COVID. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2023; 151: 809-817.
185. Kerstjens HA, Brand PL, de Jong PM, et al. Influence of treatment on peak expiratory flow and its relation to airway hyperresponsiveness and symptoms. The Dutch CNSLD Study Group. *Thorax* 1994; 49: 1109-1115.
186. Brand PL, Duiverman EJ, Waalkens HJ, et al. Peak flow variation in childhood asthma: correlation with symptoms, airways obstruction, and hyperresponsiveness during long-term treatment with inhaled corticosteroids. Dutch CNSLD Study Group. *Thorax* 1999; 54: 103-107.
187. Bateman ED, Boushey HA, Bousquet J, et al. Can guideline-defined asthma control be achieved? The Gaining Optimal Asthma Control study. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2004; 170: 836-844.
188. Jenkins CR, Thien FC, Wheatley JR, et al. Traditional and patient-centred outcomes with three classes of asthma medication. *Eur Respir J* 2005; 26: 36-44.
189. Li D, German D, Lulla S, et al. Prospective study of hospitalization for asthma. A preliminary risk factor model. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1995; 151: 647-655.
190. Kitch BT, Paltiel AD, Kuntz KM, et al. A single measure of FEV1 is associated with risk of asthma attacks in long-term follow-up. *Chest* 2004; 126: 1875-1882.
191. Killian KJ, Watson R, Otis J, et al. Symptom perception during acute bronchoconstriction. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2000; 162: 490-496.
192. Reddel HK, Jenkins CR, Marks GB, et al. Optimal asthma control, starting with high doses of inhaled budesonide. *Eur Respir J* 2000; 16: 226-235.
193. Szeffler SJ, Martin RJ, King TS, et al. Significant variability in response to inhaled corticosteroids for persistent asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2002; 109: 410-418.
194. Santanello NC, Zhang J, Seidenberg B, et al. What are minimal important changes for asthma measures in a clinical trial? *Eur Respir J* 1999; 14: 23-27.
195. Reddel HK, Marks GB, Jenkins CR. When can personal best peak flow be determined for asthma action plans? *Thorax* 2004; 59: 922-924.
196. Frey U, Brodbeck T, Majumdar A, et al. Risk of severe asthma episodes predicted from fluctuation analysis of airway function. *Nature* 2005; 438: 667-670.
197. Julius SM, Davenport KL, Davenport PW. Perception of intrinsic and extrinsic respiratory loads in children with life-threatening asthma. *Pediatr Pulmonol* 2002; 34: 425-433.
198. Kikuchi Y, Okabe S, Tamura G, et al. Chemosensitivity and perception of dyspnea in patients with a history of near-fatal asthma. *N Engl J Med* 1994; 330: 1329-1334.
199. Magadle R, Berar-Yanay N, Weiner P. The risk of hospitalization and near-fatal and fatal asthma in relation to the perception of dyspnea. *Chest* 2002; 121: 329-333.
200. Nuijsink M, Hop WC, Jongste JC, et al. Perception of bronchoconstriction: a complementary disease marker in children with asthma. *J Asthma* 2013; 50: 560-564.
201. Jansen J, McCaffery KJ, Hayen A, et al. Impact of graphic format on perception of change in biological data: implications for health monitoring in conditions such as asthma. *Prim Care Respir J* 2012; 21: 94-100.

202. Chung KF, Wenzel SE, Brozek JL, et al. International ERS/ATS guidelines on definition, evaluation and treatment of severe asthma. *Eur Respir J* 2014; 43: 343-373.
203. Sulaiman I, Greene G, MacHale E, et al. A randomised clinical trial of feedback on inhaler adherence and technique in patients with severe uncontrolled asthma. *Eur Respir J* 2018; 51: 1701126.
204. Lee J, Tay TR, Radhakrishna N, et al. Nonadherence in the era of severe asthma biologics and thermoplasty. *Eur Respir J* 2018; 51: 1701836.
205. National Asthma Education and Prevention Program. Expert Panel Report 3 (EPR-3): Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Asthma-Summary Report 2007. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2007; 120: S94-138.
206. Cloutier MM, Baptist AP, Blake KV, et al. 2020 Focused Updates to the Asthma Management Guidelines: A Report from the National Asthma Education and Prevention Program Coordinating Committee Expert Panel Working Group. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2020; 146: 1217-1270.
207. Dusser D, Montani D, Chanez P, et al. Mild asthma: an expert review on epidemiology, clinical characteristics and treatment recommendations. *Allergy* 2007; 62: 591-604.
208. Bergström SE, Boman G, Eriksson L, et al. Asthma mortality among Swedish children and young adults, a 10-year study. *Respir Med* 2008; 102: 1335-1341.
209. Reddel HK, Busse WW, Pedersen S, et al. Should recommendations about starting inhaled corticosteroid treatment for mild asthma be based on symptom frequency: a post-hoc efficacy analysis of the START study. *Lancet* 2017; 389: 157-166.
210. Crossingham I, Turner S, Ramakrishnan S, et al. Combination fixed-dose beta agonist and steroid inhaler as required for adults or children with mild asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2021; 5: CD013518.
211. Comaru T, Pitrez PM, Friedrich FO, et al. Free asthma medications reduces hospital admissions in Brazil (Free asthma drugs reduces hospitalizations in Brazil). *Respir Med* 2016; 121: 21-25.
212. Bousquet J, Mantzouranis E, Cruz AA, et al. Uniform definition of asthma severity, control, and exacerbations: document presented for the World Health Organization Consultation on Severe Asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2010; 126: 926-938.
213. FitzGerald JM, Barnes PJ, Chipps BE, et al. The burden of exacerbations in mild asthma: a systematic review. *ERJ Open Res* 2020; 6: 00359-02019.
214. Beasley R, Holliday M, Reddel HK, et al. Controlled trial of budesonide-formoterol as needed for mild asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2019; 380: 2020-2030.
215. Hardy J, Baggott C, Fingleton J, et al. Budesonide-formoterol reliever therapy versus maintenance budesonide plus terbutaline reliever therapy in adults with mild to moderate asthma (PRACTICAL): a 52-week, open-label, multicentre, superiority, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2019; 394: 919-928.
216. Boulet L-P, Vervloet D, Magar Y, et al. Adherence: the goal to control asthma. *Clin Chest Med* 2012; 33: 405-417.
217. Murphy J, McSharry J, Hynes L, et al. Prevalence and predictors of adherence to inhaled corticosteroids in young adults (15-30 years) with asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Asthma* 2021; 58: 683-705.
218. Wilson KC, Gould MK, Krishnan JA, et al. An Official American Thoracic Society Workshop Report. A framework for addressing multimorbidity in clinical practice guidelines for pulmonary disease, critical illness, and sleep disorders. *Ann Am Thorac Soc* 2016; 13: S12-21.
219. Taylor YJ, Tapp H, Shade LE, et al. Impact of shared decision making on asthma quality of life and asthma control among children. *J Asthma* 2018; 55: 675-683.
220. Gibson PG, Powell H, Coughlan J, et al. Self-management education and regular practitioner review for adults with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2003; 1: CD001117.
221. Guevara JP, Wolf FM, Grum CM, et al. Effects of educational interventions for self management of asthma in children and adolescents: systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMJ* 2003; 326: 1308-1309.
222. Wilson SR, Strub P, Buist AS, et al. Shared treatment decision making improves adherence and outcomes in poorly controlled asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2010; 181: 566-577.

223. Kew KM, Malik P, Aniruddhan K, et al. Shared decision-making for people with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2017; 10: CD012330.
224. Cabana MD, Slish KK, Evans D, et al. Impact of physician asthma care education on patient outcomes. *Pediatrics* 2006; 117: 2149-2157.
225. Partridge MR, Hill SR. Enhancing care for people with asthma: the role of communication, education, training and self-management. 1998 World Asthma Meeting Education and Delivery of Care Working Group. *Eur Respir J* 2000; 16: 333-348.
226. Maguire P, Pitceathly C. Key communication skills and how to acquire them. *BMJ* 2002; 325: 697-700.
227. Clark NM, Cabana MD, Nan B, et al. The clinician-patient partnership paradigm: outcomes associated with physician communication behavior. *Clin Pediatr (Phila)* 2008; 47: 49-57.
228. Rosas-Salazar C, Apter AJ, Canino G, et al. Health literacy and asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2012; 129: 935-942.
229. Rosas-Salazar C, Ramratnam SK, Brehm JM, et al. Parental numeracy and asthma exacerbations in Puerto Rican children. *Chest* 2013; 144: 92-98.
230. Apter AJ, Wan F, Reisine S, et al. The association of health literacy with adherence and outcomes in moderate-severe asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2013; 132: 321-327.
231. Poureslami I, Nimmon L, Doyle-Waters M, et al. Effectiveness of educational interventions on asthma self-management in Punjabi and Chinese asthma patients: a randomized controlled trial. *J Asthma* 2012; 49: 542-551.
232. Prado MGA, Arcanjo FPN, de Andrade LOM, et al. Use of web and mobile device technologies in the management of childhood asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Pediatr (Rio J)* 2025; 101: 485-493.
233. Ologundudu L, Rayner DG, Oppenheimer J, et al. Patient-facing digital inhalers for asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2025; 13: 1824-1835.
234. Menzies-Gow A, Szeffler SJ, Busse WW. The relationship of asthma biologics to remission for asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2021; 9: 1090-1098.
235. Blaiss M, Oppenheimer J, Corbett M, et al. Consensus of an American College of Allergy, Asthma, and Immunology, American Academy of Allergy, Asthma, and Immunology, and American Thoracic Society workgroup on definition of clinical remission in asthma on treatment. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2023; 131: 782-785.
236. Thomas D, McDonald VM, Pavord ID, et al. Asthma remission: what is it and how can it be achieved? *Eur Respir J* 2022; 60: 2102583.
237. Martinez FD, Wright AL, Taussig LM, et al. Asthma and wheezing in the first six years of life. The Group Health Medical Associates. *N Engl J Med* 1995; 332: 133-138.
238. Sears MR, Greene JM, Willan AR, et al. A longitudinal, population-based, cohort study of childhood asthma followed to adulthood. *N Engl J Med* 2003; 349: 1414-1422.
239. Vonk JM, Postma DS, Boezen HM, et al. Childhood factors associated with asthma remission after 30 year follow up. *Thorax* 2004; 59: 925-929.
240. Wang AL, Datta S, Weiss ST, et al. Remission of persistent childhood asthma: Early predictors of adult outcomes. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2019; 143: 1752-1759.e1756.
241. Rodríguez-Martínez CE, Sossa-Briceño MP, Castro-Rodríguez JA. Factors predicting persistence of early wheezing through childhood and adolescence: a systematic review of the literature. *J Asthma Allergy* 2017; 10: 83-98.
242. To T, Gershon A, Wang C, et al. Persistence and remission in childhood asthma: a population-based asthma birth cohort study. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med* 2007; 161: 1197-1204.
243. Longo C, Blais L, Brownell M, et al. Association between asthma control trajectories in preschoolers and long-term asthma control. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2022; 10: 1268-1278.e1267.
244. To M, Tsuzuki R, Katsube O, et al. Persistent asthma from childhood to adulthood presents a distinct phenotype of adult asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2020; 8: 1921-1927.e1922.

245. Miura S, Iwamoto H, Omori K, et al. Accelerated decline in lung function in adults with a history of remitted childhood asthma. *Eur Respir J* 2022; 59: 2100305.
246. Suojalehto H, Lindström I. Long-term outcome of occupational asthma with different etiology. *Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol* 2024; 24: 64-68.
247. Pavord I, Gardiner F, Heaney LG, et al. Remission outcomes in severe eosinophilic asthma with mepolizumab therapy: Analysis of the REDES study. *Front Immunol* 2023; 14: 1150162.
248. McDowell PJ, McDowell R, Busby J, et al. Clinical remission in severe asthma with biologic therapy: an analysis from the UK Severe Asthma Registry. *Eur Respir J* 2023; 62: 2300819.
249. Haahtela T, Tuomisto LE, Pietinalho A, et al. A 10 year asthma programme in Finland: major change for the better. *Thorax* 2006; 61: 663-670.
250. Ait-Khaled N, Enarson DA, Bencharif N, et al. Implementation of asthma guidelines in health centres of several developing countries. *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 2006; 10: 104-109.
251. Plaza V, Cobos A, Ignacio-Garcia JM, et al. [Cost-effectiveness of an intervention based on the Global INitiative for Asthma (GINA) recommendations using a computerized clinical decision support system: a physicians randomized trial]. *Medicina clinica* 2005; 124: 201-206.
252. Haldar P, Pavord ID, Shaw DE, et al. Cluster analysis and clinical asthma phenotypes. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2008; 178: 218-224.
253. Roche N, Reddel HK, Agusti A, et al. Integrating real-life studies in the global therapeutic research framework. *Lancet Respir Med* 2013; 1: e29-e30.
254. Sobieraj DM, Weeda ER, Nguyen E, et al. Association of inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting beta-agonists as controller and quick relief therapy with exacerbations and symptom control in persistent asthma: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA* 2018; 319: 1485-1496.
255. Cates CJ, Karner C. Combination formoterol and budesonide as maintenance and reliever therapy versus current best practice (including inhaled steroid maintenance), for chronic asthma in adults and children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2013; 4: CD007313.
256. Heaney LG, Busby J, Bradding P, et al. Remotely monitored therapy and nitric oxide suppression identifies nonadherence in severe asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2019; 199: 454-464.
257. Lazarus SC, Chinchilli VM, Rollings NJ, et al. Smoking affects response to inhaled corticosteroids or leukotriene receptor antagonists in asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2007; 175: 783-790.
258. Chaudhuri R, Livingston E, McMahon AD, et al. Effects of smoking cessation on lung function and airway inflammation in smokers with asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2006; 174: 127-133.
259. Rayens MK, Burkhart PV, Zhang M, et al. Reduction in asthma-related emergency department visits after implementation of a smoke-free law. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2008; 122: 537-541.
260. Wills TA, Soneji SS, Choi K, et al. E-cigarette use and respiratory disorders: an integrative review of converging evidence from epidemiological and laboratory studies. *Eur Respir J* 2021; 57: 1901815.
261. Valkenborghs SR, Anderson SL, Scott HA, et al. Exercise training programs improve cardiorespiratory and functional fitness in adults with asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil Prev* 2022; 42: 423-433.
262. Hansen ESH, Pitzner-Fabrizius A, Toennesen LL, et al. Effect of aerobic exercise training on asthma in adults: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur Respir J* 2020; 56: 2000146.
263. McLoughlin RF, Clark VL, Urroz PD, et al. Increasing physical activity in severe asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur Respir J* 2022; 60: 2200546.
264. Toennesen LL, Meteran H, Hostrup M, et al. Effects of exercise and diet in nonobese asthma patients-a randomized controlled trial. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2018; 6: 803-811.
265. Beggs S, Foong YC, Le HC, et al. Swimming training for asthma in children and adolescents aged 18 years and under. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2013; 4: CD009607.

266. Lazarinis N, Jørgensen L, Ekström T, et al. Combination of budesonide/formoterol on demand improves asthma control by reducing exercise-induced bronchoconstriction. *Thorax* 2014; 69: 130-136.
267. Osadnik CR, Gleeson C, McDonald VM, et al. Pulmonary rehabilitation versus usual care for adults with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2022; 8: CD013485.
268. Kogevinas M, Zock JP, Jarvis D, et al. Exposure to substances in the workplace and new-onset asthma: an international prospective population-based study (ECRHS-II). *Lancet* 2007; 370: 336-341.
269. Szczeklik A, Nizankowska E, Duplaga M. Natural history of aspirin-induced asthma. AIANE Investigators. European Network on Aspirin-Induced Asthma. *Eur Respir J* 2000; 16: 432-436.
270. Covar RA, Macomber BA, Szeffler SJ. Medications as asthma triggers. *Immunol Allergy Clin North Am* 2005; 25: 169-190.
271. Olenchock BA, Fonarow GG, Pan W, et al. Current use of beta blockers in patients with reactive airway disease who are hospitalized with acute coronary syndromes. *Am J Cardiol* 2009; 103: 295-300.
272. Morales DR, Jackson C, Lipworth BJ, et al. Adverse respiratory effect of acute beta-blocker exposure in asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Chest* 2014; 145: 779-786.
273. Gotzsche PC, Johansen HK. House dust mite control measures for asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2008; 2: CD001187.
274. Leas BF, D'Anci KE, Apter AJ, et al. Effectiveness of indoor allergen reduction in asthma management: A systematic review. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2018; 141: 1854-1869.
275. Sheffer AL. Allergen avoidance to reduce asthma-related morbidity. *N Engl J Med* 2004; 351: 1134-1136.
276. Platts-Mills TA. Allergen avoidance in the treatment of asthma and rhinitis. *N Engl J Med* 2003; 349: 207-208.
277. Rabito FA, Carlson JC, He H, et al. A single intervention for cockroach control reduces cockroach exposure and asthma morbidity in children. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2017; 140: 565-570.
278. Crocker DD, Kinyota S, Dumitru GG, et al. Effectiveness of home-based, multi-trigger, multicomponent interventions with an environmental focus for reducing asthma morbidity: a community guide systematic review. *Am J Prev Med* 2011; 41: S5-32.
279. Morgan WJ, Crain EF, Gruchalla RS, et al. Results of a home-based environmental intervention among urban children with asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2004; 351: 1068-1080.
280. Murray CS, Foden P, Sumner H, et al. Preventing severe asthma exacerbations in children. A randomized trial of mite-impermeable bedcovers. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2017; 196: 150-158.
281. Custovic A, Green R, Taggart SC, et al. Domestic allergens in public places. II: Dog (Can f1) and cockroach (Bla g 2) allergens in dust and mite, cat, dog and cockroach allergens in the air in public buildings. *Clin Exp Allergy* 1996; 26: 1246-1252.
282. Almqvist C, Larsson PH, Egmar AC, et al. School as a risk environment for children allergic to cats and a site for transfer of cat allergen to homes. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 1999; 103: 1012-1017.
283. Shirai T, Matsui T, Suzuki K, et al. Effect of pet removal on pet allergic asthma. *Chest* 2005; 127: 1565-1571.
284. Wood RA, Chapman MD, Adkinson NF, Jr., et al. The effect of cat removal on allergen content in household-dust samples. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 1989; 83: 730-734.
285. Erwin EA, Woodfolk JA, Custis N, et al. Animal danders. *Immunol Allergy Clin North Am* 2003; 23: 469-481.
286. Phipatanakul W, Matsui E, Portnoy J, et al. Environmental assessment and exposure reduction of rodents: a practice parameter. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2012; 109: 375-387.
287. Matsui EC, Perzanowski M, Peng RD, et al. Effect of an integrated pest management intervention on asthma symptoms among mouse-sensitized children and adolescents with asthma: A randomized clinical trial. *JAMA* 2017; 317: 1027-1036.
288. Custovic A, Wijk RG. The effectiveness of measures to change the indoor environment in the treatment of allergic rhinitis and asthma: ARIA update (in collaboration with GA(2)LEN). *Allergy* 2005; 60: 1112-1115.

289. Eggleston PA, Wood RA, Rand C, et al. Removal of cockroach allergen from inner-city homes. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 1999; 104: 842-846.
290. Denning DW, O'Driscoll B R, Hogaboam CM, et al. The link between fungi and severe asthma: a summary of the evidence. *Eur Respir J* 2006; 27: 615-626.
291. Hirsch T, Hering M, Burkner K, et al. House-dust-mite allergen concentrations (Der f 1) and mold spores in apartment bedrooms before and after installation of insulated windows and central heating systems. *Allergy* 2000; 55: 79-83.
292. Wood LG, Garg ML, Smart JM, et al. Manipulating antioxidant intake in asthma: a randomized controlled trial. *AM J Clin Nutr* 2012; 96: 534-543.
293. Boulet LP, Franssen E. Influence of obesity on response to fluticasone with or without salmeterol in moderate asthma. *Respir Med* 2007; 101: 2240-2247.
294. Lavoie KL, Bacon SL, Labrecque M, et al. Higher BMI is associated with worse asthma control and quality of life but not asthma severity. *Respir Med* 2006; 100: 648-657.
295. Saint-Pierre P, Bourdin A, Chanez P, et al. Are overweight asthmatics more difficult to control? *Allergy* 2006; 61: 79-84.
296. Sutherland ER, Goleva E, Strand M, et al. Body mass and glucocorticoid response in asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2008; 178: 682-687.
297. Okoniewski W, Lu KD, Forno E. Weight loss for children and adults with obesity and asthma. A systematic review of randomized controlled Trials. *Ann Am Thorac Soc* 2019; 16: 613-625.
298. Adeniyi FB, Young T. Weight loss interventions for chronic asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; 7: CD009339.
299. Moreira A, Bonini M, Garcia-Larsen V, et al. Weight loss interventions in asthma: EAACI Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guideline (Part I). *Allergy* 2013; 68: 425-439.
300. Boulet LP, Turcotte H, Martin J, et al. Effect of bariatric surgery on airway response and lung function in obese subjects with asthma. *Respir Med* 2012; 106: 651-660.
301. Dixon AE, Pratley RE, Forgione PM, et al. Effects of obesity and bariatric surgery on airway hyperresponsiveness, asthma control, and inflammation. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011; 128: 508-515 e501-502.
302. Wu Z, Gao Z, Qiao Y, et al. Long-term results of bariatric surgery in adolescents with at least 5 years of follow-up: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Obes Surg* 2023; 33: 1730-1745.
303. Scott HA, Gibson PG, Garg ML, et al. Dietary restriction and exercise improve airway inflammation and clinical outcomes in overweight and obese asthma: a randomized trial. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2013; 43: 36-49.
304. Foer D, Beeler PE, Cui J, et al. Asthma exacerbations in patients with type 2 diabetes and asthma on glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2021; 203: 831-840.
305. Santino TA, Chaves GS, Freitas DA, et al. Breathing exercises for adults with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2020; 3: CD001277.
306. Slader CA, Reddel HK, Spencer LM, et al. Double blind randomised controlled trial of two different breathing techniques in the management of asthma. *Thorax* 2006; 61: 651-656.
307. Bruton A, Lee A, Yardley L, et al. Physiotherapy breathing retraining for asthma: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2018; 6: 19-28.
308. Upham JW, Holt PG. Environment and development of atopy. *Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol* 2005; 5: 167-172.
309. Belanger K, Holford TR, Gent JF, et al. Household levels of nitrogen dioxide and pediatric asthma severity. *Epidemiology* 2013; 24: 320-330.
310. Howden-Chapman P, Pierse N, Nicholls S, et al. Effects of improved home heating on asthma in community dwelling children: randomised controlled trial. *BMJ* 2008; 337: a1411.
311. Park HJ, Lee HY, Suh CH, et al. The effect of particulate matter reduction by indoor air filter use on respiratory symptoms and lung function: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Allergy Asthma Immunol Res* 2021; 13: 719-732.

312. Phipatanakul W, Koutrakis P, Coull BA, et al. Effect of school integrated pest management or classroom air filter purifiers on asthma symptoms in students with active asthma: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA* 2021; 326: 839-850.
313. Tibosch MM, Verhaak CM, Merkus PJ. Psychological characteristics associated with the onset and course of asthma in children and adolescents: a systematic review of longitudinal effects. *Patient Educ Couns* 2011; 82: 11-19.
314. Rietveld S, van Beest I, Everaerd W. Stress-induced breathlessness in asthma. *Psychol Med* 1999; 29: 1359-1366.
315. Sandberg S, Paton JY, Ahola S, et al. The role of acute and chronic stress in asthma attacks in children. *Lancet* 2000; 356: 982-987.
316. Lehrer PM, Isenberg S, Hochron SM. Asthma and emotion: a review. *J Asthma* 1993; 30: 5-21.
317. Nouwen A, Freeston MH, Labbe R, et al. Psychological factors associated with emergency room visits among asthmatic patients. *Behav Modif* 1999; 23: 217-233.
318. Tyris J, Keller S, Parikh K. Social risk interventions and health care utilization for pediatric asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA Pediatr* 2022; 176: e215103.
319. Newson R, Strachan D, Archibald E, et al. Acute asthma epidemics, weather and pollen in England, 1987-1994. *Eur Respir J* 1998; 11: 694-701.
320. Thien F, Beggs PJ, Csutoros D, et al. The Melbourne epidemic thunderstorm asthma event 2016: an investigation of environmental triggers, effect on health services, and patient risk factors. *Lancet Planet Health* 2018; 2: e255-e263.
321. Andrew E, Nehme Z, Bernard S, et al. Stormy weather: a retrospective analysis of demand for emergency medical services during epidemic thunderstorm asthma. *BMJ* 2017; 359: j5636.
322. Erbas B, Jazayeri M, Lambert KA, et al. Outdoor pollen is a trigger of child and adolescent asthma emergency department presentations: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Allergy* 2018; 73: 1632-1641.
323. Anto JM, Sunyer J, Reed CE, et al. Preventing asthma epidemics due to soybeans by dust-control measures. *N Engl J Med* 1993; 329: 1760-1763.
324. Hauptman M, Gaffin JM, Petty CR, et al. Proximity to major roadways and asthma symptoms in the School Inner-City Asthma Study. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2020; 145: 119-126 e114.
325. Li Y, Wang W, Wang J, et al. Impact of air pollution control measures and weather conditions on asthma during the 2008 Summer Olympic Games in Beijing. *Int J Biometeorol* 2011; 55: 547-554.
326. Taylor SL, Bush RK, Selner JC, et al. Sensitivity to sulfited foods among sulfite-sensitive subjects with asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 1988; 81: 1159-1167.
327. Reddel HK, Brusselle G, Lamarca R, et al. Safety and effectiveness of as-needed formoterol in asthma patients taking inhaled corticosteroid (ICS)-formoterol or ICS-salmeterol maintenance therapy. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2023; 11: 2104-2114.e2103.
328. Chipps B, Israel E, Beasley R, et al. Efficacy and safety of albuterol/budesonide (PT027) in mild-to-moderate asthma: results of the DENALI study [Conference abstract] *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2022; 205: A3414.
329. Haahtela T, Tamminen K, Malmberg LP, et al. Formoterol as needed with or without budesonide in patients with intermittent asthma and raised NO levels in exhaled air: A SOMA study. *Eur Respir J* 2006; 28: 748-755.
330. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. FDA requires Boxed Warning about serious mental health side effects for asthma and allergy drug montelukast (Singulair); advises restricting use for allergic rhinitis. 3-4-2020 FDA Drug Safety Communication. FDA; 2020 [updated 13 March 2020; cited 2024 April]. Available from: <https://www.fda.gov/drugs/drug-safety-and-availability/fda-requires-boxed-warning-about-serious-mental-health-side-effects-asthma-and-allergy-drug>.
331. Kerstjens HAM, Maspero J, Chapman KR, et al. Once-daily, single-inhaler mometasone-indacaterol-glycopyrronium versus mometasone-indacaterol or twice-daily fluticasone-salmeterol in patients with inadequately controlled asthma (IRIDIUM): a randomised, double-blind, controlled phase 3 study. *Lancet Respir Med* 2020; 8: 1000-1012.
332. Busse WW, Pedersen S, Pauwels RA, et al. The Inhaled Steroid Treatment As Regular Therapy in Early Asthma (START) study 5-year follow-up: effectiveness of early intervention with budesonide in mild persistent asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2008; 121: 1167-1174.

333. Selroos O, Pietinalho A, Lofroos AB, et al. Effect of early vs late intervention with inhaled corticosteroids in asthma. *Chest* 1995; 108: 1228-1234.
334. Dweik RA, Boggs PB, Erzurum SC, et al. An official ATS clinical practice guideline: interpretation of exhaled nitric oxide levels (FENO) for clinical applications. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2011; 184: 602-615.
335. Price DB, Buhl R, Chan A, et al. Fractional exhaled nitric oxide as a predictor of response to inhaled corticosteroids in patients with non-specific respiratory symptoms and insignificant bronchodilator reversibility: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2018; 6: 29-39.
336. O'Byrne PM, FitzGerald JM, Bateman ED, et al. Inhaled combined budesonide-formoterol as needed in mild asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2018; 378: 1865-1876.
337. Bateman ED, Reddel HK, O'Byrne PM, et al. As-needed budesonide-formoterol versus maintenance budesonide in mild asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2018; 378: 1877-1887.
338. El Baou C, Di Santostefano RL, Alfonso-Cristancho R, et al. Effect of inhaled corticosteroid particle size on asthma efficacy and safety outcomes: a systematic literature review and meta-analysis. *BMC Pulm Med* 2017; 17: 31.
339. Wechsler ME, Szeffler SJ, Ortega VE, et al. Step-up therapy in black children and adults with poorly controlled asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2019; 381: 1227-1239.
340. Rabe KF, Atienza T, Magyar P, et al. Effect of budesonide in combination with formoterol for reliever therapy in asthma exacerbations: a randomised controlled, double-blind study. *Lancet* 2006; 368: 744-753.
341. Reddel HK, O'Byrne PM, FitzGerald JM, et al. Efficacy and safety of as-needed budesonide-formoterol in adolescents with mild asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2021; 9: 3069-3077.e3066.
342. FitzGerald JM, O'Byrne PM, Bateman ED, et al. Safety of as-needed budesonide-formoterol in mild asthma: data from the two phase III SYGMA studies. *Drug Saf* 2021; 44: 467-478.
343. Pauwels RA, Pedersen S, Busse WW, et al. Early intervention with budesonide in mild persistent asthma: a randomised, double-blind trial. *Lancet* 2003; 361: 1071-1076.
344. Bateman ED, O'Byrne PM, FitzGerald JM, et al. Positioning as-needed budesonide-formoterol for mild asthma: effect of prestudy treatment in pooled analysis of SYGMA 1 and 2. *Ann Am Thorac Soc* 2021; 18: 2007-2017.
345. Barnes CB, Ulrik CS. Asthma and adherence to inhaled corticosteroids: current status and future perspectives. *Respir Care* 2015; 60: 455-468.
346. Chipps BE, Israel E, Beasley R, et al. Albuterol-budesonide pressurized metered dose inhaler in patients with mild-to-moderate asthma: results of the DENALI double-blind randomized controlled trial. *Chest* 2023; 164: 585-595.
347. Cockcroft DW. Clinical concerns with inhaled beta2-agonists: adult asthma. *Clin Rev Allergy Immunol* 2006; 31: 197-208.
348. van Schayck OC, Haughney J, Aubier M, et al. Do asthmatic smokers benefit as much as non-smokers on budesonide/formoterol maintenance and reliever therapy? Results of an open label study. *Respir Med* 2012; 106: 189-196.
349. Foster J, Beasley R, Braithwaite I, et al. Perspectives of mild asthma patients on maintenance versus as-needed preventer treatment regimens: a qualitative study. *BMJ Open* 2022; 12: e048537.
350. Reddel HK, Bateman ED, Schatz M, et al. A practical guide to implementing SMART in asthma management. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2022; 10: S31-s38.
351. National Asthma Council Australia. Asthma action plan library. [web page]: National Asthma Council Australia; [cited 2024 April]. Available from: <https://www.nationalasthma.org.au/health-professionals/asthma-action-plans/asthma-action-plan-library>.
352. Kew KM, Karner C, Mindus SM, et al. Combination formoterol and budesonide as maintenance and reliever therapy versus combination inhaler maintenance for chronic asthma in adults and children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2013; 12: CD009019.
353. Papi A, Corradi M, Pigeon-Francisco C, et al. Beclometasone-formoterol as maintenance and reliever treatment in patients with asthma: a double-blind, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2013; 1: 23-31.

354. Patel M, Pilcher J, Pritchard A, et al. Efficacy and safety of maintenance and reliever combination budesonide/formoterol inhaler in patients with asthma at risk of severe exacerbations: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2013; 1: 32-42.
355. Bateman ED, Harrison TW, Quirce S, et al. Overall asthma control achieved with budesonide/formoterol maintenance and reliever therapy for patients on different treatment steps. *Respiratory research* 2011; 12: 38.
356. Jorup C, Lythgoe D, Bisgaard H. Budesonide/formoterol maintenance and reliever therapy in adolescent patients with asthma. *Eur Respir J* 2018; 51: 1701688.
357. Beasley R, Harrison T, Peterson S, et al. Evaluation of budesonide-formoterol for maintenance and reliever therapy among patients with poorly controlled asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA Netw Open* 2022; 5: e220615.
358. Demoly P, Louis R, S  es-Petersen U, et al. Budesonide/formoterol maintenance and reliever therapy versus conventional best practice. *Respir Med* 2009; 103: 1623-1632.
359. Sears MR, Radner F. Safety of budesonide/formoterol maintenance and reliever therapy in asthma trials. *Respir Med* 2009; 103: 1960-1968.
360. Pauwels RA, Sears MR, Campbell M, et al. Formoterol as relief medication in asthma: a worldwide safety and effectiveness trial. *Eur Respir J* 2003; 22: 787-794.
361. Papi A, Canonica GW, Maestrelli P, et al. Rescue use of beclomethasone and albuterol in a single inhaler for mild asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2007; 356: 2040-2052.
362. Martinez FD, Chinchilli VM, Morgan WJ, et al. Use of beclomethasone dipropionate as rescue treatment for children with mild persistent asthma (TREXA): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2011; 377: 650-657.
363. Calhoun WJ, Ameredes BT, King TS, et al. Comparison of physician-, biomarker-, and symptom-based strategies for adjustment of inhaled corticosteroid therapy in adults with asthma: the BASALT randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2012; 308: 987-997.
364. Sumino K, Bacharier LB, Taylor J, et al. A pragmatic trial of symptom-based inhaled corticosteroid use in African-American children with mild asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2020; 8: 176-185.e172.
365. Crompton G. A brief history of inhaled asthma therapy over the last fifty years. *Prim Care Respir J* 2006; 15: 326-331.
366. Suissa S, Ernst P, Benayoun S, et al. Low-dose inhaled corticosteroids and the prevention of death from asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2000; 343: 332-336.
367. Suissa S, Ernst P, Kezough A. Regular use of inhaled corticosteroids and the long term prevention of hospitalisation for asthma. *Thorax* 2002; 57: 880-884.
368. Reddel HK, Ampon RD, Sawyer SM, et al. Risks associated with managing asthma without a preventer: urgent healthcare, poor asthma control and over-the-counter reliever use in a cross-sectional population survey. *BMJ Open* 2017; 7: e016688.
369. Haahtela T, Jarvinen M, Kava T, et al. Comparison of a β_2 -agonist, terbutaline, with an inhaled corticosteroid, budesonide, in newly detected asthma. *N Engl J Med* 1991; 325: 388-392.
370. O'Byrne PM, Barnes PJ, Rodriguez-Roisin R, et al. Low dose inhaled budesonide and formoterol in mild persistent asthma: the OPTIMA randomized trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2001; 164(8 Pt 1): 1392-1397.
371. Adams NP, Bestall JB, Malouf R, et al. Inhaled beclomethasone versus placebo for chronic asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2005; 1: CD002738.
372. Adams NP, Bestall JC, Lasserson TJ, et al. Fluticasone versus placebo for chronic asthma in adults and children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2008; 4: CD003135.
373. Tan DJ, Bui DS, Dai X, et al. Does the use of inhaled corticosteroids in asthma benefit lung function in the long-term? A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur Respir Rev* 2021; 30: 200185.
374. Papi A, Chipps BE, Beasley R, et al. Albuterol-budesonide fixed-dose combination rescue inhaler for asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2022; 386: 2071-2083.

375. Chipps BE, Panettieri RA, Jr., Skolnik N, et al. Albuterol-budesonide rescue inhaler for asthma: Patterns of use and safety in the MANDALA trial. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2026; 136: 54-60.e53.
376. Cates CJ, Schmidt S, Ferrer M, et al. Inhaled steroids with and without regular salmeterol for asthma: serious adverse events. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2018; 12: CD006922.
377. Busse WW, Bateman ED, Caplan AL, et al. Combined analysis of asthma safety trials of long-acting beta2-agonists. *N Engl J Med* 2018; 378: 2497-2505.
378. Peters SP, Bleecker ER, Canonica GW, et al. Serious asthma events with budesonide plus formoterol vs. budesonide alone. *N Engl J Med* 2016; 375: 850-860.
379. Stempel DA, Raphiou IH, Kral KM, et al. Serious asthma events with fluticasone plus salmeterol versus fluticasone alone. *N Engl J Med* 2016; 374: 1822-1830.
380. Woodcock A, Vestbo J, Bakerly ND, et al. Effectiveness of fluticasone furoate plus vilanterol on asthma control in clinical practice: an open-label, parallel group, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2017; 390: 2247-2255.
381. Svedsater H, Jones R, Bosanquet N, et al. Patient-reported outcomes with initiation of fluticasone furoate/vilanterol versus continuing usual care in the Asthma Salford Lung Study. *Respir Med* 2018; 141: 198-206.
382. O'Byrne PM, Naya IP, Kallen A, et al. Increasing doses of inhaled corticosteroids compared to adding long-acting inhaled beta2-agonists in achieving asthma control. *Chest* 2008; 134: 1192-1199.
383. Virchow JC, Backer V, Kuna P, et al. Efficacy of a house dust mite sublingual allergen immunotherapy tablet in adults with allergic asthma: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA* 2016; 315: 1715-1725.
384. Mosbech H, Deckelmann R, de Blay F, et al. Standardized quality (SQ) house dust mite sublingual immunotherapy tablet (ALK) reduces inhaled corticosteroid use while maintaining asthma control: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2014; 134: 568-575.e567.
385. Chauhan BF, Ducharme FM. Anti-leukotriene agents compared to inhaled corticosteroids in the management of recurrent and/or chronic asthma in adults and children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; 5: CD002314.
386. Ni Chroinin M, Greenstone I, Lasserson TJ, et al. Addition of inhaled long-acting beta2-agonists to inhaled steroids as first line therapy for persistent asthma in steroid-naïve adults and children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2009; 4: CD005307.
387. Ducharme FM, Ni Chroinin M, Greenstone I, et al. Addition of long-acting beta2-agonists to inhaled steroids versus higher dose inhaled steroids in adults and children with persistent asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2010; 4: CD005533.
388. Powell H, Gibson PG. Inhaled corticosteroid doses in asthma: an evidence-based approach. *Med J Aust* 2003; 178: 223-225.
389. Evans DJ, Taylor DA, Zetterstrom O, et al. A comparison of low-dose inhaled budesonide plus theophylline and high-dose inhaled budesonide for moderate asthma. *N Engl J Med* 1997; 337: 1412-1418.
390. Kerstjens HA, Engel M, Dahl R, et al. Tiotropium in asthma poorly controlled with standard combination therapy. *N Engl J Med* 2012; 367: 1198-1207.
391. Peters SP, Kunselman SJ, Icitovic N, et al. Tiotropium bromide step-up therapy for adults with uncontrolled asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2010; 363: 1715-1726.
392. Casale TB, Aalbers R, Bleecker ER, et al. Tiotropium Respimat(R) add-on therapy to inhaled corticosteroids in patients with symptomatic asthma improves clinical outcomes regardless of baseline characteristics. *Respir Med* 2019; 158: 97-109.
393. Malo JL, Cartier A, Ghezzi H, et al. Comparison of four-times-a-day and twice-a-day dosing regimens in subjects requiring 1200 micrograms or less of budesonide to control mild to moderate asthma. *Respir Med* 1995; 89: 537-543.
394. Toogood JH, Baskerville JC, Jennings B, et al. Influence of dosing frequency and schedule on the response of chronic asthmatics to the aerosol steroid, budesonide. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 1982; 70: 288-298.
395. Lofdahl CG, Reiss TF, Leff JA, et al. Randomised, placebo controlled trial of effect of a leukotriene receptor antagonist, montelukast, on tapering inhaled corticosteroids in asthmatic patients. *BMJ* 1999; 319: 87-90.

396. Price DB, Hernandez D, Magyar P, et al. Randomised controlled trial of montelukast plus inhaled budesonide versus double dose inhaled budesonide in adult patients with asthma. *Thorax* 2003; 58: 211-216.
397. Vaquerizo MJ, Casan P, Castillo J, et al. Effect of montelukast added to inhaled budesonide on control of mild to moderate asthma. *Thorax* 2003; 58: 204-210.
398. Virchow JC, Prasse A, Naya I, et al. Zafirlukast improves asthma control in patients receiving high-dose inhaled corticosteroids. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2000; 162: 578-585.
399. Tamaoki J, Kondo M, Sakai N, et al. Leukotriene antagonist prevents exacerbation of asthma during reduction of high-dose inhaled corticosteroid. The Tokyo Joshi-Idai Asthma Research Group. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1997; 155: 1235-1240.
400. Rivington RN, Boulet LP, Cote J, et al. Efficacy of Uniphyll, salbutamol, and their combination in asthmatic patients on high-dose inhaled steroids. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1995; 151: 325-332.
401. Israel E, Cardet JC, Carroll JK, et al. Reliever-triggered inhaled glucocorticoid in Black and Latinx adults with asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2022; 386: 1505-1518.
402. Travers J, Marsh S, Williams M, et al. External validity of randomised controlled trials in asthma: to whom do the results of the trials apply? *Thorax* 2007; 62: 219-223.
403. Brown T, Jones T, Gove K, et al. Randomised controlled trials in severe asthma: selection by phenotype or stereotype. *Eur Respir J* 2018; 52: 1801444.
404. Broersen LH, Pereira AM, Jorgensen JO, et al. Adrenal insufficiency in corticosteroids use: Systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2015; 100: 2171-2180.
405. Jackson DJ, Heaney LG, Humbert M, et al. Reduction of daily maintenance inhaled corticosteroids in patients with severe eosinophilic asthma treated with benralizumab (SHAMAL): a randomised, multicentre, open-label, phase 4 study. *Lancet* 2024; 403: 271-281.
406. Sobieraj DM, Baker WL, Nguyen E, et al. Association of inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting muscarinic antagonists with asthma control in patients with uncontrolled, persistent asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA* 2018; 319: 1473-1484.
407. Virchow JC, Kuna P, Paggiaro P, et al. Single inhaler extrafine triple therapy in uncontrolled asthma (TRIMARAN and TRIGGER): two double-blind, parallel-group, randomised, controlled phase 3 trials. *Lancet* 2019; 394: 1737-1749.
408. Lee LA, Bailes Z, Barnes N, et al. Efficacy and safety of once-daily single-inhaler triple therapy (FF/UMEC/VI) versus FF/VI in patients with inadequately controlled asthma (CAPTAIN): a double-blind, randomised, phase 3A trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2021; 9: 69-84.
409. Gessner C, Kornmann O, Maspero J, et al. Fixed-dose combination of indacaterol/glycopyrronium/mometasone furoate once-daily versus salmeterol/fluticasone twice-daily plus tiotropium once-daily in patients with uncontrolled asthma: A randomised, Phase IIIb, non-inferiority study (ARGON). *Respir Med* 2020; 170: 106021.
410. Rodrigo GJ, Neffen H. Efficacy and safety of tiotropium in school-age children with moderate-to-severe symptomatic asthma: A systematic review. *Pediatr Allergy Immunol* 2017; 28: 573-578.
411. Kim LH, Saleh C, Whalen-Browne A, et al. Triple vs dual inhaler therapy and asthma outcomes in moderate to severe asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA* 2021; 325: 2466-2479.
412. Papi A, Wise RA, Jackson DJ, et al. Budesonide-glycopyrronium-formoterol fumarate dihydrate in uncontrolled asthma (KALOS and LOGOS): twin multicentre, double-blind, double-dummy, parallel-group, randomised, phase 3 trials. *Lancet Respir Med* 2026.
413. Oba Y, Anwer S, Maduke T, et al. Effectiveness and tolerability of dual and triple combination inhaler therapies compared with each other and varying doses of inhaled corticosteroids in adolescents and adults with asthma: a systematic review and network meta-analysis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2022; 12: CD013799.
414. Agache I, Rocha C, Beltran J, et al. Efficacy and safety of treatment with biologicals (benralizumab, dupilumab and omalizumab) for severe allergic asthma: A systematic review for the EAACI Guidelines – recommendations on the use of biologicals in severe asthma. *Allergy* 2020; 75: 1043-1057.
415. Holguin F, Cardet JC, Chung KF, et al. Management of severe asthma: a European Respiratory Society/American Thoracic Society guideline. *Eur Respir J* 2020; 55: 1900588.

416. Haldar P, Brightling CE, Hargadon B, et al. Mepolizumab and exacerbations of refractory eosinophilic asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2009; 360: 973-984.
417. Castro M, Zangrilli J, Wechsler ME, et al. Reslizumab for inadequately controlled asthma with elevated blood eosinophil counts: results from two multicentre, parallel, double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trials. *Lancet Respir Med* 2015; 3: 355-366.
418. Nair P, Wenzel S, Rabe KF, et al. Oral glucocorticoid-sparing effect of benralizumab in severe asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2017; 376: 2448-2458.
419. Jackson DJ, Bacharier LB, Gergen PJ, et al. Mepolizumab for urban children with exacerbation-prone eosinophilic asthma in the USA (MUPPITS-2): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel-group trial. *Lancet* 2022; 400: 502-511.
420. Agache I, Beltran J, Akdis C, et al. Efficacy and safety of treatment with biologicals (benralizumab, dupilumab, mepolizumab, omalizumab and reslizumab) for severe eosinophilic asthma. A systematic review for the EAACI Guidelines - recommendations on the use of biologicals in severe asthma. *Allergy* 2020; 75: 1023-1042.
421. Jackson DJ, Wechsler ME, Jackson DJ, et al. Twice-yearly depemokimab in severe asthma with an eosinophilic phenotype. *N Engl J Med* 2024; 391: 2337-2349.
422. Castro M, Corren J, Pavord ID, et al. Dupilumab efficacy and safety in moderate-to-severe uncontrolled asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2018; 378: 2486-2496.
423. Wenzel S, Castro M, Corren J, et al. Dupilumab efficacy and safety in adults with uncontrolled persistent asthma despite use of medium-to-high-dose inhaled corticosteroids plus a long-acting β_2 agonist: a randomised double-blind placebo-controlled pivotal phase 2b dose-ranging trial. *Lancet* 2016; 388: 31-44.
424. Agache I, Song Y, Rocha C, et al. Efficacy and safety of treatment with dupilumab for severe asthma: A systematic review of the EAACI guidelines-Recommendations on the use of biologicals in severe asthma. *Allergy* 2020; 75: 1058-1068.
425. Bacharier LB, Maspero JF, Katelaris CH, et al. Dupilumab in children with uncontrolled moderate-to-severe asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2021; 385: 2230-2240.
426. Corren J, Parnes JR, Wang L, et al. Tezepelumab in adults with uncontrolled asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2017; 377: 936-946.
427. Menzies-Gow A, Corren J, Bourdin A, et al. Tezepelumab in adults and adolescents with severe, uncontrolled asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2021; 384: 1800-1809.
428. Wechsler ME, Menzies-Gow A, Brightling CE, et al. Evaluation of the oral corticosteroid-sparing effect of tezepelumab in adults with oral corticosteroid-dependent asthma (SOURCE): a randomised, placebo-controlled, phase 3 study. *Lancet Respir Med* 2022; 10: 650-660.
429. Taylor SL, Leong LEX, Mobegi FM, et al. Long-term azithromycin reduces *Haemophilus influenzae* and increases antibiotic resistance in severe asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2019; 200: 309-317.
430. Gibson PG, Yang IA, Upham JW, et al. Effect of azithromycin on asthma exacerbations and quality of life in adults with persistent uncontrolled asthma (AMAZES): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2017; 390: 659-668.
431. Brusselle GG, Vanderstichele C, Jordens P, et al. Azithromycin for prevention of exacerbations in severe asthma (AZISAST): a multicentre randomised double-blind placebo-controlled trial. *Thorax* 2013; 68: 322-329.
432. Hiles SA, McDonald VM, Guilhermino M, et al. Does maintenance azithromycin reduce asthma exacerbations? An individual participant data meta-analysis. *Eur Respir J* 2019; 54: 1901381.
433. Petsky HL, Li A, Chang AB. Tailored interventions based on sputum eosinophils versus clinical symptoms for asthma in children and adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2017; 8: CD005603.
434. Chupp G, Laviolette M, Cohn L, et al. Long-term outcomes of bronchial thermoplasty in subjects with severe asthma: a comparison of 3-year follow-up results from two prospective multicentre studies. *Eur Respir J* 2017; 50: 1700017.
435. Crane J, Burgess C, Pearce N, et al. The β -agonist controversy: a perspective. *Eur Respir Rev* 1993; 3: 475-482.

436. Baan EJ, Hoeve CE, De Ridder M, et al. The ALPACA study: (In)Appropriate LAMA prescribing in asthma: A cohort analysis. *Pulm Pharmacol Ther* 2021; 71: 102074.
437. Welsh EJ, Cates CJ. Formoterol versus short-acting beta-agonists as relief medication for adults and children with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2010; 9: CD008418.
438. Tattersfield AE, Löfdahl CG, Postma DS, et al. Comparison of formoterol and terbutaline for as-needed treatment of asthma: a randomised trial. *Lancet* 2001; 357: 257-261.
439. Rodrigo GJ, Castro-Rodriguez JA. Safety of long-acting beta agonists for the treatment of asthma: clearing the air. *Thorax* 2012; 67: 342-349.
440. Scott J, Abers MS, Marwah HK, et al. Updated evidence for Covid-19, RSV, and influenza vaccines for 2025-2026. *N Engl J Med* 2025; 393: 2221-2242.
441. Shi T, Pan J, Katikireddi SV, et al. Risk of COVID-19 hospital admission among children aged 5-17 years with asthma in Scotland: a national incident cohort study. *Lancet Respir Med* 2022; 10: 191-198.
442. Davies GA, Alsallakh MA, Sivakumaran S, et al. Impact of COVID-19 lockdown on emergency asthma admissions and deaths: national interrupted time series analyses for Scotland and Wales. *Thorax* 2021; 76: 867-873.
443. Vasileiou E, Sheikh A, Butler C, et al. Effectiveness of influenza vaccines in asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clin Infect Dis* 2017; 65: 1388-1395.
444. Bandell A, Ambrose CS, Maniaci J, et al. Safety of live attenuated influenza vaccine (LAIV) in children and adults with asthma: a systematic literature review and narrative synthesis. *Expert Rev Vaccines* 2021; 20: 717-728.
445. Papi A, Ison MG, Langley JM, et al. Respiratory syncytial virus prefusion F protein vaccine in older adults. *N Engl J Med* 2023; 388: 595-608.
446. Feldman RG, Antonelli-Incalzi R, Steenackers K, et al. Respiratory syncytial virus prefusion F protein vaccine is efficacious in older adults with underlying medical conditions. *Clin Infect Dis* 2024; 78: 202-209.
447. Li L, Cheng Y, Tu X, et al. Association between asthma and invasive pneumococcal disease risk: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Allergy Asthma Clin Immunol* 2020; 16: 94.
448. Sheikh A, Alves B, Dhami S. Pneumococcal vaccine for asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2002; 1: CD002165.
449. Chen YZ, Busse WW, Pedersen S, et al. Early intervention of recent onset mild persistent asthma in children aged under 11 yrs: the Steroid Treatment As Regular Therapy in early asthma (START) trial. *Pediatr Allergy Immunol* 2006; 17 Suppl 17: 7-13.
450. Dahl R, Larsen BB, Venge P. Effect of long-term treatment with inhaled budesonide or theophylline on lung function, airway reactivity and asthma symptoms. *Respir Med* 2002; 96: 432-438.
451. American Lung Association Asthma Clinical Research Centers. Clinical trial of low-dose theophylline and montelukast in patients with poorly controlled asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2007; 175: 235-242.
452. Tsiu SJ, Self TH, Burns R. Theophylline toxicity: update. *Ann Allergy* 1990; 64: 241-257.
453. Adams NP, Jones PW. The dose-response characteristics of inhaled corticosteroids when used to treat asthma: an overview of Cochrane systematic reviews. *Respir Med* 2006; 100: 1297-1306.
454. Vaessen-Verberne AA, van den Berg NJ, van Nierop JC, et al. Combination therapy salmeterol/fluticasone versus doubling dose of fluticasone in children with asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2010; 182: 1221-1227.
455. Bisgaard H, Le Roux P, Bjarnar D, et al. Budesonide/formoterol maintenance plus reliever therapy: a new strategy in pediatric asthma. *Chest* 2006; 130: 1733-1743.
456. Stempel DA, Szeffler SJ, Pedersen S, et al. Safety of adding salmeterol to fluticasone propionate in children with asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2016; 375: 840-849.
457. Lemanske R, Mauger D, Sorkness C, et al. Step-up therapy for children with uncontrolled asthma receiving inhaled corticosteroids. *N Engl J Med* 2010; 362: 975-985.
458. Chauhan BF, Ducharme FM. Addition to inhaled corticosteroids of long-acting beta2-agonists versus anti-leukotrienes for chronic asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; 1: CD003137.

459. Szeffler SJ, Vogelberg C, Bernstein JA, et al. Tiotropium Is efficacious in 6- to 17-year-olds with asthma, independent of T2 phenotype. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2019; 7: 2286-2295 e2284.
460. Bateman ED, Bousquet J, Keech ML, et al. The correlation between asthma control and health status: the GOAL study. *Eur Respir J* 2007; 29: 56-62.
461. Sont JK. How do we monitor asthma control? *Allergy* 1999; 54 Suppl 49: 68-73.
462. Mintz M, Gilsenan AW, Bui CL, et al. Assessment of asthma control in primary care. *Curr Med Res Opin* 2009; 25: 2523-2531.
463. Schatz M, Rachelefsky G, Krishnan JA. Follow-up after acute asthma episodes: what improves future outcomes? *Proc Am Thorac Soc* 2009; 6: 386-393.
464. Thomas A, Lemanske RF, Jr., Jackson DJ. Approaches to stepping up and stepping down care in asthmatic patients. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011; 128: 915-924.
465. Boulet LP. Perception of the role and potential side effects of inhaled corticosteroids among asthmatic patients. *Chest* 1998; 113: 587-592.
466. Usmani OS, Kempainen A, Gardener E, et al. A randomized pragmatic trial of changing to and stepping down fluticasone/formoterol in asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2017; 5: 1378-1387.e1375.
467. DiMango E, Rogers L, Reibman J, et al. Risk factors for asthma exacerbation and treatment failure in adults and adolescents with well-controlled asthma during continuation and step-down therapy. *Ann Am Thorac Soc* 2018; 15: 955-961.
468. Leuppi JD, Salome CM, Jenkins CR, et al. Predictive markers of asthma exacerbation during stepwise dose reduction of inhaled corticosteroids. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2001; 163: 406-412.
469. Rogers L, Sugar EA, Blake K, et al. Step-down therapy for asthma well controlled on inhaled corticosteroid and long-acting beta-agonist: A randomized clinical trial. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2018; 6: 633-643.e631.
470. FitzGerald JM, Boulet LP, Follows RM. The CONCEPT trial: a 1-year, multicenter, randomized, double-blind, double-dummy comparison of a stable dosing regimen of salmeterol/fluticasone propionate with an adjustable maintenance dosing regimen of formoterol/budesonide in adults with persistent asthma. *Clinical Therapeutics* 2005; 27: 393-406.
471. Bose S, Bime C, Henderson RJ, et al. Biomarkers of Type 2 airway inflammation as predictors of loss of asthma control during step-down therapy for well-controlled disease: the Long-Acting Beta-Agonist Step-Down Study (LASST). *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2020; 8: 3474-3481.
472. Wang K, Verbakel JY, Oke J, et al. Using fractional exhaled nitric oxide to guide step-down treatment decisions in patients with asthma: a systematic review and individual patient data meta-analysis. *Eur Respir J* 2020; 55: 1902150.
473. Rank MA, Hagan JB, Park MA, et al. The risk of asthma exacerbation after stopping low-dose inhaled corticosteroids: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2013; 131: 724-729.
474. Hagan JB, Samant SA, Volcheck GW, et al. The risk of asthma exacerbation after reducing inhaled corticosteroids: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Allergy* 2014; 69: 510-516.
475. Ahmad S, Kew KM, Normansell R. Stopping long-acting beta2-agonists (LABA) for adults with asthma well controlled by LABA and inhaled corticosteroids. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2015; 6: CD011306.
476. Rank MA, Gionfriddo MR, Pongdee T, et al. Stepping down from inhaled corticosteroids with leukotriene inhibitors in asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Allergy Asthma Proc* 2015; 36: 200-205.
477. Masoli M, Weatherall M, Holt S, et al. Budesonide once versus twice-daily administration: meta-analysis. *Respirology* 2004; 9: 528-534.
478. Boulet LP, Drollmann A, Magyar P, et al. Comparative efficacy of once-daily ciclesonide and budesonide in the treatment of persistent asthma. *Respir Med* 2006; 100: 785-794.
479. Gibson PG. Using fractional exhaled nitric oxide to guide asthma therapy: design and methodological issues for Asthma Treatment Algorithm studies. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2009; 39: 478-490.

480. Petsky HL, Kew KM, Chang AB. Exhaled nitric oxide levels to guide treatment for children with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2016; 11: CD011439.
481. Turner S, Cotton S, Wood J, et al. Reducing asthma attacks in children using exhaled nitric oxide (RAACENO) as a biomarker to inform treatment strategy: a multicentre, parallel, randomised, controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2022; 10: 584-592.
482. Petsky HL, Kew KM, Turner C, et al. Exhaled nitric oxide levels to guide treatment for adults with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2016; 9: CD011440.
483. Murphy VE, Jensen ME, Holliday EG, et al. Effect of asthma management with exhaled nitric oxide versus usual care on perinatal outcomes. *Eur Respir J* 2022; 60: 2200298.
484. Heaney LG, Busby J, Hanratty CE, et al. Composite type-2 biomarker strategy versus a symptom-risk-based algorithm to adjust corticosteroid dose in patients with severe asthma: a multicentre, single-blind, parallel group, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2021; 9: 57-68.
485. Wongsu C, Phinyo P, Sompornrattanaphan M, et al. Efficacy and safety of house dust mite sublingual immunotherapy tablet in allergic asthma: a systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2022; 10: 1342-1355.e1324.
486. Agache I, Lau S, Akdis CA, et al. EAACI guidelines on allergen immunotherapy: house dust mite-driven allergic asthma. *Allergy* 2019; 74: 855-873.
487. Kappen J, Diamant Z, Agache I, et al. Standardization of clinical outcomes used in allergen immunotherapy in allergic asthma: An EAACI position paper. *Allergy* 2023; 78: 2835-2850.
488. Di Bona D, Frisenda F, Albanesi M, et al. Efficacy and safety of allergen immunotherapy in patients with allergy to molds: A systematic review. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2018; 48: 1391-1401.
489. Klimek L, Fox GC, Thum-Oltmer S. SCIT with a high-dose house dust mite allergoid is well tolerated: safety data from pooled clinical trials and more than 10 years of daily practice analyzed in different subgroups. *Allergo J Int* 2018; 27: 131-139.
490. Epstein TG, Murphy-Berendts K, Liss GM, et al. Risk factors for fatal and nonfatal reactions to immunotherapy (2008-2018): postinjection monitoring and severe asthma. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2021; 127: 64-69.e61.
491. Xu K, Deng Z, Li D, et al. Efficacy of add-on sublingual immunotherapy for adults with asthma: A meta-analysis and systematic review. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2018; 121: 186-194.
492. Fortescue R, Kew KM, Leung MST. Sublingual immunotherapy for asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2020; 9: CD011293.
493. Ma D, Zheng Q, Sun J, et al. Efficacy of sublingual immunotherapy in allergic rhinitis patients with asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Rhinol Allergy* 2023; 37: 766-776.
494. Nolte H, Bernstein DI, Nelson HS, et al. Efficacy and safety of ragweed SLIT-tablet in children with allergic rhinoconjunctivitis in a randomized, placebo-controlled trial. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2020; 8: 2322-2331.e2325.
495. Bernstein DI, Epstein TEG. Safety of allergen immunotherapy in North America from 2008-2017: Lessons learned from the ACAAI/AAAAI National Surveillance Study of adverse reactions to allergen immunotherapy. *Allergy Asthma Proc* 2020; 41: 108-111.
496. Baena-Cagnani CE, Larenas-Linnemann D, Teijeiro A, et al. Will sublingual immunotherapy offer benefit for asthma? *Curr Allergy Asthma Rep* 2013; 6: 571-579.
497. Burks AW, Calderon MA, Casale T, et al. Update on allergy immunotherapy: American Academy of Allergy, Asthma & Immunology/European Academy of Allergy and Clinical Immunology/PRACTALL consensus report. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2013; 131: 1288-1296.e1283.
498. Dretzke J, Meadows A, Novielli N, et al. Subcutaneous and sublingual immunotherapy for seasonal allergic rhinitis: a systematic review and indirect comparison. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2013; 131: 1361-1366.
499. Lin SY, Erekosima N, Kim JM, et al. Sublingual immunotherapy for the treatment of allergic rhinoconjunctivitis and asthma: a systematic review. *JAMA* 2013; 309: 1278-1288.

500. Chaudhuri R, Rubin A, Sumino K, et al. Safety and effectiveness of bronchial thermoplasty after 10 years in patients with persistent asthma (BT10+): a follow-up of three randomised controlled trials. *Lancet Respir Med* 2021; 9: 457-466.
501. Cassim R, Russell MA, Lodge CJ, et al. The role of circulating 25 hydroxyvitamin D in asthma: a systematic review. *Allergy* 2015; 70: 339-354.
502. Jolliffe DA, Greenberg L, Hooper RL, et al. Vitamin D supplementation to prevent asthma exacerbations: a systematic review and meta-analysis of individual participant data. *Lancet Respir Med* 2017; 5: 881-890.
503. Andújar-Espinosa R, Salinero-González L, Illán-Gómez F, et al. Effect of vitamin D supplementation on asthma control in patients with vitamin D deficiency: the ACVID randomised clinical trial. *Thorax* 2021; 76: 126-133.
504. Williamson A, Martineau AR, Sheikh A, et al. Vitamin D for the management of asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2023; 2: Cd011511.
505. Ahmed S, Steed L, Harris K, et al. Interventions to enhance the adoption of asthma self-management behaviour in the South Asian and African American population: a systematic review. *NPJ Prim Care Respir Med* 2018; 28: 5.
506. Fink JB, Rubin BK. Problems with inhaler use: a call for improved clinician and patient education. *Respir care* 2005; 50: 1360-1374; discussion 1374-1365.
507. Klijn SL, Hilgsmann M, Evers S, et al. Effectiveness and success factors of educational inhaler technique interventions in asthma & COPD patients: a systematic review. *NPJ Prim Care Respir Med* 2017; 27: 24.
508. Newman SP. Spacer devices for metered dose inhalers. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 2004; 43: 349-360.
509. Basheti IA, Reddel HK, Armour CL, et al. Improved asthma outcomes with a simple inhaler technique intervention by community pharmacists. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2007; 119: 1537-1538.
510. Giraud V, Allaert FA, Roche N. Inhaler technique and asthma: feasibility and acceptability of training by pharmacists. *Respir Med* 2011; 105: 1815-1822.
511. van der Palen J, Klein JJ, Kerkhoff AH, et al. Evaluation of the long-term effectiveness of three instruction modes for inhaling medicines. *Patient Educ Couns* 1997; 32: S87-95.
512. Almomani BA, Mokhemer E, Al-Sawalha NA, et al. A novel approach of using educational pharmaceutical pictogram for improving inhaler techniques in patients with asthma. *Respir Med* 2018; 143: 103-108.
513. Basheti I, Mahboub B, Salameh L, et al. Assessment of novel inhaler technique reminder labels in image format on the correct demonstration of inhaler technique skills in asthma: a single-blinded randomized controlled trial. *Pharmaceuticals (Basel)* 2021; 14: 150.
514. Basheti IA, Obeidat NM, Reddel HK. Effect of novel inhaler technique reminder labels on the retention of inhaler technique skills in asthma: a single-blind randomized controlled trial. *NPJ Prim Care Respir Med* 2017; 27: 9.
515. Armour CL, Reddel HK, LeMay KS, et al. Feasibility and effectiveness of an evidence-based asthma service in Australian community pharmacies: a pragmatic cluster randomized trial. *J Asthma* 2013; 50: 302-309.
516. Kuethe MC, Vaessen-Verberne AA, Elbers RG, et al. Nurse versus physician-led care for the management of asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2013; 2: CD009296.
517. Federman AD, O'Connor R, Mindlis I, et al. Effect of a self-management support intervention on asthma outcomes in older adults: The SAMBA study randomized clinical trial. *JAMA Intern Med* 2019; 179: 1113-1121.
518. Panigone S, Sandri F, Ferri R, et al. Environmental impact of inhalers for respiratory diseases: decreasing the carbon footprint while preserving patient-tailored treatment. *BMJ Open Respir Res* 2020; 7: e000571.
519. Janson C, Henderson R, Löfdahl M, et al. Carbon footprint impact of the choice of inhalers for asthma and COPD. *Thorax* 2020; 75: 82-84.
520. Carroll WD, Gilchrist FJ, Horne R. Saving our planet one puff at a time. *Lancet Respir Med* 2022; 10: e44-e45.
521. Kponee-Shovein K, Marvel J, Ishikawa R, et al. Carbon footprint and associated costs of asthma exacerbation care among UK adults. *J Med Econ* 2022; 25: 524-531.
522. Tennison I, Roschnik S, Ashby B, et al. Health care's response to climate change: a carbon footprint assessment of the NHS in England. *Lancet Planet Health* 2021; 5: e84-e92.

523. National Asthma Council Australia. How-to videos. [Web page]: National Asthma Council Australia. Available from: <https://www.nationalasthma.org.au/health-professionals/how-to-videos>.
524. Crompton GK, Barnes PJ, Broeders M, et al. The need to improve inhalation technique in Europe: a report from the Aerosol Drug Management Improvement Team. *Respir Med* 2006; 100: 1479-1494.
525. Chierici V, Cavalieri L, Piraino A, et al. Consequences of not-shaking and shake-fire delays on the emitted dose of some commercial solution and suspension pressurized metered dose inhalers. *Expert Opin Drug Deliv* 2020; 17: 1025-1039.
526. Viswanathan M, Golin CE, Jones CD, et al. Interventions to improve adherence to self-administered medications for chronic diseases in the United States: a systematic review. *Ann Intern Med* 2012; 157: 785-795.
527. Quirke-McFarlane S, Weinman J, d'Ancona G. A systematic review of patient-reported adherence measures in asthma: which questionnaire is most useful in clinical practice? *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2023; 11: 2493-2503.
528. Chan AH, Harrison J, Black PN, et al. Using electronic monitoring devices to measure inhaler adherence: a practical guide for clinicians. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2015; 3: 335-349.e331-335.
529. Cohen JL, Mann DM, Wisnivesky JP, et al. Assessing the validity of self-reported medication adherence among inner-city asthmatic adults: the Medication Adherence Report Scale for Asthma. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2009; 103: 325-331.
530. Gamble J, Stevenson M, McClean E, et al. The prevalence of nonadherence in difficult asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2009; 180: 817-822.
531. McNicholl DM, Stevenson M, McGarvey LP, et al. The utility of fractional exhaled nitric oxide suppression in the identification of nonadherence in difficult asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2012; 186: 1102-1108.
532. Poureslami IM, Rootman I, Balka E, et al. A systematic review of asthma and health literacy: a cultural-ethnic perspective in Canada. *MedGenMed* 2007; 9: 40.
533. Berkman ND, Sheridan SL, Donahue KE, et al. Low health literacy and health outcomes: an updated systematic review. *Ann Intern Med* 2011; 155: 97-107.
534. Zeni MB. Systematic review of health literacy in Cochrane database studies on paediatric asthma educational interventions: searching beyond rigorous design. *Int J Evid Based Health Care* 2012; 10: 3-8.
535. Partridge MR, Dal Negro RW, Olivieri D. Understanding patients with asthma and COPD: insights from a European study. *Prim Care Respir J* 2011; 20: 315-323.
536. Foster JM, Smith L, Bosnic-Anticevich SZ, et al. Identifying patient-specific beliefs and behaviours for conversations about adherence in asthma. *Intern Med J* 2012; 42: e136-144.
537. Ulrik CS, Backer V, Soes-Petersen U, et al. The patient's perspective: adherence or non-adherence to asthma controller therapy? *J Asthma* 2006; 43: 701-704.
538. Foster JM, Usherwood T, Smith L, et al. Inhaler reminders improve adherence with controller treatment in primary care patients with asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2014; 134: 1260-1268.
539. Chan AH, Stewart AW, Harrison J, et al. The effect of an electronic monitoring device with audiovisual reminder function on adherence to inhaled corticosteroids and school attendance in children with asthma: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2015; 3: 210-219.
540. Morton RW, Elphick HE, Rigby AS, et al. STAAR: a randomised controlled trial of electronic adherence monitoring with reminder alarms and feedback to improve clinical outcomes for children with asthma. *Thorax* 2017; 72: 347-354.
541. Price D, Robertson A, Bullen K, et al. Improved adherence with once-daily versus twice-daily dosing of mometasone furoate administered via a dry powder inhaler: a randomized open-label study. *BMC Pulmonary Medicine* 2010; 10: 1.
542. Otsuki M, Eakin MN, Rand CS, et al. Adherence feedback to improve asthma outcomes among inner-city children: a randomized trial. *Pediatrics* 2009; 124: 1513-1521.
543. Hale EM, Greene G, Mulvey C, et al. Use of digital measurement of medication adherence and lung function to guide the management of uncontrolled asthma (INCA Sun): a multicentre, single-blinded, randomised clinical trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2023; 11: 591-601.

544. van Boven JFM, Lavorini F, Agh T, et al. Cost-effectiveness and impact on health care utilization of interventions to improve medication adherence and outcomes in asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a systematic literature review. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2024; 12: 1228-1243.
545. Chan A, De Simoni A, Wileman V, et al. Digital interventions to improve adherence to maintenance medication in asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2022; 6: CD013030.
546. Mosnaim GS, Hoyte FCL, Safioti G, et al. Effectiveness of a maintenance and reliever Digihaler System in asthma: 24-Week Randomized Study (CONNECT2). *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2024; 12: 385-395.e384.
547. Williams LK, Peterson EL, Wells K, et al. A cluster-randomized trial to provide clinicians inhaled corticosteroid adherence information for their patients with asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2010; 126: 225-231, 231 e221-224.
548. Bender BG, Cvietusa PJ, Goodrich GK, et al. Pragmatic trial of health care technologies to improve adherence to pediatric asthma treatment: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA Pediatr* 2015; 169: 317-323.
549. Halterman JS, Fagnano M, Tajon RS, et al. Effect of the School-Based Telemedicine Enhanced Asthma Management (SB-TEAM) program on asthma morbidity: A randomized clinical trial. *JAMA Pediatr* 2018; 172: e174938.
550. Normansell R, Kew KM, Stovold E. Interventions to improve adherence to inhaled steroids for asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2017; 4: CD012226.
551. Kew KM, Carr R, Crossingham I. Lay-led and peer support interventions for adolescents with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2017; 4: CD012331.
552. Clark NM, Shah S, Dodge JA, et al. An evaluation of asthma interventions for preteen students. *J Sch Health* 2010; 80: 80-87.
553. Gibson PG, Powell H, Coughlan J, et al. Limited (information only) patient education programs for adults with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2002; 2: CD001005.
554. Houts PS, Bachrach R, Witmer JT, et al. Using pictographs to enhance recall of spoken medical instructions. *Patient Educ Couns* 1998; 35: 83-88.
555. Meade CD, McKinney WP, Barnas GP. Educating patients with limited literacy skills: the effectiveness of printed and videotaped materials about colon cancer. *Am J Public Health* 1994; 84: 119-121.
556. Manfrin A, Tinelli M, Thomas T, et al. A cluster randomised control trial to evaluate the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of the Italian medicines use review (I-MUR) for asthma patients. *BMC Health Serv Res* 2017; 17: 300.
557. Gao G, Liao Y, Mo L, et al. A randomized controlled trial of a nurse-led education pathway for asthmatic children from outpatient to home. *Int J Nurs Pract* 2020; 26: e12823.
558. Campbell JD, Brooks M, Hosokawa P, et al. Community health worker home visits for Medicaid-enrolled children with asthma: Effects on asthma outcomes and costs. *Am J Public Health* 2015; 105: 2366-2372.
559. Partridge MR, Caress AL, Brown C, et al. Can lay people deliver asthma self-management education as effectively as primary care based practice nurses? *Thorax* 2008; 63: 778-783.
560. Pinnock H, Parke HL, Panagioti M, et al. Systematic meta-review of supported self-management for asthma: a healthcare perspective. *BMC Med* 2017; 15: 64.
561. Boyd M, Lasserson TJ, McKean MC, et al. Interventions for educating children who are at risk of asthma-related emergency department attendance. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2009; 2: CD001290.
562. Powell H, Gibson PG. Options for self-management education for adults with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2003; 1: CD004107.
563. McLean S, Chandler D, Nurmatov U, et al. Telehealthcare for asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2010; 10: CD007717.
564. Fishwick D, D'Souza W, Beasley R. The asthma self-management plan system of care: what does it mean, how is it done, does it work, what models are available, what do patients want and who needs it? *Patient Educ Couns* 1997; 32: S21-33.
565. Gibson PG, Powell H. Written action plans for asthma: an evidence-based review of the key components. *Thorax* 2004; 59: 94-99.

566. Holt S, Masoli M, Beasley R. The use of the self-management plan system of care in adult asthma. *Prim Care Respir J* 2004; 13: 19-27.
567. Roberts NJ, Evans G, Blenkhorn P, et al. Development of an electronic pictorial asthma action plan and its use in primary care. *Patient Educ Couns* 2010; 80: 141-146.
568. Ring N, Malcolm C, Wyke S, et al. Promoting the use of personal asthma action plans: a systematic review. *Prim Care Respir J* 2007; 16: 271-283.
569. Halterman JS, Fisher S, Conn KM, et al. Improved preventive care for asthma: a randomized trial of clinician prompting in pediatric offices. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med* 2006; 160: 1018-1025.
570. Kneale D, Harris K, McDonald VM, et al. Effectiveness of school-based self-management interventions for asthma among children and adolescents: findings from a Cochrane systematic review and meta-analysis. *Thorax* 2019; 74: 432-438.
571. Boulet LP. Influence of comorbid conditions on asthma. *Eur Respir J* 2009; 33: 897-906.
572. Deng X, Ma J, Yuan Y, et al. Association between overweight or obesity and the risk for childhood asthma and wheeze: An updated meta-analysis on 18 articles and 73 252 children. *Pediatr Obes* 2019; 14: e12532.
573. Ahmedani BK, Peterson EL, Wells KE, et al. Examining the relationship between depression and asthma exacerbations in a prospective follow-up study. *Psychosomatic Medicine* 2013; 75: 305-310.
574. Yorke J, Fleming SL, Shulldham C. Psychological interventions for adults with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2006; 1: CD002982.
575. Parry GD, Cooper CL, Moore JM, et al. Cognitive behavioural intervention for adults with anxiety complications of asthma: prospective randomised trial. *Respiratory medicine* 2012; 106: 802-810.
576. Upala S, Thavaraputta S, Sanguankee A. Improvement in pulmonary function in asthmatic patients after bariatric surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Surg Obes Relat Dis* 2019; 15: 794-803.
577. Serrano-Pariente J, Plaza V, Soriano JB, et al. Asthma outcomes improve with continuous positive airway pressure for obstructive sleep apnea. *Allergy* 2017; 72: 802-812.
578. Chan WW, Chiou E, Obstein KL, et al. The efficacy of proton pump inhibitors for the treatment of asthma in adults: a meta-analysis. *Arch Intern Med* 2011; 171: 620-629.
579. Kopsaftis Z, Yap HS, Tin KS, et al. Pharmacological and surgical interventions for the treatment of gastro-oesophageal reflux in adults and children with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2021; 5: CD001496.
580. Mastrorade JG, Anthonisen NR, Castro M, et al. Efficacy of esomeprazole for treatment of poorly controlled asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2009; 360: 1487-1499.
581. Kiljander TO, Harding SM, Field SK, et al. Effects of esomeprazole 40 mg twice daily on asthma: a randomized placebo-controlled trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2006; 173: 1091-1097.
582. Sopo SM, Radzik D, Calvani M. Does treatment with proton pump inhibitors for gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD) improve asthma symptoms in children with asthma and GERD? A systematic review. *J Investig Allergol Clin Immunol* 2009; 19: 1-5.
583. Holbrook JT, Wise RA, Gold BD, et al. Lansoprazole for children with poorly controlled asthma: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2012; 307: 373-381.
584. Goodwin RD, Jacobi F, Thefeld W. Mental disorders and asthma in the community. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 2003; 60: 1125-1130.
585. Ye G, Baldwin DS, Hou R. Anxiety in asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Psychol Med* 2021; 51: 11-20.
586. Lavoie KL, Cartier A, Labrecque M, et al. Are psychiatric disorders associated with worse asthma control and quality of life in asthma patients? *Respir Med* 2005; 99: 1249-1257.
587. Agarwal CD, Palka JM, Gajewski AJ, et al. The efficacy of citalopram or escitalopram in patients with asthma and major depressive disorder. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2024; 132: 374-382.

588. Bock SA, Munoz-Furlong A, Sampson HA. Further fatalities caused by anaphylactic reactions to food, 2001–2006. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2007; 119: 1016-1018.
589. Pumphrey RSH, Gowland MH. Further fatal allergic reactions to food in the United Kingdom, 1999-2006. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2007; 119: 1018-1019.
590. Liu AH, Jaramillo R, Sicherer SH, et al. National prevalence and risk factors for food allergy and relationship to asthma: results from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey 2005-2006. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2010; 126: 798-806.e713.
591. Brożek JL, Bousquet J, Agache I, et al. Allergic Rhinitis and its Impact on Asthma (ARIA) guidelines – 2016 revision. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2017; 140: 950-958.
592. Cruz AA, Popov T, Pawankar R, et al. Common characteristics of upper and lower airways in rhinitis and asthma: ARIA update, in collaboration with GA(2)LEN. *Allergy* 2007; 62 Suppl 84: 1-41.
593. Bousquet J, Schunemann HJ, Samolinski B, et al. Allergic Rhinitis and its Impact on Asthma (ARIA): achievements in 10 years and future needs. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2012; 130: 1049-1062.
594. Wise SK, Lin SY, Toskala E, et al. International consensus statement on allergy and rhinology: allergic rhinitis. *Int Forum Allergy Rhinol* 2018; 8: 108-352.
595. Corren J, Manning BE, Thompson SF, et al. Rhinitis therapy and the prevention of hospital care for asthma: a case-control study. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2004; 113: 415-419.
596. Lohia S, Schlosser RJ, Soler ZM. Impact of intranasal corticosteroids on asthma outcomes in allergic rhinitis: a meta-analysis. *Allergy* 2013; 68: 569-579.
597. Fokkens WJ, Lund VJ, Mullol J, et al. EPOS 2012: European position paper on rhinosinusitis and nasal polyps 2012. A summary for otorhinolaryngologists. *Rhinology* 2012; 50: 1-12.
598. Tan BK, Chandra RK, Pollak J, et al. Incidence and associated premorbid diagnoses of patients with chronic rhinosinusitis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2013; 131: 1350-1360.
599. Hamilos DL. Chronic rhinosinusitis: epidemiology and medical management. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011; 128: 693-707.
600. Bachert C, Han JK, Wagenmann M, et al. EUFOREA expert board meeting on uncontrolled severe chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps (CRSwNP) and biologics: Definitions and management. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2021; 147: 29-36.
601. Rank M, Mullol J. Chronic rhinosinusitis: forward! *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2022; 10: 1472-1473.
602. Gill AS, Alt JA, Detwiler KY, et al. Management paradigms for chronic rhinosinusitis in individuals with asthma: An evidence-based review with recommendations. *Int Forum Allergy Rhinol* 2023; 13: 1758-1782.
603. Gevaert P, Omachi TA, Corren J, et al. Efficacy and safety of omalizumab in nasal polyposis: 2 randomized phase 3 trials. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2020; 146: 595-605.
604. Gevaert P, Van Bruaene N, Cattaert T, et al. Mepolizumab, a humanized anti-IL-5 mAb, as a treatment option for severe nasal polyposis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011; 128: 989-995.e988.
605. Bachert C, Sousa AR, Lund VJ, et al. Reduced need for surgery in severe nasal polyposis with mepolizumab: Randomized trial. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2017; 140: 1024-1031.e1014.
606. Bachert C, Han JK, Desrosiers M, et al. Efficacy and safety of dupilumab in patients with severe chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps (LIBERTY NP SINUS-24 and LIBERTY NP SINUS-52): results from two multicentre, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel-group phase 3 trials. *Lancet* 2019; 394: 1638-1650.
607. Lipworth BJ, Han JK, Desrosiers M, et al. Tezepelumab in adults with severe chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps. *N Engl J Med* 2025; 392: 1178-1188.
608. Gevaert P, Desrosiers M, Cornet M, et al. Efficacy and safety of twice per year depemokimab in chronic rhinosinusitis with nasal polyps (ANCHOR-1 and ANCHOR-2): phase 3, randomised, double-blind, parallel trials. *Lancet* 2025; 405: 911-926.
609. Williamson EJ, Walker AJ, Bhaskaran K, et al. Factors associated with COVID-19-related death using OpenSAFELY. *Nature* 2020; 584: 430-436.

610. Liu S, Cao Y, Du T, et al. Prevalence of comorbid asthma and related outcomes in COVID-19: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2021; 9: 693-701.
611. Hou H, Xu J, Li Y, et al. The association of asthma with COVID-19 mortality: an updated meta-analysis based on adjusted effect estimates. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2021; 9: 3944-3968.e3945.
612. Bloom CI, Drake TM, Docherty AB, et al. Risk of adverse outcomes in patients with underlying respiratory conditions admitted to hospital with COVID-19: a national, multicentre prospective cohort study using the ISARIC WHO Clinical Characterisation Protocol UK. *Lancet Respir Med* 2021; 9:699-711.
613. Hui DS, Chow BK, Chu LC, et al. Exhaled air and aerosolized droplet dispersion during application of a jet nebulizer. *Chest* 2009; 135: 648-654.
614. International Union Against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease. International Union Against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease strategic plan for lung health 2020–2025. International Union Against Tuberculosis and Lung Disease; [cited 2024 April]. Available from: <https://theunion.org/our-work/lung-health-ncds/asthma>.
615. World Health Organization. Web Annex A. World Health Organization model list of essential medicines – 23rd list, 2023. The selection and use of essential medicines 2023: Executive summary of the report of the 24th WHO Expert Committee on the Selection and Use of Essential Medicines, 24 – 28 April 2023. Geneva: WHO; 2023.
616. World Health Organization. Web Annex B. World Health Organization Model List of Essential Medicines for Children – 9th List, 2023. The selection and use of essential medicines 2023: Executive summary of the report of the 24th WHO Expert Committee on the Selection and Use of Essential Medicines, 24 – 28 April 2023. Geneva: WHO; 2023.
617. Zar HJ, Asmus MJ, Weinberg EG. A 500-ml plastic bottle: an effective spacer for children with asthma. *Pediatr Allergy Immunol* 2002; 13: 217-222.
618. Suissa S, Ernst P. Inhaled corticosteroids: impact on asthma morbidity and mortality. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2001; 107: 937-944.
619. Fox GJ, Chau NQ, Yen PN, et al. Implementation of a stepped anti-inflammatory reliever therapy intervention with budesonide-formoterol 160/4.5 mcg by Turbuhaler versus usual care for adults presenting during exacerbations of obstructive lung disease suggestive of asthma or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in a resource-limited setting: an open-label, cluster randomised trial. *EClinicalMedicine* 2025; 90: 103642.
620. Babar ZU, Lessing C, Mace C, et al. The availability, pricing and affordability of three essential asthma medicines in 52 low- and middle-income countries. *Pharmacoeconomics* 2013; 31: 1063-1082.
621. Stolbrink M, Thomson H, Hadfield R, et al. The availability, cost and affordability of essential medicines for asthma and COPD in low-income and middle-income countries: a systematic review. *Lancet* 2022; 10: e1423-e1442.
622. World Health Organization. New WHA Resolution to bring much needed boost to diabetes prevention and control efforts. News release 27 May 2021. [web page]: WHO; 2021 [cited 2024 April]. Available from: <https://www.who.int/news/item/27-05-2021-new-wha-resolution-to-bring-much-needed-boost-to-diabetes-prevention-and-control-efforts>.
623. Patton GC, Viner R. Pubertal transitions in health. *Lancet* 2007; 369: 1130-1139.
624. Michaud P-A, Suris J, Viner R. The adolescent with a chronic condition : epidemiology, developmental issues and health care provision. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2007. Available from: <https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/43775>.
625. Roberts G, Vazquez-Ortiz M, Knibb R, et al. EAACI Guidelines on the effective transition of adolescents and young adults with allergy and asthma. *Allergy* 2020; 75: 2734-2752.
626. Carlsen KH, Anderson SD, Bjermer L, et al. Treatment of exercise-induced asthma, respiratory and allergic disorders in sports and the relationship to doping: Part II of the report from the Joint Task Force of European Respiratory Society (ERS) and European Academy of Allergy and Clinical Immunology (EAACI) in cooperation with GA(2)LEN. *Allergy* 2008; 63: 492-505.
627. Gluck JC, Gluck PA. The effect of pregnancy on the course of asthma. *Immunol Allergy Clin North Am* 2006; 26: 63-80.
628. Murphy VE, Powell H, Wark PA, et al. A prospective study of respiratory viral infection in pregnant women with and without asthma. *Chest* 2013; 144: 420-427.

629. Robijn AL, Bokern MP, Jensen ME, et al. Risk factors for asthma exacerbations during pregnancy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur Respir Rev* 2022; 31: 220039.
630. Lim A, Stewart K, Konig K, et al. Systematic review of the safety of regular preventive asthma medications during pregnancy. *Ann Pharmacother* 2011; 45: 931-945.
631. Wendel PJ, Ramin SM, Barnett-Hamm C, et al. Asthma treatment in pregnancy: a randomized controlled study. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1996; 175: 150-154.
632. Schatz M, Leibman C. Inhaled corticosteroid use and outcomes in pregnancy. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2005; 95: 234-238.
633. Powell H, Murphy VE, Taylor DR, et al. Management of asthma in pregnancy guided by measurement of fraction of exhaled nitric oxide: a double-blind, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2011; 378: 983-990.
634. Liu X, Agerbo E, Schlunssen V, et al. Maternal asthma severity and control during pregnancy and risk of offspring asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2018; 141: 886-892 e883.
635. Morten M, Collison A, Murphy VE, et al. Managing Asthma in Pregnancy (MAP) trial: FENO levels and childhood asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2018; 142: 1765-1772.e1764.
636. Lim AS, Stewart K, Abramson MJ, et al. Asthma during pregnancy: the experiences, concerns and views of pregnant women with asthma. *J Asthma* 2012; 49: 474-479.
637. National Heart Lung and Blood Institute, National Asthma Education and Prevention Program Asthma and Pregnancy Working Group. NAEPP expert panel report. Managing asthma during pregnancy: recommendations for pharmacologic treatment-2004 update. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2005; 115: 34-46.
638. Lim AS, Stewart K, Abramson MJ, et al. Multidisciplinary Approach to Management of Maternal Asthma (MAMMA): a randomized controlled trial. *Chest* 2014; 145: 1046-1054.
639. Ali Z, Nilas L, Ulrik CS. Determinants of low risk of asthma exacerbation during pregnancy. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2018; 48: 23-28.
640. Pfaller B, José Yepes-Nuñez J, Agache I, et al. Biologicals in atopic disease in pregnancy: An EAACI position paper. *Allergy* 2021; 76: 71-89.
641. Namazy J, Cabana MD, Scheuerle AE, et al. The Xolair Pregnancy Registry (EXPECT): the safety of omalizumab use during pregnancy. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2015; 135: 407-412.
642. Nelson-Piercy C. Asthma in pregnancy. *Thorax* 2001; 56: 325-328.
643. McLaughlin K, Foureur M, Jensen ME, et al. Review and appraisal of guidelines for the management of asthma during pregnancy. *Women Birth* 2018; 31: e349-e357.
644. Sanchez-Ramos JL, Pereira-Vega AR, Alvarado-Gomez F, et al. Risk factors for premenstrual asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Expert Rev Respir Med* 2017; 11: 57-72.
645. Reed CE. Asthma in the elderly: diagnosis and management. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2010; 126: 681-687.
646. Gibson PG, McDonald VM, Marks GB. Asthma in older adults. *Lancet* 2010; 376: 803-813.
647. Slavin RG, Haselkorn T, Lee JH, et al. Asthma in older adults: observations from the epidemiology and natural history of asthma: outcomes and treatment regimens (TENOR) study. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2006; 96: 406-414.
648. Çolak Y, Afzal S, Nordestgaard BG, et al. Characteristics and prognosis of never-smokers and smokers with asthma in the Copenhagen General Population Study. A Prospective Cohort Study. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2015; 192: 172-181.
649. Chalitsios CV, McKeever TM, Shaw DE. Incidence of osteoporosis and fragility fractures in asthma: a UK population-based matched cohort study. *Eur Respir J* 2021; 57: 2001251.
650. Vincken W, Dekhuijzen PR, Barnes P, et al. The ADMIT series - Issues in inhalation therapy. 4) How to choose inhaler devices for the treatment of COPD. *Prim Care Respir J* 2010; 19: 10-20.
651. Szczeklik A, Sanak M, Nizankowska-Mogilnicka E, et al. Aspirin intolerance and the cyclooxygenase-leukotriene pathways. *Curr Opin Pulm Med* 2004; 10: 51-56.

652. Stevenson DD. Diagnosis, prevention, and treatment of adverse reactions to aspirin and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 1984; 74: 617-622.
653. Mascia K, Haselkorn T, Deniz YM, et al. Aspirin sensitivity and severity of asthma: evidence for irreversible airway obstruction in patients with severe or difficult-to-treat asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2005; 116: 970-975.
654. Morales DR, Guthrie B, Lipworth BJ, et al. NSAID-exacerbated respiratory disease: a meta-analysis evaluating prevalence, mean provocative dose of aspirin and increased asthma morbidity. *Allergy* 2015; 70: 828-835.
655. Rajan JP, Wineinger NE, Stevenson DD, et al. Prevalence of aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease among asthmatic patients: A meta-analysis of the literature. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2015; 135: 676-681.e671.
656. Szczeklik A, Stevenson DD. Aspirin-induced asthma: advances in pathogenesis and management. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 1999; 104: 5-13.
657. Nizankowska E, Bestynska-Krypel A, Cmiel A, et al. Oral and bronchial provocation tests with aspirin for diagnosis of aspirin-induced asthma. *Eur Respir J* 2000; 15: 863-869.
658. Milewski M, Mastalerz L, Nizankowska E, et al. Nasal provocation test with lysine-aspirin for diagnosis of aspirin-sensitive asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 1998; 101: 581-586.
659. El Miedany Y, Youssef S, Ahmed I, et al. Safety of etoricoxib, a specific cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor, in asthmatic patients with aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2006; 97: 105-109.
660. Morales DR, Lipworth BJ, Guthrie B, et al. Safety risks for patients with aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease after acute exposure to selective nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and COX-2 inhibitors: Meta-analysis of controlled clinical trials. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2014; 134: 40-45.
661. Dahlen SE, Malmstrom K, Nizankowska E, et al. Improvement of aspirin-intolerant asthma by montelukast, a leukotriene antagonist: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2002; 165: 9-14.
662. Pleskow WW, Stevenson DD, Mathison DA, et al. Aspirin desensitization in aspirin-sensitive asthmatic patients: clinical manifestations and characterization of the refractory period. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 1982; 69: 11-19.
663. Swierczynska-Krepa M, Sanak M, Bochenek G, et al. Aspirin desensitization in patients with aspirin-induced and aspirin-tolerant asthma: a double-blind study. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2014; 134: 883-890.
664. Chu DK, Lee DJ, Lee KM, et al. Benefits and harms of aspirin desensitization for aspirin-exacerbated respiratory disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Int Forum Allergy Rhinol* 2019; 9: 1409-1419.
665. Agarwal R, Chakrabarti A, Shah A, et al. Allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis: review of literature and proposal of new diagnostic and classification criteria. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2013; 43: 850-873.
666. Agarwal R, Dhooria S, Singh Sehgal I, et al. A randomized trial of itraconazole vs prednisolone in acute-stage allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis complicating asthma. *Chest* 2018; 153: 656-664.
667. Agarwal R, Muthu V, Sehgal IS, et al. A randomised trial of prednisolone versus prednisolone and itraconazole in acute-stage allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis complicating asthma. *Eur Respir J* 2022; 59: 2101787.
668. Agarwal R, Sehgal IS, Dhooria S, et al. Developments in the diagnosis and treatment of allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis. *Expert Rev Respir Med* 2016; 10: 1317-1334.
669. Voskamp AL, Gillman A, Symons K, et al. Clinical efficacy and immunologic effects of omalizumab in allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2015; 3: 192-199.
670. Jin M, Douglass JA, Elborn JS, et al. Omalizumab in allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2023; 11: 896-905.
671. Asano K, Tomomatsu K, Okada N, et al. Treatment of allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis with biologics. *Chin Med J Pulm Crit Care Med* 2025; 3: 6-11.
672. Smetana GW, Lawrence VA, Cornell JE. Preoperative pulmonary risk stratification for noncardiothoracic surgery: systematic review for the American College of Physicians. *Annals Int Med* 2006; 144: 581-595.
673. Woods BD, Sladen RN. Perioperative considerations for the patient with asthma and bronchospasm. *Br J Anaesth* 2009; 103 Suppl 1: i57-65.

674. Wakim JH, Sledge KC. Anesthetic implications for patients receiving exogenous corticosteroids. *AANA Journal* 2006; 74: 133-139.
675. Coker RK, Armstrong A, Church AC, et al. BTS Clinical Statement on air travel for passengers with respiratory disease. *Thorax* 2022; 77: 329-350.
676. da Silva IR, Nedel AS, Marques JRQ, et al. Excess of children's outpatient consultations due to asthma and bronchitis and the association between meteorological variables in Canoas City, Southern Brazil. *Int J Biometeorol* 2019; 63: 1517-1524.
677. Xu Z, Huang C, Hu W, et al. Extreme temperatures and emergency department admissions for childhood asthma in Brisbane, Australia. *Occup Environ Med* 2013; 70: 730-735.
678. World Meteorological Organization. State of Climate in Africa 2023. WMO-No. 1360. Geneva: WMO; 2024. Available from: https://library.wmo.int/viewer/69000/download?file=1360_State-of-the-Climate-in-Africa-2023_en.pdf&type=pdf&navigator=1.
679. O'Driscoll BR, Hopkinson LC, Denning DW. Mold sensitization is common amongst patients with severe asthma requiring multiple hospital admissions. *BMC Pulm Med* 2005; 5: 4.
680. Han A, Deng S, Yu J, et al. Asthma triggered by extreme temperatures: From epidemiological evidence to biological plausibility. *Environ Res* 2023; 216: 114489.
681. Makrufardi F, Manullang A, Rusmawatiningsy D, et al. Extreme weather and asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur Respir Rev* 2023; 32.
682. Zhou Y, Pan J, Xu R, et al. Asthma mortality attributable to ambient temperatures: A case-crossover study in China. *Environ Res* 2022; 214: 114116.
683. Shakya KM, Noyes A, Kallin R, et al. Evaluating the efficacy of cloth facemasks in reducing particulate matter exposure. *J Expo Sci Environ Epidemiol* 2017; 27: 352-357.
684. Hlophe ST, Mphahlele R, Mortimer K, et al. Interventions to reduce the impact of outdoor air pollution on asthma: A systematic review. *Afr J Thorac Crit Care Med* 2024; 30: e1992.
685. Postma DS, Rabe KF. The asthma-COPD overlap syndrome. *N Engl J Med* 2015; 373: 1241-1249.
686. Nelson HS, Weiss ST, Bleecker ER, et al. The Salmeterol Multicenter Asthma Research Trial: a comparison of usual pharmacotherapy for asthma or usual pharmacotherapy plus salmeterol. *Chest* 2006; 129: 15-26.
687. McMahon AW, Levenson MS, McEvoy BW, et al. Age and risks of FDA-approved long-acting 2-adrenergic receptor agonists. *Pediatrics* 2011; 128: e1147-1154.
688. Gershon AS, Campitelli MA, Croxford R, et al. Combination long-acting β -agonists and inhaled corticosteroids compared with long-acting β -agonists alone in older adults with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *JAMA* 2014; 312: 1114-1121.
689. Suissa S, Ernst P. Observational studies of inhaled corticosteroid effectiveness in COPD: Lessons learned. *Chest* 2018; 154: 257-265.
690. Kendzerska T, Aaron SD, To T, et al. Effectiveness and safety of inhaled corticosteroids in older individuals with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and/or asthma. A population study. *Ann Am Thorac Soc* 2019; 16: 1252-1262.
691. Vonk JM, Jongepier H, Panhuysen CIM, et al. Risk factors associated with the presence of irreversible airflow limitation and reduced transfer coefficient in patients with asthma after 26 years of follow up. *Thorax* 2003; 58: 322-327.
692. Lange P, Celli B, Agusti A, et al. Lung-function trajectories leading to chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *N Engl J Med* 2015; 373: 111-122.
693. Abramson MJ, Schattner RL, Sulaiman ND, et al. Accuracy of asthma and COPD diagnosis in Australian general practice: a mixed methods study. *Prim Care Respir J* 2012; 21: 167-173.
694. Gibson PG, Simpson JL. The overlap syndrome of asthma and COPD: what are its features and how important is it? *Thorax* 2009; 64: 728-735.
695. Mannino DM, Gagnon RC, Petty TL, et al. Obstructive lung disease and low lung function in adults in the United States: data from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 1988-1994. *Arch Int Med* 2000; 160: 1683-1689.

696. Marsh SE, Travers J, Weatherall M, et al. Proportional classifications of COPD phenotypes. *Thorax* 2008; 63: 761-767.
697. Shirtcliffe P, Marsh S, Travers J, et al. Childhood asthma and GOLD-defined chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Int Med J* 2012; 42: 83-88.
698. Guerra S, Sherrill DL, Kurzius-Spencer M, et al. The course of persistent airflow limitation in subjects with and without asthma. *Respir Med* 2008; 102: 1473-1482.
699. Silva GE, Sherrill DL, Guerra S, et al. Asthma as a risk factor for COPD in a longitudinal study. *Chest* 2004; 126: 59-65.
700. van Schayck CP, Levy ML, Chen JC, et al. Coordinated diagnostic approach for adult obstructive lung disease in primary care. *Prim Care Respir J* 2004; 13: 218-221.
701. Zeki AA, Schivo M, Chan A, et al. The asthma-COPD overlap syndrome: a common clinical problem in the elderly. *J Allergy (Cairo)* 2011; 2011: 861926.
702. Kendzerska T, Sadatsafavi M, Aaron SD, et al. Concurrent physician-diagnosed asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: A population study of prevalence, incidence and mortality. *PLoS One* 2017; 12: e0173830.
703. Kauppi P, Kupiainen H, Lindqvist A, et al. Overlap syndrome of asthma and COPD predicts low quality of life. *J Asthma* 2011; 48: 279-285.
704. Weatherall M, Travers J, Shirtcliffe PM, et al. Distinct clinical phenotypes of airways disease defined by cluster analysis. *Eur Respir J* 2009; 34: 812-818.
705. Inoue H, Nagase T, Morita S, et al. Prevalence and characteristics of asthma-COPD overlap syndrome identified by a stepwise approach. *Int J Chron Obstruct Pulmon Dis* 2017; 12: 1803-1810.
706. Uchida A, Sakaue K, Inoue H. Epidemiology of asthma-chronic obstructive pulmonary disease overlap (ACO). *Allergol Int* 2018; 67: 165-171.
707. Krishnan JA, Nibber A, Chisholm A, et al. Prevalence and characteristics of asthma-chronic obstructive pulmonary disease overlap in routine primary care practices. *Ann Am Thorac Soc* 2019; 16: 1143-1150.
708. Barrecheguren M, Pinto L, Mostafavi-Pour-Manshadi SM, et al. Identification and definition of asthma-COPD overlap: The CanCOLD study. *Respirology* 2020; 25: 836-849.
709. Andersen H, Lampela P, Nevanlinna A, et al. High hospital burden in overlap syndrome of asthma and COPD. *Clin Respir J* 2013; 7: 342-346.
710. Kew KM, Seniukovich A. Inhaled steroids and risk of pneumonia for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; 3: CD010115.
711. Suissa S, Patenaude V, Lapi F, et al. Inhaled corticosteroids in COPD and the risk of serious pneumonia. *Thorax* 2013; 68: 1029-1036.
712. Louie S, Zeki AA, Schivo M, et al. The asthma-chronic obstructive pulmonary disease overlap syndrome: pharmacotherapeutic considerations. *Exp Rev Respir Pharmacol* 2013; 6: 197-219.
713. Hekking P, Wener R, Amelink M, et al. The prevalence of severe refractory asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2015; 135: 896-902.
714. Foster JM, McDonald VM, Guo M, et al. "I have lost in every facet of my life": the hidden burden of severe asthma. *Eur Respir J* 2017; 50: 1700765.
715. Ross KR, Gupta R, DeBoer MD, et al. Severe asthma during childhood and adolescence: A longitudinal study. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2020; 145: 140-146 e149.
716. O'Neill S, Sweeney J, Patterson CC, et al. The cost of treating severe refractory asthma in the UK: an economic analysis from the British Thoracic Society Difficult Asthma Registry. *Thorax* 2015; 70: 376-378.
717. Sadatsafavi M, Lynd L, Marra C, et al. Direct health care costs associated with asthma in British Columbia. *Can Respir J* 2010; 17: 74-80.
718. Hashimoto S, Bel EH. Current treatment of severe asthma. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2012; 42: 693-705.

719. Hancox RJ, Cowan JO, Flannery EM, et al. Bronchodilator tolerance and rebound bronchoconstriction during regular inhaled beta-agonist treatment. *Respir Med* 2000; 94: 767-771.
720. Paris J, Peterson EL, Wells K, et al. Relationship between recent short-acting beta-agonist use and subsequent asthma exacerbations. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2008; 101: 482-487.
721. Basheti IA, Armour CL, Bosnic-Anticevich SZ, et al. Evaluation of a novel educational strategy, including inhaler-based reminder labels, to improve asthma inhaler technique *Patient Educ Couns* 2008; 72: 26-33.
722. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Parasites - Strongyloides. [web page]: U.S. Department of Health & Human Services; 2018 [updated 31 December 2018; cited 2024 April]. Available from: <https://www.cdc.gov/parasites/strongyloides/>.
723. Clark VL, Gibson PG, Genn G, et al. Multidimensional assessment of severe asthma: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Respirology* 2017; 22: 1262-1275.
724. Israel E, Reddel HK. Severe and difficult-to-treat asthma in adults. *N Engl J Med* 2017; 377: 965-976.
725. Bleecker ER, Meyers DA, Billheimer D, et al. Clinical implications of longitudinal blood eosinophil counts in patients with severe asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2023; 11: 1805-1813.
726. Busse WW, Wenzel SE, Casale TB, et al. Baseline FeNO as a prognostic biomarker for subsequent severe asthma exacerbations in patients with uncontrolled, moderate-to-severe asthma receiving placebo in the LIBERTY ASTHMA QUEST study: a post-hoc analysis. *Lancet Respir Med* 2021; 9: 1165-1173.
727. Amaral R, Jacinto T, Malinovschi A, et al. The influence of individual characteristics and non-respiratory diseases on blood eosinophil count. *Clin Transl Allergy* 2021; 11: e12036.
728. Lugogo NL, Kreindler JL, Martin UJ, et al. Blood eosinophil count group shifts and kinetics in severe eosinophilic asthma. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2020; 125: 171-176.
729. Biener L, Milger K, Suhling H, et al. Impact of short-term pausing of oral corticosteroids on blood eosinophil count in patients with severe asthma. *Pneumologie* 2023; 77: 357-362.
730. Bousquet J, Humbert M, Gibson PG, et al. Real-world effectiveness of omalizumab in severe allergic asthma: a meta-analysis of observational studies. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2021; 9: 2702-2714.
731. Brusselle G, Michils A, Louis R, et al. "Real-life" effectiveness of omalizumab in patients with severe persistent allergic asthma: The PERSIST study. *Respir Med* 2009; 103: 1633-1642.
732. Humbert M, Taille C, Mala L, et al. Omalizumab effectiveness in patients with severe allergic asthma according to blood eosinophil count: the STELLAIR study. *Eur Respir J* 2018; 51: 1702523.
733. Busse WW. Are peripheral blood eosinophil counts a guideline for omalizumab treatment? STELLAIR says no! *Eur Respir J* 2018; 51: 1800730.
734. Casale TB, Luskin AT, Busse W, et al. Omalizumab effectiveness by biomarker status in patients with asthma: evidence from PROSPERO, a prospective real-world study. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2019; 7: 156-164 e151.
735. Normansell R, Walker S, Milan SJ, et al. Omalizumab for asthma in adults and children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; 1: CD003559.
736. Zazzali JL, Raimundo KP, Trzaskoma B, et al. Changes in asthma control, work productivity, and impairment with omalizumab: 5-year EXCELS study results. *Allergy Asthma Proc* 2015; 36: 283-292.
737. Farne HA, Wilson A, Milan S, et al. Anti-IL-5 therapies for asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2022; 7: CD010834.
738. Lemiere C, Taillé C, Lee JK, et al. Impact of baseline clinical asthma characteristics on the response to mepolizumab: a post hoc meta-analysis of two Phase III trials. *Respir Res* 2021; 22: 184.
739. FitzGerald JM, Bleecker ER, Menzies-Gow A, et al. Predictors of enhanced response with benralizumab for patients with severe asthma: pooled analysis of the SIROCCO and CALIMA studies. *Lancet Respir Med* 2018; 6: 51-64.
740. Leckie MJ, ten Brinke A, Khan J, et al. Effects of an interleukin-5 blocking monoclonal antibody on eosinophils, airway hyper-responsiveness, and the late asthmatic response. *Lancet* 2000; 356: 2144-2148.

741. Bel EH, Wenzel SE, Thompson PJ, et al. Oral glucocorticoid-sparing effect of mepolizumab in eosinophilic asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2014; 371: 1189-1197.
742. Chupp G, Nagase H, Skowasch D, et al. Switching to twice-yearly depemokimab from mepolizumab/benralizumab in severe asthma: A multicenter, randomized, double-blind, Phase 3A Clinical Trial (NIMBLE). *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2026; Online ahead of print 11 Feb.
743. Ortega HG, Yancey SW, Mayer B, et al. Severe eosinophilic asthma treated with mepolizumab stratified by baseline eosinophil thresholds: a secondary analysis of the DREAM and MENSA studies. *The Lancet Respiratory medicine* 2016; 4: 549-556.
744. Brusselle G, Germinaro M, Weiss S, et al. Reslizumab in patients with inadequately controlled late-onset asthma and elevated blood eosinophils. *Pulm Pharmacol Ther* 2017; 43: 39-45.
745. Bleecker ER, Wechsler ME, FitzGerald JM, et al. Baseline patient factors impact on the clinical efficacy of benralizumab for severe asthma. *Eur Respir J* 2018; 52: 1800936.
746. Canonica GW, Harrison TW, Chanez P, et al. Benralizumab improves symptoms of patients with severe, eosinophilic asthma with a diagnosis of nasal polyposis. *Allergy* 2022; 77: 150-161.
747. Korn S, Bourdin A, Chupp G, et al. Integrated safety and efficacy among patients receiving benralizumab for up to 5 years. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2021; 9: 4381-4392.e4384.
748. Khatri S, Moore W, Gibson PG, et al. Assessment of the long-term safety of mepolizumab and durability of clinical response in patients with severe eosinophilic asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2019; 143: 1742-1751.e1747.
749. Corren J, Castro M, O'Riordan T, et al. Dupilumab efficacy in patients with uncontrolled, moderate-to-severe allergic asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2020; 8: 516-526.
750. Rabe KF, Nair P, Brusselle G, et al. Efficacy and safety of dupilumab in glucocorticoid-dependent severe asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2018; 378: 2475-2485.
751. Sher LD, Wechsler ME, Rabe KF, et al. Dupilumab reduces oral corticosteroid use in patients with corticosteroid-dependent severe asthma: an analysis of the phase 3, open-label extension TRAVERSE trial. *Chest* 2022; 162: 46-55.
752. Bacharier LB, Maspero JF, Katelaris CH, et al. Assessment of long-term safety and efficacy of dupilumab in children with asthma (LIBERTY ASTHMA EXCURSION): an open-label extension study. *Lancet Respir Med* 2024; 12: 45-54.
753. Bacharier LB, Pavord ID, Maspero JF, et al. Blood eosinophils and fractional exhaled nitric oxide are prognostic and predictive biomarkers in childhood asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2024; 154: 101-110.
754. Busse WW, Kraft M, Domingo C, et al. Impact of asthma age of onset or duration on efficacy of dupilumab in moderate-to-severe type 2 asthma. *J Asthma* 2025; 62: 1678-1689.
755. Bachert C, Mannent L, Naclerio RM, et al. Effect of subcutaneous dupilumab on nasal polyp burden in patients with chronic sinusitis and nasal polyposis: A randomized clinical trial. *JAMA* 2016; 315: 469-479.
756. Maspero JF, Peters AT, Chapman KR, et al. Long-term safety of dupilumab in patients With moderate-to-severe asthma: TRAVERSE continuation study. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2024; 12: 991-997.e996.
757. Corren J, Menzies-Gow A, Chupp G, et al. Efficacy of tezepelumab in severe, uncontrolled asthma: pooled analysis of the PATHWAY and NAVIGATOR clinical trials. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2023; 208: 13-24.
758. Menzies-Gow A, Wechsler ME, Brightling CE, et al. Long-term safety and efficacy of tezepelumab in people with severe, uncontrolled asthma (DESTINATION): a randomised, placebo-controlled extension study. *Lancet Respir Med* 2023; 11: 425-438.
759. Hashimoto S, Brinke AT, Roldaan AC, et al. Internet-based tapering of oral corticosteroids in severe asthma: a pragmatic randomised controlled trial. *Thorax* 2011; 66: 514-520.
760. Haldar P, Brightling CE, Singapuri A, et al. Outcomes after cessation of mepolizumab therapy in severe eosinophilic asthma: a 12-month follow-up analysis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2014; 133: 921-923.
761. Ledford D, Busse W, Trzaskoma B, et al. A randomized multicenter study evaluating Xolair persistence of response after long-term therapy. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2017; 140: 162-169.e162.

762. Brightling CE, Caminati M, Llanos JP, et al. Biomarkers and clinical outcomes after tezepelumab cessation: Extended follow-up from the 2-year DESTINATION study. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2024; 133: 310-317.e314.
763. Moore WC, Kornmann O, Humbert M, et al. Stopping versus continuing long-term mepolizumab treatment in severe eosinophilic asthma (COMET study). *Eur Respir J* 2022; 59: 2100396.
764. Ramnath VR, Clark S, Camargo CA, Jr. Multicenter study of clinical features of sudden-onset versus slower-onset asthma exacerbations requiring hospitalization. *Respir Care* 2007; 52: 1013-1020.
765. Zheng XY, Orellano P, Lin HL, et al. Short-term exposure to ozone, nitrogen dioxide, and sulphur dioxide and emergency department visits and hospital admissions due to asthma: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Environ Int* 2021; 150: 106435.
766. Jackson DJ, Johnston SL. The role of viruses in acute exacerbations of asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2010; 125: 1178-1187.
767. Orellano P, Quaranta N, Reynoso J, et al. Effect of outdoor air pollution on asthma exacerbations in children and adults: Systematic review and multilevel meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2017; 12: e0174050.
768. Pike KC, Akhbari M, Kneale D, et al. Interventions for autumn exacerbations of asthma in children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2018; 3: CD012393.
769. Williams LK, Peterson EL, Wells K, et al. Quantifying the proportion of severe asthma exacerbations attributable to inhaled corticosteroid nonadherence. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011; 128: 1185-1191.e1182.
770. Alvarez GG, Schulzer M, Jung D, et al. A systematic review of risk factors associated with near-fatal and fatal asthma. *Can Respir J* 2005; 12: 265-270.
771. Chang YL, Ko HK, Lu MS, et al. Independent risk factors for death in patients admitted for asthma exacerbation in Taiwan. *NPJ Prim Care Respir Med* 2020; 30: 7.
772. Guilleminault L, Mounié M, Sommet A, et al. Healthcare resource consumption prior to asthma-related death: a nationwide descriptive study. *Ther Adv Respir Dis* 2022; 16: 17534666221130217.
773. Suissa S, Blais L, Ernst P. Patterns of increasing beta-agonist use and the risk of fatal or near- fatal asthma. *Eur Respir J* 1994; 7: 1602-1609.
774. Spitzer WO, Suissa S, Ernst P, et al. The use of beta-agonists and the risk of death and near death from asthma. *N Engl J Med* 1992; 326: 501-506.
775. Roberts G, Patel N, Levi-Schaffer F, et al. Food allergy as a risk factor for life-threatening asthma in childhood: a case-controlled study. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2003; 112: 168-174.
776. Lee P, Abisheganaden J, Chee CB, et al. A new asthma severity index: a predictor of near-fatal asthma? *Eur Respir J* 2001; 18: 272-278.
777. Blaiss MS, Nathan RA, Stoloff SW, et al. Patient and physician asthma deterioration terminology: results from the 2009 Asthma Insight and Management survey. *Allergy Asthma Proc* 2012; 33: 47-53.
778. Vincent SD, Toelle BG, Aroni RA, et al. "Exasperations" of asthma. A qualitative study of patient language about worsening asthma. *Med J Aust* 2006; 184: 451-454.
779. FitzGerald JM, Grunfeld A. Status asthmaticus. In: Lichtenstein LM, Fauci AS, editors. *Current therapy in allergy, immunology, and rheumatology*. 5th ed. St. Louis, MO: Mosby; 1996. p. 63-67.
780. Chan-Yeung M, Chang JH, Manfreda J, et al. Changes in peak flow, symptom score, and the use of medications during acute exacerbations of asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1996; 154: 889-893.
781. Kew KM, Flemyng E, Quon BS, et al. Increased versus stable doses of inhaled corticosteroids for exacerbations of chronic asthma in adults and children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2022; 9: CD007524.
782. FitzGerald JM, Becker A, Sears MR, et al. Doubling the dose of budesonide versus maintenance treatment in asthma exacerbations. *Thorax* 2004; 59: 550-556.
783. Harrison TW, Osborne J, Newton S, et al. Doubling the dose of inhaled corticosteroid to prevent asthma exacerbations: randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2004; 363: 271-275.

784. Reddel HK, Barnes DJ. Pharmacological strategies for self-management of asthma exacerbations. *Eur Respir J* 2006; 28: 182-199.
785. Kew KM, Quinn M, Quon BS, et al. Increased versus stable doses of inhaled corticosteroids for exacerbations of chronic asthma in adults and children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2016; 6: CD007524.
786. Ducharme FM, Lemire C, Noya FJ, et al. Preemptive use of high-dose fluticasone for virus-induced wheezing in young children. *N Engl J Med* 2009; 360: 339-353.
787. Osborne J, Mortimer K, Hubbard RB, et al. Quadrupling the dose of inhaled corticosteroid to prevent asthma exacerbations: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel-group clinical trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2009; 180: 598-602.
788. McKeever T, Mortimer K, Wilson A, et al. Quadrupling inhaled glucocorticoid dose to abort asthma exacerbations. *N Engl J Med* 2018; 378: 902-910.
789. Jackson DJ, Bacharier LB, Mauger DT, et al. Quintupling inhaled glucocorticoids to prevent childhood asthma exacerbations. *N Engl J Med* 2018; 378: 891-901.
790. Richards RN. Side effects of short-term oral corticosteroids. *J Cutan Med Surg* 2008; 12: 77-81.
791. Ducharme FM, Chalut D, Plotnick L, et al. The Pediatric Respiratory Assessment Measure: a valid clinical score for assessing acute asthma severity from toddlers to teenagers. *J Pediatr* 2008; 152: 476-480, 480.e471.
792. Chalut DS, Ducharme FM, Davis GM. The Preschool Respiratory Assessment Measure (PRAM): a responsive index of acute asthma severity. *J Pediatr* 2000; 137: 762-768.
793. Qureshi F, Pestian J, Davis P, et al. Effect of nebulized ipratropium on the hospitalization rates of children with asthma. *N Engl J Med* 1998; 339: 1030-1035.
794. Gardiner MA, Wilkinson MH. Interrater reliability of the Pediatric Asthma Score. *Pediatr Emerg Care* 2022; 38: 143-146.
795. Jose J, Namboodiripad A. Validation of the Paediatric Asthma Score (PAS) in evaluation of acute exacerbation of asthma in children. *J Nepal Paedtr Soc* 2023; 43: 95-98.
796. Gray C, Collings M, Benito J, et al. Analysis of the asthma scores recommended in guidelines for children presenting to the emergency department: a Pediatric Emergency Research Networks study. *Arch Dis Child* 2025; 110: 422-428.
797. Crooks CJ, West J, Morling JR, et al. Pulse oximeter measurements vary across ethnic groups: an observational study in patients with COVID-19. *Eur Respir J* 2022; 59: 2103246.
798. Rojas-Camayo J, Mejia CR, Callacondo D, et al. Reference values for oxygen saturation from sea level to the highest human habitation in the Andes in acclimatised persons. *Thorax* 2018; 73: 776-778.
799. Cates CJ, Welsh EJ, Rowe BH. Holding chambers (spacers) versus nebulisers for beta-agonist treatment of acute asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2013; 9: CD000052.
800. Selroos O. Dry-powder inhalers in acute asthma. *Ther Deliv* 2014; 5: 69-81.
801. Newman KB, Milne S, Hamilton C, et al. A comparison of albuterol administered by metered-dose inhaler and spacer with albuterol by nebulizer in adults presenting to an urban emergency department with acute asthma. *Chest* 2002; 121: 1036-1041.
802. Tomar RP, Vasudevan R. Metabolic acidosis due to inhaled salbutamol toxicity: A hazardous side effect complicating management of suspected cases of acute severe asthma. *Med J Armed Forces India* 2012; 68: 242-244.
803. Abramson MJ, Bailey MJ, Couper FJ, et al. Are asthma medications and management related to deaths from asthma? *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2001; 163: 12-18.
804. Kirkland SW, Vandenberghe C, Voaklander B, et al. Combined inhaled beta-agonist and anticholinergic agents for emergency management in adults with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2017; 1: CD001284.
805. Craig SS, Dalziel SR, Powell CV, et al. Interventions for escalation of therapy for acute exacerbations of asthma in children: an overview of Cochrane Reviews. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2020; 8: CD012977.

806. Rodrigo GJ, Castro-Rodriguez JA. Anticholinergics in the treatment of children and adults with acute asthma: a systematic review with meta-analysis. *Thorax* 2005; 60: 740-746.
807. Chien JW, Ciufo R, Novak R, et al. Uncontrolled oxygen administration and respiratory failure in acute asthma. *Chest* 2000; 117: 728-733.
808. Rodrigo GJ, Rodriguez Verde M, Peregalli V, et al. Effects of short-term 28% and 100% oxygen on PaCO₂ and peak expiratory flow rate in acute asthma: a randomized trial. *Chest* 2003; 124: 1312-1317.
809. Perrin K, Wijesinghe M, Healy B, et al. Randomised controlled trial of high concentration versus titrated oxygen therapy in severe exacerbations of asthma. *Thorax* 2011; 66: 937-941.
810. Patel B, Khine H, Shah A, et al. Randomized clinical trial of high concentration versus titrated oxygen use in pediatric asthma. *Pediatr Pulmonol* 2019; 54: 970-976.
811. Siemieniuk RAC, Chu DK, Kim LH, et al. Oxygen therapy for acutely ill medical patients: a clinical practice guideline. *BMJ* 2018; 363: k4169.
812. Balanag VM, Yunus F, Yang PC, et al. Efficacy and safety of budesonide/formoterol compared with salbutamol in the treatment of acute asthma. *Pulm Pharmacol Ther* 2006; 19: 139-147.
813. Rodrigo G, Neffen H, Colodenco F, et al. Formoterol for acute asthma in the emergency department: a systematic review with meta-analysis. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2010; 104: 247-252.
814. Hasegawa T, Ishihara K, Takakura S, et al. Duration of systemic corticosteroids in the treatment of asthma exacerbation; a randomized study. *Intern Med* 2000; 39: 794-797.
815. Jones AM, Munavvar M, Vail A, et al. Prospective, placebo-controlled trial of 5 vs 10 days of oral prednisolone in acute adult asthma. *Respir Med* 2002; 96: 950-954.
816. Chang AB, Clark R, Sloots TP, et al. A 5- versus 3-day course of oral corticosteroids for children with asthma exacerbations who are not hospitalised: a randomised controlled trial. *Med J Aust* 2008; 189: 306-310.
817. Normansell R, Sayer B, Waterson S, et al. Antibiotics for exacerbations of asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2018; 6: CD002741.
818. Shim CS, Williams MH, Jr. Evaluation of the severity of asthma: patients versus physicians. *Am J Med* 1980; 68: 11-13.
819. Atta JA, Nunes MP, Fonseca-Guedes CH, et al. Patient and physician evaluation of the severity of acute asthma exacerbations. *Braz J Med Biol Res* 2004; 37: 1321-1330.
820. Geelhoed GC, Landau LI, Le Souef PN. Evaluation of SaO₂ as a predictor of outcome in 280 children presenting with acute asthma. *Ann Emerg Med* 1994; 23: 1236-1241.
821. Nowak RM, Tomlanovich MC, Sarkar DD, et al. Arterial blood gases and pulmonary function testing in acute bronchial asthma. Predicting patient outcomes. *JAMA* 1983; 249: 2043-2046.
822. Carruthers DM, Harrison BD. Arterial blood gas analysis or oxygen saturation in the assessment of acute asthma? *Thorax* 1995; 50: 186-188.
823. White CS, Cole RP, Lubetsky HW, et al. Acute asthma. Admission chest radiography in hospitalized adult patients. *Chest* 1991; 100: 14-16.
824. Roback MG, Dreitlein DA. Chest radiograph in the evaluation of first time wheezing episodes: review of current clinical practice and efficacy. *Pediatr Emerg Care* 1998; 14: 181-184.
825. Cates C, FitzGerald JM, O'Byrne PM. Asthma. *Clin Evidence* 2000; 3: 686-700.
826. Travers AH, Milan SJ, Jones AP, et al. Addition of intravenous beta(2)-agonists to inhaled beta(2)-agonists for acute asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; 12: CD010179.
827. Rowe BH, Spooner CH, Ducharme FM, et al. Corticosteroids for preventing relapse following acute exacerbations of asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2007; 3: CD000195.
828. Kirkland SW, Cross E, Campbell S, et al. Intramuscular versus oral corticosteroids to reduce relapses following discharge from the emergency department for acute asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2018; 6: CD012629.

829. Edmonds ML, Milan SJ, Camargo CA, Jr., et al. Early use of inhaled corticosteroids in the emergency department treatment of acute asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; 12: CD002308.
830. Ratto D, Alfaro C, Sipsey J, et al. Are intravenous corticosteroids required in status asthmaticus? *JAMA* 1988; 260: 527-529.
831. Harrison BD, Stokes TC, Hart GJ, et al. Need for intravenous hydrocortisone in addition to oral prednisolone in patients admitted to hospital with severe asthma without ventilatory failure. *Lancet* 1986; 1: 181-184.
832. Kayani S, Shannon DC. Adverse behavioral effects of treatment for acute exacerbation of asthma in children: a comparison of two doses of oral steroids. *Chest* 2002; 122: 624-628.
833. O'Driscoll BR, Kalra S, Wilson M, et al. Double-blind trial of steroid tapering in acute asthma. *Lancet* 1993; 341: 324-327.
834. Lederle FA, Pluhar RE, Joseph AM, et al. Tapering of corticosteroid therapy following exacerbation of asthma. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Arch Intern Med* 1987; 147: 2201-2203.
835. Keeney GE, Gray MP, Morrison AK, et al. Dexamethasone for acute asthma exacerbations in children: a meta-analysis. *Pediatrics* 2014; 133: 493-499.
836. Kravitz J, Dominici P, Ufberg J, et al. Two days of dexamethasone versus 5 days of prednisone in the treatment of acute asthma: a randomized controlled trial. *Ann Emerg Med* 2011; 58: 200-204.
837. Cronin JJ, McCoy S, Kennedy U, et al. A randomized trial of single-dose oral dexamethasone versus multidose prednisolone for acute exacerbations of asthma in children who attend the emergency department. *Ann Emerg Med* 2016; 67: 593-601.e593.
838. Dahan E, El Ghazal N, Nakanishi H, et al. Dexamethasone versus prednisone/prednisolone in the management of pediatric patients with acute asthmatic exacerbations: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Asthma* 2023; 60: 1481-1492.
839. Kearns N, Majiers I, Harper J, et al. Inhaled corticosteroids in acute asthma: a systemic review and meta-analysis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2020; 8: 605-617 e606.
840. Li CY, Liu Z. Effect of budesonide on hospitalization rates among children with acute asthma attending paediatric emergency department: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *World J Pediatr* 2021; 17: 152-163.
841. Edmonds ML, Milan SJ, Brenner BE, et al. Inhaled steroids for acute asthma following emergency department discharge. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; 12: CD002316.
842. Ambrožej D, Adamiec A, Forno E, et al. Intravenous magnesium sulfate for asthma exacerbations in children: Systematic review with meta-analysis. *Paediatr Respir Rev* 2024; 52: 23-30.
843. Goodacre S, Cohen J, Bradburn M, et al. Intravenous or nebulised magnesium sulphate versus standard therapy for severe acute asthma (3Mg trial): a double-blind, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2013; 1: 293-300.
844. Griffiths B, Kew KM. Intravenous magnesium sulfate for treating children with acute asthma in the emergency department. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2016; 4: CD011050.
845. Knightly R, Milan SJ, Hughes R, et al. Inhaled magnesium sulfate in the treatment of acute asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2017; 11: CD003898.
846. Turker S, Dogru M, Yildiz F, et al. The effect of nebulised magnesium sulphate in the management of childhood moderate asthma exacerbations as adjuvant treatment. *Allergol Immunopathol (Madr)* 2017; 45: 115-120.
847. Kumar J, Kumar P, Goyal JP, et al. Role of nebulised magnesium sulfate in treating acute asthma in children: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMJ Paediatr Open* 2024; 8: :e002638.
848. Rodrigo GJ, Castro-Rodriguez JA. Heliox-driven beta2-agonists nebulization for children and adults with acute asthma: a systematic review with meta-analysis. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2014; 112: 29-34.
849. Lim WJ, Mohammed Akram R, Carson KV, et al. Non-invasive positive pressure ventilation for treatment of respiratory failure due to severe acute exacerbations of asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; 12: CD004360.
850. Homer-Bouthiette C, Wilson KC. Noninvasive ventilation in acute asthma exacerbations: a systematic review. *Ann Am Thorac Soc* 2025; 22: 776-784.

851. Korang SK, Baker M, Feinberg J, et al. Non-invasive positive pressure ventilation for acute asthma in children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2024; 10: CD012067.
852. Ramsay CF, Pearson D, Mildenhall S, et al. Oral montelukast in acute asthma exacerbations: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Thorax* 2011; 66: 7-11.
853. Watts K, Chavasse RJ. Leukotriene receptor antagonists in addition to usual care for acute asthma in adults and children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; 5: CD006100.
854. Nair P, Milan SJ, Rowe BH. Addition of intravenous aminophylline to inhaled beta(2)-agonists in adults with acute asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; 12: CD002742.
855. Joseph KS, Blais L, Ernst P, et al. Increased morbidity and mortality related to asthma among asthmatic patients who use major tranquilisers. *BMJ* 1996; 312: 79-82.
856. FitzGerald JM, Macklem P. Fatal asthma. *Annu Rev Med* 1996; 47: 161-168.
857. Kelly A-M, Kerr D, Powell C. Is severity assessment after one hour of treatment better for predicting the need for admission in acute asthma? *Respir Med* 2004; 98: 777-781.
858. Wilson MM, Irwin RS, Connolly AE, et al. A prospective evaluation of the 1-hour decision point for admission versus discharge in acute asthma. *J Intensive Care Med* 2003; 18: 275-285.
859. Pollack CV, Jr., Pollack ES, Baren JM, et al. A prospective multicenter study of patient factors associated with hospital admission from the emergency department among children with acute asthma. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med* 2002; 156: 934-940.
860. Rowe BH, Villa-Roel C, Abu-Laban RB, et al. Admissions to Canadian hospitals for acute asthma: a prospective, multicentre study. *Can Respir J* 2010; 17: 25-30.
861. Weber EJ, Silverman RA, Callahan ML, et al. A prospective multicenter study of factors associated with hospital admission among adults with acute asthma. *Am J Med* 2002; 113: 371-378.
862. Masoli M, Fabian D, Holt S, et al. The global burden of asthma: executive summary of the GINA Dissemination Committee report. *Allergy* 2004; 59: 469-478.
863. Simpson CR, Sheikh A. Trends in the epidemiology of asthma in England: a national study of 333,294 patients. *J Royal Soc Med* 2010; 103: 98-106.
864. Bisgaard H, Szefer S. Prevalence of asthma-like symptoms in young children. *Pediatr Pulmonol* 2007; 42: 723-728.
865. Kuehni CE, Strippoli MP, Low N, et al. Wheeze and asthma prevalence and related health-service use in white and south Asian pre-schoolchildren in the United Kingdom. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2007; 37: 1738-1746.
866. Chiarella SE, Garcia-Guaqueta DP, Drake LY, et al. Sex differences in sociodemographic, clinical, and laboratory variables in childhood asthma: A birth cohort study. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2024; 133: 403-412.e402.
867. Sly PD, Boner AL, Björkstén B, et al. Early identification of atopy in the prediction of persistent asthma in children. *Lancet* 2008; 372: 1100-1106.
868. Brand PL. The Asthma Predictive Index: not a useful tool in clinical practice. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011; 127: 293-294.
869. Heikkinen T, Jarvinen A. The common cold. *Lancet* 2003; 361: 51-59.
870. Rosas-Salazar C, Chirkova T, Gebretsadik T, et al. Respiratory syncytial virus infection during infancy and asthma during childhood in the USA (INSPIRE): a population-based, prospective birth cohort study. *Lancet* 2023; 401: 1669-1680.
871. Brand PL, Baraldi E, Bisgaard H, et al. Definition, assessment and treatment of wheezing disorders in preschool children: an evidence-based approach. *Eur Respir J* 2008; 32: 1096-1110.
872. Belgrave DCM, Simpson A, Semic-Jusufagic A, et al. Joint modeling of parentally reported and physician-confirmed wheeze identifies children with persistent troublesome wheezing. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2013; 132: 575-583.e512.
873. Savenije OE, Kerkhof M, Koppelman GH, et al. Predicting who will have asthma at school age among preschool children. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2012; 130: 325-331.

874. Makrinioti H, Fainardi V, Bonnelykke K, et al. European Respiratory Society statement on preschool wheezing disorders: updated definitions, knowledge gaps and proposed future research directions. *Eur Respir J* 2024; 64: 2400624.
875. Mellis C. Respiratory noises: how useful are they clinically? *Pediatr Clin North Am* 2009; 56: 1-17, ix.
876. Saglani S, McKenzie SA, Bush A, et al. A video questionnaire identifies upper airway abnormalities in preschool children with reported wheeze. *Arch Dis Child* 2005; 90: 961-964.
877. Doherty G, Bush A. Diagnosing respiratory problems in young children. *The Practitioner* 2007; 251: 20, 22-25.
878. Castro-Rodriguez JA, Rodrigo GJ. Efficacy of inhaled corticosteroids in infants and preschoolers with recurrent wheezing and asthma: a systematic review with meta-analysis. *Pediatrics* 2009; 123: e519-525.
879. Kaiser SV, Huynh T, Bacharier LB, et al. Preventing exacerbations in preschoolers with recurrent wheeze: a meta-analysis. *Pediatrics* 2016; 137: e20154496.
880. Comberiati P, Di Cicco ME, D'Elia S, et al. How much asthma is atopic in children? *Front Pediatr* 2017; 5: 122.
881. Ducharme FM, Chan R. Oscillometry in the diagnosis, assessment, and monitoring of asthma in children and adults. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2025; 134: 135-143.
882. Van Der Heijden HH, Brouwer ML, Hoekstra F, et al. Reference values of exhaled nitric oxide in healthy children 1-5 years using off-line tidal breathing. *Pediatric Pulmonology* 2014; 49: 291-295.
883. Singer F, Luchsinger I, Inci D, et al. Exhaled nitric oxide in symptomatic children at preschool age predicts later asthma. *Allergy* 2013; 68: 531-538.
884. Caudri D, Wijga AH, Hoekstra MO, et al. Prediction of asthma in symptomatic preschool children using exhaled nitric oxide, Rint and specific IgE. *Thorax* 2010; 65: 801-807.
885. Guilbert TW, Morgan WJ, Zeiger RS, et al. Long-term inhaled corticosteroids in preschool children at high risk for asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2006; 354: 1985-1997.
886. Murray CS, Poletti G, Keadze T, et al. Study of modifiable risk factors for asthma exacerbations: virus infection and allergen exposure increase the risk of asthma hospital admissions in children. *Thorax* 2006; 61: 376-382.
887. Bacharier LB. The recurrently wheezing preschool child-benign or asthma in the making? *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2015; 115: 463-470.
888. Castro-Rodríguez JA, Holberg CJ, Wright AL, et al. A clinical index to define risk of asthma in young children with recurrent wheezing. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2000; 162: 1403-1406.
889. Caudri D, Wijga A, CM AS, et al. Predicting the long-term prognosis of children with symptoms suggestive of asthma at preschool age. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2009; 124: 903-910 e901-907.
890. Pescatore AM, Dogaru CM, Duembgen L, et al. A simple asthma prediction tool for preschool children with wheeze or cough. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2014; 133: 111-118.e111-113.
891. Colicino S, Munblit D, Minelli C, et al. Validation of childhood asthma predictive tools: A systematic review. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2019; 49: 410-418.
892. Bisgaard H, Allen D, Milanowski J, et al. Twelve-month safety and efficacy of inhaled fluticasone propionate in children aged 1 to 3 years with recurrent wheezing. *Pediatrics* 2004; 113: e87-94.
893. Fitzpatrick AM, Jackson DJ, Mauger DT, et al. Individualized therapy for persistent asthma in young children. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2016; 138: 1608-1618.e1612.
894. Fitzpatrick AM, Bacharier LB, Guilbert TW, et al. Phenotypes of recurrent wheezing in preschool children: identification by latent class analysis and utility in prediction of future exacerbation. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract* 2019; 7: 915-924 e917.
895. Castro-Rodriguez JA, Rodriguez-Martinez CE, Ducharme FM. Daily inhaled corticosteroids or montelukast for preschoolers with asthma or recurrent wheezing: A systematic review. *Pediatr Pulmonol* 2018; 53: 1670-1677.
896. Kelly HW, Sternberg AL, Lescher R, et al. Effect of inhaled glucocorticoids in childhood on adult height. *N Engl J Med* 2012; 367: 904-912.
897. Gadomski AM, Scribani MB. Bronchodilators for bronchiolitis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; 6: CD001266.

898. Bisgaard H, Hermansen MN, Loland L, et al. Intermittent inhaled corticosteroids in infants with episodic wheezing. *N Engl J Med* 2006; 354: 1998-2005.
899. Wilson NM, Silverman M. Treatment of acute, episodic asthma in preschool children using intermittent high dose inhaled steroids at home. *Arch Dis Child* 1990; 65: 407-410.
900. Nielsen KG, Bisgaard H. The effect of inhaled budesonide on symptoms, lung function, and cold air and methacholine responsiveness in 2- to 5-year-old asthmatic children. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2000; 162: 1500-1506.
901. Szeffler SJ, Baker JW, Uryniak T, et al. Comparative study of budesonide inhalation suspension and montelukast in young children with mild persistent asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2007; 120: 1043-1050.
902. Knorr B, Franchi LM, Bisgaard H, et al. Montelukast, a leukotriene receptor antagonist, for the treatment of persistent asthma in children aged 2 to 5 years. *Pediatrics* 2001; 108: E48.
903. Brodlie M, Gupta A, Rodriguez-Martinez CE, et al. Leukotriene receptor antagonists as maintenance and intermittent therapy for episodic viral wheeze in children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2015; 10: CD008202.
904. Papi A, Nicolini G, Baraldi E, et al. Regular vs prn nebulized treatment in wheeze preschool children. *Allergy* 2009; 64: 1463-1471.
905. Zeiger RS, Mauger D, Bacharier LB, et al. Daily or intermittent budesonide in preschool children with recurrent wheezing. *N Engl J Med* 2011; 365: 1990-2001.
906. Vrijlandt E, El Azzi G, Vandewalker M, et al. Safety and efficacy of tiotropium in children aged 1-5 years with persistent asthmatic symptoms: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2018; 6: 127-137.
907. Piippo-Savolainen E, Remes S, Kannisto S, et al. Asthma and lung function 20 years after wheezing in infancy: results from a prospective follow-up study. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med* 2004; 158: 1070-1076.
908. Wennergren G, Hansson S, Engstrom I, et al. Characteristics and prognosis of hospital-treated obstructive bronchitis in children aged less than two years. *Acta Paediatrica* 1992; 81: 40-45.
909. Goksor E, Amark M, Alm B, et al. Asthma symptoms in early childhood – what happens then? *Acta Paediatrica* 2006; 95: 471-478.
910. Castro-Rodriguez JA, Rodrigo GJ. Beta-agonists through metered-dose inhaler with valved holding chamber versus nebulizer for acute exacerbation of wheezing or asthma in children under 5 years of age: a systematic review with meta-analysis. *Journal of Pediatrics* 2004; 145: 172-177.
911. Zemek RL, Bhogal SK, Ducharme FM. Systematic review of randomized controlled trials examining written action plans in children: what is the plan? *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med* 2008; 162: 157-163.
912. Swern AS, Tozzi CA, Knorr B, et al. Predicting an asthma exacerbation in children 2 to 5 years of age. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* 2008; 101: 626-630.
913. Brunette MG, Lands L, Thibodeau LP. Childhood asthma: prevention of attacks with short-term corticosteroid treatment of upper respiratory tract infection. *Pediatrics* 1988; 81: 624-629.
914. Fox GF, Marsh MJ, Milner AD. Treatment of recurrent acute wheezing episodes in infancy with oral salbutamol and prednisolone. *Eur J Pediatr* 1996; 155: 512-516.
915. Grant CC, Duggan AK, DeAngelis C. Independent parental administration of prednisone in acute asthma: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, crossover study. *Pediatrics* 1995; 96: 224-229.
916. Oommen A, Lambert PC, Grigg J. Efficacy of a short course of parent-initiated oral prednisolone for viral wheeze in children aged 1-5 years: randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2003; 362: 1433-1438.
917. Vuillermin P, South M, Robertson C. Parent-initiated oral corticosteroid therapy for intermittent wheezing illnesses in children. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2006; 3: CD005311.
918. Robertson CF, Price D, Henry R, et al. Short-course montelukast for intermittent asthma in children: a randomized controlled trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2007; 175: 323-329.
919. Bacharier LB, Phillips BR, Zeiger RS, et al. Episodic use of an inhaled corticosteroid or leukotriene receptor antagonist in preschool children with moderate-to-severe intermittent wheezing. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2008; 122: 1127-1135 e1128.

920. Keahey L, Bulloch B, Becker AB, et al. Initial oxygen saturation as a predictor of admission in children presenting to the emergency department with acute asthma. *Ann Emerg Med* 2002; 40: 300-307.
921. Gorelick MH, Stevens MW, Schultz TR, et al. Performance of a novel clinical score, the Pediatric Asthma Severity Score (PASS), in the evaluation of acute asthma. *Acad Emerg Med* 2004; 11: 10-18.
922. Gouin S, Robidas I, Gravel J, et al. Prospective evaluation of two clinical scores for acute asthma in children 18 months to 7 years of age. *Acad Emerg Med* 2010; 17: 598-603.
923. Chacko J, King C, Harkness D, et al. Pediatric acute asthma scoring systems: a systematic review and survey of UK practice. *J Am Coll Emerg Physicians Open* 2020; 1: 1000-1008.
924. Eggink H, Brand P, Reimink R, et al. Clinical scores for dyspnoea severity in children: a prospective validation study. *PLoS One* 2016; 11: e0157724.
925. Bekhof J, Reimink R, Brand PL. Systematic review: insufficient validation of clinical scores for the assessment of acute dyspnoea in wheezing children. *Paediatr Respir Rev* 2014; 15: 98-112.
926. Pollock M, Sinha IP, Hartling L, et al. Inhaled short-acting bronchodilators for managing emergency childhood asthma: an overview of reviews. *Allergy* 2017; 72: 183-200.
927. Castro-Rodriguez JA, Pincheira MA, Escobar-Serna DP, et al. Adding nebulized corticosteroids to systemic corticosteroids for acute asthma in children: A systematic review with meta-analysis. *Pediatr Pulmonol* 2020; 55: 2508-2517.
928. Rowe BH, Spooner C, Ducharme FM, et al. Early emergency department treatment of acute asthma with systemic corticosteroids. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2001; 1: CD002178.
929. Castro-Rodriguez JA, Beckhaus AA, Forno E. Efficacy of oral corticosteroids in the treatment of acute wheezing episodes in asthmatic preschoolers: Systematic review with meta-analysis. *Pediatr Pulmonol* 2016; 51: 868-876.
930. Panickar J, Lakhanpaul M, Lambert PC, et al. Oral prednisolone for preschool children with acute virus-induced wheezing. *N Engl J Med* 2009; 360: 329-338.
931. Webb MS, Henry RL, Milner AD. Oral corticosteroids for wheezing attacks under 18 months. *Arch Dis Child* 1986; 61: 15-19.
932. Bunyavanich S, Rifas-Shiman SL, Platts-Mills TA, et al. Peanut, milk, and wheat intake during pregnancy is associated with reduced allergy and asthma in children. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2014; 133: 1373-1382.
933. Maslova E, Granstrom C, Hansen S, et al. Peanut and tree nut consumption during pregnancy and allergic disease in children-should mothers decrease their intake? Longitudinal evidence from the Danish National Birth Cohort. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2012; 130: 724-732.
934. Maslova E, Strom M, Oken E, et al. Fish intake during pregnancy and the risk of child asthma and allergic rhinitis – longitudinal evidence from the Danish National Birth Cohort. *Br J Nutr* 2013; 110: 1313-1325.
935. Best KP, Gold M, Kennedy D, et al. Omega-3 long-chain PUFA intake during pregnancy and allergic disease outcomes in the offspring: a systematic review and meta-analysis of observational studies and randomized controlled trials. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2016; 103: 128-143.
936. Best KP, Sullivan T, Palmer D, et al. Prenatal fish oil supplementation and allergy: 6-year follow-up of a randomized controlled trial. *Pediatrics* 2016; 137: e20154443.
937. Best KP, Sullivan TR, Palmer DJ, et al. Prenatal omega-3 LCPUFA and symptoms of allergic disease and sensitization throughout early childhood - a longitudinal analysis of long-term follow-up of a randomized controlled trial. *World Allergy Organ J* 2018; 11: 10.
938. Hansen S, Strom M, Maslova E, et al. Fish oil supplementation during pregnancy and allergic respiratory disease in the adult offspring. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2017; 139: 104-111.e104.
939. Brozek JL, Bousquet J, Baena-Cagnani CE, et al. Allergic Rhinitis and its Impact on Asthma (ARIA) guidelines: 2010 revision. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2010; 126: 466-476.
940. Greer FR, Sicherer SH, Burks AW. The effects of early nutritional interventions on the development of atopic disease in infants and children: The role of maternal dietary restriction, breastfeeding, hydrolyzed formulas, and timing of introduction of allergenic complementary foods. *Pediatrics* 2019; 143: e20190281.

941. Nurmatov U, Devereux G, Sheikh A. Nutrients and foods for the primary prevention of asthma and allergy: systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011; 127: 724-733.e721-730.
942. Chawes BL, Bonnelykke K, Stokholm J, et al. Effect of vitamin D3 supplementation during pregnancy on risk of persistent wheeze in the offspring: a randomized clinical trial. *Jama* 2016; 315: 353-361.
943. Litonjua AA, Carey VJ, Laranjo N, et al. Effect of Prenatal Supplementation With Vitamin D on Asthma or Recurrent Wheezing in Offspring by Age 3 Years: The VDAART Randomized Clinical Trial. *JAMA* 2016; 315: 362-370.
944. Wolsk HM, Harshfield BJ, Laranjo N, et al. Vitamin D supplementation in pregnancy, prenatal 25(OH)D levels, race, and subsequent asthma or recurrent wheeze in offspring: Secondary analyses from the Vitamin D Antenatal Asthma Reduction Trial. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2017; 140: 1423-1429.e1425.
945. Litonjua AA, Carey VJ, Laranjo N, et al. Six-year follow-up of a trial of antenatal vitamin D for asthma reduction. *N Engl J Med* 2020; 382: 525-533.
946. Shadid IL, Brustad N, Lu M, et al. The impact of baseline 25-hydroxyvitamin D level and gestational age on prenatal vitamin D supplementation to prevent offspring asthma or recurrent wheezing. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2023; 117: 1342-1352.
947. Stratakis N, Roumeliotaki T, Oken E, et al. Fish and seafood consumption during pregnancy and the risk of asthma and allergic rhinitis in childhood: a pooled analysis of 18 European and US birth cohorts. *Int J Epidemiol* 2017; 46: 1465-1477.
948. Bisgaard H, Stokholm J, Chawes BL, et al. Fish oil-derived fatty acids in pregnancy and wheeze and asthma in offspring. *N Engl J Med* 2016; 375: 2530-2539.
949. Azad MB, Coneys JG, Kozyrskyj AL, et al. Probiotic supplementation during pregnancy or infancy for the prevention of asthma and wheeze: systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMJ* 2013; 347: f6471.
950. Azad MB, Chan-Yeung M, Chan ES, et al. Wheezing patterns in early childhood and the risk of respiratory and allergic disease in adolescence. *JAMA Pediatr* 2016; 170: 393-395.
951. Celedon JC, Milton DK, Ramsey CD, et al. Exposure to dust mite allergen and endotoxin in early life and asthma and atopy in childhood. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2007; 120: 144-149.
952. Lodge CJ, Lowe AJ, Gurrin LC, et al. House dust mite sensitization in toddlers predicts current wheeze at age 12 years. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011; 128: 782-788.e789.
953. Custovic A, Simpson BM, Simpson A, et al. Effect of environmental manipulation in pregnancy and early life on respiratory symptoms and atopy during first year of life: a randomised trial. *Lancet* 2001; 358: 188-193.
954. Perzanowski MS, Chew GL, Divjan A, et al. Cat ownership is a risk factor for the development of anti-cat IgE but not current wheeze at age 5 years in an inner-city cohort. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2008; 121: 1047-1052.
955. Melen E, Wickman M, Nordvall SL, et al. Influence of early and current environmental exposure factors on sensitization and outcome of asthma in pre-school children. *Allergy* 2001; 56: 646-652.
956. Takkouche B, Gonzalez-Barcala FJ, Etminan M, et al. Exposure to furry pets and the risk of asthma and allergic rhinitis: a meta-analysis. *Allergy* 2008; 63: 857-864.
957. Bufford JD, Gern JE. Early exposure to pets: good or bad? *Curr Allergy Asthma Rep* 2007; 7: 375-382.
958. Ownby DR, Johnson CC, Peterson EL. Exposure to dogs and cats in the first year of life and risk of allergic sensitization at 6 to 7 years of age. *JAMA* 2002; 288: 963-972.
959. Lodrup Carlsen KC, Roll S, Carlsen KH, et al. Does pet ownership in infancy lead to asthma or allergy at school age? Pooled analysis of individual participant data from 11 European birth cohorts. *PloS one* 2012; 7: e43214.
960. Pinot de Moira A, Strandberg-Larsen K, Bishop T, et al. Associations of early-life pet ownership with asthma and allergic sensitization: A meta-analysis of more than 77,000 children from the EU Child Cohort Network. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2022; 150: 82-92.
961. Quansah R, Jaakkola MS, Hugg TT, et al. Residential dampness and molds and the risk of developing asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2012; 7: e47526.
962. Arshad SH, Bateman B, Matthews SM. Primary prevention of asthma and atopy during childhood by allergen avoidance in infancy: a randomised controlled study. *Thorax* 2003; 58: 489-493.

963. Becker A, Watson W, Ferguson A, et al. The Canadian asthma primary prevention study: outcomes at 2 years of age. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2004; 113: 650-656.
964. Schonberger HJAM, Dompeling E, Knottnerus JA, et al. The PREVASC study: the clinical effect of a multifaceted educational intervention to prevent childhood asthma. *Eur Respir J* 2005; 25: 660-670.
965. van Schayck OCP, Maas T, Kaper J, et al. Is there any role for allergen avoidance in the primary prevention of childhood asthma? *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2007; 119: 1323-1328.
966. Chan-Yeung M, Ferguson A, Watson W, et al. The Canadian Childhood Asthma Primary Prevention Study: outcomes at 7 years of age. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2005; 116: 49-55.
967. Scott M, Roberts G, Kurukulaaratchy RJ, et al. Multifaceted allergen avoidance during infancy reduces asthma during childhood with the effect persisting until age 18 years. *Thorax* 2012; 67: 1046-1051.
968. Valovirta E, Petersen TH, Piotrowska T, et al. Results from the 5-year SQ grass sublingual immunotherapy tablet asthma prevention (GAP) trial in children with grass pollen allergy. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2018; 141: 529-538.e513.
969. Wongtrakool C, Wang N, Hyde DM, et al. Prenatal nicotine exposure alters lung function and airway geometry through 7 nicotinic receptors. *Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol* 2012; 46: 695-702.
970. Burke H, Leonardi-Bee J, Hashim A, et al. Prenatal and passive smoke exposure and incidence of asthma and wheeze: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Pediatrics* 2012; 129: 735-744.
971. Bowatte G, Lodge C, Lowe AJ, et al. The influence of childhood traffic-related air pollution exposure on asthma, allergy and sensitization: a systematic review and a meta-analysis of birth cohort studies. *Allergy* 2015; 70: 245-256.
972. Khreis H, Kelly C, Tate J, et al. Exposure to traffic-related air pollution and risk of development of childhood asthma: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Environ Int* 2017; 100: 1-31.
973. Achakulwisut P, Brauer M, Hystad P, et al. Global, national, and urban burdens of paediatric asthma incidence attributable to ambient NO₂ pollution: estimates from global datasets. *Lancet Planet Health* 2019; 3: e166-e178.
974. Hehua Z, Qing C, Shanyan G, et al. The impact of prenatal exposure to air pollution on childhood wheezing and asthma: A systematic review. *Environ Res* 2017; 159: 519-530.
975. Haahtela T, Holgate S, Pawankar R, et al. The biodiversity hypothesis and allergic disease: world allergy organization position statement. *World Allergy Organ* 2013; 6: 3.
976. Riedler J, Braun-Fahrlander C, Eder W, et al. Exposure to farming in early life and development of asthma and allergy: a cross-sectional survey. *Lancet* 2001; 358: 1129-1133.
977. Braun-Fahrlander C, Riedler J, Herz U, et al. Environmental exposure to endotoxin and its relation to asthma in school-age children. *N Engl J Med* 2002; 347: 869-877.
978. Karvonen AM, Hyvarinen A, Gehring U, et al. Exposure to microbial agents in house dust and wheezing, atopic dermatitis and atopic sensitization in early childhood: a birth cohort study in rural areas. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2012; 42: 1246-1256.
979. Huang L, Chen Q, Zhao Y, et al. Is elective cesarean section associated with a higher risk of asthma? A meta-analysis. *J Asthma* 2015; 52: 16-25.
980. Keag OE, Norman JE, Stock SJ. Long-term risks and benefits associated with cesarean delivery for mother, baby, and subsequent pregnancies: Systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS Med* 2018; 15: e1002494.
981. Azad MB, Konya T, Maughan H, et al. Gut microbiota of healthy Canadian infants: profiles by mode of delivery and infant diet at 4 months. *CMAJ* 2013; 185: 385-394.
982. Kampmann B, Madhi SA, Munjal I, et al. Bivalent prefusion F vaccine in pregnancy to prevent RSV illness in infants. *N Engl J Med* 2023; 388: 1451-1464.
983. De Leeuw E, Justesen JF, Bosteels C, et al. Maternal allergy and neonatal RSV infection synergize via FcR-mediated allergen uptake to promote the development of asthma in early life. *Sci Immunol* 2025; 10: eadz4626.
984. Hammitt LL, Dagan R, Yuan Y, et al. Nirsevimab for prevention of RSV in healthy late preterm and term infants. *N Engl J Med* 2022; 386: 837-846.

985. Blanken MO, Rovers MM, Molenaar JM, et al. Respiratory syncytial virus and recurrent wheeze in healthy preterm infants. *N Engl J Med* 2013; 368: 1791-1799.
986. Scheltema NM, Nibbelke EE, Pouw J, et al. Respiratory syncytial virus prevention and asthma in healthy preterm infants: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Respir Med* 2018; 6: 257-264.
987. Quinn LA, Shields MD, Sinha I, et al. Respiratory syncytial virus prophylaxis for prevention of recurrent childhood wheeze and asthma: a systematic review. *Syst Rev* 2020; 9: 269.
988. World Health Organization. WHO position paper on immunization to protect infants against respiratory syncytial virus disease, May 2025. *Weekly epidemiological record* 2025; 100: 193–218.
989. Baron R, Taye M, der Vaart IB, et al. The relationship of prenatal antibiotic exposure and infant antibiotic administration with childhood allergies: a systematic review. *BMC Pediatr* 2020; 20: 312.
990. Celedón JC, Fuhlbrigge A, Rifas-Shiman S, et al. Antibiotic use in the first year of life and asthma in early childhood. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2004; 34: 1011-1016.
991. Cheelo M, Lodge CJ, Dharmage SC, et al. Paracetamol exposure in pregnancy and early childhood and development of childhood asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Arch Dis Child* 2015; 100: 81-89.
992. Evers S, Weatherall M, Jefferies S, et al. Paracetamol in pregnancy and the risk of wheezing in offspring: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2011; 41: 482-489.
993. Yang F, Zhu J, Wang Z, et al. Relationship between maternal folic acid supplementation during pregnancy and risk of childhood asthma: Systematic review and dose-response meta-analysis. *Front Pediatr* 2022; 10: 1000532.
994. Flanigan C, Sheikh A, DunnGalvin A, et al. Prenatal maternal psychosocial stress and offspring's asthma and allergic disease: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2018; 48: 403-414.
995. Kozyrskyj AL, Mai XM, McGrath P, et al. Continued exposure to maternal distress in early life is associated with an increased risk of childhood asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2008; 177: 142-147.
996. Forno E, Young OM, Kumar R, et al. Maternal obesity in pregnancy, gestational weight gain, and risk of childhood asthma. *Pediatrics* 2014; 134: e535-546.
997. Xu S, Gilliland FD, Conti DV. Elucidation of causal direction between asthma and obesity: a bi-directional Mendelian randomization study. *Int J Epidemiol* 2019; 48: 899-907.
998. Sun YQ, Brumpton BM, Langhammer A, et al. Adiposity and asthma in adults: a bidirectional Mendelian randomisation analysis of The HUNT Study. *Thorax* 2020; 75: 202-208.
999. Sonnenschein-van der Voort AM, Arends LR, de Jongste JC, et al. Preterm birth, infant weight gain, and childhood asthma risk: a meta-analysis of 147,000 European children. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2014; 133: 1317-1329.
1000. Beasley R, Semprini A, Mitchell EA. Risk factors for asthma: is prevention possible? *Lancet* 2015; 386: 1075-1085.
1001. Koppelman GH, Pino-Yanes M, Melén E, et al. Genetic and environmental risk factors for asthma: towards prevention. *Lancet Respir Med* 2025; 13: 1011-1025.
1002. Burgers J, Eccles M. Clinical guidelines as a tool for implementing change in patient care. Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2005.
1003. Woolf SH, Grol R, Hutchinson A, et al. Clinical guidelines: potential benefits, limitations, and harms of clinical guidelines. *BMJ* 1999; 318: 527-530.
1004. The ADAPTE Collaboration. The ADAPTE process: resource toolkit for guideline adaptation. Version 2.0: Guideline International Network; 2009. Available from: <http://www.g-i-n.net/document-store/adapte-resource-toolkit-guideline-adaptation-version-2/view?searchterm=adapte>.
1005. Brouwers MC, Kho ME, Browman GP, et al. AGREE II: advancing guideline development, reporting and evaluation in health care. *CMAJ* 2010; 182: E839-842.
1006. Boulet LP, FitzGerald JM, Levy ML, et al. A guide to the translation of the Global Initiative for Asthma (GINA) strategy into improved care. *Eur Respir J* 2012; 39: 1220-1229.

1007. Davis DA, Taylor-Vaisey A. Translating guidelines into practice. A systematic review of theoretic concepts, practical experience and research evidence in the adoption of clinical practice guidelines. *CMAJ* 1997; 157: 408-416.
1008. Harrison MB, Legare F, Graham ID, et al. Adapting clinical practice guidelines to local context and assessing barriers to their use. *CMAJ* 2010; 182: E78-84.
1009. Partridge MR. Translating research into practice: how are guidelines implemented? *Eur Respir J Suppl* 2003; 39: 23s-29s.
1010. Baiardini I, Braido F, Bonini M, et al. Why do doctors and patients not follow guidelines? *Curr Opin Allergy Clin Immunol* 2009; 9: 228-233.
1011. Boulet LP, Becker A, Bowie D, et al. Implementing practice guidelines: a workshop on guidelines dissemination and implementation with a focus on asthma and COPD. *Can Respir J* 2006; 13 Suppl A: 5-47.
1012. Franco R, Santos AC, do Nascimento HF, et al. Cost-effectiveness analysis of a state funded programme for control of severe asthma. *BMC Public Health* 2007; 7: 82.
1013. Renzi PM, Ghezzi H, Goulet S, et al. Paper stamp checklist tool enhances asthma guidelines knowledge and implementation by primary care physicians. *Can Respir J* 2006; 13: 193-197.
1014. Nkoy F, Fassl B, Stone B, et al. Improving pediatric asthma care and outcomes across multiple hospitals. *Pediatrics* 2015; 136: e1602-1610.
1015. Bao W, Zhang X, Yin J, et al. Small-airway function variables in spirometry, fractional exhaled nitric oxide, and circulating eosinophils predicted airway hyperresponsiveness in patients with mild asthma. *J Asthma Allergy* 2021; 14: 415-426.
1016. British Thoracic Society, National Institute for Health and Care Excellence, Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network. Asthma: diagnosis, monitoring and chronic asthma management (update). [G] Evidence reviews for diagnostic accuracy of eosinophil blood count measures in the diagnosis of asthma. BTS/NICE/SIGN collaborative guideline NG245: NICE; 2024. Available from: <https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng245/evidence/g-diagnostic-accuracy-of-eosinophil-blood-count-measures-in-the-diagnosis-of-asthma-pdf-13558146740>.
1017. Malinovschi A, Fonseca JA, Jacinto T, et al. Exhaled nitric oxide levels and blood eosinophil counts independently associate with wheeze and asthma events in National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey subjects. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2013; 132: 821-827.e821-825.
1018. Nekoe H, Graulich E, Schleich F, et al. Are type-2 biomarkers of any help in asthma diagnosis? *ERJ Open Res* 2020; 6: 00169-02020.
1019. Alving K, Weitzberg E, Lundberg JM. Increased amount of nitric oxide in exhaled air of asthmatics. *Eur Respir J* 1993; 6: 1368-1370.
1020. British Thoracic Society, National Institute for Health and Care Excellence, Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network. Asthma: diagnosis, monitoring and chronic asthma management (update). [F] Evidence reviews for diagnostic accuracy of fractional exhaled nitric oxide (FeNO) measures. BTS/NICE/SIGN collaborative guideline NG245: NICE; 2024. Available from: <https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng245/evidence/f-accuracy-and-clinical-and-costeffectiveness-of-feno-in-the-diagnosis-of-asthma-pdf-13558146739>.
1021. Cordeiro D, Rudolphus A, Snoey E, et al. Utility of nitric oxide for the diagnosis of asthma in an allergy clinic population. *Allergy Asthma Proc* 2011; 32: 119-126.
1022. He L, Wei M, Luo J, et al. Re-evaluation of the diagnostic value of fractional exhaled nitric oxide & its impact in patients with asthma. *Indian J Med Res* 2018; 148: 441-448.
1023. Katsoulis K, Ganavias L, Michailopoulos P, et al. Exhaled nitric oxide as screening tool in subjects with suspected asthma without reversibility. *Int Arch Allergy Immunol* 2013; 162: 58-64.
1024. Louis G, Schleich F, Guillaume M, et al. Development and validation of a predictive model combining patient-reported outcome measures, spirometry and exhaled nitric oxide fraction for asthma diagnosis. *ERJ Open Res* 2023; 9: 00451-02022.
1025. Schneider A, Brunn B, Hapfelmeier A, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of FeNO in asthma and predictive value for inhaled corticosteroid responsiveness: A prospective, multicentre study. *EClinicalMedicine* 2022; 50: 101533.

1026. Schneider A, Wagenpfeil G, Jörres RA, et al. Influence of the practice setting on diagnostic prediction rules using FENO measurement in combination with clinical signs and symptoms of asthma. *BMJ Open* 2015; 5: e009676.
1027. Smith AD, Cowan JO, Filsell S, et al. Diagnosing asthma: comparisons between exhaled nitric oxide measurements and conventional tests. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2004; 169: 473-478.
1028. Wang Y, Li L, Han R, et al. Diagnostic value and influencing factors of fractional exhaled nitric oxide in suspected asthma patients. *Int J Clin Exp Pathol* 2015; 8: 5570-5576.
1029. Pavord ID, Beasley R, Agusti A, et al. After asthma: redefining airways diseases. *Lancet* 2018; 391: 350-400.
1030. Couillard S, Laugerud A, Jabeen M, et al. Derivation of a prototype asthma attack risk scale centred on blood eosinophils and exhaled nitric oxide. *Thorax* 2022; 77: 199-202.
1031. Kraft M, Brusselle G, FitzGerald JM, et al. Patient characteristics, biomarkers and exacerbation risk in severe, uncontrolled asthma. *Eur Respir J* 2021; 58: 2100413.
1032. Brusselle G, Nicolini G, Santoro L, et al. Beclometasone dipropionate/formoterol maintenance and reliever therapy asthma exacerbation benefit increases with blood eosinophil level. *Eur Respir J* 2021; 58: 2004098.
1033. Brusselle GG, Koppelman GH. Biologic therapies for severe asthma. *N Engl J Med* 2022; 386: 157-171.

COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL - DO NOT COPY OR DISTRIBUTE

COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL - DO NOT COPY OR DISTRIBUTE



Visit the GINA website at www.ginasthma.org

©2026 Global Initiative for Asthma